Beyond Linux® From Scratch

Version 6.3

BLFS Development Team

Beyond Linux® From Scratch: Version 6.3

by BLFS Development Team

Published 2008-08-24

Abstract

This book follows on from the Linux From Scratch book. It introduces and guides the reader through additions to the system including networking, graphical interfaces, sound support, and printer and scanner support.

Revision History

Revision 6.3	2008-08-24	Seventh release
Revision 6.2.0	2007-02-14	Sixth release
Revision 6.1	2005-08-14	Fifth release
Revision 6.0	2005-04-02	Fourth release
Revision 5.1	2004-06-05	Third release
Revision 5.0	2003-11-06	Second release
Revision 1.0	2003-04-25	First release

Dedication

This book is dedicated to the LFS community

Table of Contents

Preface

Having helped out with Linux From Scratch for a short time, I noticed that we were getting many queries as to how to do things beyond the base LFS system. At the time, the only assistance specifically offered relating to LFS were the LFS hints (*http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints*). Most of the LFS hints are extremely good and well written but I (and others) could still see a need for more comprehensive help to go Beyond LFS - hence BLFS.

BLFS aims to be more than the LFS-hints converted to XML although much of our work is based around the hints and indeed some authors write both hints and the relevant BLFS sections. We hope that we can provide you with enough information to not only manage to build your system up to what you want, whether it be a web server or a multimedia desktop system, but also that you will learn a lot about system configuration as you go.

Thanks as ever go to everyone in the LFS/BLFS community; especially those who have contributed instructions, written text, answered questions and generally shouted when things were wrong!

Finally, we encourage you to become involved in the community; ask questions on the mailing list or news gateway and join in the fun on #lfs at irc.linuxfromscratch.org. You can find more details about all of these in the Introduction section of the book.

Enjoy using BLFS.

Mark Hymers
markh <at> linuxfromscratch.org
BLFS Editor (July 2001–March 2003)

I still remember how I found the BLFS project and started using the instructions that were completed at the time. I could not believe how wonderful it was to get an application up and running very quickly, with explanations as to why things were done a certain way. Unfortunately, for me, it wasn't long before I was opening applications that had nothing more than "To be done" on the page. I did what most would do, I waited for someone else to do it. It wasn't too long before I am looking through Bugzilla for something easy to do. As with any learning experience, the definition of what was easy kept changing.

We still encourage you to become involved as BLFS is never really finished. Contributing or just using, we hope you enjoy your BLFS experience.

Larry Lawrence
larry <at> linuxfromscratch.org
BLFS Editor (March 2003–June 2004)

The BLFS project is a natural progression of LFS. Together, these projects provide a unique resource for the Open Source Community. They take the mystery out of the process of building a complete, functional software system from the source code contributed by many talented individuals throughout the world. They truly allow users to implement the slogan "Your distro, your rules."

Our goal is to continue to provide the best resource available that shows you how to integrate many significant Open Source applications. Since these applications are constantly updated and new applications are developed, this book will never be complete. Additionally, there is always room for improvement in explaining the nuances of how to install the different packages. To make these improvements, we need your feedback. I encourage you to participate on the different mailing lists, news groups, and IRC channels to help meet these goals.

Bruce Dubbs
bdubbs <at> linuxfromscratch.org
BLFS Editor (June 2004–December 2006)

My introduction to the [B]LFS project was actually by accident. I was trying to build a GNOME environment using some how-tos and other information I found on the web. A couple of times I ran into some build issues and Googling pulled up some old BLFS mailing list messages. Out for curiosity, I visited the Linux From Scratch web site and shortly thereafter was hooked. I've not used any other Linux distribution for personal use since.

I can't promise anyone will feel the sense of satisfaction I felt after building my first few systems using [B]LFS instructions, but I sincerely hope that your BLFS experience is as rewarding for you as it has been for me.

The BLFS project has grown significantly the last couple of years. There are more package instructions and related dependencies than ever before. The project requires your input for continued success. If you discover that you enjoy building BLFS, please consider helping out in any way you can. BLFS requires hundreds of hours of maintenance to keep it even semi-current. If you feel confident enough in your editing skills, please consider joining the BLFS team. Simply contributing to the mailing list discussions with sound advice and/or providing patches to the book's XML will probably result in you receiving an invitation to join the team.

Randy McMurchy
randy <at> linuxfromscratch.org
BLFS Editor (December 2006–Present)

Foreword

BLFS version 6.3 is the complement to the LFS 6.3 book. It has been 18 months since the last release of BLFS and almost 12 months since LFS-6.3 was released. Though we would like to release BLFS versions as quickly as possible after an LFS release, this version lagged a bit due to Editor inactivity. However, early on in 2008 several new Editors were brought on board which helped stimulate a flurry of activity. Many new packages have been introduced in the 6.3 version, as well as many updates, refinements and additions to the existing packages.

The BLFS book now provides build and configuration instructions for almost 500 packages (many more than that if you want to count each individual package in the autotooled X Window instructions). Some of the new packages introduced in this version are: Dash, ksh, D-Bus bindings, Wireshark (formerly named Ethereal), rxvt-unicode, Gutenprint (formerly name Gimp-Print), Pidgin (formerly name Gaim), GnuTLS (and many of its dependencies), Qt version 4.x, GnuPG version 2.x, and Amarok. Major updates include GNOME-2.18.3 (with several new GNOME packages), KDE-3.5.9, Firefox-2.x, Thunderbird-2.x, and most (if not all) of the mainline server packages. As always, the list of packages that have been upgraded or added as well as configuration and build command changes are annotated in the Change Log.

As always, the main thrust of BLFS development will be to support the changes in the current LFS development book, but we're releasing this version of BLFS so that builders of the stable LFS book can continue on into BLFS with known good instructions that should be 100% compatible to provide a semi current and very stable Linux platform.

Enjoy!

Randy McMurchy
August 24th, 2008

Who Would Want to Read this Book

This book is mainly aimed at those who have built a system based on the LFS book. It will also be useful for those who are using other distributions, but for one reason or another want to manually build software and are in need of some assistance. Note that the material contained in this book, in particular the dependency listings, is based upon

the assumption that you are using a base LFS system with every package listed in the LFS book already installed and configured. BLFS can be used to create a range of diverse systems and so the target audience is probably nearly as wide as that of the LFS book. If you found LFS useful, you should also like this!

Since Release 5.0, the BLFS book version matches the LFS book version. This book may be incompatible with a previous or latter release of the LFS book.

Organization

This book is divided into the following parts.

Part I - Introduction

This part contains information which is essential to the rest of the book.

Part II - Post LFS Configuration and Extra Software

Here we introduce basic configuration and security issues. We also discuss a range of editors, file systems, and shells which aren't covered in the main LFS book.

Part III - General Libraries and Utilities

In this section we cover libraries which are often needed by the rest of the book as well as system utilities. Information on Programming (including recompiling GCC to support its full range of languages) concludes this part.

Part IV - Connecting to a Network

Here we cover how to connect to a network when you aren't using the simple static IP setup given in the main LFS book.

Part V - Basic Networking

Networking libraries and command-line networking tools make up the bulk of this part.

Part VI - Major Servers

Here we deal with setting up mail and other servers (such as SSH, Apache, etc.).

Part VII - X + Window Managers

This part explains how to set up a basic X Window System installation along with some generic X libraries and Window managers.

Part VIII - KDE

For those who want to use the K Desktop Environment or some parts of it, this part covers it.

Part IX - GNOME

GNOME is the main alternative to KDE in the Desktop Environment arena and we cover GNOME-2.18 here.

Part X - X Software

Office programs and graphical web browsers are important to most people. They, along with some generic X software can be found in this part of the book.

Part XI - Multimedia

Here we cover setting multimedia libraries and drivers along with some audio, video and CD-writing programs.

Part XII - Printing, Scanning and Typesetting (PST)

The PST part of the book covers document handling with applications like Ghostscript, CUPS and DocBook to installing teTeX.

Appendices

The Appendices cover information which doesn't belong in the main book; they are mainly there as a reference.

Errata

The software used to create BLFS applications is constantly being updated and enhanced. Security warnings and bug fixes may become available after the BLFS book has been released. To check whether the package versions or instructions in this release of BLFS need any modifications to accommodate security vulnerabilities or other bug fixes, please visit *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/errata/6.3/* before proceeding with your build. You should note any changes shown and apply them to the relevant section of the book as you progress with building the applications in BLFS.

Part I. Introduction

Chapter 1. Welcome to BLFS

The Beyond Linux From Scratch book is designed to carry on from where the LFS book leaves off. But unlike the LFS book, it isn't designed to be followed straight through. Reading the Which sections of the book? part of this chapter should help guide you through the book.

Please read most of this part of the book carefully as it explains quite a few of the conventions used throughout the book.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the following people and organizations for their contributions toward the BLFS and LFS projects:

- All those people listed on the Credits page for submitting patches, instructions and corrections to the book. The former editor would especially like to thank Bruce, Larry and Billy for their enormous inputs to the project.
- Jeff Bauman (former co-editor of the book) for his assistance with getting BLFS off the ground.
- *Gerard Beekmans* <gerard <at> linuxfromscratch.org> for starting and writing the vast majority of the LFS project.
- Robert Briggs for donating the linuxfromscratch.org and linuxfromscratch.com domain names.
- *DREAMWVR.COM* for their ongoing sponsorship by donating various resources to the LFS and related sub projects.
- Bruce Dubbs for donating the anduin package server and his substantial contribution to the purchase of the new quantum server.
- *Garrett LeSage* <garrett <at> linux.com> for creating the LFS banner.
- *Frank Skettino* <bkenoah <at> oswd.org> at *OSWD* for coming up with the initial design of the LFS and BLFS websites.
- *Mark Stone* <mstone <at> linux.com> for donating the original linuxfromscratch.org servers.
- *Jesse Tie-Ten-Quee* <higho <at> linuxfromscratch.org> for answering many questions on IRC, having a great deal of patience and for not killing the former editor for the joke in the original BLFS announcement!
- Countless other people on the various LFS and BLFS mailing lists who are making this book possible by giving their suggestions, testing the book and submitting bug reports.

Credits

Many people have contributed both directly and indirectly to BLFS. This page lists all of those we can think of. We may well have left people out and if you feel this is the case, drop us a line. Many thanks to all of the LFS community for their assistance with this project. If you are in the list and wish to have your email address included, again please drop us a line to randy@linuxfromscratch.org and we'll be happy to add it. We don't include email addresses by default so if you want it included, please state so when you contact us.

Editors

- *Editor:* Randy McMurchy *<randy@linuxfromscratch.org>*

- *Co-Editors:* Robert Daniels, Richard Downing, Bruce Dubbs, Manuel Canales Esparcia, Ag Hatzimanikas, David Jensen, DJ Lucas, Ken Moffet, Dan Nicholson, Alexander Patrakov, Chris Staub, Tushar Teredesai, Thomas Trepl, and Christian Wurst

Text Authors

- Chapter 01. Based on the LFS introductory text by *Gerard Beekmans*, modified by *Mark Hymers* for BLFS.
- Chapter 02: The /usr versus /usr/local debate: *Andrew McMurry*.
- Chapter 02: Going beyond BLFS: *Tushar Teredesai*.
- Chapter 02: Package Management: *Tushar Teredesai*.
- Chapter 02: Automated Building Procedures: *Randy McMurchy*.
- Chapter 02: Locale Related Issues: *Alexander Patrakov* and *Randy McMurchy*.
- Chapter 03: /etc/inputrc: *Chris Lynn*.
- Chapter 03: Customizing your logon & vimrc: *Mark Hymers*.
- Chapter 03: /etc/shells: *Igor Zivkovic*.
- Chapter 03: Random number script *Larry Lawrence*.
- Chapter 03: Creating a Custom Boot Device *Bruce Dubbs*.
- Chapter 03: The Bash Shell Startup Files *James Robertson* revised by *Bruce Dubbs*.
- Chapter 03: Compressed docs *Olivier Peres*.
- Chapter 04: Firewalling: *Henning Rohde* with thanks to *Jeff Bauman*. Revised by *Bruce Dubbs*.
- Chapter 11: Which *Mark Hymers* with many thanks to *Seth Klein* and *Jesse Tie-Ten-Quee*.
- Chapter 25: X Window System Environment: *Bruce Dubbs*.
- Chapter 27: Intro to Window Managers: *Bruce Dubbs*.
- Chapters 28, 29, and 30: KDE: *Bruce Dubbs*.
- Chapters 31 and 32: GNOME: *Larry Lawrence*.

Installation Instruction Authors

- traceroute: *Jeff Bauman*
- ProFTPD and rsync: *Daniel Baumann*
- joe, nano, nmap, slang, w3m and whois: *Timothy Bauscher*
- Fetchmail: *Paul Campbell*
- CDParanoia, mpg123, SDL and XMMS: *Jeroen Coumans*
- Amarok: *Robert Daniels*
- UDFtools, Perl modules (initial version) and Bluefish: *Richard Downing*
- sudo, wireless_tools: *Bruce Dubbs*
- tripwire: *Manfred Glombowski*
- Dash and rxvt-unicode: *Ag Hatzimanikas*

- alsa, cvs, dhcpcd, gpm, hdparm, libjpeg, libmng, libpng, libtiff, giflib, links, lynx, openssl, tcsh, which and zsh: *Mark Hymers*
- ALSA Firmware, ALSA OSS, inetutils, GLib, GTK+, libxml and vim: *James Iwanek*
- db and lcms: *Jeremy Jones* and *Mark Hymers*
- aalib, Alsa, ffmpeg, MPlayer, transcode, xvid and xsane: *Alex Kloss*
- ntp: *Eric Konopka*
- AbiWord, at-spi, ATK, audiofile, avifile, bc, bug-buddy, cdrdao, cdrtools, cpio, curl, dhcp, eog, esound, fcron, fluxbox, gail, galeon, gconf-editor, gdbm, gedit, gimp, GLib2, gmp, gnet, gnome-applets, gnome-desktop, gnome-games, gnome-icon-theme, gnome-libs, gnome-media, gnome-mime-data, gnome-panel, gnome-session, gnome-system-monitor, gnome-terminal, gnome-themes, gnome-utils, gnome-vfs, gnome-user-docs, gnumeric, GTK+2, gtk-doc, gtk-engines, eel, imlib, intltool, lame, libao, libart_lgpl, libbonobo, libbonoboui, libgail-gnome, libglade2, libgnome, libgnomecanvas, libgnomeprint, libgnomeprintui, libgnomeui, libgsf, libgtkhtml, libgtop, libIDL, libogg, librep, librsvg, libvorbis, libwnck, libxml2, libxslt, LPRng, Linux-PAM, metacity, MIT Kerberos 5, MPlayer, mutt, nautilus, OpenJade, OpenSP, OpenSSH, ORBit2, pan, Pango, pcre, pkgconfig, postfix, procmail, Python, QT, rep-gtk, ruby, sawfish, scrollkeeper, sgml-common, sgml-dtd, shadow, startup-notification, unzip, vorbis-tools, vte, wget, XFce, xine, xml-dtd, yelp and zip: *Larry Lawrence*
- Archive::Zip, cracklib, JDK6, ksh, libdrm, libpcap, Mesa, netfs, OpenOffice-2, PPP (update), Samba-3, Subversion, Xorg-7 and xterm: *DJ Lucas*
- ALSA Tools, Apache Ant, cairo, Cyrus-SASL, D-BUS, D-Bus Bindings, DejaGnu, desktop-file-utils, DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets, DocBook-utils, dvd+rw-tools, Evince, Evolution Data Server, Exim (many additions), Expect, FOP, FreeTTS, FriBidi, GC, GCC (rewrite), GMime, gnome-audio, gnome-backgrounds, gnome-menus, gnome-mount, gnome-screensaver, gnome-volume-manager, GNOME Doc Utils, GNOME Keyring Manager, GnuCash (version 2), GnuPG2, GnuTLS, GOffice, Graphviz, GStreamer Base Plug-ins, GStreamer Good Plug-ins, GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins, HAL, Heimdal, HTML Tidy, icon-naming-utils, ISO Codes, JadeTeX, Java Access Bridge, JUnit, K3b, Libassuan, LessTif (rewrite), libexif, libgail-gnome, libgcrypt, libgnomecups, libgnomekbd, libgpg-error, Libidn, Libksba, libmpeg2, libmusicbrainz, libquicktime, mcs, MIT Kerberos V5 (many updates and enhancements), MPlayer (extensive overhaul), NSS, Orca, Other Programming Tools, PDL, Perl Modules, pilot-link, PIN-Entry, Poppler, Pth, PyXML, Samba 3 (many additions), SANE (original instructions by Alex Kloss), Shadow (rewrite), SLIB, Sound Juicer, Stunnel, Subversion Client (many additions), Sysstat, system-tools-backends, Totem, unixODBC, Wireshark and usbutils: *Randy McMurchy*
- aspell, balsa, bind, cvs server, emacs, evolution, exim, expat, GnuCash, gtkhtml, guile, g-wrap, leafnode, lesstif, libesmtp, pine, portmap, PostgreSQL, qpopper, reiserfs, sendmail, slrn, teTeX, tcp-wrappers, and xinetd: *Billy O'Connor*
- Gutenprint (originally named Gimp-Print), libusb, FAAC, FAAD2 and TIN: *Alexander E. Patrakov*
- Screen: *Andreas Pedersen*
- nfs-utils: *Reinhard*
- ESP Ghostscript: *Matt Rogers*
- iptables: *Henning Rohde*
- fontconfig, gcc, seamonkey, nas, openoffice, ispell, mailx (formerly named Nail), ImageMagick, hd2u, tcl, tk and bind-utils: *Tushar Teredesai*
- MySQL: *Jesse Tie-Ten-Quee*
- PHP: *Jeremy Utley*

- Ekiga, Epiphany, FLAC, File Roller, GNOME Magnifier, GNOME Netstatus, GNOME Speech, GOK, Imlib2, LZO, MC, NASM, Nautilus CD Burner, Speex, XScreenSaver, Zenity, compface, freeglut, gcalctool, gucharmap, id3lib, kde-i18n, kdeaccessibility, kdebindings, kdesdk, kdevelop, kdewebdev, libFAME, liba52, libdv, libdvdcss, libdvdread, libmad, libmikmod and libmpeg3: *Igor Zivkovic*

General Acknowledgments

- *Fernando Arbeiza* for doing great quality assurance on Shadow utilizing PAM. The machine access he saved may have been yours.
- *Archaic* for trouble shooting the mozilla section by performing multiple builds and for providing a description of the various mozilla extensions.
- *Miguel Bazdresch* for many suggestions and contributions to the Other Programming Tools section.
- *Gerard Beekmans* for generally putting up with us and for running the whole LFS project.
- *Oliver Brakmann* for developing the dhcpcd patch for FHS compliance.
- *Ian Chilton* for writing the nfs hint.
- *Nathan Coulson* for writing the new network bootscripts.
- *Nathan Coulson*, *DJ Lucas* and *Zack Winkles* for reworking the bootscripts used throughout the book.
- *Jim Harris* for writing the dig-nslookup-host.txt hint on which the bind-utils instructions are based.
- *Lee Harris* for writing the gpm.txt hint on which our gpm instructions are based.
- *Marc Heerdink* for creating patches for tcp_wrappers and portmap and for writing the gpm2.txt hint on which our gpm instruction are based.
- *Mark Hymers* for initiating the BLFS project and writing many of the initial chapters of the book.
- *J_Man* for submitting a gpm-1.19.3.diff file on which our gpm instructions are based.
- *Jeremy Jones* (otherwise known as *mca*) for hacking Makefiles and general assistance.
- *Steffen Knollmann* for revising the JadeTeX instructions to work with teTex-3.0.
- *Eric Konopka* for writing the ntp.txt hint on which the ntp section is based.
- *Scot McPherson* for writing the gnome-1.4.txt hint from which was gathered useful information and for warning us that GNOME Version 2.0 may not be ready to put in the book.
- *Billy O'Connor* for building GNOME 2.0 so many times and being very helpful with his comments on that section.
- *Alexander E. Patrakov* for patches and suggestions to improve the book content, assistance with alsa dev.d helpers, and increasing the l10n awareness.
- *Ted Riley* for writing the Linux-PAM + CrackLib + Shadow hint on which reinstalling Shadow to use PAM is based.
- *Jeremy Byron* and *David Ciecierski* for assisting with, modifying, and testing various OpenOffice-2.0-pre builds and patches.

Which Sections of the Book Do I Want?

Unlike the Linux From Scratch book, BLFS isn't designed to be followed in a linear manner. This is because LFS provides instructions on how to create a base system which is capable of turning into anything from a web server to a multimedia desktop system. BLFS is where we try to guide you in the process of going from the base system to your intended destination. Choice is very much involved.

Everyone who reads the book will want to read certain sections. The Introduction part, which you are currently reading, contains generic information. Especially take note of the information in Chapter 2, Important Information, as this contains comments about how to unpack software, issues related to using different locales and various other aspects which apply throughout the book.

The part on Post LFS Configuration and Extra Software is where most people will want to turn next. This deals with not just configuration but also Security (Chapter 4, Security), File Systems (Chapter 5, File Systems), Editors (Chapter 6, Editors) and Shells (Chapter 7, Shells). Indeed, you may wish to reference certain parts of this chapter (especially the sections on Editors and File Systems) while building your LFS system.

Following these basic items, most people will want to at least browse through the General Libraries and Utilities part of the book. This part contains information on many items which are prerequisites for other sections of the book as well as some items (such as Chapter 12, Programming) which are useful in their own right. Note that you don't have to install all of these libraries and packages found in this part to start with as each BLFS installation procedure tells you which packages it depends upon so you can choose the program you want to install and see what it needs.

Likewise, most people will probably want to look at the Basic Networking part. It deals with connecting to the Internet or your LAN (Chapter 13, Connecting to a Network) using a variety of methods such as DHCP and PPP, and with items such as Networking Libraries (Chapter 14, Networking Libraries) and various basic networking programs and utilities.

Once you have dealt with these basics, you may wish to configure more advanced network services. These are dealt with in the Servers part of the book. Those wanting to build servers should find a good starting point there. Note that this section also contains information on various database packages.

The next parts of the book principally deal with desktop systems. This portion of the book starts with a part talking about X and Window Managers. This part also deals with some generic X-based libraries (Chapter 24, X Libraries). After this, KDE and GNOME are given their own parts which are followed by one on X Software.

The book then moves on to deal with Multimedia packages. Note that many people may want to use the ALSA-1.0.13 instructions from this chapter quite near the start of their BLFS journey; they are placed here simply because it is the most logical place for them.

The final part of the main BLFS book deals with Printing, Scanning and Typesetting. This is useful for most people with desktop systems and even those who are creating mainly server systems will find it useful.

We hope you enjoy using BLFS and find it useful.

Conventions Used in this Book

To make things easy to follow, there are a number of conventions used throughout the book. Following are some examples:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

This form of text is designed to be typed exactly as seen unless otherwise noted in the surrounding text. It is also used to identify references to specific commands.

```
install-info: unknown option
`--dir-file=/mnt/lfs/usr/info/dir'
```

This form of text (fixed width text) is showing screen output, probably a result from issuing a command. It is also used to show filenames such as `/boot/grub/grub.conf`

Emphasis

This form of text is used for several purposes in the book but mainly to emphasize important points or to give examples as to what to type.

http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/

This form of text is used for hypertext links external to the book such as HowTos, download locations, websites, etc.

SeaMonkey-1.1.9

This form of text is used for links internal to the book such as another section describing a different package.

```
cat > $LFS/etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
......
EOF
```

This type of section is used mainly when creating configuration files. The first command (in bold) tells the system to create the file `$LFS/etc/group` from whatever is typed on the following lines until the sequence EOF is encountered. Therefore, this whole section is generally typed as seen.

<REPLACED TEXT>

This form of text is used to encapsulate text that should be modified and is not to be typed as seen, or copy and pasted. Note that the square brackets are not part of the text, but should be substituted for as well.

`root`

This form of text is used to show a specific system user or group reference in the instructions.

Book Version

This is BLFS-BOOK version 6.3 dated August 24th, 2008. This version is intended as the complement to the LFS-6.3 book.

Mirror Sites

The BLFS project has a number of mirrors set up world-wide to make it easier and more convenient for you to access the website. Please visit the *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html* website for the list of current mirrors.

Getting the Source Packages

Within the BLFS instructions, each package has two references for finding the source files for the package—an HTTP link and an FTP link (some packages may only list one of these links). Every effort has been made to ensure that these links are accurate. However, the World Wide Web is in continuous flux. Packages are sometimes moved or updated and the exact URL specified is not always available.

To overcome this problem, the BLFS Team, with the assistance of *Server Beach*, has made an HTTP/FTP site available at *anduin.linuxfromscratch.org*. This site has all the sources of the exact versions of the packages used in BLFS. If you can't find the BLFS package you need, get it there.

We would like to ask a favor, however. Although this is a public resource for you to use, we do not want to abuse it. We have already had one unthinking individual download over 3 GB of data, including multiple copies of the same files that are placed at different locations (via symlinks) to make finding the right package easier. This person clearly did not know what files he needed and downloaded everything. The best place to download files is the site or sites set up by the source code developer. Please try there first.

Change Log

Please note that the Change Log only lists which editor was responsible for putting the changes into SVN; please read the Credits page in Chapter 1 for details on who wrote what.

Current release: 6.3 – August 24th, 2008

Changelog Entries:

- August 24th, 2008
  - [randy] - Fixed a broken URL for the libpcap package.
  - [randy] - Fixed a broken URL for the Libassuan package.
  - [randy] - Fixed a broken URL for the GnuPG2 package.
  - [randy] - Fixed a broken URL for the GnuPG package.
  - [randy] - Fixed a broken URL for the libidn package.
- August 17th, 2008
  - [randy] - Modified the sudo instructions so the Linux-PAM configuration file is correct. Thanks to Jeremy Henty for the report.
- August 15th, 2008
  - [thomas] - Added a command to create a missing test data file in the CrackLib instructions so that 'make test' works.
- August 11th, 2008
  - [randy] - Added some text to the AutoFS instructions pointing out that the wget package must be installed. Thanks to Leonhard Landrock for the report.
  - [randy] - Changed the location of the Stunnel patch due to upstream's removing it. Thanks to Brian Cade for the report.
  - [randy] - Added parameters to the Pin Entry instructions so the configuration process won't fail if the optional dependencies are not installed. Thanks to Brian Cade for the report.
  - [randy] - Fixed broken Thunderbird download URL.
  - [randy] - Fixed broken rsync download URL.
  - [randy] - Fixed broken Whois download URL.
- August 10th, 2008
  - [randy] - Updated the PAR-Dist Perl module to 0.31.

- [randy] - Updated the Text-CSV_XS Perl module to 0.52.

- Aug 1st, 2008
  - [thomas] - Fix net-tools download location.
- July 12th, 2008
  - [ken] - Updated security_fixes patch for poppler-0.5.4.
  - [ken] - Updated security_fixes patch for fetchmail-6.3.8.
  - [ken] - Updated firefox to 2.0.0.15 to fix another batch of vulnerabilities.
- July 9th, 2008
  - [ken] - Updated freetype to 2.3.7 (bugfixes on top of the vulnerability fixes).
  - [ken] - Updated libpng to 1.2.29 (bugfixes on top of the vulnerability fixes).
  - [ken] - Added security patch to libvorbis.
- July 8th, 2008
  - [ken] - Added security patch to pcre.
- June 27th, 2008
  - [dj] - Corrected warning in shadow instructions to add the --without-pam switch instead of replace.
- June 25th, 2008
  - [dj] - Removed Xorg-Data page and replaced with remaining xcursor-themes package.
- June 19th, 2008
  - [dj] - Corrected text surrounding the sample commands Xorg installation.
  - [dj] - Added libXdmcp to Xorg Libraries required dependendcies.
  - [dj] - Accounted for additional path depth in Xorg Libraries patch commands. Reported by Philipp Christian Loewner.
- June 9th, 2008
  - [alexander] - Fixed typos on the PPP page.
- June 6th, 2008
  - [thomas] - Update to new Samba version 3.0.30.
- May 24th, 2008
  - [dj] - Completed removal of xorg proxy packages.
  - [dj] - Fixed pam_xauth.so module name in /etc/pam.s/su. Reported by Guy Dalziel.
- May 16th, 2008
  - [randy] - Modified the akode tarball download URL in the kdemultimedia instructions to a wget-friendly name.
  - [randy] - Added a download URL and a command to install the akode patch for experimental FFmpeg support in the kdemultimedia instructions.
- May 15th, 2008
  - [dnicholson] - Fix the Linux-PAM tarball md5sum and size. Thanks to Toni for the report.

  - [rdaniels] - Added --without-ffmpeg to Akode instructions to prevent compilation errors from building Akode with FFmpeg support.
- May 14th, 2008
  - [randy] - Added a patch to the rxvt-unicode instructions to fix a security vulnerability and changed the download URL to a more consistent location.
- May 12th, 2008
  - [randy] - Released BLFS-6.3-rc1.
  - [dj] - Removed JDK source installation instructions because of unavailable security patches.
- May 10th, 2008
  - [randy] - Fixed broken download URLs in various package instructions.
  - [randy] - Updated various Perl Modules: Business-ISBN-Data-1.17, DateManip-5.54, IO-Zlib-1.09, Text-CSV-1.05 (was Text-CSV_PP), Text-CSV_XS-0.45, version-0.74 and XML-Simple-2.18.
  - [randy] - Updated to ImageMagick-6.3.5-10.
- May 9th, 2008
  - [dnicholson] - Fixed libXfont to work with newer versions of FreeType2.
  - [randy] - Updated to rsync-3.0.2.
  - [dj] - Updated to sudo-1.6.9p15.
  - [dj] - Correted incorrect variable in precompiled JDK instructions.
- May 7th, 2008
  - [dj] - Completed cleanup for /etc/X11 changes and /usr/X11R6 removal.
  - [thomas] - Fix download location of shadow.
- May 6th, 2008
  - [dj] - Removed (commented) more XFree86 related text.
  - [dj] - Changed jdk symlink to use precompiled version and other text cleanups in jdk page.
  - [thomas] - Updated to QT-3.3.8b.
- May 4th, 2008
  - [ken] - Updated firefox to 2.0.0.14.
- May 3rd, 2008
  - [dj] - Commented out remaining text related to XFree86.
- May 1st, 2008
  - [dj] - Corrected location of Xorg config files for FHS compliance.
  - [dj] - Corrected commands for lesstif and xvt-unicode relating to the Xorg config files. Thanks to Alexander Patrakov for finding these.
- April 30th, 2008
  - [randy] - Added missing patch commands to the Heimdal instructions.
- April 26th, 2008

- [randy] - Removed an unnecessary sed command from the Ed instructions.
- April 25th, 2008
  - [dnicholson] - Update to xkeyboard-config-1.2.
- April 23rd, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Updated to mpg123-1.4.2.
  - [bdubbs] - Ensure /etc/X11/app-defaults exists in rxvt-unicode.
  - [bdubbs] - Updated to xine-lib-1.1.12.
- April 22nd, 2008
  - [dnicholson] - Fix multiple security vulnerabilities in xorg-server, libXfont and xfs for Xorg-7.2.
- April 21st, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Update to seamonkey 1.1.9.
  - [dnicholson] - Bug fixes and automatic compression support from Lars Bamberger for the compressdoc script.
- April 20th, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Update to Tripwire-2.4.1.2.
- April 14th, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Add 2nd security patch to unzip. Also moved locale patch to BLFS repository.
  - [bdubbs] - Add optional dependencies to autofs.
- April 13th, 2008
  - [ken] - Update the cups security_fixes patch.
- April 11th, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Updated to dhcp-3.0.6.
  - [randy] - Added a comment to the Tcsh page mentioning that one of the tests in the testsuite is known to fail.
  - [alexander] - Removed the obsolete libxml1 library.
- April 10th, 2008
  - [randy] - Updated to Whois-4.7.26.
- April 9th, 2008
  - [randy] - Updated to Tk-8.4.18.
  - [randy] - Updated to Tcl-8.4.18.
  - [dj] - Updated OpenOffice instructions with changes suggested by Randy McMurchy and Chris Staub.
  - [dj] - Corrected OpenOffice build failure when GMime is installed. Thanks to Alessandro Alocci for tracking down the cause of the build failure.
  - [randy] - Clarified the GMP documentation installation.
- April 6th, 2008
  - [ag] - Updated to zsh-4.3.6.
- April 5th, 2008
  - [ag] - Added a command to regenerate the tags file in vim when updating the runtime files.

    - [ag] - Added a sed to the ed instructions to replace with symbolic links the hard links to red and its man page.
- April 4th, 2008
    - [richard] - updated to a2ps-4.14.
- April 3rd, 2008
    - [cwurst] - Changed download location of gimp-help. Fixes #2503.
- April 2nd, 2008
    - [randy] - Updated to Which-2.19.
- April 1st, 2008
    - [ken] - Updated xine-lib to 1.1.11.1.
    - [thomas] - Updates on adding users to groups. Avoid destroying group assignments in usermod commands without -a option
    - [richard] - Added gperf-3.0.3 to General Utilities. Required for a2ps-4.14.
- March 31st, 2008
    - [rdaniels] - Updated dependencies for all KDE packages.
    - [richard] - Commented Dillo-0.8.5 out of the book.
    - [ken] - Added patch for xpdf to fix vulnerabilities.
    - [ken] - Updated to gnumeric-1.8.2.
- March 28th, 2008
    - [ken] - Updated to cups-1.2.12 with a patch for the vulnerabilities.
    - [ken] - Updated a patch to fix vulnerabilities in poppler-0.5.4.
- March 27th, 2008
    - [ken] - Updated to firefox-2.0.0.13.
    - [rdaniels] - Added parameters to xine-lib and xine-ui instructions to place documentation in versioned directories.
    - [richard] - Updated to Bluefish-1.0.7.
- March 26th, 2008
    - [bdubbs] - Expanded the discussion on autofs configuration.
    - [cwurst] - Added build instructions for UnRar. Fixes #2345.
    - [ag] - Added a sed to Tcl/Tk instructions. Fixes #2487.
    - [randy] - Updated to Stunnel-4.21.
    - [randy] - Added a parameter to the libgnome configure command to account for ESounD may not be installed.
- March 25th, 2008
    - [randy] - Added a patch to the ESP Ghostscript instructions to fix a buffer overflow vulnerability. Thanks to Alexander for finding it.
    - [randy] - Modified a documentation installation command in the Python instructions so ownership of installed files is correct.
- March 24th, 2008

- [randy] - Added a note to the Berkeley DB instructions about the JDK-6 and GMime uudecode conflict.
- [dj] - Added a caution to the xfs-progs page and pointed the download location to the anduin server.

- March 23rd, 2008
  - [Chris] - Added kernel configuration information to CUPS page. Fixes ticket #2430.
  - [dj] - Updated to xfs-progs-2.9.7.
- March 22nd, 2008
  - [dj] - Updated to Apache httpd-2.2.8.
  - [randy] - Updated to SeaMonkey-1.1.8.
  - [dj] - Added enable-tlsext option for SNI to the OpenSSL command explanations section.
  - [randy] - Added the libedit package as a dependency of OpenSSH which provides sftp command-line history.
  - [randy] - Updated to rsync-3.0.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to Heimdal-1.1. Removed the Heimdal-Cracklib patches from both packages as Heimdal has been converted to use Cracklib differently. Created a patch to change the names of some installed files so they don't conflict with the E2fsprogs package.
- March 20th, 2008
  - [thomas] - Added page in chapter 16 about NFS client tools. Upgrade to nfs-utils-1.1.2 and change the download location.
- March 18th, 2008
  - [alexander] - Removed WvDial, WvStreams and RP-PPPoE, as alternative instructions are available on the PPP page. Moved the remaining packages from the Connecting to a Network part to a chapter with the same name in the Basic Networking part.
- March 17th, 2008
  - [randy] - Updated to Python-2.5.2.
  - [alexander] - Removed xfsprogs-2.9.6, as they are incompatible with the LFS-6.3 kernel.
  - [alexander] - Updated MCS to version 0.7.0.
  - [alexander] - Added Mowgli-0.6.1.
- March 16th, 2008
  - [ken] - Corrected the download locations for goffice.
  - [ag] - Added header caching support in mutt. Added qdbm as optional dependency.
  - [alexander] - Fixed URL for Audacious third-party plugins.
  - [alexander] - Noted that mpeg4ip is a dead project.
- March 15th, 2008
  - [randy] - Updated GNOME Games to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update. This completes all the current GNOME packages currently in the book.
  - [alexander] - Added PPPoE configuration instructions to the PPP page.
  - [randy] - Updated Ekiga to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.
- March 14th, 2008

- [ken] - Updated to gnucash-2.2.4.
- [randy] - Updated Epiphany to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.
- [randy] - Updated File Roller, gcalctool, GNOME Keyring Manager, GNOME Netstatus and GNOME System Monitor to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.

- March 13th, 2008
  - [randy] - Removed (commented out) the Galeon package as it requires an older version of a Gecko engine than what is in the book. Currently, it fails to build. Will add it back to the book when/if it supports modern Gecko.
  - [randy] - Updated to Vorbis Tools-1.2.0.
  - [rdaniels] - Updated to xine-ui-0.99.5. Fixed ftp link for xine-lib.
  - [rdaniels] - Updated to xine-lib-1.1.10.1. Removed obsolete note from xine-lib page regarding --with-xv-path.
- March 12th, 2008
  - [dnicholson] - Add pidfile directive to ntp.conf.
  - [rdaniels] - Updated to gmp-4.2.2.
  - [randy] - Updated to libgtkhtml-2.11.1.
  - [randy] - Updated the Heimdal instructions to preserve the mk_cmds script from the e2fsprogs package. Thanks DJ.
  - [randy] - Updated to S-Lang-2.1.3.
  - [randy] - Updated the SLIB download URL.
  - [alexander] - Added dialup and GPRS configuration instructions to the PPP page.
  - [dj] - Updated to OpenLDAP-2.3.39.
  - [dj] - Updated to Postfix-2.5.1.
  - [rdaniels] - Updated to Nano-2.0.7.
- March 11th, 2008
  - [alexander] - Updated to Tin-1.8.3.
  - [alexander] - Mentioned the locale issue with the built-in editor in Lynx, and made cookies persistent.
  - [alexander] - Changed Lynx download URL in order to avoid MD5 sum changes in the future.
  - [alexander] - Reworded explanations and verified dependencies on the Links page.
  - [randy] - Updated to paps-0.6.8.
  - [randy] - Removed an obsolete sed command from the GNOME Doc Utils instructions.
  - [rdaniels] - Updated to K3b-1.0.4.
  - [rdaniels] - Updated to KOffice-1.6.3. Changed dependency from PostgreSQL to libpqxx. Use kde-config to set --prefix.
- March 10th, 2008
  - [randy] - Updated the Enigmail download URLs to proper locations in the Thunderbird and Seamonkey instructions.
  - [randy] - Updated to Thunderbird-2.0.0.12 with Enigmail-0.95.6.

- [ken] - Add missing goffice dependency.
- [randy] - Updated to libxslt-1.1.22.
- [rdaniels] - Updated to KDE-3.5.9.

- March 9th, 2008
  - [ken] - Updated to gnumeric-1.8.1, with goffice-0.6.1, libgsf-1.14.7, and warning that gnucash-2.2.0 needs an older version of goffice.
  - [dj] - Updated to gamin-0.1.9.
  - [ken] - Updated to firefox-2.0.0.12.
  - [ken] - Updated to cairo-1.4.14.
  - [dj] - Updated to ksh-2008-02-02.
  - [dj] - Added iproute2 patch for bind, corrected L.ROOT-SERVERS.NET IP address, and added -r /dev/urandom to rdnc-confgen command.
  - [randy] - Updated to libxml2-2.6.31.
  - [dj] - Updated to JDK-6u5 and added warning about trailing JRL releases and security vulnerabilities.
- March 8th, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Udated to autofs-5.0.3. Expanded explanation of the use of autofs and created a procedure to automatically download and apply all patches.
  - [ag] - Added a patch and a configuration item to fix the UTF-8 related issues in Links. Thanks to Alexander Patrakov for the suggestions.
  - [bdubbs] - Fixed problem with netfs bootscript boot procedure.
  - [randy] - Updated to Balsa-2.3.22.
  - [thomas] - Updated to portmap-6.0 and nfs-utils-1.1.1
- March 7th, 2008
  - [ag] - Updated to pcre-7.6. Added the --enable-pcregrep-libbz2 and --enable-pcregrep-libz switches. Added in command explanations the --enable-unicode-properties switch. Added patch to fix ABI breakage.
  - [randy] - Added new package GnuPG-2.0.8.
  - [bdubbs] - Fixed autofs bootscript.
  - [rdaniels] - Added new package Amarok-1.4.8.
- March 6th, 2008
  - [bdubbs] - Added Qt4.
- March 5th, 2008
  - [ag] - Updated to zsh-4.3.5. Added libcap as an optional dependency and enabled the --bindir=/bin switch.
- March 4th, 2008
  - [dj] - Updated broken cracklib-heimdal patch.
- March 3rd, 2008
  - [ken] - Updated to libpng-1.2.24, thanks to Hendrik Hoeth.
- March 2nd, 2008

    - [ag] - Fixed two broken links in MPlayer page. Reported by habiloid.
- February 26th, 2008
    - [ag] - Updated to links-2.1pre33. Enables graphics support by default.
- February 25th, 2008
    - [tushar] - Add a note about LDFLAGS for BBLFS section.
    - [ag] - Added a switch to the OpenSSH instructions to set the default path for xauth.
- February 24th, 2008
    - [ag] - Updated vim with the latest upstream patches. Added a command to update the runtime files.
    - [dj] - Updated to Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0.
- February 22nd, 2008
    - [dj] - Updated to cracklib-2.8.12.
- February 21st, 2008
    - [dj] - Updated to xfsprogs-2.9.6.
- February 19th, 2008
    - [dj] - Added note about OpenSSH testsuite failures.
- February 13th, 2008
    - [dj] - Updated to openssh-4.7p1.
    - [dj] - Updated to whois-4.7.24 (Christian Wurst).
- February 11th, 2008
    - [ag] - Updated to rxvt-unicode-9.02. Added libAfterImage as an optional dependency.
    - [dj] - Updated to openssl-0.9.8g.
- February 6th, 2008
    - [dj] - Updated to sudo-1.6.9p12.
- February 5th, 2008
    - [bdubbs] - Removed XFree86.
- January 21st, 2008
    - [randy] - Updated to Libassuan-1.0.4.
- January 20th, 2008
    - [alexander] - Configured the Backspace key in xterm, updated program descriptions, updated xterm to version 231.
- January 19th, 2008
    - [alexander] - Added FAAC and FAAD2.
- January 10th, 2008
    - [randy] - Corrected a chmod command in the BIND instructions.
- December 29th, 2007
    - [dj] - Added --without-pam switch to OpenOffice installation instructions. Reported by Nathan Coulson.

- December 28th, 2007
  - [ag] - Added a documentation link to the procmail page.
- December 22nd, 2007
  - [ag] - Updated to Ruby-1.8.6-p111.
- December 21st, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Updated the bootscripts tarball to include fixes for dhcp, gdm, gpm, hal, ntp, dbus and samba.
  - [alexander] - Updated the text about default mount options on the HAL page.
- December 19th, 2007
  - [dj] - Updated to OpenOffice-2.3.1.
- December 17th, 2007
  - [alexander] - Dropped Imlib-1.9.15.
  - [dj] - Updated to JDK-6 Update 3.
- December 16th, 2007
  - [alexander] - Moved the URI Perl module under a separate heading, to simplify cross-references.
- December 15th, 2007
  - [ag] - Updated to XFS 2.9.4. Thanks to Christian Wurst for his patch.
- December 14th, 2007
  - [ag] - Updated to Mutt-1.5.17. Added command to generate the manual in PDF format.
- December 13th, 2007
  - [ag] - Fixed Ruby download link.
  - [ag] - Updated to Flac-1.2.1.
- December 7th, 2007
  - [alexander] - Updated to Xfce-4.4.2 and commented it out.
- November 22nd, 2007
  - [ag] - Fixed the download link to rxvt-unicode.
  - [ag] - Updated to Compface 2.5.2.
- November 17th, 2007
  - [ag] - Fixed a broken link to the Python documentation. Reported by Moody.
  - [ag] - Added a switch in the 'Command Explanations' section of the Vorbis Tools page that allows ogg123 to be built without cURL. Reported by laxy. Fixes #2413.
- November 5th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Really fix luit to find the locale.alias file. Caught by laxy. Fixes #2414.
- November 4th, 2007
  - [ag] - Updated to rxvt-unicode-8.4.
  - [ag] - Updated to libvorbis-1.2.0.
- November 2nd, 2007

- [dnicholson] - Fix luit to find the locale.alias file. Fixes #2393.
- [dnicholson] - Updated to Nano-2.0.6.

- November 1st, 2007
  - [ag] - Updated to ed-0.8.
  - [ag] - Updated to Fcron-3.0.3.
- October 16th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Heimdal-0.8.1.
  - [randy] - Modified the 'Configuring for Adding Users' page to reflect that the /etc/default/useradd file is now created in LFS. Thanks to Chris Staub for the suggestion.
  - [randy] - Fixed numerous typos and ommisions, along with several corrections by applying patches from Chris Staub. Thanks, Chris.
  - [randy] - Updated the Evince instructions to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.
- September 22nd, 2007
  - [randy] - Fixed an incorrect installation command in the XSL Stylesheets instructions, thanks to Frank Ianella for pointing it out.
- September 12th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated the EOG instructions to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.
- September 11, 2007
  - [randy] - Added a note to the Totem instructions explaining that the GStreamer backend will not play DVDs properly, and you can use the Xine Libraries backend instead.
- September 10th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added a more accurate explanation of the GConf dependency in the GStreamer Good Plugins instructions.
- September 9th, 2007
  - [manuel] - Updated the internal XSL Stylesheets to 1.73.2.
- September 7th, 2007
  - [randy] - Changed the chmod command in the OpenLDAP instructions to use the 'readlink' command to find out the names of the shared libraries.
- September 6th, 2007
  - [randy] - Modified the Heimdal instructions which move the libraries into /lib to use the 'readlink' command to create the symlinks so that the instructions are not version specific.
- September 5th, 2007
  - [randy] - Modified the Linux-PAM instructions to install the libraries into /lib and then use the 'readlink' command to create the symlinks so that the instructions are not version specific.
- September 4th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Removed an unnecessary command in the Cyrus SASL instructions.
- September 2nd, 2007

- [dnicholson] - Updated to Cyrus SASL-2.1.22.

- August 22nd, 2007
  - [dj] - Updated to dhcpcd-3.0.19.
- August 21st, 2007
  - [djensen] - Removed a Makefile sed that disabled autoconf in XFS-2.9.3. It will be needed with some libtool versions.
- August 20th , 2007
  - [djensen] - Updated to XFS-2.9.3.
  - [dj] - Added GCC-3.3.6 as a runtime dependency for the binary JDK.
- August 19th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added new package PIN-Entry-0.7.3.
- August 18th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to DocBook XSL Stylesheets-1.71.1.
  - [randy] - Added new package Libksba-1.0.2.
- August 17th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Transcode-1.0.3.
  - [randy] - Applied a patch contributed by Jeremy Henty that updated the book to Emacs-22.1. Thanks Jeremy!
  - [randy] - Updated to libquicktime-1.0.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to libmpeg3-1.7.
  - [dj] - Updated to OpenOffice-2.2.1
- August 16th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added new package GnuTLS-1.6.3.
  - [manuel] - Added upstream asmrules_fix_20061231.diff patch to Mplayer-1.0rc1.
  - [randy] - Added new package Libgcrypt-1.2.4.
  - [randy] - Added new package Libgpg-error-1.5.
  - [randy] - Added new package Libassuan-1.0.2.
  - [randy] - Added new package Pth-2.0.7.
- August 15th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated Gaim to Pidgin-2.1.0.
  - [randy] - Removed an unneeded sed command from the RP-PPPoE instructions.
  - [randy] - Updated to Audacious-1.3.2.
- August 14th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added new package mcs-0.4.1 to support recent versions of Audacious.
  - [randy] - Updated to Hdparm-7.7.
  - [randy] - Updated to Hd2u-1.0.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to Exim-4.67.

- August 13th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Cdrdao-1.2.2.
  - [randy] - Updated the Sound Juicer instructions to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.
  - [randy] - Updated to libmusicbrainz-2.1.5.
- August 12th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Added the Python Modules page with Gnome-Python and its dependencies.
  - [randy] - Added instructions to create an X11R6 symlink to the X Windows Components page.
  - [dj] - Updated to JDK-6 Update 2.
- August 11th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated the GConf Editor instructions to reflect the GNOME-2.18.3 update.
  - [randy] - Added a note to the FreeGlut instructions saying you don't need to install it if you installed the GLUT library during a MesaLib installation.
  - [randy] - Updated to MPlayer-1.0rc1.
  - [randy] - Updated to FFmpeg-svn_20070606 (svn checkout).
- August 9th, 2007
  - [randy] - Replaced the obsolete Gimp-Print package with Gutenprint-5.0.1.
- August 8th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to XChat-2.8.4.
  - [randy] - Updated all the GNOME Assistive Technology (Accessibility) packages to GNOME-2.18 versions, including updating Gnome Speech to 0.4.16.
  - [randy] - Added new package Orca-2.18.1 as a replacement for the obsolete Gnopernicus package.
  - [randy] - Replaced all instances of the Gtk+-2 library directory pathname with an entity.
  - [randy] - Replaced all instances of the Python library directory pathname with an entity.
  - [randy] - Simplified some commands using conditionals in various package instructions.
  - [randy] - Added a parameter to the configure command in the GNOME Session instructions so that the Assistive Technology (Accessibility) packages work properly.
- August 7th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added notes to the AbiWord and Gnumeric instructions that the versions of libgda/libgnomedb will conflict with each other.
  - [randy] - Minor modifications to the Gnumeric build instructions.
  - [randy] - Updated to AbiWord-2.4.6.
- August 6th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to FriBidi-0.10.8.
- August 5th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Finance::Quote-1.13.
  - [dnicholson] - Updated to Thunderbird-2.0.0.6 with Enigmail-0.95.3.
  - [dnicholson] - Updated to Firefox-2.0.0.6.

    - [randy] - Updated to GnuCash-2.2.0.
- August 3rd, 2007
    - [ag] - Updated to Fetchmail-6.3.8.
    - [randy] - Updated to GOffice-0.4.2.
    - [randy] - Updated to SLIB-3a4.
    - [randy] - Updated to Guile-1.8.2. This breaks the GnuCash package instructions and since no other BLFS packages depend on the GNOME-1.4 libraries, the entire GNOME-1.4 section of the book has been commented out.
- August 2nd, 2007
    - [ag] - Added the rxvt-unicode terminal emulator package.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to NcFTP-3.2.1.
    - [randy] - Updated to gedit-2.18.2.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to Iptables-1.3.8.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated the libusb udev rule for raw USB device ownership to work with Linux-2.6.22.
- August 1st, 2007
    - [ag] - Updated to ReiserFS-3.6.20.
- July 31st, 2007
    - [ag] - Removed obsolete text in the X Window System Components page.
    - [ag] - Updated to Dash-0.5.4. Fixes Trac ticket #2366.
- July 30th, 2007
    - [ag] - Removed the extra-prompt.sh script and avoid exporting the PS1 variable. Thanks to David Jensen for the suggestions and to Craig Jackson for the report.
    - [ag] - Added a warning in the mutt instructions about linking mutt against GnuTLS.
    - [ag] - Added a consolidated patch to vim instructions, with fixes from upstream. Syncing with LFS.
- July 27th, 2007
    - [randy] - Added the D-Bus GLib bindings as a required dependency of GNOME VFS and removed it from other packages where it became redundant.
    - [randy] - Updated to XSane-0.994.
    - [randy] - Updated to ksh-2007-06-28.
    - [randy] - Updated Perl Modules: Finance::QuoteHist-1.11, HTML::TableExtract-2.10.
    - [randy] - Added a patch to the Avifile instructions to correct a build problem when using GCC-4.1.x. Thanks to Robert Connolly for submitting the patch.
- July 26th, 2007
    - [randy] - Updated to rsync-2.6.9.
    - [randy] - Updated some GNOME utility packages: GDM-2.18.3, GNOME Utilities-2.18.1, gnome-screensaver-2.18.2, zenity-2.18.2.
    - [randy] - Updated to XScreenSaver-5.03.

- [randy] - Updated several package's broken download URLs.
- [randy] - Updated to gnome-volume-manager-2.17.0.

- July 25th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Evolution-2.10.3.
  - [randy] - Updated to Xine Libraries-1.1.7.
  - [randy] - Updated some of the GNOME-2 additional packages ('Utilities') to GNOME-2.18.3: bug-buddy-2.18.1, GNOME Media-2.18.0, gnome-mount-0.6, gucharmap-1.10.0, Nautilus CD Burner-2.18.2, Totem-2.18.2. Other additional packages will be updated individually as soon as possible.
  - [randy] - Updated GNOME-2 additional packages ('Libraries') to GNOME-2.18.3.
  - [randy] - Updated core GNOME-2 to version 2.18.3. Separated the core packages into 'Platform' and 'Desktop' sections.
  - [randy] - Updated to ImageMagick-6.3.5-3.
  - [randy] - Updated Perl Modules: Archive-Tar-1.32, Archive-Zip1.20, Business-ISBN-Data-1.14, Compress-Raw-Zlib-2.005, Compress-Zlib-2.005, Crypt-SSLeay-0.56, Digest-SHA-5.45, ExtUtils-CBuilder-0.19, ExtUtils-ParseXS-2.18, IO-Compress-Base-2.005, Compress-Raw-Bzip2-2.005, IO-Compress-Bzip2-2.005, IO-Compress-Zlib-2.005, IO-Zlib-1.06, LWP5.806, Module-Build-0.2808, Module-Corelist-2.12, Module-Signature-0.55, PAR-Dist-0.24, Pod-Readme-0.09, Test-Base-0.54, Test-Prereq-1.033, version-0.7203, YAML-0.65.
- July 24th, 2007
  - [bdubbs] - Updated to Bind-9.4.1-P1.
  - [randy] - Updated to SANE Backends-1.0.18.
  - [dj] - Added Java header path to CPPFLAGS for Graphviz.
- July 22nd, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to XviD-1.1.3.
  - [randy] - Updated to ISO Codes-1.2.
  - [randy] - Updated to Module::Info-0.31.
- July 21st, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Metacity-2.18.5
  - [randy] - Added new package libgnomekbd-2.18.2 to the GNOME Core packages section.
  - [dnicholson] - Reworked Xorg download links and md5sum files. Added the continue parameter for the large wget downloads.
  - [randy] - Added a sed and a patch to allow Vorbis-Tools to link against cURL and FLAC respectively. Fixes Trac ticket #2240. Patch to update the book contributed by Ag Hatzimanikas.
  - [randy] - Updated to libxklavier-3.2.
  - [randy] - Updated to W3m-0.5.2.
- July 20th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to GMime-2.2.10.
  - [randy] - Updated to libwnck-2.18.3.

- [randy] - Updated to GIMP-2.2.17 and GIMP-Help-0.12. No changes have been made yet to support Gutenprint instead of the deprecated Gimp-Print. Those changes will follow after Gutenprint is in the book.
- [randy] - Updated to libgsf-1.14.5.
- [randy] - Updated to XML-SAX-0.16.

- July 19th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins-0.10.6.
  - [randy] - Updated to libmpeg2-0.4.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to libdvdread-0.9.7.
  - [randy] - Added a note to the libdvdcss instructions about an issue that may occur with the LaTeX installation.
  - [randy] - Updated to LAME-3.97.
  - [randy] - Updated to libao-0.8.8.
  - [randy] - Updated to FLAC-1.1.4.
  - [randy] - Updated to GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6.
  - [randy] - Updated to Imlib2-1.4.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to libdv-1.0.0.
- July 18th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13.
  - [randy] - Updated to desktop-file-utils-0.13.
  - [randy] - Updated to shared-mime-info-0.21.
  - [randy] - Updated to GStreamer-0.10.13.
  - [randy] - Added an additional sed to the LPRng instructions to correct some bad syntax.
  - [randy] - Updated to pilot-link-0.12.2.
  - [randy] - Updated to Nmap-4.20.
- July 17th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Poppler-0.5.4.
  - [randy] - Updated to Wireshark-0.99.6 (formerly named Ethereal).
  - [randy] - Updated to libpcap-0.9.6.
  - [randy] - Updated to Samba-3.0.25b.
  - [randy] - Updated to Subversion-1.4.4.
- July 16th, 2007
  - [randy] - Clarified the Apache HTTPD dependencies and added a note how to build APR-util with Berkeley DB support.
  - [randy] - Updated to JUnit-4.3.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to dvd+rw-tools-7.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to Xpdf-3.02.
- July 15th, 2007

- [randy] - Updated to LessTif-0.95.0.
- [randy] - Updated to NSS-3.11.7 (includes NSPR-4.6.7).
- [randy] - Updated to Firefox-2.0.0.4.
- [randy] - Updated to Thunderbird-2.0.0.4.

- July 14th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to HAL-0.5.9.1 and HAL Hardware Info-20070618.
  - [randy] - Added the Qt3 bindings to the D-Bus Bindings page.
- July 12th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Tcsh-6.15.00.
- July 11th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to cpio-2.9.
  - [randy] - Updated to Sendmail-8.14.1.
- July 10th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Added information for running the D-Bus testsuite.
  - [randy] - Updated the K3b and KDE Base instructions to specify that the D-Bus Qt3 Bindings are required if HAL functionality is desired.
  - [dnicholson] - Added libxcb and its dependencies xcb-proto and libpthread-stubs to the book. Enabled it as a dependency for the Xorg-7 Libraries.
  - [randy] - Modified the D-Bus dependency in several packages to account for the new D-Bus core and bindings separation.
  - [randy] - Added the Python Bindings to the D-Bus Bindings page.
- July 9th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Updated D-Bus Core to 1.0.2.
  - [randy] - Created a D-Bus Bindings page and added the GLib bindings. Other D-Bus bindings will be added to the same page as they are developed.
- July 8th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Fix a bad commit breaking Xorg-7 libX11 in r6797.
  - [dnicholson] - Applied patchlevel updates for Xorg-7.2 packages.
  - [randy] - Updated to CUPS-1.2.11.
  - [randy] - Updated to PHP-5.2.3.
  - [randy] - Updated to libexif-0.6.16.
  - [randy] - Updated to libglade-2.6.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to cURL-7.16.3.
  - [randy] - Updated to Libidn-0.6.14.
- July 7th, 2007
  - [manuel] - Updated book rendering framework to use the new LFS-XSL stylesheets.
- July 6th, 2007

- [randy] - Updated to PostgreSQL-8.2.4.
- [randy] - Downgraded OpenLDAP to the stable 2.3.32 version as the download page now properly reflects the versions.

- July 5th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to MySQL-5.0.41.
  - [randy] - Updated Tcl and Tk to 8.4.15.
- July 4th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to libxslt-1.1.21.
  - [dj] - Modified Linux-PAM configuration to use cracklib defaults.
- July 3rd, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to libxml2-2.6.29.
  - [randy] - Updated to Python-2.5.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to Shadow-4.0.18.1, which is the version used in LFS. Also modified the /etc/pam.d/login file as suggested by Jonathan Oksman to strengthen the login security.
  - [dnicholson] - Fixed an incorrect path for the MesaLib drivers. Reported by Alexander Patrakov.
- July 2nd, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Whois-4.7.21.
  - [randy] - Updated to Expat-2.0.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to S-Lang-2.1.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to PCRE-7.2.
  - [randy] - Updated to libpng-1.2.18.
  - [randy] - Updated to pkg-config-0.22.
- July 1st, 2007
  - [randy] - Incremented the date of the bootscript entity so a new bootscript tarball will be created (to reflect the changes made to the bootscripts on 20070620).
- June 30th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to GTK+-2.10.13.
  - [randy] - Updated to Pango-1.16.4.
  - [randy] - Updated to cairo-1.4.10.
  - [randy] - Updated Inetutils MD5sum as upstream released a new tarball.
  - [randy] - Updated to GLib-2.12.12.
- June 20th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Fixed app-defaults references in xterm. Closes #2362. Reported by laxy.
  - [dnicholson] - Updated to dhcpcd-3.0.17.
- June 15th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Mutt cleanups from Alexander Patrakov and Ag Hatzim.

    - [dnicholson] - Fixed Firefox and Thunderbird to ensure that libX11 and libXrender are found.
- June 13th, 2007
    - [dj] - Added ksh-2007-03-28
- June 12th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to Mutt-1.5.16
- June 7th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Changed the Qt /usr install with symlinks to the bin, include and lib directories in /usr/share/qt.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to NTP-4.2.4p0.
    - [dnicholson] - Fixed a broken GLib URL. Reported by Ken Moffat.
    - [dnicholson] - Removed the optional ctypes dependency from libmusicbrainz since it's included in Python-2.5. Thanks to bambi for the report.
    - [dnicholson] - Fixed some errors on the X Window System Components page. Reported by Spinal.
- May 31st, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Changed the xkb output directory for Xorg-Server to match that from XKeyboardConfig. Reported by DJ Lucas.
    - [dnicholson] - Streamlined the commands for each Xorg section.
    - [dnicholson] - Commented out the sun video drivers and deprecated modules in the Xorg wget lists and changed the download commands to support the comments.
- May 30th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Fixed a broken link on the XFree86 page. Reported by Roland Puntaier.
    - [dnicholson] - Added a missing expat dependency on the MesaLib page. Reported by DJ Lucas.
- May 28th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Changed the XKeyboardConfig intltool dependency to optional and added a required XML::Parser dependency.
- May 26th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Removed the /opt globbing from the Bash Shell Startup Files since entries in /opt are handled separately.
- May 25th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to libdrm-2.3.0.
    - [dnicholson] - Added the XKeyboardConfig package, which replaces xkbdata for Xorg-7.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to MesaLib-6.5.2.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to Xorg-7.2.
- May 24th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Various changes were applied to the XFree86 page.
    - [dnicholson] - Added a version number to the Xorg md5sums file.
    - [dnicholson] - Revert a mistaken version update to the xf86-input-elographics driver.
    - [dnicholson] - Removed unnecessary commands for the imake and xorg-cf-files packages.

    - [dnicholson] - Removed an unnecessary parameter for the xorg-server package.
- May 23rd, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Removed the unneeded Glibc build fix for XFree86.
- May 19th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Fix the installation of the mail extensions to go to the correct directory in Thunderbird.
- May 18th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to Thunderbird-2.0.0.0 with Enigmail-0.95.0.
- May 13th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to xterm-225 and corrected configure settings. Thanks to kratz00 and fix.
    - [bdubbs] - Updated to vim-7.1.
- May 5th, 2007
    - [bdubbs] - Corrected md5sum for libdrm-2.0.1.
    - [bdubbs] - Updated to xine-lib-1.1.6.
    - [bdubbs] - Updated to Seamonkey-1.1.1.
- April 29th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to Fontconfig-2.4.2. Fixes ticket #2134.
- April 27th, 2007
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to Firefox-2.0.0.3. Fixes ticket #2218.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to HAL-0.5.9 with hal-info-20070425. Fixes ticket #2213.
    - [dnicholson] - Updated to FreeType-2.3.4. Fixes ticket #1988.
- April 26th, 2007
    - [randy] - Updated to GnuPG-1.4.7.
- April 25th, 2007
    - [bdubbs] - Added a security patch for Qt and updated description of MySql options for Qt.
    - [alexander] - Applied cpio-2.7 upstream fixes.
- April 21st, 2007
    - [bdubbs] - Expanded note on building database support into qt.
- April 20th, 2007
    - [randy] - Updated to Graphviz-2.12.
    - [randy] - Updated to Doxygen-1.5.2.
- April 19th, 2007
    - [randy] - Updated to unixODBC-2.2.12.
    - [randy] - Updated to libsoup-2.2.100.
    - [randy] - Updated to startup-notification-0.9.
    - [randy] - Updated to GOffice-0.2.2.
    - [randy] - Updated to ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4.

- April 18th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added additional files to the chmod command in the S-Lang instructions.
  - [randy] - Added a note to run some commands in the OpenSSH instructions as the root user. Thanks to ghylton for the report.
  - [randy] - Updated to libgsf-1.14.3.
- April 17th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added new Perl Modules to support icon-naming-utils: Tie::IxHash, XML::LibXML, XML::NamespaceSupport, XML::SAX, XML::SAX::Expat and XML::Simple
  - [randy] - Added new package icon-naming-utils-0.8.2 (required by the GNOME Icon Theme package).
- April 16th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to EsounD-0.2.37.
  - [randy] - Updated the PyGTK dependencies in the HAL instructions.
- April 15th, 2007
  - [djensen] - Updated to librsvg-2.16.1.
  - [djensen] - Updated to shared-mime-info-0.20.
  - [randy] - Updated to Qt-3.3.8.
  - [randy] - Updated to NAS-1.9.
- April 14th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Samba-3.0.24.
- April 13th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Gamin-0.1.8.
  - [randy] - Updated to desktop-file-utils-0.12.
- April 10th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to little cms-1.16.
  - [randy] - Added the Utah Raster Toolkit as an optional dependency of giflib.
- April 9th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Ruby-1.8.6.
  - [randy] - Updated to libart_lgpl-2.3.19.
- April 4th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated the XML and stylesheets to use the 4.5 version of DocBook XML DTD.
- March 31st, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to PHP-5.2.1.
  - [randy] - Removed the Ash package as it has been effectively replaced by the Dash package.
- March 30th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to hicolor-icon-theme-0.10.
  - [randy] - Updated to libpcap-0.9.5.
  - [randy] - Updated to Apache HTTPD-2.2.4.

- [randy] - Updated to GTK-Doc-1.8.
- [randy] - Updated to Perl Module HTML::Parser-3.56.
- [randy] - Updated to Perl modules: Algorithm::Diff-1.1902, Compress::Zlib-2.004, Crypt::SSLeay-0.53, Pod::Simple-3.05, Test::Pod-1.26, Test::Simple-0.70, version-0.71.
- [randy] - Added new Perl modules: Compress::Raw::Zlib-2.004, IO::Compress::Base-2.004, IO::Compress::Bzip2-2.004, IO::Compress::Zlib-2.004.

- March 28th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to ASpell-0.60.5.
- March 27th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to HTML Tidy-cvs_20070326.
- March 26th, 2007
  - [djensen] - Updated to libIDL-0.8.8.
  - [randy] - Updated to Heirloom Mailx-12.2.
  - [randy] - Updated to Sendmail-8.14.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to OpenLDAP-2.3.34.
- March 25th, 2007
  - [djensen] - Updated to Intltool-0.35.5.
  - [djensen] - Updated to libwnck-2.18.0.
  - [djensen] - Updated to VTE-2.16.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to OpenSSH-4.6p1.
  - [randy] - Updated to OpenSSL-0.9.8e.
  - [randy] - Updated to cURL-7.16.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to Stunnel-4.20.
  - [randy] - Updated to Libidn-0.6.11.
- March 24th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to FOP-0.93.
- March 23rd, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Removed the reference to tinker-term.sh in the Bash Shell Startup Files. Thanks to Jonathan Oksman for the report.
  - [dnicholson] - Added a patch with upstream fixes for Dash and an optional command for replacing /bin/sh.
  - [randy] - Updated to Apache Ant-1.7.0.
  - [randy] - Added new package JUnit-4.1.
- March 21st, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to MySQL-5.0.37.
  - [randy] - Modified the Heimdal instructions to rename the Heimdal libss headers and libraries and restore the orginal E2fsprogs files. Also added some documentation installation commands.
- March 20th, 2007

- [bdubbs] - Updated to cairo-1.4.2. Fixes a severe hang problem and some systems when running checks.
- [randy] - Updated to Berkeley DB-4.5.20 to match the version used in LFS.
- [randy] - Updated to JDK-1.5.0.11 (source and binary).

- March 19th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to cpio-2.7.
- March 18th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to NSS-3.11.5 (includes NSPR-4.6.5).
  - [randy] - Added a warning to the GNOME introduction section, and links to this warning in various GNOME package instructions telling to use the stable version of BLFS to build current GNOME.
  - [randy] - Updated to GTK+-2.10.11.
  - [randy] - Updated to ATK-1.18.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to Pango-1.16.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to cairo-1.4.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to GLib-2.12.11.
- March 17th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to libxslt-1.1.20.
  - [randy] - Updated to Python-2.5.
- March 16th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to GCC-4.1.2, which matches the version used in LFS.
- March 15th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added the Dash package using a patch provided by Agathoklis Hatzimanikas.
- March 13th, 2007
  - [randy] - Added a note to the Linux-PAM instructions to run the test suite after the package has been installed and minimally configured.
- March 8th, 2007
  - [alexander] - Added Recode-3.6.
- March 7th, 2007
  - [djensen] - Updated to ImageMagick-6.3.3-0, man page sed by alexander.
- March 4th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Updated the Docbook SGML & XML DTD packages to version 4.5. Patch from Matthew Burgess.
- March 3rd, 2007
  - [djensen] - Updated to PostgreSQL-8.2.3.
  - [alexander] - Removed the link to the (dead) libstk site from Xine Libraries page.
- February 28th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Made the i18n-fonts commands more explicit on the a2ps page to guard against errors. Thanks to Nathan Coulson for the report.

- February 24th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Fixed a dead ftp:// link for Nano. Reported by Daniel Rindt.
- February 19th, 2007
  - [dnicholson] - Fixed the sed needed to run the libxml2 testsuite. Closes #2299. Report from kratz00.
- February 16th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to GMP-4.2.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to libxml2-2.6.27.
  - [randy] - Fixed a broken documentation installation command in the libpng instructions, thanks to Nathan Coulson for the report.
  - [randy] - Updated to Inetutils-1.5.
- February 15th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to Sysstat-7.0.4.
  - [randy] - Updated to Shadow-4.0.17.
  - [randy] - Updated to Linux-PAM-0.99.7.1.
  - [randy] - Updated to Tk-8.4.14.
  - [randy] - Updated to Tcl-8.4.14.
  - [randy] - Updated to S-Lang-2.0.7.
  - [randy] - Updated to PCRE-7.0.
  - [randy] - Updated to libpng-1.2.16.
  - [randy] - Updated to pkg-config-0.21.
- February 14th, 2007
  - [randy] - Released BLFS Version 6.2.0.
- February 6th, 2007
  - [randy] - Updated to CrackLib-2.8.10 (don't merge to the 6.2 branch until 6.2.0 has been released).
- February 4th, 2007
  - [randy] - Removed the obsolete and unmaintained Xorg-6.9 package (do not merge to the 6.2 branch).

Mailing Lists

The linuxfromscratch.org server is hosting a number of mailing lists that are used for the development of the BLFS book. These lists include, among others, the main development and support lists.

For more information regarding which lists are available, how to subscribe to them, archive locations, etc., visit *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mail.html*.

BLFS Wiki

The BLFS Project has created a Wiki for users to comment on pages and instructions at *http://wiki.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/wiki*. Comments are welcome from all users.

The following are the rules for posting:

- Users must register and log in to edit a page.
- Suggestions to change the book should be made by creating a new ticket, *not* by making comments in the Wiki.
- Questions with your specific installation problems should be made by subscribing and mailing to the BLFS Support Mailing List at *mailto:blfs-support@linuxfromscratch.org*.
- Discussions of build instructions should be made by subscribing and mailing to the BLFS Development List at *mailto:blfs-dev@linuxfromscratch.org*.
- Inappropriate material will be removed.

Asking for Help and the FAQ

If you encounter a problem while using this book, and your problem is not listed in the FAQ (*http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq*), you will find that most of the people on Internet Relay Chat (IRC) and on the mailing lists are willing to help you. An overview of the LFS mailing lists can be found in Mailing lists. To assist us in diagnosing and solving your problem, include as much relevant information as possible in your request for help.

Things to Check Prior to Asking

Before asking for help, you should review the following items:

- Is the hardware support compiled into the kernel or available as a module to the kernel? If it is a module, is it configured properly in `modprobe.conf` and has it been loaded? You should use **lsmod** as the `root` user to see if it's loaded. Check the `sys.log` file or run **modprobe *<driver>*** to review any error message. If it loads properly, you may need to add the **modprobe** command to your boot scripts.
- Are your permissions properly set, especially for devices? LFS uses groups to make these settings easier, but it also adds the step of adding users to groups to allow access. A simple **moduser -G audio *<user>*** may be all that's necessary for that user to have access to the sound system. Any question that starts out with “It works as root, but not as ...” requires a thorough review of permissions prior to asking.
- BLFS liberally uses `/opt/<package>`. The main objection to this centers around the need to expand your environment variables for each package placed there (e.g., PATH=$PATH:/opt/kde/bin). In most cases, the package instructions will walk you through the changes, but some will not. The section called “Going Beyond BLFS” is available to help you check.

Things to Mention

Apart from a brief explanation of the problem you're having, the essential things to include in your request are:

- the version of the book you are using (being 6.3),
- the package or section giving you problems,
- the exact error message or symptom you are receiving,
- whether you have deviated from the book or LFS at all,
- if you are installing a BLFS package on a non-LFS system.

(Note that saying that you've deviated from the book doesn't mean that we won't help you. It'll just help us to see other possible causes of your problem.)

Expect guidance instead of specific instructions. If you are instructed to read something, please do so. It generally implies that the answer was way too obvious and that the question would not have been asked if a little research was done prior to asking. The volunteers in the mailing list prefer not to be used as an alternative to doing reasonable

research on your end. In addition, the quality of your experience with BLFS is also greatly enhanced by this research, and the quality of volunteers is enhanced because they don't feel that their time has been abused, so they are far more likely to participate.

An excellent article on asking for help on the Internet in general has been written by Eric S. Raymond. It is available online at *http://www.catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html*. Read and follow the hints in that document and you are much more likely to get a response to start with and also to get the help you actually need.

Contact Information

Please direct your emails to one of the BLFS mailing lists. See Mailing lists for more information on the available mailing lists.

The current BLFS maintainer is Randy McMurchy. If you need to reach Randy, send an email to *randy@linuxfromscratch.org*.

Chapter 2. Important Information

This chapter is used to explain some of the policies used throughout the book, to introduce important concepts and to explain some issues you may see with some of the included packages.

Notes on Building Software

Those people who have built an LFS system may be aware of the general principles of downloading and unpacking software. We will however repeat some of that information here for those new to building their own software.

Each set of installation instructions contains a URL from which you can download the package. We do however keep a selection of patches available via HTTP. These are referenced as needed in the installation instructions.

While you can keep the source files anywhere you like, we assume that you have unpacked the package and changed into the directory created by the unpacking process (the 'build' directory). We also assume you have uncompressed any required patches and they are in the directory immediately above the 'build' directory.

We can not emphasize strongly enough that you should start from a *clean source tree* each time. This means that if you have had an error during configuration or compilation, it's usually best to delete the source tree and re-unpack it *before* trying again. This obviously doesn't apply if you're an advanced user used to hacking `Makefile`s and C code, but if in doubt, start from a clean tree.

Building Software as an Unprivileged (non-root) User

The golden rule of Unix System Administration is to use your superpowers only when necessary. Hence, BLFS recommends that you build software as an unprivileged user and only become the `root` user when installing the software. This philosophy is followed in all the packages in this book. Unless otherwise specified, all instructions should be executed as an unprivileged user. The book will advise you on instructions that need `root` privileges.

Unpacking the Software

If a file is in `.tar` format and compressed, it is unpacked by running one of the following commands:

```
tar -xvf filename.tar.gz
tar -xvf filename.tgz
tar -xvf filename.tar.Z
tar -xvf filename.tar.bz2
```

Note

You may omit using the `v` parameter in the commands shown above and below if you wish to suppress the verbose listing of all the files in the archive as they are extracted. This can help speed up the extraction as well as make any errors produced during the extraction more obvious to you.

You can also use a slightly different method:

```
bzcat filename.tar.bz2 | tar -xv
```

Finally, you sometimes need to be able to unpack patches which are generally not in `.tar` format. The best way to do this is to copy the patch file to parent of the 'build' directory and then run one of the following commands depending on whether the file is a `.gz` or `.bz2` file:

```
gunzip -v patchname.gz
bunzip2 -v patchname.bz2
```

Verifying File Integrity Using 'md5sum'

Generally, to verify that the downloaded file is genuine and complete, many package maintainers also distribute md5sums of the files. To verify the md5sum of the downloaded files, download both the file and the corresponding md5sum file to the same directory (preferably from different on-line locations), and (assuming `file.md5sum` is the md5sum file downloaded) run the following command:

```
md5sum -c file.md5sum
```

If there are any errors, they will be reported. Note that the BLFS book includes md5sums for all the source files also. To use the BLFS supplied md5sums, you can create a `file.md5sum` (place the md5sum data and the exact name of the downloaded file on the same line of a file, separated by white space) and run the command shown above. Alternately, simply run the command shown below and compare the output to the md5sum data shown in the BLFS book.

```
md5sum <name_of_downloaded_file>
```

Creating Log Files During Installation

For larger packages, it is convenient to create log files instead of staring at the screen hoping to catch a particular error or warning. Log files are also useful for debugging and keeping records. The following command allows you to create an installation log. Replace *<command>* with the command you intend to execute.

```
( <command> 2>&1 | tee compile.log && exit $PIPESTATUS )
```

`2>&1` redirects error messages to the same location as standard output. The **tee** command allows viewing of the output while logging the results to a file. The parentheses around the command run the entire command in a subshell and finally the **exit $PIPESTATUS** command ensures the result of the *<command>* is returned as the result and not the result of the **tee** command.

Automated Building Procedures

There are times when automating the building of a package can come in handy. Everyone has their own reasons for wanting to automate building, and everyone goes about it in their own way. Creating `Makefile`s, Bash scripts, Perl scripts or simply a list of commands used to cut and paste are just some of the methods you can use to automate building BLFS packages. Detailing how and providing examples of the many ways you can automate the building of packages is beyond the scope of this section. This section will expose you to using file redirection and the **yes** command to help provide ideas on how to automate your builds.

File Redirection to Automate Input

You will find times throughout your BLFS journey when you will come across a package that has a command prompting you for information. This information might be configuration details, a directory path, or a response to a license agreement. This can present a challenge to automate the building of that package. Occasionally, you will be

prompted for different information in a series of questions. One method to automate this type of scenario requires putting the desired responses in a file and using redirection so that the program uses the data in the file as the answers to the questions.

Building the CUPS package is a good example of how redirecting a file as input to prompts can help you automate the build. If you run the test suite, you are asked to respond to a series of questions regarding the type of test to run and if you have any auxiliary programs the test can use. You can create a file with your responses, one response per line, and use a command similar to the one shown below to automate running the test suite:

```
make check < ../cups-1.1.23-testsuite_parms
```

This effectively makes the test suite use the responses in the file as the input to the questions. Occasionally you may end up doing a bit of trial and error determining the exact format of your input file for some things, but once figured out and documented you can use this to automate building the package.

Using yes to Automate Input

Sometimes you will only need to provide one response, or provide the same response to many prompts. For these instances, the **yes** command works really well. The **yes** command can be used to provide a response (the same one) to one or more instances of questions. It can be used to simulate pressing just the **Enter** key, entering the **Y** key or entering a string of text. Perhaps the easiest way to show its use is in an example.

First, create a short Bash script by entering the following commands:

```
cat > blfs-yes-test1 << "EOF"
#!/bin/bash

echo -n -e "\n\nPlease type something (or nothing) and press Enter ---> "

read A_STRING

if test "$A_STRING" = ""; then A_STRING="Just the Enter key was pressed"
else A_STRING="You entered '$A_STRING'"
fi

echo -e "\n\n$A_STRING\n\n"
EOF
chmod 755 blfs-yes-test1
```

Now run the script by issuing **./blfs-yes-test1** from the command line. It will wait for a response, which can be anything (or nothing) followed by the **Enter** key. After entering something, the result will be echoed to the screen. Now use the **yes** command to automate the entering of a response:

```
yes | ./blfs-yes-test1
```

Notice that piping **yes** by itself to the script results in **y** being passed to the script. Now try it with a string of text:

```
yes 'This is some text' | ./blfs-yes-test1
```

The exact string was used as the response to the script. Finally, try it using an empty (null) string:

```
yes '' | ./blfs-yes-test1
```

Notice this results in passing just the press of the **Enter** key to the script. This is useful for times when the default answer to the prompt is sufficient. This syntax is used in the Net-tools [459] instructions to accept all the defaults to the many prompts during the configuration step. You may now remove the test script, if desired.

File Redirection to Automate Output

In order to automate the building of some packages, especially those that require you to read a license agreement one page at a time, requires using a method that avoids having to press a key to display each page. Redirecting the output to a file can be used in these instances to assist with the automation. The previous section on this page touched on creating log files of the build output. The redirection method shown there used the **tee** command to redirect output to a file while also displaying the output to the screen. Here, the output will only be sent to a file.

Again, the easiest way to demonstrate the technique is to show an example. First, issue the command:

```
ls -l /usr/bin | more
```

Of course, you'll be required to view the output one page at a time because the **more** filter was used. Now try the same command, but this time redirect the output to a file. The special file `/dev/null` can be used instead of the filename shown, but you will have no log file to examine:

```
ls -l /usr/bin | more > redirect_test.log 2>&1
```

Notice that this time the command immediately returned to the shell prompt without having to page through the output. You may now remove the log file.

The last example will use the **yes** command in combination with output redirection to bypass having to page through the output and then provide a **y** to a prompt. This technique could be used in instances when otherwise you would have to page through the output of a file (such as a license agreement) and then answer the question of “do you accept the above?”. For this example, another short Bash script is required:

```
cat > blfs-yes-test2 << "EOF"
#!/bin/bash

ls -l /usr/bin | more

echo -n -e "\n\nDid you enjoy reading this? (y,n) "

read A_STRING

if test "$A_STRING" = "y"; then A_STRING="You entered the 'y' key"
else A_STRING="You did NOT enter the 'y' key"
fi

echo -e "\n\n$A_STRING\n\n"
EOF
chmod 755 blfs-yes-test2
```

This script can be used to simulate a program that requires you to read a license agreement, then respond appropriately to accept the agreement before the program will install anything. First, run the script without any automation techniques by issuing **./blfs-yes-test2**.

Now issue the following command which uses two automation techniques, making it suitable for use in an automated build script:

```
yes | ./blfs-yes-test2 > blfs-yes-test2.log 2>&1
```

If desired, issue **tail blfs-yes-test2.log** to see the end of the paged output, and confirmation that **y** was passed through to the script. Once satisfied that it works as it should, you may remove the script and log file.

Finally, keep in mind that there are many ways to automate and/or script the build commands. There is not a single "correct" way to do it. Your imagination is the only limit.

Dependencies

For each package described, BLFS lists the known dependencies. These are listed under several headings, whose meaning is as follows:

- *Required* means that the target package cannot be correctly built without the dependency having first been installed.
- *Recommended* means that BLFS strongly suggests this package is installed first for a clean and trouble-free build, that won't have issues either during the build process, or at run-time.
- *Optional* means that this package might be installed for added functionality. Often BLFS will describe the dependency to explain the added functionality that will result.

The /usr Versus /usr/local Debate

Should I install XXX in `/usr` or `/usr/local`?

This is a question without an obvious answer for an LFS based system.

In traditional Unix systems, `/usr` usually contains files that come with the system distribution, and the `/usr/local` tree is free for the local administrator to manage. The only really hard and fast rule is that Unix distributions should not touch `/usr/local`, except perhaps to create the basic directories within it.

With Linux distributions like Red Hat, Debian, etc., a possible rule is that `/usr` is managed by the distribution's package system and `/usr/local` is not. This way the package manager's database knows about every file within `/usr`.

LFS users build their own system and so deciding where the system ends and local files begin is not straightforward. So the choice should be made in order to make things easier to administer. There are several reasons for dividing files between `/usr` and `/usr/local`.

- On a network of several machines all running LFS, or mixed LFS and other Linux distributions, `/usr/local` could be used to hold packages that are common between all the computers in the network. It can be NFS mounted or mirrored from a single server. Here local indicates local to the site.
- On a network of several computers all running an identical LFS system, `/usr/local` could hold packages that are different between the machines. In this case local refers to the individual computers.
- Even on a single computer, `/usr/local` can be useful if you have several distributions installed simultaneously, and want a place to put packages that will be the same on all of them.
- Or you might regularly rebuild your LFS, but want a place to put files that you don't want to rebuild each time. This way you can wipe the LFS file system and start from a clean partition every time without losing everything.

Some people ask why not use your own directory tree, e.g., `/usr/site`, rather than `/usr/local`?

There is nothing stopping you, many sites do make their own trees, however it makes installing new software more difficult. Automatic installers often look for dependencies in `/usr` and `/usr/local`, and if the file it is looking for is in `/usr/site` instead, the installer will probably fail unless you specifically tell it where to look.

What is the BLFS position on this?

All of the BLFS instructions install programs in `/usr` with optional instructions to install into `/opt` for some specific packages.

Optional Patches

As you follow the various sections in the book, you will observe that the book occasionally includes patches that are required for a successful and secure installation of the packages. The general policy of the book is to include patches that fall in one of the following criteria:

- Fixes a compilation problem.
- Fixes a security problem.
- Fixes a broken functionality.

In short, the book only includes patches that are either required or recommended. There is a *Patches subproject* which hosts various patches (including the patches referenced in the books) to enable you to configure your LFS the way you like it.

BLFS Boot Scripts

The BLFS Bootscripts package contains the init scripts that are used throughout the book. It is assumed that you will be using the BLFS Bootscripts package in conjunction with a compatible LFS-Bootscripts package. Refer to *../../../../lfs/view/6.3/chapter07/bootscripts.html* for more information on the LFS-Bootscripts package.

Package Information

- Download: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/downloads/6.3/blfs-bootscripts-20080816.tar.bz2*

The BLFS Bootscripts package will be used throughout the BLFS book for startup scripts. Unlike LFS, each init script has a separate install target in the BLFS Bootscripts package. It is recommended you keep the package source directory around until completion of your BLFS system. When a script is requested from BLFS Bootscripts, simply change to the directory and as the `root` user, execute the given **make install-`<init-script>`** command. This command installs the init script to its proper location (along with any auxiliary configuration scripts) and also creates the appropriate symlinks to start and stop the service at the appropriate run-level.

Note

It is advisable to peruse each bootscript before installation to ascertain that it satisfies your need. Also verify that the start and stop symlinks it creates match your preferences.

Locale Related Issues

This page contains information about locale related problems and issues. In the following paragraphs you'll find a generic overview of things that can come up when configuring your system for various locales. Many (but not all) existing locale related problems can be classified and fall under one of the headings below. The severity ratings below use the following criteria:

- Critical: The program doesn't perform its main function. The fix would be very intrusive, it's better to search for a replacement.
- High: Part of the functionality that the program provides is not usable. If that functionality is required, it's better to search for a replacement.
- Low: The program works in all typical use cases, but lacks some functionality normally provided by its equivalents.

If there is a known workaround for a specific package, it will appear on that package's page. For the most recent information about locale related issues for individual packages, check the *User Notes* in the BLFS Wiki.

The Needed Encoding is Not a Valid Option in the Program

Severity: Critical

Some programs require the user to specify the character encoding for their input or output data and present only a limited choice of encodings. This is the case for the `-X` option in a2ps-4.14 and Enscript-1.6.4, the `-input-charset` option in unpatched Cdrtools-2.01, and the character sets offered for display in the menu of Links-2.1pre33. If the required encoding is not in the list, the program usually becomes completely unusable. For non-interactive programs, it may be possible to work around this by converting the document to a supported input character set before submitting to the program.

A solution to this type of problem is to implement the necessary support for the missing encoding as a patch to the original program (as done for Cdrtools-2.01 in this book), or to find a replacement.

The Program Assumes the Locale-Based Encoding of External Documents

Severity: High for non-text documents, low for text documents

Some programs, nano-2.0.7 or JOE-3.5 for example, assume that documents are always in the encoding implied by the current locale. While this assumption may be valid for the user-created documents, it is not safe for external ones. When this assumption fails, non-ASCII characters are displayed incorrectly, and the document may become unreadable.

If the external document is entirely text based, it can be converted to the current locale encoding using the **iconv** program.

For documents that are not text-based, this is not possible. In fact, the assumption made in the program may be completely invalid for documents where the Microsoft Windows operating system has set de facto standards. An example of this problem is ID3v1 tags in MP3 files (see the *BLFS Wiki ID3v1Coding page* for more details). For these cases, the only solution is to find a replacement program that doesn't have the issue (e.g., one that will allow you to specify the assumed document encoding).

Among BLFS packages, this problem applies to nano-2.0.7, JOE-3.5, and all media players except Audacious-1.3.2.

Another problem in this category is when someone cannot read the documents you've sent them because their operating system is set up to handle character encodings differently. This can happen often when the other person is using Microsoft Windows, which only provides one character encoding for a given country. For example, this causes problems with UTF-8 encoded TeX documents created in Linux. On Windows, most applications will assume that these documents have been created using the default Windows 8-bit encoding. See the *teTeX* Wiki page for more details.

In extreme cases, Windows encoding compatibility issues may be solved only by running Windows programs under *Wine*.

The Program Uses or Creates Filenames in the Wrong Encoding

Severity: Critical

The POSIX standard mandates that the filename encoding is the encoding implied by the current LC_CTYPE locale category. This information is well-hidden on the page which specifies the behavior of Tar and Cpio programs. Some programs get it wrong by default (or simply don't have enough information to get it right). The result is that they create filenames which are not subsequently shown correctly by **ls**, or they refuse to accept filenames that **ls** shows properly. For the GLib-2.12.12 library, the problem can be corrected by setting the `G_FILENAME_ENCODING` environment variable to the special "@locale" value. Glib2 based programs that don't respect that environment variable are buggy.

The Zip-2.32, UnZip-5.52, and Nautilus CD Burner-2.18.2 have this problem because they hard-code the expected filename encoding. UnZip contains a hard-coded conversion table between the CP850 (DOS) and ISO-8859-1 (UNIX) encodings and uses this table when extracting archives created under DOS or Microsoft Windows. However, this assumption only works for those in the US and not for anyone using a UTF-8 locale. Non-ASCII characters will be mangled in the extracted filenames.

On the other hand, Nautilus CD Burner checks names of files added to its window for UTF-8 validity. This is wrong for users of non-UTF-8 locales. Also, Nautilus CD Burner unconditionally calls **mkisofs** with the *`-input-charset UTF-8`* parameter, which is only correct in UTF-8 locales.

The general rule for avoiding this class of problems is to avoid installing broken programs. If this is impossible, the *convmv* command-line tool can be used to fix filenames created by these broken programs, or intentionally mangle the existing filenames to meet the broken expectations of such programs.

In other cases, a similar problem is caused by importing filenames from a system using a different locale with a tool that is not locale-aware (e.g., NFS Utilities-1.1.2 or OpenSSH-4.7p1). In order to avoid mangling non-ASCII characters when transferring files to a system with a different locale, any of the following methods can be used:

- Transfer anyway, fix the damage with **convmv**.
- On the sending side, create a tar archive with the *`--format=posix`* switch passed to **tar** (this will be the default in a future version of **tar**).
- Mail the files as attachments. Mail clients specify the encoding of attached filenames.
- Write the files to a removable disk formatted with a FAT or FAT32 filesystem.
- Transfer the files using Samba.
- Transfer the files via FTP using RFC2640-aware server (this currently means only wu-ftpd, which has bad security history) and client (e.g., lftp).

The last four methods work because the filenames are automatically converted from the sender's locale to UNICODE and stored or sent in this form. They are then transparently converted from UNICODE to the recipient's locale encoding.

The Program Breaks Multibyte Characters or Doesn't Count Character Cells Correctly

Severity: High or critical

Many programs were written in an older era where multibyte locales were not common. Such programs assume that C "char" data type, which is one byte, can be used to store single characters. Further, they assume that any sequence of characters is a valid string and that every character occupies a single character cell. Such assumptions completely

break in UTF-8 locales. The visible manifestation is that the program truncates strings prematurely (i.e., at 80 bytes instead of 80 characters). Terminal-based programs don't place the cursor correctly on the screen, don't react to the "Backspace" key by erasing one character, and leave junk characters around when updating the screen, usually turning the screen into a complete mess.

Fixing this kind of problems is a tedious task from a programmer's point of view, like all other cases of retrofitting new concepts into the old flawed design. In this case, one has to redesign all data structures in order to accommodate to the fact that a complete character may span a variable number of "char"s (or switch to wchar_t and convert as needed). Also, for every call to the "strlen" and similar functions, find out whether a number of bytes, a number of characters, or the width of the string was really meant. Sometimes it is faster to write a program with the same functionality from scratch.

Among BLFS packages, this problem applies to xine User Interface-0.99.5 and all the shells.

The Package Installs Manual Pages in Incorrect or Non-Displayable Encoding

Severity: Low

LFS expects that manual pages are in the language-specific (usually 8-bit) encoding, as specified on the *LFS Man DB page*. However, some packages install translated manual pages in UTF-8 encoding (e.g., Shadow, already dealt with), or manual pages in languages not in the table. Not all BLFS packages have been audited for conformance with the requirements put in LFS (the large majority have been checked, and fixes placed in the book for packages known to install non-conforming manual pages). If you find a manual page installed by any of BLFS packages that is obviously in the wrong encoding, please remove or convert it as needed, and report this to BLFS team as a bug.

You can easily check your system for any non-conforming manual pages by copying the following short shell script to some accessible location,

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin checkman.sh
# Usage: find /usr/share/man -type f | xargs checkman.sh
for a in "$@"
do
    # echo "Checking $a..."
    # Pure-ASCII manual page (possibly except comments) is OK
    grep -v '.\\"' "$a" | iconv -f US-ASCII -t US-ASCII >/dev/null 2>&1 \
        && continue
    # Non-UTF-8 manual page is OK
    iconv -f UTF-8 -t UTF-8 "$a" >/dev/null 2>&1 || continue
    # If we got here, we found UTF-8 manual page, bad.
    echo "UTF-8 manual page: $a" >&2
done
# End checkman.sh
```

and then issuing the following command (modify the command below if the **checkman.sh** script is not in your PATH environment variable):

```
find /usr/share/man -type f | xargs checkman.sh
```

Note that if you have manual pages installed in any location other than `/usr/share/man` (e.g., `/usr/local/share/man`), you must modify the above command to include this additional location.

Going Beyond BLFS

The packages that are installed in this book are only the tip of the iceberg. We hope that the experience you gained with the LFS book and the BLFS book will give you the background needed to compile, install and configure packages that are not included in this book.

When you want to install a package to a location other than `/`, or `/usr`, you are installing outside the default environment settings on most machines. The following examples should assist you in determining how to correct this situation. The examples cover the complete range of settings that may need updating, but they are not all needed in every situation.

- Expand the `PATH` to include `$PREFIX/bin`.
- Expand the `PATH` for `root` to include `$PREFIX/sbin`.
- Add `$PREFIX/lib` to `/etc/ld.so.conf` or expand `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` to include it. Before using the latter option, check out *http://xahlee.org/UnixResource_dir/_/ldpath.html*. If you modify `/etc/ld.so.conf`, remember to update `/etc/ld.so.cache` by executing **ldconfig** as the `root` user.
- Add `$PREFIX/man` to `/etc/man_db.conf` or expand `MANPATH`.
- Add `$PREFIX/info` to `INFOPATH`.
- Add `$PREFIX/lib/pkgconfig` to `PKG_CONFIG_PATH`. Some packages are now installing `.pc` files in `$PREFIX/share/pkgconfig`, so you may have to include this directory also.
- Add `$PREFIX/include` to `CPPFLAGS` when compiling packages that depend on the package you installed.
- Add `$PREFIX/lib` to `LDFLAGS` when compiling packages that depend on a library installed by the package.

If you are in search of a package that is not in the book, the following are different ways you can search for the desired package.

- If you know the name of the package, then search FreshMeat for it at *http://freshmeat.net/*. Also search Google at *http://google.com/*. Sometimes a search for the `rpm` at *http://rpmfind.net/* or the `deb` at *http://www.debian.org/distrib/packages#search_packages* can also lead to a link to the package.
- If you know the name of the executable, but not the package that the executable belongs to, first try a Google search with the name of the executable. If the results are overwhelming, try searching for the given executable in the Debian repository at *http://www.debian.org/distrib/packages#search_contents*.

Some general hints on handling new packages:

- Many of the newer packages follow the **./configure && make && make install** process. Help on the options accepted by configure can be obtained via the command **./configure --help**.
- Most of the packages contain documentation on compiling and installing the package. Some of the documents are excellent, some not so excellent. Check out the homepage of the package for any additional and updated hints for compiling and configuring the package.
- If you are having a problem compiling the package, try searching the LFS archives at *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/search.html* for the error or if that fails, try searching Google. If everything else fails, try the blfs-support mailing-list.

Tip

If you have found a package that is only available in `.deb` or `.rpm` format, there are two small scripts, **rpm2targz** and **deb2targz** that are available at *http://downloads.linuxfromscratch.org/deb2targz.tar.bz2* and *http://downloads.linuxfromscratch.org/rpm2targz.tar.bz2* to convert the archives into a simple `tar.gz` format.

Part II. Post LFS Configuration and Extra Software

Chapter 3. After LFS Configuration Issues

The intention of LFS is to provide a basic system which you can build upon. There are several things about tidying up the system which many people wonder about once they have done the base install. We hope to cover these issues in this chapter.

Most people coming from non-Unix like backgrounds to Linux find the concept of text-only configuration files slightly strange. In Linux, just about all configuration is done via the manipulation of text files. The majority of these files can be found in the `/etc` hierarchy. There are often graphical configuration programs available for different subsystems but most are simply pretty front ends to the process of editing a text file. The advantage of text-only configuration is that you can edit parameters using your favorite text editor, whether that be **vim**, **emacs**, or any other editor.

The first task is making a recovery boot device in Creating a Custom Boot Device because it's the most critical need. Then the system is configured to ease addition of new users, because this can affect the choices you make in the two subsequent topics—The Bash Shell Startup Files and The vimrc Files.

The remaining topics, Customizing your Logon with /etc/issue, The /etc/shells File, Random number generation, Compressing man and info pages, Autofs-5.0.3, and Configuring for Network Filesystems are then addressed, in that order. They don't have much interaction with the other topics in this chapter.

Creating a Custom Boot Device

Decent Rescue Boot Device Needs

This section is really about creating a *rescue* device. As the name *rescue* implies, the host system has a problem, often lost partition information or corrupted file systems, that prevents it from booting and/or operating normally. For this reason, you *must not* depend on resources from the host being "rescued". To presume that any given partition or hard drive *will* be available is a risky presumption.

In a modern system, there are many devices that can be used as a rescue device: floppy, cdrom, usb drive, or even a network card. Which one you use depends on your hardware and your BIOS. In the past, we usually thought of rescue device as a floppy disk. Today, many systems do not even have a floppy drive.

Building a complete rescue device is a challenging task. In many ways, it is equivalent to building an entire LFS system. In addition, it would be a repetition of information already available. For these reasons, the procedures for a rescue device image are not presented here.

Creating a Rescue Floppy

The software of today's systems has grown large. Linux 2.6 no longer supports booting directly from a floppy. In spite of this, there are solutions available using older versions of Linux. One of the best is Tom's Root/Boot Disk available at *http://www.toms.net/rb/*. This will provide a minimal Linux system on a single floppy disk and provides the ability to customize the contents of your disk if necessary.

Creating a Bootable CD-ROM

There are several sources that can be used for a rescue CD-ROM. Just about any commercial distribution's installation CD-ROMs or DVDs will work. These include RedHat, Mandrake, and SuSE. One very popular option is Knoppix.

Also, the LFS Community has developed its own LiveCD available at *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/livecd/*. This LiveCD, in addition to having boot and rescue capabilities, is capable of building an entire LFS/BLFS system. A copy of this CD-ROM is available with the printed version of the Linux From Scratch book. If you download the ISO image, use **cdrecord** to copy the image to a CD-ROM.

Creating a Bootable USB Drive

A USB Pen drive, sometimes called a Thumb drive, is recognized by Linux as a SCSI device. Using one of these devices as a rescue device has the advantage that it is usually large enough to hold more than a minimal boot image. You can save critical data to the drive as well as use it to diagnose and recover a damaged system. Booting such a drive requires BIOS support, but building the system consists of formatting the drive, adding GRUB as well as the Linux kernel and supporting files.

Configuring for Adding Users

Together, the **/usr/sbin/useradd** command and `/etc/skel` directory (both are easy to set up and use) provide a way to assure new users are added to your LFS system with the same beginning settings for things such as the `PATH`, keyboard processing and other environmental variables. Using these two facilities makes it easier to assure this initial state for each new user added to the system.

The `/etc/skel` directory holds copies of various initialization and other files that may be copied to the new user's home directory when the **/usr/sbin/useradd** program adds the new user.

Useradd

The **useradd** program uses a collection of default values kept in `/etc/default/useradd`. This file is created in a base LFS installation by the Shadow package. If it has been removed or renamed, the **useradd** program uses some internal defaults. You can see the default values by running **/usr/sbin/useradd -D**.

To change these values, simply modify the `/etc/default/useradd` file as the `root` user. An alternative to directly modifying the file is to run **useradd** as the `root` user while supplying the desired modifications on the command line. Information on how to do this can be found in the **useradd** man page.

/etc/skel

To get started, create an `/etc/skel` directory and make sure it is writable only by the system administrator, usually `root`. Creating the directory as `root` is the best way to go.

The mode of any files from this part of the book that you put in `/etc/skel` should be writable only by the owner. Also, since there is no telling what kind of sensitive information a user may eventually place in their copy of these files, you should make them unreadable by "group" and "other".

You can also put other files in `/etc/skel` and different permissions may be needed for them.

Decide which initialization files should be provided in every (or most) new user's home directory. The decisions you make will affect what you do in the next two sections, The Bash Shell Startup Files and The vimrc Files. Some or all of those files will be useful for `root`, any already-existing users, and new users.

The files from those sections that you might want to place in `/etc/skel` include `.inputrc`, `.bash_profile`, `.bashrc`, `.bash_logout`, `.dircolors`, and `.vimrc`. If you are unsure which of these should be placed there, just continue to the following sections, read each section and any references provided, and then make your decision.

You will run a slightly modified set of commands for files which are placed in `/etc/skel`. Each section will remind you of this. In brief, the book's commands have been written for files *not* added to `/etc/skel` and instead just sends the results to the user's home directory. If the file is going to be in `/etc/skel`, change the book's command(s) to send output there instead and then just copy the file from `/etc/skel` to the appropriate directories, like `/etc`, `~` or the home directory of any other user already in the system.

When Adding a User

When adding a new user with **useradd**, use the `-m` parameter, which tells **useradd** to create the user's home directory and copy files from `/etc/skel` (can be overridden) to the new user's home directory. For example (perform as the `root` user):

```
useradd -m <newuser>
```

About System Users and Groups

Throughout BLFS, many packages install programs that run as daemons or in some way should have a user or group name assigned. Generally these names are used to map a user ID (uid) or group ID (gid) for system use. Generally the specific uid or gid numbers used by these applications are not significant. The exception of course, is that `root` has a uid and gid of 0 (zero) that is indeed special. The uid values are stored in `/etc/passwd` and the gid values are found in `/etc/group`.

Customarily, Unix systems classify users and groups into two categories: system users and regular users. The system users and groups are given low numbers and regular users and groups have numeric values greater than all the system values. The cutoff for these numbers is found in two parameters in the `/etc/login.defs` configuration file. The default UID_MIN value is 1000 and the default GID_MIN value is 100. If a specific uid or gid value is not specified when creating a user with **useradd** or a group with **groupadd** the values assigned will always be above these cutoff values.

Additionally, the *Linux Standard Base* recommends that system uid and gid values should be below 100.

Below is a table of suggested uid/gid values used in BLFS beyond those defined in a base LFS installation. These can be changed as desired, but provide a suggested set of consistent values.

Table 3.1. UID/GID Suggested Values

Name	uid	gid
bin	1	
lp	9	
messagebus	18	18
haldaemon	19	19
named	20	20
gdm	21	21
fcron	22	22
apache	25	25
smmsp	26	26
exim	31	31
postfix	32	32
postdrop		33
sendmail	34	
mail		34
vmailman	35	35
news	36	36
mysql	40	40
postgres	41	41
ftp	45	45
proftpd	46	46
vsftpd	47	47
rsyncd	48	48
sshd	50	50
stunnel	51	51
svn	56	56
svntest		57
games	60	60
anonymous	98	
nobody	99	
nogroup		99

One value that is missing is 65534. This value is customarily assigned to the user `nobody` and group `nogroup` and is unnecessary. The issue is explained in more detail in the first note in the NFS Utilities Installation section.

About Devices

Although most devices needed by packages in BLFS and beyond are set up properly by udev using the default rules installed by LFS in `/etc/udev/rules.d`, there are cases where the rules must be modified or augmented.

Multiple Sound Cards

If there are multiple sound cards in a system, the "default" sound card becomes random. The method to establish sound card order depends on whether the drivers are modules or not. If the sound card drivers are compiled into the kernel, control is via kernel command line parameters in `/boot/grub/menu.lst`. For example, if a system has both an FM801 card and a SoundBlaster PCI card, the following can be appended to the command line:

```
snd-fm801.index=0 snd-ens1371.index=1
```

If the sound card drivers are built as modules, the order can be established in the `/etc/modprobe.conf` file with:

```
options snd-fm801 index=0
options snd-ens1371 index=1
```

Udev Device Attributes

Fine-tuning of device attributes such as group name and permissions is possible by creating extra udev rules, matching on something like this (on one line). The vendor and product can be found by searching the /sys/devices directory entries or using **udevinfo** after the device has been attached. See the documentation in the current udev directory of `/usr/share/doc` for details.

```
SUBSYSTEM=="usb_device", SYSFS{idVendor}=="05d8",
   SYSFS{idProduct}=="4002", GROUP:="scanner", MODE:="0640"
```

USB Device Issues

Some older applications, such as VMware, need the following deprecated entry in the `/etc/fstab` file. This is not normally needed.

```
usbfs  /proc/bus/usb  usbfs  devgid=14,devmode=0660  0  0
```

Devices for Servers

In some cases, it makes sense to disable udev completely and create static devices. Servers are one example of this situation. Does a server need the capability of handling dynamic devices? Only the system administrator can answer that question, but in many cases the answer will be no.

If dynamic devices are not desired, then static devices must be created on the system. In the default configuration, the `/etc/rc.d/rcsysinit.d/S10udev` boot script mounts a `tmpfs` partition over the `/dev` directory. This problem can be overcome by mounting the root partition temporarily:

Warning

If the instructions below are not followed carefully, your system could become unbootable.

```
mount --bind / /mnt
cp -a /dev/* /mnt/dev
rm /etc/rc.d/rcsysinit.d/{S10udev,S45udev_retry}
umount /mnt
```

At this point, the system will use static devices upon the next reboot. Create any desired additional devices using **mknod**.

If you want to restore the dynamic devices, recreate the `/etc/rc.d/rcsysinit.d/{S10udev,S45udev_retry}` symbolic links and reboot again. Static devices do not need to be removed (console and null are always needed) because they are covered by the `tmpfs` partition. Disk usage for devices is negligible (about 20–30 bytes per entry.)

The Bash Shell Startup Files

The shell program `/bin/bash` (hereafter referred to as just "the shell") uses a collection of startup files to help create an environment. Each file has a specific use and may affect login and interactive environments differently. The files in the `/etc` directory generally provide global settings. If an equivalent file exists in your home directory it may override the global settings.

An interactive login shell is started after a successful login, using `/bin/login`, by reading the `/etc/passwd` file. This shell invocation normally reads `/etc/profile` and its private equivalent `~/.bash_profile` upon startup.

An interactive non-login shell is normally started at the command-line using a shell program (e.g., `[prompt]$` **/bin/bash**) or by the **/bin/su** command. An interactive non-login shell is also started with a terminal program such as **xterm** or **konsole** from within a graphical environment. This type of shell invocation normally copies the parent environment and then reads the user's `~/.bashrc` file for additional startup configuration instructions.

A non-interactive shell is usually present when a shell script is running. It is non-interactive because it is processing a script and not waiting for user input between commands. For these shell invocations, only the environment inherited from the parent shell is used.

The file `~/.bash_logout` is not used for an invocation of the shell. It is read and executed when a user exits from an interactive login shell.

Many distributions use `/etc/bashrc` for system wide initialization of non-login shells. This file is usually called from the user's `~/.bashrc` file and is not built directly into **bash** itself. This convention is followed in this section.

For more information see **info bash -- Nodes: Bash Startup Files and Interactive Shells**.

Note

Most of the instructions below are used to create files located in the `/etc` directory structure which requires you to execute the commands as the `root` user. If you elect to create the files in user's home directories instead, you should run the commands as an unprivileged user.

/etc/profile

Here is a base `/etc/profile`. This file starts by setting up some helper functions and some basic parameters. It specifies some **bash** history parameters and, for security purposes, disables keeping a permanent history file for the `root` user. It also sets a default user prompt. It then calls small, single purpose scripts in the `/etc/profile.d` directory to provide most of the initialization.

For more information on the escape sequences you can use for your prompt (i.e., the `PS1` environment variable) see **info bash -- Node: Printing a Prompt**.

```
cat > /etc/profile << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/profile
# Written for Beyond Linux From Scratch
# by James Robertson <jameswrobertson@earthlink.net>
# modifications by Dagmar d'Surreal <rivyqntzne@pbzpnfg.arg>

# System wide environment variables and startup programs.

# System wide aliases and functions should go in /etc/bashrc.  Personal
# environment variables and startup programs should go into
# ~/.bash_profile.  Personal aliases and functions should go into
# ~/.bashrc.

# Functions to help us manage paths.  Second argument is the name of the
# path variable to be modified (default: PATH)
pathremove () {
        local IFS=':'
        local NEWPATH
        local DIR
        local PATHVARIABLE=${2:-PATH}
        for DIR in ${!PATHVARIABLE} ; do
                if [ "$DIR" != "$1" ] ; then
                  NEWPATH=${NEWPATH:+$NEWPATH:}$DIR
                fi
        done
        export $PATHVARIABLE="$NEWPATH"
}

pathprepend () {
        pathremove $1 $2
        local PATHVARIABLE=${2:-PATH}
        export $PATHVARIABLE="$1${!PATHVARIABLE:+:${!PATHVARIABLE}}"
}

pathappend () {
        pathremove $1 $2
        local PATHVARIABLE=${2:-PATH}
        export $PATHVARIABLE="${!PATHVARIABLE:+${!PATHVARIABLE}:}$1"
}
```

```
# Set the initial path
export PATH=/bin:/usr/bin

if [ $EUID -eq 0 ] ; then
        pathappend /sbin:/usr/sbin
        unset HISTFILE
fi

# Setup some environment variables.
export HISTSIZE=1000
export HISTIGNORE="&:[bf]g:exit"

# Setup a red prompt for root and a green one for users.
NORMAL="\[\e[0m\]"
RED="\[\e[1;31m\]"
GREEN="\[\e[1;32m\]"
if [[ $EUID == 0 ]] ; then
  PS1="$RED\u [ $NORMAL\w$RED ]# $NORMAL"
else
  PS1="$GREEN\u [ $NORMAL\w$GREEN ]\$ $NORMAL"
fi

for script in /etc/profile.d/*.sh ; do
        if [ -r $script ] ; then
                . $script
        fi
done

# Now to clean up
unset pathremove pathprepend pathappend

# End /etc/profile
EOF
```

The /etc/profile.d Directory

Now create the `/etc/profile.d` directory, where the individual initialization scripts are placed:

```
install --directory --mode=0755 --owner=root --group=root /etc/profile.d
```

/etc/profile.d/dircolors.sh

This script uses the `~/.dircolors` and `/etc/dircolors` files to control the colors of file names in a directory listing. They control colorized output of things like **ls --color**. The explanation of how to initialize these files is at the end of this section.

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/dircolors.sh << "EOF"
# Setup for /bin/ls to support color, the alias is in /etc/bashrc.
if [ -f "/etc/dircolors" ] ; then
        eval $(dircolors -b /etc/dircolors)

        if [ -f "$HOME/.dircolors" ] ; then
                eval $(dircolors -b $HOME/.dircolors)
        fi
fi
alias ls='ls --color=auto'
EOF
```

/etc/profile.d/extrapaths.sh

This script adds several useful paths to the `PATH` and `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` environment variables. If you want, you can uncomment the last section to put a dot at the end of your path. This will allow executables in the current working directory to be executed without specifiying a ./, however you are warned that this is generally considered a security hazard.

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/extrapaths.sh << "EOF"
if [ -d /usr/local/lib/pkgconfig ] ; then
        pathappend /usr/local/lib/pkgconfig PKG_CONFIG_PATH
fi
if [ -d /usr/local/bin ]; then
        pathprepend /usr/local/bin
fi
if [ -d /usr/local/sbin -a $EUID -eq 0 ]; then
        pathprepend /usr/local/sbin
fi

if [ -d ~/bin ]; then
        pathprepend ~/bin
fi
#if [ $EUID -gt 99 ]; then
#        pathappend .
#fi
EOF
```

/etc/profile.d/readline.sh

This script sets up the default `inputrc` configuration file. If the user does not have individual settings, it uses the global file.

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/readline.sh << "EOF"
# Setup the INPUTRC environment variable.
if [ -z "$INPUTRC" -a ! -f "$HOME/.inputrc" ] ; then
        INPUTRC=/etc/inputrc
fi
export INPUTRC
EOF
```

/etc/profile.d/umask.sh

Setting the **umask** value is important for security. Here the default group write permissions are turned off for system users and when the user name and group name are not the same.

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/umask.sh << "EOF"
# By default we want the umask to get set.
if [ "$(id -gn)" = "$(id -un)" -a $EUID -gt 99 ] ; then
  umask 002
else
  umask 022
fi
EOF
```

/etc/profile.d/X.sh

If X is installed, the `PATH` and `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` variables are also updated.

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/X.sh << "EOF"
if [ -x /usr/X11R6/bin/X ]; then
        pathappend /usr/X11R6/bin
fi
if [ -d /usr/X11R6/lib/pkgconfig ] ; then
        pathappend /usr/X11R6/lib/pkgconfig PKG_CONFIG_PATH
fi
EOF
```

/etc/profile.d/i18n.sh

This script sets an environment variable necessary for native language support. A full discussion on determining this variable can be found on the *LFS Bash Shell Startup Files* page.

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/i18n.sh << "EOF"
# Set up i18n variables
export LANG=<ll>_<CC>.<charmap><@modifiers>
EOF
```

Other Initialization Values

Other initialization can easily be added to the `profile` by adding additional scripts to the `/etc/profile.d` directory.

/etc/bashrc

Here is a base `/etc/bashrc`. Comments in the file should explain everything you need.

```
cat > /etc/bashrc << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/bashrc
# Written for Beyond Linux From Scratch
# by James Robertson <jameswrobertson@earthlink.net>
# updated by Bruce Dubbs <bdubbs@linuxfromscratch.org>

# System wide aliases and functions.

# System wide environment variables and startup programs should go into
# /etc/profile.  Personal environment variables and startup programs
# should go into ~/.bash_profile.  Personal aliases and functions should
# go into ~/.bashrc

# Provides a colored /bin/ls command.  Used in conjunction with code in
# /etc/profile.

alias ls='ls --color=auto'

# Provides prompt for non-login shells, specifically shells started
# in the X environment. [Review the LFS archive thread titled
# PS1 Environment Variable for a great case study behind this script
# addendum.]

NORMAL="\[\e[0m\]"
RED="\[\e[1;31m\]"
GREEN="\[\e[1;32m\]"
if [[ $EUID == 0 ]] ; then
  PS1="$RED\u [ $NORMAL\w$RED ]# $NORMAL"
else
  PS1="$GREEN\u [ $NORMAL\w$GREEN ]\$ $NORMAL"
fi

# End /etc/bashrc
EOF
```

~/.bash_profile

Here is a base `~/.bash_profile`. If you want each new user to have this file automatically, just change the output of the command to `/etc/skel/.bash_profile` and check the permissions after the command is run. You can then copy `/etc/skel/.bash_profile` to the home directories of already existing users, including `root`, and set the owner and group appropriately.

```
cat > ~/.bash_profile << "EOF"
# Begin ~/.bash_profile
# Written for Beyond Linux From Scratch
# by James Robertson <jameswrobertson@earthlink.net>
# updated by Bruce Dubbs <bdubbs@linuxfromscratch.org>

# Personal environment variables and startup programs.

# Personal aliases and functions should go in ~/.bashrc.  System wide
# environment variables and startup programs are in /etc/profile.
# System wide aliases and functions are in /etc/bashrc.

append () {
  # First remove the directory
  local IFS=':'
  local NEWPATH
  for DIR in $PATH; do
     if [ "$DIR" != "$1" ]; then
       NEWPATH=${NEWPATH:+$NEWPATH:}$DIR
     fi
  done

  # Then append the directory
  export PATH=$NEWPATH:$1
}

if [ -f "$HOME/.bashrc" ] ; then
  source $HOME/.bashrc
fi

if [ -d "$HOME/bin" ] ; then
  append $HOME/bin
fi

unset append

# End ~/.bash_profile
EOF
```

~/.bashrc

Here is a base `~/.bashrc`. The comments and instructions for using `/etc/skel` for `.bash_profile` above also apply here. Only the target file names are different.

```
cat > ~/.bashrc << "EOF"
# Begin ~/.bashrc
# Written for Beyond Linux From Scratch
# by James Robertson <jameswrobertson@earthlink.net>

# Personal aliases and functions.

# Personal environment variables and startup programs should go in
# ~/.bash_profile.  System wide environment variables and startup
# programs are in /etc/profile.  System wide aliases and functions are
# in /etc/bashrc.

if [ -f "/etc/bashrc" ] ; then
  source /etc/bashrc
fi

# End ~/.bashrc
EOF
```

~/.bash_logout

This is an empty `~/.bash_logout` that can be used as a template. You will notice that the base `~/.bash_logout` does not include a **`clear`** command. This is because the clear is handled in the `/etc/issue` file.

```
cat > ~/.bash_logout << "EOF"
# Begin ~/.bash_logout
# Written for Beyond Linux From Scratch
# by James Robertson <jameswrobertson@earthlink.net>

# Personal items to perform on logout.

# End ~/.bash_logout
EOF
```

/etc/dircolors

If you want to use the `dircolors` capability, then run the following command. The `/etc/skel` setup steps shown above also can be used here to provide a `~/.dircolors` file when a new user is set up. As before, just change the output file name on the following command and assure the permissions, owner, and group are correct on the files created and/or copied.

```
dircolors -p > /etc/dircolors
```

If you wish to customize the colors used for different file types, you can edit the `/etc/dircolors` file. The instructions for setting the colors are embedded in the file.

Finally, Ian Macdonald has written an excellent collection of tips and tricks to enhance your shell environment. You can read it online at *http://www.caliban.org/bash/index.shtml*.

The /etc/vimrc and ~/.vimrc Files

The LFS book installs Vim as its text editor. At this point it should be noted that there are a *lot* of different editing applications out there including Emacs, nano, Joe and many more. Anyone who has been around the Internet (especially usenet) for a short time will certainly have observed at least one flame war, usually involving Vim and Emacs users!

The LFS book creates a basic `vimrc` file. In this section you'll find an attempt to enhance this file. At startup, **vim** reads the global configuration file (`/etc/vimrc`) as well as a user-specific file (`~/.vimrc`). Either or both can be tailored to suit the needs of your particular system.

Here is a slightly expanded `.vimrc` that you can put in `~/.vimrc` to provide user specific effects. Of course, if you put it into `/etc/skel/.vimrc` instead, it will be made available to users you add to the system later. You can also copy the file from `/etc/skel/.vimrc` to the home directory of users already on the system, such as `root`. Be sure to set permissions, owner, and group if you do copy anything directly from `/etc/skel`.

```
" Begin .vimrc

set columns=80
set wrapmargin=8
set ruler

" End .vimrc
```

Note that the comment tags are " instead of the more usual # or //. This is correct, the syntax for `vimrc` is slightly unusual.

Below you'll find a quick explanation of what each of the options in this example file means here:

- `set columns=80`: This simply sets the number of columns used on the screen.
- `set wrapmargin=8`: This is the number of characters from the right window border where wrapping starts.
- `set ruler`: This makes **vim** show the current row and column at the bottom right of the screen.

More information on the *many* **vim** options can be found by reading the help inside **vim** itself. Do this by typing `:help` in **vim** to get the general help, or by typing `:help usr_toc.txt` to view the User Manual Table of Contents.

Customizing your Logon with /etc/issue

When you first boot up your new LFS system, the logon screen will be nice and plain (as it should be in a bare-bones system). Many people however, will want their system to display some information in the logon message. This can be accomplished using the file `/etc/issue`.

The `/etc/issue` file is a plain text file which will also accept certain escape sequences (see below) in order to insert information about the system. There is also the file `issue.net` which can be used when logging on remotely. **ssh** however, will only use it if you set the option in the configuration file and will *not* interpret the escape sequences shown below.

One of the most common things which people want to do is clear the screen at each logon. The easiest way of doing that is to put a "clear" escape sequence into `/etc/issue`. A simple way of doing this is to issue the command **clear > /etc/issue**. This will insert the relevant escape code into the start of the `/etc/issue` file. Note that if you do this, when you edit the file, you should leave the characters (normally '^[[H^[[2J') on the first line alone.

Note

Terminal escape sequences are special codes recognized by the terminal. The ^[represents an ASCII ESC character. The sequence ESC [H puts the cursor in the upper left hand corner of the screen and ESC 2 J erases the screen. For more information on terminal escape sequences see *http://rtfm.etla.org/xterm/ctlseq.html*

The following sequences are recognized by **agetty** (the program which usually parses `/etc/issue`). This information is from **man agetty** where you can find extra information about the logon process.

The `issue` file can contain certain character sequences to display various information. All `issue` sequences consist of a backslash (\) immediately followed by one of the letters explained below (so `\d` in `/etc/issue` would insert the current date).

```
b   Insert the baudrate of the current line.
d   Insert the current date.
s   Insert the system name, the name of the operating system.
l   Insert the name of the current tty line.
m   Insert the architecture identifier of the machine, e.g., i686.
n   Insert the nodename of the machine, also known as the hostname.
o   Insert the domainname of the machine.
r   Insert the release number of the kernel, e.g., 2.6.11.12.
t   Insert the current time.
u   Insert the number of current users logged in.
U   Insert the string "1 user" or "<n> users" where <n> is the
    number of current users logged in.
v   Insert the version of the OS, e.g., the build-date etc.
```

The /etc/shells File

The `shells` file contains a list of login shells on the system. Applications use this file to determine whether a shell is valid. For each shell a single line should be present, consisting of the shell's path, relative to the root of the directory structure (/).

For example, this file is consulted by **chsh** to determine whether an unprivileged user may change the login shell for her own account. If the command name is not listed, the user will be denied of change.

It is a requirement for applications such as GDM which does not populate the face browser if it can't find `/etc/shells`, or FTP daemons which traditionally disallow access to users with shells not included in this file.

```
cat > /etc/shells << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/shells

/bin/sh
/bin/bash

# End /etc/shells
EOF
```

Random Number Generation

The Linux kernel supplies a random number generator which is accessed through `/dev/random` and `/dev/urandom`. Programs that utilize the random and urandom devices, such as OpenSSH, will benefit from these instructions.

When a Linux system starts up without much operator interaction, the entropy pool (data used to compute a random number) may be in a fairly predictable state. This creates the real possibility that the number generated at startup may always be the same. In order to counteract this effect, you should carry the entropy pool information across your shut-downs and start-ups.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/random` init script included with the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-random
```

Compressing Man and Info Pages

Man and info reader programs can transparently process files compressed with **gzip** or **bzip2**, a feature you can use to free some disk space while keeping your documentation available. However, things are not that simple; man directories tend to contain links—hard and symbolic—which defeat simple ideas like recursively calling **gzip** on them. A better way to go is to use the script below. If you would prefer to download the file instead of creating it by typing or cut-and-pasting, you can find it at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/compressdoc* (the file should be installed in the `/usr/sbin` directory).

```
cat > /usr/sbin/compressdoc << "EOF"
#!/bin/bash
# VERSION: 20080421.1623
#
# Compress (with bzip2 or gzip) all man pages in a hierarchy and
# update symlinks - By Marc Heerdink <marc @ koelkast.net>
#
# Modified to be able to gzip or bzip2 files as an option and to deal
# with all symlinks properly by Mark Hymers <markh @ linuxfromscratch.org>
#
# Modified 20030930 by Yann E. Morin <yann.morin.1998 @ anciens.enib.fr>
# to accept compression/decompression, to correctly handle hard-links,
# to allow for changing hard-links into soft- ones, to specify the
# compression level, to parse the man.conf for all occurrences of MANPATH,
```

```
# to allow for a backup, to allow to keep the newest version of a page.
#
# Modified 20040330 by Tushar Teredesai to replace $0 by the name of the
# script.
#   (Note: It is assumed that the script is in the user's PATH)
#
# Modified 20050112 by Randy McMurchy to shorten line lengths and
# correct grammar errors.
#
# Modified 20060128 by Alexander E. Patrakov for compatibility with Man-DB.
#
# Modified 20060311 by Archaic to use Man-DB manpath utility which is a
# replacement for man --path from Man.
#
# Modified 20080421 by Dan Nicholson to properly execute the correct
# compressdoc when working recursively. This means the same compressdoc
# will be used whether a full path was given or it was resolved from PATH.
#
# Modified 20080421 by Dan Nicholson to be more robust with directories
# that don't exist or don't have sufficient permissions.
#
# Modified 20080421 by Lars Bamberger to (sort of) automatically choose
# a compression method based on the size of the manpage. A couple bug
# fixes were added by Dan Nicholson.
#
# Modified 20080421 by Dan Nicholson to suppress warnings from manpath
# since these are emitted when $MANPATH is set. Removed the TODO for
# using the $MANPATH variable since manpath(1) handles this already.
#
# TODO:
#     - choose a default compress method to be based on the available
#       tool : gzip or bzip2;
#     - offer an option to restore a previous backup;
#     - add other compression engines (compress, zip, etc?). Needed?

# Funny enough, this function prints some help.
function help ()
{
  if [ -n "$1" ]; then
    echo "Unknown option : $1"
  fi
  ( echo "Usage: $MY_NAME <comp_method> [options] [dirs]" && \
  cat << EOT
Where comp_method is one of :
  --gzip, --gz, -g
  --bzip2, --bz2, -b
                Compress using gzip or bzip2.
```

```
  --automatic
               Compress using either gzip or bzip2, depending on the
               size of the file to be compressed. Files larger than 5
               kB are bzipped, files larger than 1 kB are gzipped and
               files smaller than 1 kB are not compressed.

  --decompress, -d
               Decompress the man pages.

  --backup     Specify a .tar backup shall be done for all directories.
               In case a backup already exists, it is saved as .tar.old
               prior to making the new backup. If a .tar.old backup
               exists, it is removed prior to saving the backup.
               In backup mode, no other action is performed.

And where options are :
  -1 to -9, --fast, --best
               The compression level, as accepted by gzip and bzip2.
               When not specified, uses the default compression level
               for the given method (-6 for gzip, and -9 for bzip2).
               Not used when in backup or decompress modes.

  --force, -F  Force (re-)compression, even if the previous one was
               the same method. Useful when changing the compression
               ratio. By default, a page will not be re-compressed if
               it ends with the same suffix as the method adds
               (.bz2 for bzip2, .gz for gzip).

  --soft, -S   Change hard-links into soft-links. Use with _caution_
               as the first encountered file will be used as a
               reference. Not used when in backup mode.

  --hard, -H   Change soft-links into hard-links. Not used when in
               backup mode.

  --conf=dir, --conf dir
               Specify the location of man_db.conf. Defaults to /etc.

  --verbose, -v Verbose mode, print the name of the directory being
               processed. Double the flag to turn it even more verbose,
               and to print the name of the file being processed.

  --fake, -f   Fakes it. Print the actual parameters compressdoc will use.

  dirs         A list of space-separated _absolute_ pathnames to the
               man directories. When empty, and only then, use manpath
               to parse ${MAN_CONF}/man_db.conf for all valid occurrences
```

```
                of MANDATORY_MANPATH.

Note about compression:
  There has been a discussion on blfs-support about compression ratios of
  both gzip and bzip2 on man pages, taking into account the hosting fs,
  the architecture, etc... On the overall, the conclusion was that gzip
  was much more efficient on 'small' files, and bzip2 on 'big' files,
  small and big being very dependent on the content of the files.

  See the original post from Mickael A. Peters, titled
  "Bootable Utility CD", dated 20030409.1816(+0200), and subsequent posts:
  http://linuxfromscratch.org/pipermail/blfs-support/2003-April/038817.html

  On my system (x86, ext3), man pages were 35564KB before compression.
  gzip -9 compressed them down to 20372KB (57.28%), bzip2 -9 got down to
  19812KB (55.71%). That is a 1.57% gain in space. YMMV.

  What was not taken into consideration was the decompression speed. But
  does it make sense to? You gain fast access with uncompressed man
  pages, or you gain space at the expense of a slight overhead in time.
  Well, my P4-2.5GHz does not even let me notice this... :-)

EOT
) | less
}

# This function checks that the man page is unique amongst bzip2'd,
# gzip'd and uncompressed versions.
#  $1 the directory in which the file resides
#  $2 the file name for the man page
# Returns 0 (true) if the file is the latest and must be taken care of,
# and 1 (false) if the file is not the latest (and has therefore been
# deleted).
function check_unique ()
{
  # NB. When there are hard-links to this file, these are
  # _not_ deleted. In fact, if there are hard-links, they
  # all have the same date/time, thus making them ready
  # for deletion later on.

  # Build the list of all man pages with the same name
  DIR=$1
  BASENAME=`basename "${2}" .bz2`
  BASENAME=`basename "${BASENAME}" .gz`
  GZ_FILE="$BASENAME".gz
  BZ_FILE="$BASENAME".bz2
```

```
  # Look for, and keep, the most recent one
  LATEST=`(cd "$DIR"; ls -1rt "${BASENAME}" "${GZ_FILE}" "${BZ_FILE}" \
         2>/dev/null | tail -n 1)`
  for i in "${BASENAME}" "${GZ_FILE}" "${BZ_FILE}"; do
    [ "$LATEST" != "$i" ] && rm -f "$DIR"/"$i"
  done

  # In case the specified file was the latest, return 0
  [ "$LATEST" = "$2" ] && return 0
  # If the file was not the latest, return 1
  return 1
}

# Name of the script
MY_NAME=`basename $0`

# OK, parse the command-line for arguments, and initialize to some
# sensible state, that is: don't change links state, parse
# /etc/man_db.conf, be most silent, search man_db.conf in /etc, and don't
# force (re-)compression.
COMP_METHOD=
COMP_SUF=
COMP_LVL=
FORCE_OPT=
LN_OPT=
MAN_DIR=
VERBOSE_LVL=0
BACKUP=no
FAKE=no
MAN_CONF=/etc
while [ -n "$1" ]; do
  case $1 in
    --gzip|--gz|-g)
      COMP_SUF=.gz
      COMP_METHOD=$1
      shift
      ;;
    --bzip2|--bz2|-b)
      COMP_SUF=.bz2
      COMP_METHOD=$1
      shift
      ;;
    --automatic)
      COMP_SUF=TBD
      COMP_METHOD=$1
      shift
      ;;
```

```
    --decompress|-d)
      COMP_SUF=
      COMP_LVL=
      COMP_METHOD=$1
      shift
      ;;
    -[1-9]|--fast|--best)
      COMP_LVL=$1
      shift
      ;;
    --force|-F)
      FORCE_OPT=-F
      shift
      ;;
    --soft|-S)
      LN_OPT=-S
      shift
      ;;
    --hard|-H)
      LN_OPT=-H
      shift
      ;;
    --conf=*)
      MAN_CONF=`echo $1 | cut -d '=' -f2-`
      shift
      ;;
    --conf)
      MAN_CONF="$2"
      shift 2
      ;;
    --verbose|-v)
      let VERBOSE_LVL++
      shift
      ;;
    --backup)
      BACKUP=yes
      shift
      ;;
    --fake|-f)
      FAKE=yes
      shift
      ;;
    --help|-h)
      help
      exit 0
      ;;
    /*)
```

```
      MAN_DIR="${MAN_DIR} ${1}"
      shift
      ;;
    -*)
      help $1
      exit 1
      ;;
    *)
      echo "\"$1\" is not an absolute path name"
      exit 1
      ;;
  esac
done

# Redirections
case $VERBOSE_LVL in
  0)
     # 0, be silent
     DEST_FD0=/dev/null
     DEST_FD1=/dev/null
     VERBOSE_OPT=
     ;;
  1)
     # 1, be a bit verbose
     DEST_FD0=/dev/stdout
     DEST_FD1=/dev/null
     VERBOSE_OPT=-v
     ;;
  *)
     # 2 and above, be most verbose
     DEST_FD0=/dev/stdout
     DEST_FD1=/dev/stdout
     VERBOSE_OPT="-v -v"
     ;;
esac

# Note: on my machine, 'man --path' gives /usr/share/man twice, once
# with a trailing '/', once without.
if [ -z "$MAN_DIR" ]; then
  MAN_DIR=`manpath -q -C "$MAN_CONF"/man_db.conf \
            | sed 's/:/\\n/g' \
            | while read foo; do dirname "$foo"/.; done \
            | sort -u \
            | while read bar; do echo -n "$bar "; done`
fi

# If no MANDATORY_MANPATH in ${MAN_CONF}/man_db.conf, abort as well
```

```
if [ -z "$MAN_DIR" ]; then
  echo "No directory specified, and no directory found with \`manpath'"
  exit 1
fi

# Check that the specified directories actually exist and are readable
for DIR in $MAN_DIR; do
  if [ ! -d "$DIR" -o ! -r "$DIR" ]; then
    echo "Directory '$DIR' does not exist or is not readable"
    exit 1
  fi
done

# Fake?
if [ "$FAKE" != "no" ]; then
  echo "Actual parameters used:"
  echo -n "Compression.......: "
  case $COMP_METHOD in
    --bzip2|--bz2|-b) echo -n "bzip2";;
    --gzip|--gz|-g) echo -n "gzip";;
    --automatic) echo -n "compressing";;
    --decompress|-d) echo -n "decompressing";;
    *) echo -n "unknown";;
  esac
  echo " ($COMP_METHOD)"
  echo "Compression level.: $COMP_LVL"
  echo "Compression suffix: $COMP_SUF"
  echo -n "Force compression.: "
  [ "foo$FORCE_OPT" = "foo-F" ] && echo "yes" || echo "no"
  echo "man_db.conf is....: ${MAN_CONF}/man_db.conf"
  echo -n "Hard-links........: "
  [ "foo$LN_OPT" = "foo-S" ] &&
  echo "convert to soft-links" || echo "leave as is"
  echo -n "Soft-links........: "
  [ "foo$LN_OPT" = "foo-H" ] &&
  echo "convert to hard-links" || echo "leave as is"
  echo "Backup............: $BACKUP"
  echo "Faking (yes!).....: $FAKE"
  echo "Directories.......: $MAN_DIR"
  echo "Verbosity level...: $VERBOSE_LVL"
  exit 0
fi

# If no method was specified, print help
if [ -z "${COMP_METHOD}" -a "${BACKUP}" = "no" ]; then
  help
  exit 1
```

```
fi

# In backup mode, do the backup solely
if [ "$BACKUP" = "yes" ]; then
  for DIR in $MAN_DIR; do
    cd "${DIR}/.."
    if [ ! -w "`pwd`" ]; then
      echo "Directory ``pwd`' is not writable"
      exit 1
    fi
    DIR_NAME=`basename "${DIR}"`
    echo "Backing up $DIR..." > $DEST_FD0
    [ -f "${DIR_NAME}.tar.old" ] && rm -f "${DIR_NAME}.tar.old"
    [ -f "${DIR_NAME}.tar" ] &&
    mv "${DIR_NAME}.tar" "${DIR_NAME}.tar.old"
    tar -cvf "${DIR_NAME}.tar" "${DIR_NAME}" > $DEST_FD1
  done
  exit 0
fi

# I know MAN_DIR has only absolute path names
# I need to take into account the localized man, so I'm going recursive
for DIR in $MAN_DIR; do
  MEM_DIR=`pwd`
  if [ ! -w "$DIR" ]; then
    echo "Directory '$DIR' is not writable"
    exit 1
  fi
  cd "$DIR"
  for FILE in *; do
    # Fixes the case were the directory is empty
    if [ "foo$FILE" = "foo*" ]; then continue; fi

    # Fixes the case when hard-links see their compression scheme change
    # (from not compressed to compressed, or from bz2 to gz, or from gz
    # to bz2)
    # Also fixes the case when multiple version of the page are present,
    # which are either compressed or not.
    if [ ! -L "$FILE" -a ! -e "$FILE" ]; then continue; fi

    # Do not compress whatis files
    if [ "$FILE" = "whatis" ]; then continue; fi

    if [ -d "$FILE" ]; then
      # We are going recursive to that directory
      echo "-> Entering ${DIR}/${FILE}..." > $DEST_FD0
      # I need not pass --conf, as I specify the directory to work on
```

```
      # But I need exit in case of error. We must change back to the
      # original directory so $0 is resolved correctly.
      (cd "$MEM_DIR" && eval "$0" ${COMP_METHOD} ${COMP_LVL} ${LN_OPT} \
        ${VERBOSE_OPT} ${FORCE_OPT} "${DIR}/${FILE}") || exit $?
      echo "<- Leaving ${DIR}/${FILE}." > $DEST_FD1

    else # !dir
      if ! check_unique "$DIR" "$FILE"; then continue; fi

      # With automatic compression, get the uncompressed file size of
      # the file (dereferencing symlinks), and choose an appropriate
      # compression method.
      if [ "$COMP_METHOD" = "--automatic" ]; then
        declare -i SIZE
        case "$FILE" in
          *.bz2)
            SIZE=$(bzcat "$FILE" | wc -c) ;;
          *.gz)
            SIZE=$(zcat "$FILE" | wc -c) ;;
          *)
            SIZE=$(wc -c < "$FILE") ;;
        esac
        if (( $SIZE >= (5 * 2**10) )); then
          COMP_SUF=.bz2
        elif (( $SIZE >= (1 * 2**10) )); then
          COMP_SUF=.gz
        else
          COMP_SUF=
        fi
      fi

      # Check if the file is already compressed with the specified method
      BASE_FILE=`basename "$FILE" .gz`
      BASE_FILE=`basename "$BASE_FILE" .bz2`
      if [ "${FILE}" = "${BASE_FILE}${COMP_SUF}" \
         -a "foo${FORCE_OPT}" = "foo" ]; then continue; fi

      # If we have a symlink
      if [ -h "$FILE" ]; then
        case "$FILE" in
          *.bz2)
            EXT=bz2 ;;
          *.gz)
            EXT=gz ;;
          *)
            EXT=none ;;
        esac
```

```
      if [ ! "$EXT" = "none" ]; then
        LINK=`ls -l "$FILE" | cut -d ">" -f2 \
             | tr -d " " | sed s/\.$EXT$//`
        NEWNAME=`echo "$FILE" | sed s/\.$EXT$//`
        mv "$FILE" "$NEWNAME"
        FILE="$NEWNAME"
      else
        LINK=`ls -l "$FILE" | cut -d ">" -f2 | tr -d " "`
      fi

      if [ "$LN_OPT" = "-H" ]; then
        # Change this soft-link into a hard- one
        rm -f "$FILE" && ln "${LINK}$COMP_SUF" "${FILE}$COMP_SUF"
        chmod --reference "${LINK}$COMP_SUF" "${FILE}$COMP_SUF"
      else
        # Keep this soft-link a soft- one.
        rm -f "$FILE" && ln -s "${LINK}$COMP_SUF" "${FILE}$COMP_SUF"
      fi
      echo "Relinked $FILE" > $DEST_FD1

    # else if we have a plain file
    elif [ -f "$FILE" ]; then
      # Take care of hard-links: build the list of files hard-linked
      # to the one we are {de,}compressing.
      # NB. This is not optimum has the file will eventually be
      # compressed as many times it has hard-links. But for now,
      # that's the safe way.
      inode=`ls -li "$FILE" | awk '{print $1}'`
      HLINKS=`find . \! -name "$FILE" -inum $inode`

      if [ -n "$HLINKS" ]; then
        # We have hard-links! Remove them now.
        for i in $HLINKS; do rm -f "$i"; done
      fi

      # Now take care of the file that has no hard-link
      # We do decompress first to re-compress with the selected
      # compression ratio later on...
      case "$FILE" in
        *.bz2)
          bunzip2 $FILE
          FILE=`basename "$FILE" .bz2`
        ;;
        *.gz)
          gunzip $FILE
          FILE=`basename "$FILE" .gz`
```

```
          ;;
        esac

        # Compress the file with the given compression ratio, if needed
        case $COMP_SUF in
          *bz2)
            bzip2 ${COMP_LVL} "$FILE" && chmod 644 "${FILE}${COMP_SUF}"
            echo "Compressed $FILE" > $DEST_FD1
            ;;
          *gz)
            gzip ${COMP_LVL} "$FILE" && chmod 644 "${FILE}${COMP_SUF}"
            echo "Compressed $FILE" > $DEST_FD1
            ;;
          *)
            echo "Uncompressed $FILE" > $DEST_FD1
            ;;
        esac

        # If the file had hard-links, recreate those (either hard or soft)
        if [ -n "$HLINKS" ]; then
          for i in $HLINKS; do
            NEWFILE=`echo "$i" | sed s/\.gz$// | sed s/\.bz2$//`
            if [ "$LN_OPT" = "-S" ]; then
              # Make this hard-link a soft- one
              ln -s "${FILE}$COMP_SUF" "${NEWFILE}$COMP_SUF"
            else
              # Keep the hard-link a hard- one
              ln "${FILE}$COMP_SUF" "${NEWFILE}$COMP_SUF"
            fi
            # Really work only for hard-links. Harmless for soft-links
            chmod 644 "${NEWFILE}$COMP_SUF"
          done
        fi

      else
        # There is a problem when we get neither a symlink nor a plain
        # file. Obviously, we shall never ever come here... :-(
        echo -n "Whaooo... \"${DIR}/${FILE}\" is neither a symlink "
        echo "nor a plain file. Please check:"
        ls -l "${DIR}/${FILE}"
        exit 1
      fi
    fi
  done # for FILE
done # for DIR

EOF
```

As `root`, make **compressdoc** executable for all users:

```
chmod -v 755 /usr/sbin/compressdoc
```

Now, as `root`, you can issue the command **compressdoc --bz2** to compress all your system man pages. You can also run **compressdoc --help** to get comprehensive help about what the script is able to do.

Don't forget that a few programs, like the X Window System and XEmacs also install their documentation in non-standard places (such as `/usr/X11R6/man`, etc.). Be sure to add these locations to the file `/etc/man_db.conf`, as `MANDATORY_MANPATH </path>` lines.

Example:

```
    ...
    MANDATORY_MANPATH                       /usr/share/man
    MANDATORY_MANPATH                       /usr/X11R6/man
    MANDATORY_MANPATH                       /usr/local/man
    MANDATORY_MANPATH                       /opt/qt/doc/man
    ...
```

Generally, package installation systems do not compress man/info pages, which means you will need to run the script again if you want to keep the size of your documentation as small as possible. Also, note that running the script after upgrading a package is safe; when you have several versions of a page (for example, one compressed and one uncompressed), the most recent one is kept and the others are deleted.

Automate Mounting of File Systems

Introduction to Autofs

The Autofs package contains userspace tools that work with the kernel to mount and un-mount removable file systems. The primary use is to mount external network file systems like NFS (see NFS Utilities-1.1.2) or Samba (see Samba-3.0.30) on demand.

It may also be useful for allowing users to mount floppies, cdroms and other removable storage devices without requiring the system administrator to mount the devices although this capability is now generally provided by HAL (see HAL-0.5.9.1). This may not be ideal for all installations, so be aware of the risks before implementing this feature.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/daemons/autofs/v5/autofs-5.0.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/daemons/autofs/v5/autofs-5.0.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 27839fe6fa8105b2b7d31bc922fd7cf6
- Download size: 221 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

Recommended Patches: There are frequent patches issued for Autofs. One method you can use to get the current patches requires first installing the Wget-1.10.2 package. After ensuring the **wget** command is installed in a directory identified in the PATH variable, start in the same directory as the main tar file and issue the following commands:

```
wget http://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/daemons/autofs/v5/patch_order-5.0.3 &&
sed 's;autofs;http://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/daemons/autofs/v5/autofs;' \
    patch_order-5.0.3 > wget-list &&
wget -i wget-list
```

Autofs Dependencies

Optional

OpenLDAP-2.3.39 and Cyrus SASL-2.1.22

Kernel Configuration

Verify that kernel support has been compiled in or built as modules in the following areas:

```
File systems #
    Kernel automounter version 4 support  Y or M
    Network File Systems #
        NFS file system support     Y or M (optional)
        SMB file system support     Y or M (optional)
```

Recompile and install the new kernel, if necessary.

Installation of Autofs

Install Autofs by running the following commands:

```
for f in `cat ../patch_order-5.0.3`; do
  patch -Np1 -i ../$f
done &&
./configure --prefix=/ --mandir=/usr/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -sf  ../init.d/autofs /etc/rc.d/rcsysinit.d/S52autofs
```

Command Explanations

for f in `cat ../patch_order-5.0.3`; do patch -Np1 -i ../$f; done: This command applies all the patches downloaded earlier in the correct order.

ln -sf ../init.d/autofs /etc/rc.d/rcsysinit.d/S52autofs: This command sets the link to properly start autofs upon boot.

Configuring Autofs

Config Files

`/etc/sysconfig/autofs.conf`, `/etc/auto.master`, `/etc/auto.misc`, and `/etc/auto.net`

Configuration Information

The installation process creates `auto.master`, `auto.misc`, `auto.smb`, and `auto.net`. Replace the `auto.master` file with the following commands:

```
mv /etc/auto.master /etc/auto.master.bak &&
cat > /etc/auto.master << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/auto.master

/media/auto  /etc/auto.misc  --ghost
#/home        /etc/auto.home

# End /etc/auto.master
EOF
```

This file creates a new media directory, `/media/auto` that will overlay any existing directory of the same name. In this example, the file, `/etc/auto.misc`, has a line:

```
cd   -fstype=iso9660,ro,nosuid,nodev :/dev/cdrom
```

that will mount a cdrom as `/media/auto/cd` if that directory is accessed. The `--ghost` option tells the automounter to create “ghost” versions (i.e. empty directories) of all the mount points listed in the configuration file regardless whether any of the file systems are actually mounted or not. This is very convenient and highly

recommended, because it will show you the available auto-mountable file systems as existing directories, even when their file systems aren't currently mounted. Without the `--ghost` option, you'll have to remember the names of the directories. As soon as you try to access one of them, the directory will be created and the file system will be mounted. When the file system gets unmounted again, the directory is destroyed too, unless the `--ghost` option was given.

Note

An alternative method would be to specify another automount location such as `/var/lib/auto/cdrom` and create a symbolic link from `/media/cdrom` to the automount location.

The `auto.misc` file must be configured to your working hardware. The loaded configuration file should load your cdrom if `/dev/cdrom` is active or it can be edited to match your device setup. Examples for floppies are available in the file and easily activated. Documentation for this file is available using the **man 5 autofs** command.

In the second line, if enabled, a user's home directory would be mounted via NFS upon login. The `/etc/home.auto` would need to exist and have an entry similar to:

```
joe  example.org:/export/home/joe
```

where the directory `/export/home/joe` is exported via NFS from the system example.org. NFS shares are covered on the next page.

This package could also be used to mount SMB shares, however that feature is not configured in these instructions. For additional configuration information, see the man pages for auto.master(5). There are also web resources such as this *AUTOFS HOWTO* available.

Contents

Installed Program:	automount
Installed Libraries:	lookup_file.so, lookup_hosts.so, lookup_multi.so, lookup_nisplus.so, lookup_program.so, lookup_userhome.so, lookup_yp.so, mount_afs.so, mount_autofs.so, mount_bind.so, mount_changer.so, mount_ext2.so, mount_generic.so, mount_nfs.so, parse_sun.so
Installed Directories:	/lib/autofs and /var/run/autofs

Short Descriptions

automount is the daemon that performs the mounting when a request is made for the device.

Configuring for Network Filesystems

While LFS is capable of mounting network file systems such as NFS, these are not mounted by the `mountfs` init script. Network file systems must be mounted after the networking is activated and unmounted before the network goes down. The `netfs` bootscript was written to handle both boot-time mounting of network filesystems, if the entry in `/etc/fstab` contains the `_netdev` option, and unmounting of all network filesystems before the network is brought down.

As the `root` user, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/netfs` bootscript included with the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-netfs
```

Chapter 4. Security

Security takes many forms in a computing environment. This chapter gives examples of three different types of security: access, prevention and detection.

Access for users is usually handled by **login** or an application designed to handle the login function. In this chapter, we show how to enhance **login** by setting policies with PAM modules. Access via networks can also be secured by policies set by iptables, commonly referred to as a firewall. The Network Security Services (NSS) and Netscape Portable Runtime (NSPR) libraries can be installed and shared among the many applications requiring them. For applications that don't offer the best security, you can use the Stunnel package to wrap an application daemon inside an SSL tunnel.

Prevention of breaches, like a trojan, are assisted by applications like GnuPG, specifically the ability to confirm signed packages, which recognizes modifications of the tarball after the packager creates it.

Finally, we touch on detection with a package that stores "signatures" of critical files (defined by the administrator) and then regenerates those "signatures" and compares for files that have been changed.

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Introduction to OpenSSL

The OpenSSL package contains management tools and libraries relating to cryptography. These are useful for providing cryptography functions to other packages, notably OpenSSH, email applications and web browsers (for accessing HTTPS sites).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.openssl.org/source/openssl-0.9.8g.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.openssl.org/source/openssl-0.9.8g.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: acf70a16359bf3658bdfb74bda1c4419
- Download size: 3.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 40 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.2 SBU (additional 0.5 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/openssl-0.9.8g-fix_manpages-1.patch*

OpenSSL Dependencies

Optional

bc-1.06 (recommended if you run the test suite during the build)

Installation of OpenSSL

Install OpenSSL by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../openssl-0.9.8g-fix_manpages-1.patch &&
./config --openssldir=/etc/ssl --prefix=/usr shared &&
make MANDIR=/usr/share/man
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make MANDIR=/usr/share/man install &&
cp -v -r certs /etc/ssl &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/openssl-0.9.8g &&
cp -v -r doc/{HOWTO,README,*.{txt,html,gif}} \
    /usr/share/doc/openssl-0.9.8g
```

Command Explanations

`no-rc5 no-idea`: When added to the **./config** command, this will eliminate the building of those encryption methods. Patent licenses may be needed for you to utilize either of those methods in your projects.

`enable-tlsext`: When added to the **./config** command, this switch will enable TLS Extensions. Currently this is only RFC 3546 and 4507bis for Server Name Indication. This allows the use of multiple SSL certificates with multiple virtual hosts in Apache, while using only one IP address and one port for all virtual hosts.

make MANDIR=/usr/share/man; make MANDIR=/usr/share/man install: These commands install OpenSSL with the man pages in `/usr/share/man` instead of `/etc/ssl/man`.

cp -v -r certs /etc/ssl: The certificates must be copied manually as the default installation skips this step.

Configuring OpenSSL

Config Files

`/etc/ssl/openssl.cnf`

Configuration Information

Most people who just want to use OpenSSL for providing functions to other programs such as OpenSSH and web browsers won't need to worry about configuring OpenSSL. Configuring OpenSSL is an advanced topic and so those who do would normally be expected to either know how to do it or to be able to find out how to do it.

Contents

Installed Programs:	c_rehash and openssl
Installed Libraries:	libcrypto.{so,a}, libssl.{so,a}, and additional encryption libraries in /usr/lib/engines/ (lib4758cca.so, libaep.so, libatalla.so, libchil.so, libcswift.so, libgmp.so, libnuron.so, libsureware.so and libubsec.so)
Installed Directories:	/etc/ssl, /usr/include/ssl, /usr/lib/engines and /usr/share/doc/openssl-0.9.8g

Short Descriptions

c_rehash	is a Perl script that scans all files in a directory and adds symbolic links to their hash values.
openssl	is a command-line tool for using the various cryptography functions of OpenSSL's crypto library from the shell. It can be used for various functions which are documented in **man 1 openssl**.
`libcrypto.{so,a}`	implements a wide range of cryptographic algorithms used in various Internet standards. The services provided by this library are used by the OpenSSL implementations of SSL, TLS and S/MIME, and they have also been used to implement OpenSSH, OpenPGP, and other cryptographic standards.
`libssl.{so,a}`	implements the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL v2/v3) and Transport Layer Security (TLS v1) protocols. It provides a rich API, documentation on which can be found by running **man 3 ssl**.

GnuTLS-1.6.3

Introduction to GnuTLS

The GnuTLS package contains a library and userspace tools which provide a secure layer over a reliable transport layer. Currently the GnuTLS library implements the proposed standards by the IETF's TLS working group. Quoting from the TLS protocol specification:

“The TLS protocol provides communications privacy over the Internet. The protocol allows client/server applications to communicate in a way that is designed to prevent eavesdropping, tampering, or message forgery.”

GnuTLS provides support for TLS 1.1, TLS 1.0 and SSL 3.0 protocols, TLS extensions, including server name and max record size. Additionally, the library supports authentication using the SRP protocol, X.509 certificates and OpenPGP keys, along with support for the TLS Pre-Shared-Keys (PSK) extension, the Inner Application (TLS/IA) extension and X.509 and OpenPGP certificate handling.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.gnu.org/software/gnutls/releases/gnutls-1.6.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnutls.org/pub/gnutls/gnutls-1.6.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 73da68a4248d34c4d38491ce2119af0f
- Download size: 4.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 49 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

GnuTLS Dependencies

Required

Libgcrypt-1.2.4

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8, *OpenCDK*, *Tiny ASN.1*, *libcfg+*, LZO-2.02, and *Valgrind* (used during the test suite)

Optional Debugging Libraries

Dmalloc and *Electric Fence*

Installation of GnuTLS

Install GnuTLS by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnutls-1.6.3/reference &&
install -v -m644    doc/reference/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnutls-1.6.3/reference &&
install -v -m644    doc/*.{html,png,eps,pdf,ps} \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnutls-1.6.3
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	certtool, gnutls-cli, gnutls-cli-debug, gnutls-serv, libgnutls-config, libgnutls-extra-config, psktool, and srptool
Installed Libraries:	libgnutls.{so,a}, libgnutls-extra.{so,a}, libgnutls-openssl.{so,a}, and libgnutlsxx.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/include/gnutls and /usr/share/doc/gnutls-1.6.3

Short Descriptions

certtool	is used to generate X.509 certificates, certificate requests, and private keys.
gnutls-cli	is a simple client program to set up a TLS connection to some other computer.
gnutls-cli-debug	is a simple client program to set up a TLS connection to some other computer and produces very verbose progress results.
gnutls-serv	is a simple server program that listens to incoming TLS connections.
gnutls-config	is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the gnutls(3) library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the gnutls(3) library.
gnutls-extra-config	is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the gnutls-extra(3) library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the gnutls-extra(3) library.
psktool	is a simple program that generates random keys for use with TLS-PSK.
srptool	is a simple program that emulates the programs in the Stanford SRP (Secure Remote Password) libraries using GNU TLS.
`libgnutls.{so,a}`	contains the core API functions and X.509 certificate API functions.

CrackLib-2.8.12

Introduction to CrackLib

The CrackLib package contains a library used to enforce strong passwords by comparing user selected passwords to words in chosen word lists.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/cracklib/cracklib-2.8.12.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/cracklib-2.8.12.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 580346fa1012f9d9769192f49d3801fa
- Download size: 576 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 29 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Recommended word list for English-speaking countries (size: 4.4 MB; md5sum: f8be7949b1bbc044e36039598a7819d9): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/cracklib/cracklib-words-20080203.gz*

There are additional word lists available for download, e.g., from *http://www.cotse.com/tools/wordlists.htm*. CrackLib can utilize as many, or as few word lists you choose to install.

Important

Users tend to base their passwords on regular words of the spoken language, and crackers know that. CrackLib is intended to filter out such bad passwords at the source using a dictionary created from word lists. To accomplish this, the word list(s) for use with CrackLib must be an exhaustive list of words and word-based keystroke combinations likely to be chosen by users of the system as (guessable) passwords.

The default word list recommended above for downloading mostly satisfies this role in English-speaking countries. In other situations, it may be necessary to download (or even create) additional word lists.

Note that word lists suitable for spell-checking are not usable as CrackLib word lists in countries with non-Latin based alphabets, because of “word-based keystroke combinations” that make bad passwords.

CrackLib Dependencies

Optional

Python-2.5.2

Installation of CrackLib

Install CrackLib by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --with-default-dict=/lib/cracklib/pw_dict &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
mv -v /usr/lib/libcrack.so.2* /lib &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libcrack.so.2.8.0 /usr/lib/libcrack.so
```

Issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the recommended word list and create the CrackLib dictionary. Other word lists (text based, one word per line) can also be used by simply installing them into `/usr/share/dict` and adding them to the **create-cracklib-dict** command.

```
install -v -m644 -D ../cracklib-words-20080203.gz \
    /usr/share/dict/cracklib-words.gz &&
gunzip -v /usr/share/dict/cracklib-words.gz &&
ln -v -s cracklib-words /usr/share/dict/words &&
echo $(hostname) >>/usr/share/dict/cracklib-extra-words &&
install -v -m755 -d /lib/cracklib &&
create-cracklib-dict /usr/share/dict/cracklib-words \
                     /usr/share/dict/cracklib-extra-words
```

If desired, check the proper operation of the library as an unprivileged user by creating a test data file and running the tests using the following commands:

```
cat > test-data <<"EOF" &&
antzer
G@ndalf
neulinger
lantzer
Pa$$w0rd
PaS$W0rd
Pas$w0rd
Pas$W0rd
Pa$sw0rd
Pa$sW0rd
EOF

make test
```

Important

If you are installing CrackLib after your LFS system has been completed and you have the Shadow package installed, you must reinstall Shadow-4.0.18.1 if you wish to provide strong password support on your system. If you are now going to install the Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 package, you may disregard this note as Shadow will be reinstalled after the Linux-PAM installation.

Command Explanations

`--with-default-dict=/lib/cracklib/pw_dict`: This parameter forces the installation of the CrackLib dictionary to the `/lib` hierarchy.

mv -v /usr/lib/libcrack.so.2* /lib and **ln -v -sf ../../lib/libcrack.so.2.8.0 ...**: These two commands move the `libcrack.so.2.8.0` library and associated symlink from `/usr/lib` to `/lib`, then recreates the `/usr/lib/libcrack.so` symlink pointing to the relocated file.

install -v -m644 -D ...: This command creates the `/usr/share/dict` directory (if it doesn't already exist) and installs the compressed word list there.

ln -v -s cracklib-words /usr/share/dict/words: The word list is linked to `/usr/share/dict/words` as historically, `words` is the primary word list in the `/usr/share/dict` directory. Omit this command if you already have a `/usr/share/dict/words` file installed on your system.

echo $(hostname) >>...: The value of **hostname** is echoed to a file called `cracklib-extra-words`. This extra file is intended to be a site specific list which includes easy to guess passwords such as company or department names, user's names, product names, computer names, domain names, etc.

create-cracklib-dict ...: This command creates the CrackLib dictionary from the word lists. Modify the command to add any additional word lists you have installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cracklib-check, cracklib-format, cracklib-packer, cracklib-unpacker and create-cracklib-dict
Installed Libraries:	libcrack.{so,a} and the cracklibmodule.{so,a} Python module
Installed Directories:	/lib/cracklib, /usr/share/dict and /usr/share/cracklib

Short Descriptions

`create-cracklib-dict`	is used to create the CrackLib dictionary from the given word list(s).
`libcrack.{so,a}`	provides a fast dictionary lookup method for strong password enforcement.

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0

Introduction to Linux-PAM

The Linux-PAM package contains Pluggable Authentication Modules. This is useful to enable the local system administrator to choose how applications authenticate users.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/pam/pre/library/Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/pam/pre/library/Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: be4dd1d34ac5933408e13e48f3eb710a
- Download size: 911 kB
- Estimated disk space required: 23 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Optional documentation: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0-docs.tar.bz2*

Linux-PAM Dependencies

Optional

CrackLib-2.8.12, and *Prelude*

Optional (To {,Re}build the Documentation)

libxslt-1.1.22, DocBook XML DTD-4.5, DocBook XSL Stylesheets-1.71.1, w3m, and FOP-0.93

Installation of Linux-PAM

If you downloaded the documentation, unpack the tarball from the same top-level directory you unpacked the source tarball from. The files will unpack into the correct directories of the source tree.

Install Linux-PAM by running the following commands:

```
./configure --libdir=/lib \
            --sbindir=/lib/security \
            --enable-securedir=/lib/security \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 \
            --enable-read-both-confs \
            --with-xauth=/usr/X11R6/bin/xauth &&
make
```

The test suite will not provide meaningful results until the package has been installed and minimally configured. If, after installing the package and creating a minimum configuration as shown below in the 'other' example, you wish to run the tests, issue **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod -v 4755 /lib/security/unix_chkpwd &&

mv -v /lib/security/pam_tally /sbin &&

mv -v /lib/libpam{,c,_misc}.la /usr/lib &&
sed -i 's| /lib| /usr/lib|' /usr/lib/libpam_misc.la &&

if [ -L /lib/libpam.so ]; then
   for LINK in libpam{,c,_misc}.so; do
       ln -v -sf ../../lib/$(readlink /lib/${LINK}) /usr/lib/${LINK} &&
       rm -v /lib/${LINK}
   done
fi
```

Command Explanations

`--libdir=/lib`: This parameter results in the libraries being installed in `/lib` as they may be required in single-user mode.

`--sbindir=/lib/security`: This parameter results in two executables, one of which is not intended to be run from the command line, being installed in the same directory as the PAM modules. The other executable is later moved to the `/sbin` directory.

`--enable-securedir=/lib/security`: This parameter results in the PAM modules being installed in `/lib/security`.

`--docdir=...`: This parameter results in the documentation being installed in a versioned directory name.

`--enable-read-both-confs`: This parameter allows the local administrator to choose which configuration file setup to use.

`--with-xauth=/usr/X11R6/bin/xauth`: This parameter forces the build of the pam_xauth module, even if xauth is not yet installed. Omit this switch if you have no plans to build Xorg, or modify the path if you intend to install Xorg into a non-standard path.

chmod -v 4755 /lib/security/unix_chkpwd: The **unix_chkpwd** password-helper program must be setuid so that non-`root` processes can access the shadow-password file.

mv -v /lib/security/pam_tally /sbin: The **pam_tally** program is designed to be run by the system administrator, possibly in single-user mode, so it is moved to the appropriate directory.

mv -v /lib/libpam{,c,_misc}.la /usr/lib: This command moves the Libtool library files to `/usr/lib` as they are expected to reside there.

sed -i 's| /lib| /usr/lib|' /usr/lib/libpam_misc.la: This command corrects an installation reference due to the file being moved in the previous step.

for ...; do ...; done: These commands are used to relocate the `.so` symbolic links into the `/usr/lib` directory by cloning and then removing the existing symlinks. Using **readlink** ensures the new symlinks point at the correct library filenames.

Configuring Linux-PAM

Config Files

`/etc/security/*` and `/etc/pam.d/*` or `/etc/pam.conf`

Configuration Information

Configuration information is placed in `/etc/pam.d/` or `/etc/pam.conf` depending on system administrator preference. Below are example files of each type:

```
# Begin /etc/pam.d/other

auth            required        pam_unix.so     nullok
account         required        pam_unix.so
session         required        pam_unix.so
password        required        pam_unix.so     nullok

# End /etc/pam.d/other

# Begin /etc/pam.conf

other           auth            required        pam_unix.so     nullok
other           account         required        pam_unix.so
other           session         required        pam_unix.so
other           password        required        pam_unix.so     nullok

# End /etc/pam.conf
```

The PAM man page (**man pam**) provides a good starting point for descriptions of fields and allowable entries. The *Linux-PAM System Administrators' Guide* is recommended for additional information.

Refer to *http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/pam/modules.html* for a list of various modules available.

Important

You should now reinstall the Shadow-4.0.18.1 package.

Contents

Installed Program:	pam_tally
Installed Libraries:	libpam.{so,a}, libpamc.{so,a}, and libpam_misc.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/pam.d, /etc/security, /lib/security and /usr/include/security

Short Descriptions

pam_tally	is used to view or manipulate the `faillog` file.
`libpam.{so,a}`	provides the interfaces between applications and the PAM modules.

Shadow-4.0.18.1

Introduction to Shadow

Shadow was indeed installed in LFS and there is no reason to reinstall it unless you installed CrackLib or Linux-PAM after your LFS system was completed. If you have installed CrackLib after LFS, then reinstalling Shadow will enable strong password support. If you have installed Linux-PAM, reinstalling Shadow will allow programs such as **login** and **su** to utilize PAM.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/LFS/lfs-packages/development/shadow-4.0.18.1.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: e7751d46ecf219c07ae0b028ab3335c6
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 18 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/shadow-4.0.18.1-useradd_fix-2.patch*

Shadow Dependencies

Required

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 and/or CrackLib-2.8.12

Installation of Shadow

Important

The installation shown below is for a situation where Linux-PAM has been installed (with or without a CrackLib installation) and Shadow is being reinstalled to support the Linux-PAM installation. If you are reinstalling Shadow to provide strong password support via the CrackLib library and you have not installed Linux-PAM, ensure you add the `--with-libcrack` parameter to the **configure** script below.

Reinstall Shadow by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../shadow-4.0.18.1-useradd_fix-2.patch &&

./configure --libdir=/lib \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --enable-shared \
            --without-selinux &&

sed -i 's/groups$(EXEEXT) //' src/Makefile &&
find man -name Makefile -exec sed -i 's/groups\.1 / /' {} \; &&
sed -i -e 's/ ko//' -e 's/ zh_CN zh_TW//' man/Makefile &&

for i in de es fi fr id it pt_BR; do
    convert-mans UTF-8 ISO-8859-1 man/${i}/*.?
done &&

for i in cs hu pl; do
    convert-mans UTF-8 ISO-8859-2 man/${i}/*.?
done &&

convert-mans UTF-8 EUC-JP man/ja/*.? &&
convert-mans UTF-8 KOI8-R man/ru/*.? &&
convert-mans UTF-8 ISO-8859-9 man/tr/*.? &&

make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
mv -v /usr/bin/passwd /bin &&
mv -v /lib/libshadow.*a /usr/lib &&
rm -v /lib/libshadow.so &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libshadow.so.0 /usr/lib/libshadow.so
```

Command Explanations

`--without-selinux`: Support for selinux is enabled by default, but selinux is not built in a base LFS system. The **configure** script will fail if this option is not used.

sed -i 's/groups$(EXEEXT) //' src/Makefile: This command is used to suppress the installation of the **groups** program as the version from the Coreutils package installed during LFS is preferred.

find man -name Makefile -exec ... {} \;: This command is used to suppress the installation of the **groups** man pages so the existing ones installed from the Coreutils package are not replaced.

sed -i -e '...' -e '...' man/Makefile: This command disables the installation of Chinese and Korean manual pages, since Man-DB cannot format them properly.

convert-mans ...: These commands are used to convert some of the man pages so that Man-DB will display them in the expected encodings.

mv -v /usr/bin/passwd /bin: The **passwd** program may be needed during times when the `/usr` filesystem is not mounted so it is moved into the root partition.

mv -v ...; rm -v ...; ln -v ...: These commands are used to move the `libshadow` library to the root partition to support the moving of the **passwd** program earlier.

Configuring Shadow

Shadow's stock configuration for the **useradd** utility is not suitable for LFS systems. Use the following commands as the `root` user to change the default home directory for new users and prevent the creation of mail spool files:

```
useradd -D -b /home &&
sed -i 's/yes/no/' /etc/default/useradd
```

Configuring Linux-PAM to Work with Shadow

Note

The rest of this page is devoted to configuring Shadow to work properly with Linux-PAM. If you do not have Linux-PAM installed, and you reinstalled Shadow to support strong passwords via the CrackLib library, no further configuration is required.

Config Files

`/etc/pam.d/*` or alternatively `/etc/pam.conf, /etc/login.defs and /etc/security/*`

Configuration Information

Configuring your system to use Linux-PAM can be a complex task. The information below will provide a basic setup so that Shadow's login and password functionality will work effectively with Linux-PAM. Review the information and links on the Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 page for further configuration information. For information specific to integrating Shadow, Linux-PAM and CrackLib, you can visit the following links:

- *http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/pam/Linux-PAM-html/pam-6.html#ss6.3*
- *http://www.deer-run.com/~hal/sysadmin/pam_cracklib.html*

Configuring /etc/login.defs

The **login** program currently performs many functions which Linux-PAM modules should now handle. The following **sed** command will comment out the appropriate lines in `/etc/login.defs`, and stop **login** from performing these functions (a backup file named `/etc/login.defs.orig` is also created to preserve the original file's contents). Issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 /etc/login.defs /etc/login.defs.orig &&
for FUNCTION in LASTLOG_ENAB MAIL_CHECK_ENAB \
                PORTTIME_CHECKS_ENAB CONSOLE \
                MOTD_FILE NOLOGINS_FILE PASS_MIN_LEN \
                SU_WHEEL_ONLY MD5_CRYPT_ENAB \
                CONSOLE_GROUPS ENVIRON_FILE \
                ULIMIT ENV_TZ ENV_HZ ENV_SUPATH \
                ENV_PATH QMAIL_DIR MAIL_DIR MAIL_FILE \
                CHFN_AUTH FAILLOG_ENAB QUOTAS_ENAB FTMP_FILE \
                OBSCURE_CHECKS_ENAB CRACKLIB_DICTPATH \
                PASS_CHANGE_TRIES PASS_ALWAYS_WARN ISSUE_FILE
do
    sed -i "s/^$FUNCTION/# &/" /etc/login.defs
done
```

Configuring the /etc/pam.d/ Files

As mentioned previously in the Linux-PAM instructions, Linux-PAM has two supported methods for configuration. The commands below assume that you've chosen to use a directory based configuration, where each program has its own configuration file. You can optionally use a single `/etc/pam.conf` configuration file by using the text from the files below, and supplying the program name as an additional first field for each line.

As the `root` user, create the `/etc/pam.d` directory with the following command:

```
install -v -d -m755 /etc/pam.d
```

While still the `root` user, add the following Linux-PAM configuration files to the `/etc/pam.d/` directory (or add the contents to the `/etc/pam.conf` file) with the following commands:

'login' (with CrackLib)

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/login << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/login

auth        requisite      pam_nologin.so
auth        required       pam_securetty.so
auth        required       pam_unix.so
account     required       pam_access.so
account     required       pam_unix.so
session     required       pam_env.so
session     required       pam_motd.so
session     required       pam_limits.so
session     optional       pam_mail.so      dir=/var/mail standard
session     optional       pam_lastlog.so
session     required       pam_unix.so
password    required       pam_cracklib.so  retry=3
password    required       pam_unix.so      md5 shadow use_authtok

# End /etc/pam.d/login
EOF
```

'login' (without CrackLib)

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/login << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/login

auth        requisite      pam_nologin.so
auth        required       pam_securetty.so
auth        required       pam_env.so
auth        required       pam_unix.so
account     required       pam_access.so
account     required       pam_unix.so
session     required       pam_motd.so
session     required       pam_limits.so
session     optional       pam_mail.so      dir=/var/mail standard
session     optional       pam_lastlog.so
session     required       pam_unix.so
password    required       pam_unix.so      md5 shadow

# End /etc/pam.d/login
EOF
```

'passwd' (with CrackLib)

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/passwd << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/passwd

password    required       pam_cracklib.so  type=Linux retry=1 \
                                            difok=5 diffignore=23 minlen=9 \
                                            dcredit=1 ucredit=1 lcredit=1 \
                                            ocredit=1 \
                                            dictpath=/lib/cracklib/pw_dict
password    required       pam_unix.so      md5 shadow use_authtok

# End /etc/pam.d/passwd
EOF
```

Note

In its default configuration, owing to credits, pam_cracklib will allow multiple case passwords as short as 6 characters, even with the *minlen* value set to 11. You should review the pam_cracklib(8) man page and determine if these default values are acceptable for the security of your system.

'passwd' (without CrackLib)

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/passwd << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/passwd

password    required       pam_unix.so      md5 shadow

# End /etc/pam.d/passwd
EOF
```

'su'

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/su << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/su

auth        sufficient      pam_rootok.so
auth        required        pam_unix.so
account     required        pam_unix.so
session     optional        pam_mail.so     dir=/var/mail standard
session     optional        pam_xauth.so
session     required        pam_env.so
session     required        pam_unix.so

# End /etc/pam.d/su
EOF
```

'chage'

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/chage << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/chage

auth        sufficient      pam_rootok.so
auth        required        pam_unix.so
account     required        pam_unix.so
session     required        pam_unix.so
password    required        pam_permit.so

# End /etc/pam.d/chage
EOF
```

'chpasswd', 'chgpasswd', 'groupadd', 'groupdel', 'groupmems', 'groupmod', 'newusers', 'useradd', 'userdel', and 'usermod'

```
for PROGRAM in chpasswd chgpasswd groupadd groupdel groupmems \
               groupmod newusers useradd userdel usermod
do
    install -v -m644 /etc/pam.d/chage /etc/pam.d/$PROGRAM
    sed -i "s/chage/$PROGRAM/" /etc/pam.d/$PROGRAM
done
```

Warning

At this point, you should do a simple test to see if Shadow is working as expected. Open another terminal and log in as a user, then **su** to `root`. If you do not see any errors, then all is well and you should proceed with the rest of the configuration. If you did receive errors, stop now and double check the above configuration files manually. You can also run the test suite from the Linux-PAM package to assist you in determining the problem. If you cannot find and fix the error, you should recompile Shadow adding the `--without-libpam` switch to the **configure** command in the above instructions (also move the `/etc/login.defs.orig` backup file to `/etc/login.defs`). If you fail to do this and the errors remain, you will be unable to log into your system.

Other

Currently, `/etc/pam.d/other` is configured to allow anyone with an account on the machine to use PAM-aware programs without a configuration file for that program. After testing Linux-PAM for proper configuration, install a more restrictive `other` file so that program-specific configuration files are required:

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/other << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/pam.d/other

auth        required        pam_deny.so
auth        required        pam_warn.so
account     required        pam_deny.so
session     required        pam_deny.so
password    required        pam_deny.so
password    required        pam_warn.so

# End /etc/pam.d/other
EOF
```

If you preserved the source tree from the Linux-PAM package (or you feel like unpacking that tarball, then running **configure** and **make**), now would be a good time to run the test suite from this package. This test suite will use the configuration you just finished during the tests. All the tests should pass.

Configuring Login Access

Instead of using the `/etc/login.access` file for controlling access to the system, Linux-PAM uses the `pam_access.so` module along with the `/etc/security/access.conf` file. Rename the `/etc/login.access` file using the following command:

```
if [ -f /etc/login.access ]; then
    mv -v /etc/login.access /etc/login.access.NOUSE
fi
```

Configuring Resource Limits

Instead of using the `/etc/limits` file for limiting usage of system resources, Linux-PAM uses the `pam_limits.so` module along with the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file. Rename the `/etc/limits` file using the following command:

```
if [ -f /etc/limits ]; then
    mv -v /etc/limits /etc/limits.NOUSE
fi
```

Configuring Default Environment

During previous configuration, several items were removed from `/etc/login.defs`. Some of these items are now controlled by the `pam_env.so` module and the `/etc/security/pam_env.conf` configuration file. In particular, the default path has been changed. To recover your default path, execute the following commands:

```
ENV_PATH=`grep '^ENV_PATH' /etc/login.defs.orig | \
    awk '{ print $2 }' | sed 's/PATH=//'` &&
echo 'PATH        DEFAULT='`echo "${ENV_PATH}"`\
'        OVERRIDE=${PATH}' \
    >> /etc/security/pam_env.conf &&
unset ENV_PATH
```

Note

ENV_SUPATH is no longer supported. You must create a valid `/root/.bashrc` file to provide a modified path for the super-user.

Contents

A list of the installed files, along with their short descriptions can be found at *../../../../lfs/view/6.3/chapter06/shadow.html#contents-shadow*.

Iptables-1.3.8

Introduction to Iptables

The next part of this chapter deals with firewalls. The principal firewall tool for Linux, as of the 2.4 kernel series, is iptables. It replaces ipchains from the 2.2 series and ipfwadm from the 2.0 series. You will need to install iptables if you intend on using any form of a firewall.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.netfilter.org/projects/iptables/files/iptables-1.3.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.netfilter.org/pub/iptables/iptables-1.3.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0a9209f928002e5eee9cdff8fef4d4b3
- Download size: 169 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.0 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Kernel Configuration

A firewall in Linux is accomplished through a portion of the kernel called netfilter. The interface to netfilter is iptables. To use it, the appropriate kernel configuration parameters are found in Networking # Networking Options # Network Packet Filtering # Core Netfilter Configuration (and) IP: Netfilter Configuration.

Installation of Iptables

Note

The installation below does not include building some specialized extension libraries which require the raw headers in the Linux source code. If you wish to build the additional extensions (if you aren't sure, then you probably don't), you can look at the `INSTALL` file to see an example of how to change the *`KERNEL_DIR=`* parameter to point at the Linux source code. Note that if you upgrade the kernel version, you may also need to recompile iptables and that the BLFS team has not tested using the raw kernel headers.

For some non-x86 architectures, the raw kernel headers may be required. In that case, modify the *`KERNEL_DIR=`* parameter to point at the Linux source code.

Install iptables by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's/name="$node/name="node/' iptables.xslt &&
make LIBDIR=/lib KERNEL_DIR=/usr
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make PREFIX=/usr LIBDIR=/lib BINDIR=/sbin \
    MANDIR=/usr/share/man install &&
install -v -m644 iptables.xslt /lib/iptables
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's/name="$node/name="node/' iptables.xslt: This corrects a syntax error in the XSLT stylesheet for use with **iptables-xml**.

PREFIX=/usr LIBDIR=/lib BINDIR=/sbin: Compiles and installs iptables modules into `/lib`, binaries into `/sbin` and the remainder into the `/usr` hierarchy instead of `/usr/local`. Firewalls are generally activated during the boot process and `/usr` may not be mounted at that time.

KERNEL_DIR=/usr: This parameter is used to point at the sanitized kernel headers in `/usr` and not use the raw kernel headers in `/usr/src/linux`.

Configuring Iptables

Introductory instructions for configuring your firewall are presented in the next section: Firewalling

Boot Script

To set up the iptables firewall at boot, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/iptables` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-iptables
```

Contents

Installed Programs: iptables, iptables-restore, iptables-save, iptables-xml and ip6tables
Installed Libraries: libip6t_*.so and libipt_*.so
Installed Directory: /lib/iptables

Short Descriptions

iptables is used to set up, maintain, and inspect the tables of IP packet filter rules in the Linux kernel.

iptables-restore is used to restore IP Tables from data specified on STDIN. Use I/O redirection provided by your shell to read from a file.

iptables-save is used to dump the contents of an IP Table in easily parseable format to STDOUT. Use I/O-redirection provided by your shell to write to a file.

iptables-xml is used to convert the output of **iptables-save** to an XML format. Using the `iptables.xslt` stylesheet converts the XML back to the format of **iptables-restore**.

ip6tables is used to set up, maintain, and inspect the tables of IPv6 packet filter rules in the Linux kernel. Several different tables may be defined. Each table contains a number of built-in chains and may also contain user-defined chains.

`libip*.so` library modules are various modules (implemented as dynamic libraries) which extend the core functionality of **iptables**.

Setting Up a Network Firewall

Before you read this part of the chapter, you should have already installed iptables as described in the previous section.

Introduction to Firewall Creation

The general purpose of a firewall is to protect a computer or a network against malicious access.

In a perfect world, every daemon or service on every machine is perfectly configured and immune to flaws such as buffer overflows or other problems regarding its security. Furthermore, you trust every user accessing your services. In this world, you do not need to have a firewall.

In the real world however, daemons may be misconfigured and exploits against essential services are freely available. You may wish to choose which services are accessible by certain machines or you may wish to limit which machines or applications are allowed external access. Alternatively, you may simply not trust some of your applications or users. You are probably connected to the Internet. In this world, a firewall is essential.

Don't assume however, that having a firewall makes careful configuration redundant, or that it makes any negligent misconfiguration harmless. It doesn't prevent anyone from exploiting a service you intentionally offer but haven't recently updated or patched after an exploit went public. Despite having a firewall, you need to keep applications and daemons on your system properly configured and up to date. A firewall is not a cure all, but should be an essential part of your overall security strategy.

Meaning of the Word "Firewall"

The word firewall can have several different meanings.

Personal Firewall

This is a hardware device or software program commercially sold (or offered via freeware) by companies such as Symantec which claims that it secures a home or desktop computer connected to the Internet. This type of firewall is highly relevant for users who do not know how their computers might be accessed via the Internet or how to disable that access, especially if they are always online and connected via broadband links.

Masquerading Router

This is a system placed between the Internet and an intranet. To minimize the risk of compromising the firewall itself, it should generally have only one role—that of protecting the intranet. Although not completely risk free, the tasks of doing the routing and IP masquerading (rewriting IP headers of the packets it routes from clients with private IP addresses onto the Internet so that they seem to come from the firewall itself) are commonly considered relatively secure.

BusyBox

This is often an old computer you may have retired and nearly forgotten, performing masquerading or routing functions, but offering non-firewall services such as a web-cache or mail. This may be used for home networks, but is not to be considered as secure as a firewall only machine because the combination of server and router/firewall on one machine raises the complexity of the setup.

Firewall with a Demilitarized Zone [Not Further Described Here]

This box performs masquerading or routing, but grants public access to some branch of your network which, because of public IPs and a physically separated structure, is essentially a separate network with direct Internet access. The servers on this network are those which must be easily accessible from both the Internet and intranet. The firewall protects both networks. This type of firewall has a minimum of three network interfaces.

Packetfilter

This type of firewall does routing or masquerading, but does not maintain a state table of ongoing communication streams. It is fast, but quite limited in its ability to block undesired packets without blocking desired packets.

Now You Can Start to Build your Firewall

Caution

This introduction on how to setup a firewall is not a complete guide to securing systems. Firewalling is a complex issue that requires careful configuration. The scripts quoted here are simply intended to give examples of how a firewall works. They are not intended to fit into any particular configuration and may not provide complete protection from an attack.

Customization of these scripts for your specific situation will be necessary for an optimal configuration, but you should make a serious study of the iptables documentation and creating firewalls in general before hacking away. Have a look at the list of links for further reading at the end of this section for more details. There you will find a list of URLs that contain quite comprehensive information about building your own firewall.

The firewall configuration script installed in the iptables section differs from the standard configuration script. It only has two of the standard targets: start and status. The other targets are clear and lock. For instance if you issue:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/iptables start
```

the firewall will be restarted just as it is upon system startup. The status target will present a list of all currently implemented rules. The clear target turns off all firewall rules and the lock target will block all packets in and out of the computer with the exception of the loopback interface.

The main startup firewall is located in the file `/etc/rc.d/rc.iptables`. The sections below provide three different approaches that can be used for a system.

Note

You should always run your firewall rules from a script. This ensures consistency and a record of what was done. It also allows retention of comments that are essential for understanding the rules long after they were written.

Personal Firewall

A Personal Firewall is designed to let you access all the services offered on the Internet, but keep your box secure and your data private.

Below is a slightly modified version of Rusty Russell's recommendation from the *Linux 2.4 Packet Filtering HOWTO*. It is still applicable to the Linux 2.6 kernels.

```
cat > /etc/rc.d/rc.iptables << "EOF"
```

```
#!/bin/sh

# Begin $rc_base/rc.iptables

# Insert connection-tracking modules
# (not needed if built into the kernel)
modprobe ip_tables
modprobe iptable_filter
modprobe ip_conntrack
modprobe ip_conntrack_ftp
modprobe ipt_state
modprobe ipt_LOG

# Enable broadcast echo Protection
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/icmp_echo_ignore_broadcasts

# Disable Source Routed Packets
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/accept_source_route

# Enable TCP SYN Cookie Protection
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_syncookies

# Disable ICMP Redirect Acceptance
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/accept_redirects

# Don¹t send Redirect Messages
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/send_redirects

# Drop Spoofed Packets coming in on an interface, where responses
# would result in the reply going out a different interface.
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/rp_filter

# Log packets with impossible addresses.
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/log_martians

# be verbose on dynamic ip-addresses  (not needed in case of static IP)
echo 2 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/ip_dynaddr

# disable Explicit Congestion Notification
# too many routers are still ignorant
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_ecn

# Set a known state
iptables -P INPUT   DROP
iptables -P FORWARD DROP
iptables -P OUTPUT  DROP
```

```
# These lines are here in case rules are already in place and the
# script is ever rerun on the fly. We want to remove all rules and
# pre-existing user defined chains before we implement new rules.
iptables -F
iptables -X
iptables -Z

iptables -t nat -F

# Allow local-only connections
iptables -A INPUT  -i lo -j ACCEPT

# Free output on any interface to any ip for any service
# (equal to -P ACCEPT)
iptables -A OUTPUT -j ACCEPT

# Permit answers on already established connections
# and permit new connections related to established ones
# (e.g. port mode ftp)
iptables -A INPUT -m state --state ESTABLISHED,RELATED -j ACCEPT

# Log everything else. What's Windows' latest exploitable vulnerability?
iptables -A INPUT -j LOG --log-prefix "FIREWALL:INPUT "

# End $rc_base/rc.iptables
EOF
chmod 700 /etc/rc.d/rc.iptables
```

This script is quite simple, it drops all traffic coming into your computer that wasn't initiated from your computer, but as long as you are simply surfing the Internet you are unlikely to exceed its limits.

If you frequently encounter certain delays at accessing FTP servers, take a look at BusyBox example number 4 [107].

Even if you have daemons or services running on your system, these will be inaccessible everywhere but from your computer itself. If you want to allow access to services on your machine, such as **ssh** or **ping**, take a look at BusyBox.

Masquerading Router

A true Firewall has two interfaces, one connected to an intranet, in this example **eth0**, and one connected to the Internet, here **ppp0**. To provide the maximum security for the firewall itself, make sure that there are no unnecessary servers running on it such as X11 et al. As a general principle, the firewall itself should not access any untrusted service (think of a remote server giving answers that makes a daemon on your system crash, or even worse, that implements a worm via a buffer-overflow).

```
cat > /etc/rc.d/rc.iptables << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh

# Begin $rc_base/rc.iptables
```

```
echo
echo "You're using the example configuration for a setup of a firewall"
echo "from Beyond Linux From Scratch."
echo "This example is far from being complete, it is only meant"
echo "to be a reference."
echo "Firewall security is a complex issue, that exceeds the scope"
echo "of the configuration rules below."
echo "You can find additional information"
echo "about firewalls in Chapter 4 of the BLFS book."
echo "http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs"
echo

# Insert iptables modules (not needed if built into the kernel).

modprobe ip_tables
modprobe iptable_filter
modprobe ip_conntrack
modprobe ip_conntrack_ftp
modprobe ipt_state
modprobe iptable_nat
modprobe ip_nat_ftp
modprobe ipt_MASQUERADE
modprobe ipt_LOG
modprobe ipt_REJECT

# Enable broadcast echo Protection
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/icmp_echo_ignore_broadcasts

# Disable Source Routed Packets
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/accept_source_route

# Enable TCP SYN Cookie Protection
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_syncookies

# Disable ICMP Redirect Acceptance
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/accept_redirects

# Don¹t send Redirect Messages
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/send_redirects

# Drop Spoofed Packets coming in on an interface where responses
# would result in the reply going out a different interface.
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/rp_filter

# Log packets with impossible addresses.
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/log_martians
```

```
# Be verbose on dynamic ip-addresses  (not needed in case of static IP)
echo 2 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/ip_dynaddr

# Disable Explicit Congestion Notification
# Too many routers are still ignorant
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_ecn

# Set a known state
iptables -P INPUT   DROP
iptables -P FORWARD DROP
iptables -P OUTPUT  DROP

# These lines are here in case rules are already in place and the
# script is ever rerun on the fly. We want to remove all rules and
# pre-existing user defined chains before we implement new rules.
iptables -F
iptables -X
iptables -Z

iptables -t nat -F

# Allow local connections
iptables -A INPUT  -i lo -j ACCEPT
iptables -A OUTPUT -o lo -j ACCEPT

# Allow forwarding if the initiated on the intranet
iptables -A FORWARD -m state --state ESTABLISHED,RELATED -j ACCEPT
iptables -A FORWARD  -i ! ppp+ -m state --state NEW      -j ACCEPT

# Do masquerading
# (not needed if intranet is not using private ip-addresses)
iptables -t nat -A POSTROUTING -o ppp+ -j MASQUERADE

# Log everything for debugging
# (last of all rules, but before policy rules)
iptables -A INPUT   -j LOG --log-prefix "FIREWALL:INPUT  "
iptables -A FORWARD -j LOG --log-prefix "FIREWALL:FORWARD"
iptables -A OUTPUT  -j LOG --log-prefix "FIREWALL:OUTPUT "

# Enable IP Forwarding
echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/ip_forward
EOF
chmod 700 /etc/rc.d/rc.iptables
```

With this script your intranet should be reasonably secure against external attacks. No one should be able to setup a new connection to any internal service and, if it's masqueraded, makes your intranet invisible to the Internet. Furthermore, your firewall should be relatively safe because there are no services running that a cracker could attack.

Note

If the interface you're connecting to the Internet doesn't connect via PPP, you will need to change *<ppp+>* to the name of the interface (e.g., **eth1**) which you are using.

BusyBox

This scenario isn't too different from the Masquerading Router, but additionally offers some services to your intranet. Examples of this can be when you want to administer your firewall from another host on your intranet or use it as a proxy or a name server.

Note

Outlining a true concept of how to protect a server that offers services on the Internet goes far beyond the scope of this document. See the references at the end of this section for more information.

Be cautious. Every service you have enabled makes your setup more complex and your firewall less secure. You are exposed to the risks of misconfigured services or running a service with an exploitable bug. A firewall should generally not run any extra services. See the introduction to the Masquerading Router for some more details.

If you want to add services such as internal Samba or name servers that do not need to access the Internet themselves, the additional statements are quite simple and should still be acceptable from a security standpoint. Just add the following lines into the script *before* the logging rules.

```
iptables -A INPUT  -i ! ppp+  -j ACCEPT
iptables -A OUTPUT -o ! ppp+  -j ACCEPT
```

If daemons, such as squid, have to access the Internet themselves, you could open OUTPUT generally and restrict INPUT.

```
iptables -A INPUT -m state --state ESTABLISHED,RELATED -j ACCEPT
iptables -A OUTPUT -j ACCEPT
```

However, it is generally not advisable to leave OUTPUT unrestricted. You lose any control over trojans who would like to "call home", and a bit of redundancy in case you've (mis-)configured a service so that it broadcasts its existence to the world.

To accomplish this, you should restrict INPUT and OUTPUT on all ports except those that it's absolutely necessary to have open. Which ports you have to open depends on your needs: mostly you will find them by looking for failed accesses in your log files.

Have a Look at the Following Examples:

- Squid is caching the web:

```
iptables -A OUTPUT -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT
iptables -A INPUT  -p tcp --sport 80 -m state --state ESTABLISHED \
  -j ACCEPT
```

- Your caching name server (e.g., named) does its lookups via UDP:

```
iptables -A OUTPUT -p udp --dport 53 -j ACCEPT
```

- You want to be able to ping your computer to ensure it's still alive:

```
iptables -A INPUT  -p icmp -m icmp --icmp-type echo-request -j ACCEPT
iptables -A OUTPUT -p icmp -m icmp --icmp-type echo-reply   -j ACCEPT
```

- If you are frequently accessing FTP servers or enjoy chatting, you might notice certain delays because some implementations of these daemons have the feature of querying an identd on your system to obtain usernames. Although there's really little harm in this, having an identd running is not recommended because many security experts feel the service gives out too much additional information.

  To avoid these delays you could reject the requests with a 'tcp-reset':

```
iptables -A INPUT  -p tcp --dport 113 -j REJECT --reject-with tcp-reset
```

- To log and drop invalid packets (packets that came in after netfilter's timeout or some types of network scans):

```
iptables -I INPUT -p tcp -m state --state INVALID \
  -j LOG --log-prefix "FIREWALL:INVALID"
iptables -I INPUT -p tcp -m state --state INVALID -j DROP
```

- Anything coming from the outside should not have a private address, this is a common attack called IP-spoofing:

```
iptables -A INPUT -i ppp+ -s 10.0.0.0/8     -j DROP
iptables -A INPUT -i ppp+ -s 172.16.0.0/12  -j DROP
iptables -A INPUT -i ppp+ -s 192.168.0.0/16 -j DROP
```

  There are other addresses that you may also want to drop: 0.0.0.0/8, 127.0.0.0/8, 224.0.0.0/3 (multicast and experimental), 169.254.0.0/16 (Link Local Networks), and 192.0.2.0/24 (IANA defined test network).

- If your firewall is a DHCP client, you need to allow those packets:

```
iptables -A INPUT  -i ppp0 -p udp -s 0.0.0.0 --sport 67 \
   -d 255.255.255.255 --dport 68 -j ACCEPT
```

- To simplify debugging and be fair to anyone who'd like to access a service you have disabled, purposely or by mistake, you could REJECT those packets that are dropped.

  Obviously this must be done directly after logging as the very last lines before the packets are dropped by policy:

```
iptables -A INPUT -j REJECT
```

These are only examples to show you some of the capabilities of the firewall code in Linux. Have a look at the man page of iptables. There you will find much more information. The port numbers needed for this can be found in `/etc/services`, in case you didn't find them by trial and error in your log file.

Conclusion

Finally, there is one fact you must not forget: The effort spent attacking a system corresponds to the value the cracker expects to gain from it. If you are responsible for valuable information, you need to spend the time to protect it properly.

Extra Information

Where to Start with Further Reading on Firewalls

www.netfilter.org - Homepage of the netfilter/iptables project
Netfilter related FAQ
Netfilter related HOWTO's
en.tldp.org/LDP/nag2/x-087-2-firewall.html
en.tldp.org/HOWTO/Security-HOWTO.html
en.tldp.org/HOWTO/Firewall-HOWTO.html
www.linuxsecurity.com/docs/
www.little-idiot.de/firewall (German & outdated, but very comprehensive)
linux.oreillynet.com/pub/a/linux/2000/03/10/netadmin/ddos.html
staff.washington.edu/dittrich/misc/ddos
www.e-infomax.com/ipmasq
www.circlemud.org/~jelson/writings/security/index.htm
www.securityfocus.com
www.cert.org - tech_tips
security.ittoolbox.com
www.insecure.org/reading.html

GnuPG-1.4.7

Introduction to GnuPG

The GnuPG package contains a public/private key encryptor. This is becoming useful for signing files or emails as proof of identity and preventing tampering with the contents of the file or email. For a more enhanced version of GnuPG which supports S/MIME, see the GnuPG-2.0.8 package.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/g/gnupg-1.4.7.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/gnupg/gnupg-1.4.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b06a141cca5cd1a55bbdd25ab833303c
- Download size: 3.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 40 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

GnuPG Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, libusb-0.1.12, cURL-7.16.3, an MTA, DocBook-utils-0.6.14, and *docbook-to-man*

Installation of GnuPG

Install GnuPG by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and you wish to create documentation in alternate formats, issue the following command:

```
make -C doc pdf html
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod -v 4755 /usr/bin/gpg &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnupg-1.4.7 &&
mv -v /usr/share/gnupg/{FAQ,faq.html} /usr/share/doc/gnupg-1.4.7 &&
install -v -m644 \
    doc/{highlights-1.4.txt,OpenPGP,samplekeys.asc,DETAILS,*.texi} \
    /usr/share/doc/gnupg-1.4.7
```

If you created alternate formats of the documentation, install it using the following command as the `root` user:

```
cp -v -R doc/gnupg1.{html,pdf} /usr/share/doc/gnupg-1.4.7
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib`: This command creates a `gnupg` directory in `/usr/lib` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

chmod -v 4755 /usr/bin/gpg: **gpg** is installed setuid `root` to avoid swapping out sensitive data.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gpg, gpg-zip, gpgsplit, and gpgv
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/gnupg, /usr/share/gnupg and /usr/share/doc/gnupg-1.4.7

Short Descriptions

gpg	is the backend (command-line interface) for this OpenPGP implementation.
gpgsplit	separates key rings.
gpgv	is a verify only version of **gpg**.

GnuPG-2.0.8

Introduction to GnuPG 2

The GnuPG 2 package is GNU's tool for secure communication and data storage. It can be used to encrypt data and to create digital signatures. It includes an advanced key management facility and is compliant with the proposed OpenPGP Internet standard as described in RFC2440 and the S/MIME standard as described by several RFCs. GnuPG 2 is the stable version of GnuPG integrating support for OpenPGP and S/MIME. It does not conflict with an installed GnuPG-1.4.7 OpenPGP-only version.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/g/gnupg-2.0.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/gnupg/gnupg-2.0.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: fc4377ca67e1bf687eeaf22e79c0b9d1
- Download size: 3.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 65 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

GnuPG Dependencies

Required

Pth-2.0.7, Libassuan-1.0.4, Libgcrypt-1.2.4, and Libksba-1.0.2

Optional

OpenLDAP-2.3.39, libusb-0.1.12, cURL-7.16.3, and an MTA

Optional (Run-time Requirement For Most of the Package's Functionality)

PIN-Entry-0.7.3

Installation of GnuPG 2

Install GnuPG 2 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib/gnupg2 &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and you wish to create documentation in alternate formats, issue the following commands:

```
make -C doc pdf ps html &&
makeinfo --html --no-split -o doc/gnupg_nochunks.html doc/gnupg.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext       -o doc/gnupg.txt           doc/gnupg.texi
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d         /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8 &&
ln -sv ../../gnupg/FAQ      /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8 &&
ln -sv ../../gnupg/faq.html /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8 &&

install -v -m644 doc/{DETAILS,KEYSERVER,OpenPGP,TRANSLATE} \
                            /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8
```

If you created alternate formats of the documentation, install it using the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8/html       &&
install -v -m644 doc/gnupg.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8/html       &&
install -v -m644 doc/gnupg_nochunks.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8/gnupg.html &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.texi \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8            &&
install -v -m644 doc/gnupg.{pdf,dvi,ps,txt} \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnupg-2.0.8
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib/gnupg2`: This switch creates a `gnupg` directory in `/usr/lib` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	addgnupghome, applygnupgdefaults, gpg-agent, gpg-connect-agent, gpg2, gpgconf, gpgkey2ssh, gpgparsemail, gpgsm, gpgsm-gencert.sh, gpgv2, kbxutil, scdaemon, symcryptrun, and watchgnupg
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/gnupg2, /usr/share/gnupg and /usr/share/doc/gnupg2-2.0.8

Short Descriptions

addgnupghome	is used to create and populate user's `~/.gnupg` directories
applygnupgdefaults	is a wrapper script used to run **gpgconf** with the *`--apply-defaults`* parameter on all user's GnuPG home directories.
gpg-agent	is a daemon used to manage secret (private) keys independently from any protocol. It is used as a backend for **gpg** and **gpgsm** as well as for a couple of other utilities.
gpg-connect-agent	is a utility used to communicate with a running **gpg-agent**.
gpg2	is the OpenPGP part of the GNU Privacy Guard (GnuPG). It is a tool used to provide digital encryption and signing services using the OpenPGP standard.
gpgconf	is a utility used to automatically and reasonable safely query and modify configuration files in the `~/.gnupg` home directory. It is designed not to be invoked manually by the user, but automatically by graphical user interfaces.

gpgparsemail	is a utility currently only useful for debugging. Run it with *--help* for usage information.
gpgsm	is a tool similar to **gpg** used to provide digital encryption and signing services on X.509 certificates and the CMS protocol. It is mainly used as a backend for S/MIME mail processing.
gpgsm-gencert.sh	is a simple tool used to interactivly generate a certificate request which will be printed to stdout.
gpgv2	is a verify only version of **gpg2**.
kbxutil	is used to list, export and import Keybox data.
scdaemon	is a daemon used to manage smartcards. It is usually invoked by **gpg-agent** and in general not used directly.
symcryptrun	is a simple symmetric encryption tool.
watchgnupg	is used to listen to a Unix Domain socket created by any of the GnuPG tools.

Tripwire-2.4.1.2

Introduction to Tripwire

The Tripwire package contains programs used to verify the integrity of the files on a given system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/tripwire/tripwire-2.4.1.2-src.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 1147c278b528ed593023912c4b649a
- Download size: 700 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 28 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.6 SBU

Tripwire Dependencies

Required

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

An MTA

Installation of Tripwire

Compile Tripwire by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e 's@TWDB="${prefix}@TWDB="/var@' install/install.cfg &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc/tripwire &&
make
```

Warning

The default configuration is to use a local MTA. If you don't have an MTA installed and have no wish to install one, modify `install/install.cfg` to use an SMTP server instead. Otherwise the install will fail.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
cp -v policy/*.txt /usr/doc/tripwire
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e 's@TWDB="${prefix}@TWDB="/var@' install/install.cfg: This command tells the package to install the program database and reports in `/var/lib/tripwire`.

make install: This command creates the Tripwire security keys as well as installing the binaries. There are two keys: a site key and a local key which are stored in `/etc/tripwire/`.

cp -v policy/*.txt /usr/doc/tripwire: This command installs the tripwire sample policy files with the other tripwire documentation.

Configuring Tripwire

Config Files

`/etc/tripwire/*`

Configuration Information

Tripwire uses a policy file to determine which files are integrity checked. The default policy file (`/etc/tripwire/twpol.txt`) is for a default installation and will need to be updated for your system.

Policy files should be tailored to each individual distribution and/or installation. Some example policy files can be found in `/usr/doc/tripwire/` (Note that `/usr/doc/` is a symbolic link on LFS systems to `/usr/share/doc/`).

If desired, copy the policy file you'd like to try into `/etc/tripwire/` instead of using the default policy file, `twpol.txt`. It is, however, recommended that you edit your policy file. Get ideas from the examples above and read `/usr/doc/tripwire/policyguide.txt` for additional information. `twpol.txt` is a good policy file for learning about Tripwire as it will note any changes to the file system and can even be used as an annoying way of keeping track of changes for uninstallation of software.

After your policy file has been edited to your satisfaction you may begin the configuration steps (perform as the `root`):

```
twadmin --create-polfile --site-keyfile /etc/tripwire/site.key \
    /etc/tripwire/twpol.txt &&
tripwire --init
```

Depending on your system and the contents of the policy file, the initialization phase above can take a relatively long time.

Usage Information

Tripwire will identify file changes in the critical system files specified in the policy file. Using Tripwire while making frequent changes to these directories will flag all these changes. It is most useful after a system has reached a configuration that the user considers stable.

To use Tripwire after creating a policy file to run a report, use the following command:

```
tripwire --check > /etc/tripwire/report.txt
```

View the output to check the integrity of your files. An automatic integrity report can be produced by using a cron facility to schedule the runs.

Reports are stored in binary and, if desired, encrypted. View reports, as the `root` user, with:

```
twprint --print-report -r /var/lib/tripwire/report/<report-name.twr>
```

After you run an integrity check, you should examine the report (or email) and then modify the Tripwire database to reflect the changed files on your system. This is so that Tripwire will not continually notify you that files you intentionally changed are a security violation. To do this you must first **ls -l /var/lib/tripwire/report/** and note the

name of the newest file which starts with your system name as presented by the command **`uname -n`** and ends in `.twr`. These files were created during report creation and the most current one is needed to update the Tripwire database of your system. As the `root` user, type in the following command making the appropriate report name:

```
tripwire --update --twrfile /var/lib/tripwire/report/<report-name.twr>
```

You will be placed into vim with a copy of the report in front of you. If all the changes were good, then just type **:wq** and after entering your local key, the database will be updated. If there are files which you still want to be warned about, remove the 'x' before the filename in the report and type **:wq**.

A good summary of tripwire operations can be found at *http://www.redhat.com/docs/manuals/linux/RHL-9-Manual/ref-guide/ch-tripwire.html*.

Changing the Policy File

If you are unhappy with your policy file and would like to modify it or use a new one, modify the policy file and then execute the following commands as the `root` user:

```
twadmin --create-polfile /etc/tripwire/twpol.txt &&
tripwire --init
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	siggen, tripwire, twadmin, and twprint
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/tripwire, /var/lib/tripwire, and /usr/share/doc/tripwire

Short Descriptions

siggen	is a signature gathering utility that displays the hash function values for the specified files.
tripwire	is the main file integrity checking program.
twadmin	administrative and utility tool used to perform certain administrative functions related to Tripwire files and configuration options.
twprint	prints Tripwire database and report files in clear text format.

Heimdal-1.1

Introduction to Heimdal

Heimdal is a free implementation of Kerberos 5 that aims to be compatible with MIT Kerberos 5 and is backward compatible with Kerberos 4. Kerberos is a network authentication protocol. Basically it preserves the integrity of passwords in any untrusted network (like the Internet). Kerberized applications work hand-in-hand with sites that support Kerberos to ensure that passwords cannot be stolen or compromised. A Kerberos installation will make changes to the authentication mechanisms on your network and will overwrite several programs and daemons from the Shadow, Inetutils and Qpopper packages. See *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/heimdal-overwrites* for a complete list of all the files and commands to rename each of them.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.h5l.org/dist/src/heimdal-1.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.pdc.kth.se/pub/heimdal/src/heimdal-1.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 7892e97b346534cc9afeeee461fe3bab
- Download size: 3.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 136 MB
- Estimated build time: 4.0 SBU (additional 1.5 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/heimdal-1.1-blfs_docs-1.patch*
- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/heimdal-1.1-libss-1.patch*

Heimdal Dependencies

Required to Build the Server-Side Tools

Berkeley DB-4.5.20 is recommended (installed in LFS) or GDBM-1.8.3

Recommended

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, X Window System, and *libcap*

Note

Some sort of time synchronization facility on your system (like NTP-4.2.4p0) is required since Kerberos won't authenticate if the time differential between a kerberized client and the KDC server is more than 5 minutes.

Installation of Heimdal

Warning

Ensure you really need a Kerberos installation before you decide to install this package. Failure to install and configure the package correctly can alter your system so that users cannot log in.

Install Heimdal by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../heimdal-1.1-blfs_docs-1.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../heimdal-1.1-libss-1.patch &&

./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/heimdal \
            --libexecdir=/usr/sbin \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib/heimdal \
            --datadir=/var/lib/heimdal \
            --with-hdbdir=/var/lib/heimdal \
            --with-readline=/usr \
            --enable-kcm &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and wish to create alternate forms of the documentation, change into the doc directory and issue any or all of the following commands:

```
pushd doc                                          &&

make html                                          &&

texi2pdf                           heimdal.texi &&
texi2dvi                           heimdal.texi &&
dvips                -o heimdal.ps  heimdal.dvi  &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o heimdal.txt heimdal.texi &&

texi2pdf                           hx509.texi   &&
texi2dvi                           hx509.texi   &&
dvips                -o hx509.ps    hx509.dvi    &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o hx509.txt   hx509.texi   &&

popd
```

To test the results, issue: **make -k check**. The **ipropd** test is known to fail but all others should pass.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/heimdal-1.1 &&
install -v -m644    doc/{init-creds,layman.asc} \
                    /usr/share/doc/heimdal-1.1 &&

ln -sfv         mech.5 /usr/share/man/man5/qop.5  &&
ln -sfv ../man5/mech.5 /usr/share/man/cat5/qop.5  &&
ln -sfv ../man5/mech.5 /usr/share/man/cat5        &&

mv -v /bin/login          /bin/login.SHADOW &&
mv -v /bin/su             /bin/su.SHADOW    &&
mv -v /usr/bin/{login,su} /bin              &&
ln -v -sf ../../bin/login /usr/bin          &&

for LINK in   lib{otp,kafs,krb5,hx509,asn1,roken,crypto}; do
    mv -v     /usr/lib/${LINK}.so.* /lib &&
    ln -v -sf ../../lib/$(readlink  /usr/lib/${LINK}.so) \
              /usr/lib/${LINK}.so
done &&

mv -v     /usr/lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libdb.so) \
          /usr/lib/libdb-?.so \
          /lib &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libdb.so) \
          /usr/lib/libdb.so &&

ldconfig
```

If you built any of the alternate forms of documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 doc/{heimdal,hx509}.{dvi,ps,pdf,html,txt} \
                 /usr/share/doc/heimdal-1.1
```

If you wish to use the CrackLib-2.8.12 library to enforce strong passwords in the KDC database, issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
sed -e 's|/usr/pkg|/usr|' \
    -e 's|/usr/lib/cracklib_dict|/lib/cracklib/pw_dict|' \
    -e 's|/var/heimdal|/var/lib/heimdal|' \
        lib/kadm5/check-cracklib.pl \
    > /bin/krb5-check-cracklib.pl &&

chmod -v 755 /bin/krb5-check-cracklib.pl
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/sbin`: This switch causes the daemon programs to be installed into `/usr/sbin`.

Tip

If you want to preserve all your existing Inetutils package daemons, install the Heimdal daemons into `/usr/sbin/heimdal` (or wherever you want). Since these programs will be called from **(x)inetd** or `rc` scripts, it really doesn't matter where they are installed, as long as they are correctly specified in the `/etc/(x)inetd.conf` file and `rc` scripts. If you choose something other than `/usr/sbin`, you may want to move some of the user programs (such as **kadmin**) to `/usr/sbin` manually so they'll be in the privileged user's default `PATH`.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib/heimdal`, *`--datadir=/var/lib/heimdal`* and *`--with-hdbdir=/var/lib/heimdal`*: These parameters are used so that the KDC database and associated files will all reside in `/var/lib/heimdal`.

`--with-readline=/usr`: This parameter must be used so that the **configure** script properly locates the installed Readline package.

`--enable-kcm`: This parameter enables building the Kerberos Credentials Manager.

ln -sfv .../mech.5 /usr/share/man/...: These commands are used to fix some broken symbolic links.

mv ... ...SHADOW, **mv ... /bin** and **ln ... /usr/bin**: The **login** and **su** programs installed by Heimdal belong in the `/bin` directory. The **login** program is symlinked because Heimdal is expecting to find it in `/usr/bin`. The old executables from the Shadow package are preserved before the move so that they can be restored if you experience problems logging into the system after the Heimdal package is installed and configured.

for LINK in ...; do ...; done, **mv ... /lib** and **ln ... /usr/lib/libdb.so**: The **login** and **su** programs previously moved into the `/lib` directory link against Heimdal libraries as well as libraries provided by the OpenSSL and Berkeley DB packages. These libraries are also moved to `/lib` so they are FHS compliant and also in case `/usr` is located on a separate partition which may not always be mounted.

Configuring Heimdal

Config Files

`/etc/heimdal/*`

Configuration Information

Note

All the configuration steps shown below must be accomplished by the `root` user unless otherwise noted.

Master KDC Server Configuration

Many of the commands below use *`<replaceable>`* tags to identify places where you need to substitute information specific to your network. Ensure you replace everything in these tags (there will be no angle brackets when you are done) with your site-specific information.

Create the Kerberos configuration file with the following commands:

```
install -v -m755 -d /etc/heimdal &&
cat > /etc/heimdal/krb5.conf << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/heimdal/krb5.conf

[libdefaults]
    default_realm = <EXAMPLE.COM>
    encrypt = true

[realms]
    <EXAMPLE.COM> = {
        kdc = <hostname.example.com>
        admin_server = <hostname.example.com>
        kpasswd_server = <hostname.example.com>
    }

[domain_realm]
    .<example.com> = <EXAMPLE.COM>

[logging]
    kdc = FILE:/var/log/kdc.log
    admin_server = FILE:/var/log/kadmin.log
    default = FILE:/var/log/krb.log

# End /etc/heimdal/krb5.conf
EOF
chmod -v 644 /etc/heimdal/krb5.conf
```

You will need to substitute your domain and proper hostname for the occurrences of the *<hostname>* and *<EXAMPLE.COM>* names.

`default_realm` should be the name of your domain changed to ALL CAPS. This isn't required, but both Heimdal and MIT Kerberos recommend it.

`encrypt = true` provides encryption of all traffic between kerberized clients and servers. It's not necessary and can be left off. If you leave it off, you can encrypt all traffic from the client to the server using a switch on the client program instead. The `[realms]` parameters tell the client programs where to look for the KDC authentication services. The `[domain_realm]` section maps a domain to a realm.

Store the master password in a key file using the following commands:

```
install -v -m755 -d /var/lib/heimdal &&
kstash
```

Create the KDC database:

```
kadmin -l
```

The commands below will prompt you for information about the principles. Choose the defaults for now unless you know what you are doing and need to specify different values. You can go in later and change the defaults, should you feel the need. You may use the up and down arrow keys to use the history feature of **kadmin** in a similar manner as the **bash** history feature.

At the `kadmin>` prompt, issue the following statement:

```
init <EXAMPLE.COM>
```

The database must now be populated with at least one principle (user). For now, just use your regular login name or root. You may create as few, or as many principles as you wish using the following statement:

```
add <loginname>
```

The KDC server and any machine running kerberized server daemons must have a host key installed:

```
add --random-key host/<hostname.example.com>
```

After choosing the defaults when prompted, you will have to export the data to a keytab file:

```
ext host/<hostname.example.com>
```

This should have created two files in `/etc/heimdal`: `krb5.keytab` (Kerberos 5) and `srvtab` (Kerberos 4). Both files should have 600 (root rw only) permissions. Keeping the keytab files from public access is crucial to the overall security of the Kerberos installation.

Eventually, you'll want to add server daemon principles to the database and extract them to the keytab file. You do this in the same way you created the host principles. Below is an example:

```
add --random-key ftp/<hostname.example.com>
```

(choose the defaults)

```
ext ftp/<hostname.example.com>
```

Exit the **kadmin** program (use **quit** or **exit**) and return back to the shell prompt. Start the KDC daemon manually, just to test out the installation:

```
/usr/sbin/kdc &
```

Attempt to get a TGT (ticket granting ticket) with the following command:

```
kinit <loginname>
```

You will be prompted for the password you created. After you get your ticket, you should list it with the following command:

```
klist
```

Information about the ticket should be displayed on the screen.

To test the functionality of the `keytab` file, issue the following command:

```
ktutil list
```

This should dump a list of the host principals, along with the encryption methods used to access the principals.

At this point, if everything has been successful so far, you can feel fairly confident in the installation, setup and configuration of your new Heimdal Kerberos 5 installation.

If you wish to use the CrackLib-2.8.12 library to enforce strong passwords in the KDC database, you must do two things. First, add the following lines to the `/etc/heimdal/krb5.conf` configuration file:

```
[password_quality]
    policies = builtin:external-check
    external_program = /bin/krb5-check-cracklib.pl
```

Next you must install the Crypt::Cracklib Perl module. Download it from the CPAN site. The URL at the time of this writing is *http://cpan.org/authors/id/D/DA/DANIEL/Crypt-Cracklib-1.2.tar.gz*. After unpacking the tarball and changing into the newly created directory, issue the following command to add the BLFS Cracklib dictionary location to one of the source files:

```
sed -i 's|pw_dict|&\n\t\t/lib/cracklib/pw_dict|' Cracklib.pm
```

Then use the standard **perl Makefile.PL**; **make**; **make test**; **make install** commands. Note that one test fails due to an unknown reason.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/heimdal` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package:

```
make install-heimdal
```

Using Kerberized Client Programs

To use the kerberized client programs (**telnet**, **ftp**, **rsh**, **rxterm**, **rxtelnet**, **rcp**, **xnlock**), you first must get a TGT. Use the **kinit** program to get the ticket. After you've acquired the ticket, you can use the kerberized programs to connect to any kerberized server on the network. You will not be prompted for authentication until your ticket expires (default is one day), unless you specify a different user as a command line argument to the program.

The kerberized programs will connect to non-kerberized daemons, warning you that authentication is not encrypted.

In order to use the Heimdal X programs, you'll need to add a service port entry to the `/etc/services` file for the **kxd** server. There is no 'standardized port number' for the 'kx' service in the IANA database, so you'll have to pick an unused port number. Add an entry to the `services` file similar to the entry below (substitute your chosen port number for *<49150>*):

```
kx              <49150>/tcp   # Heimdal kerberos X
kx              <49150>/udp   # Heimdal kerberos X
```

For additional information consult *the Heimdal hint* on which the above instructions are based.

Contents

Installed Programs:	afslog, ftp, ftpd, gss, hprop, hpropd, hxtool, iprop-log, ipropd-master, ipropd-slave, kadmin, kadmind, kauth, kcm, kdc, kdestroy, kdigest, kf, kfd, kgetcred, kimpersonate, kinit, klist, kpasswd, kpasswdd, krb5-check-cracklib.pl, krb5-config, kstash, ktutil, kx, kxd, login, mk_cmds-krb5, otp, otpprint, pagsh, pfrom, popper, push, rcp, rsh, rshd, rxtelnet, rxterm, string2key, su, telnet, telnetd, tenletxr, verify_krb5_conf and xnlock
Installed Libraries:	hdb_ldap.{so,a}, libasn1.{so,a}, libeditline.{so,a}, libgssapi.{so,a}, libhdb.{so,a}, libheimntlm.{so,a}, libhx509.{so,a}, libkadm5clnt.{so,a}, libkadm5srv.{so,a}, libkafs.{so,a}, libkdc.{so,a}, libkrb5.{so,a}, libotp.{so,a}, libroken.{so,a}, libsl.{so,a}, libss-krb5.{so,a} and windc.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/heimdal, /usr/include/gssapi, /usr/include/kadm5, /usr/include/krb5, /usr/include/roken, /usr/include/ss, /usr/share/doc/heimdal-1.1 and /var/lib/heimdal

Short Descriptions

afslog obtains AFS tokens for a number of cells.

ftp is a kerberized FTP client.

ftpd is a kerberized FTP daemon.

hprop takes a principal database in a specified format and converts it into a stream of Heimdal database records.

hpropd is a server that receives a database sent by **hprop** and writes it as a local database.

iprop-log is used to maintain the iprop log file.

ipropd-master is a daemon which runs on the master KDC server which incrementally propagates changes to the KDC database to the slave KDC servers.

ipropd-slave is a daemon which runs on the slave KDC servers which incrementally propagates changes to the KDC database from the master KDC server.

kadmin is a utility used to make modifications to the Kerberos database.

kadmind is a server for administrative access to the Kerberos database.

kauth is a symbolic link to the **kinit** program.

kcm is a process based credential cache for Kerberos tickets.

kdc is a Kerberos 5 server.

kdestroy removes a principle's current set of tickets.

kf is a program which forwards tickets to a remote host through an authenticated and encrypted stream.

kfd is a server used to receive forwarded tickets.

kgetcred obtains a ticket for a service.

kinit is used to authenticate to the Kerberos server as a principal and acquire a ticket granting ticket that can later be used to obtain tickets for other services.

klist reads and displays the current tickets in the credential cache.

kpasswd is a program for changing Kerberos 5 passwords.

kpasswdd is a Kerberos 5 password changing server.

krb5-config gives information on how to link programs against Heimdal libraries.

kstash stores the KDC master password in a file.

ktutil is a program for managing Kerberos keytabs.

kx is a program which securely forwards X connections.

kxd is the daemon for **kx**.

login is a kerberized login program.

otp manages one-time passwords.

otpprint prints lists of one-time passwords.

pfrom is a script that runs **push --from**.

popper is a kerberized POP-3 server.

push	is a kerberized POP mail retrieval client.
rcp	is a kerberized rcp client program.
rsh	is a kerberized rsh client program.
rshd	is a kerberized rsh server.
rxtelnet	starts a secure **xterm** window with a **telnet** to a given host and forwards X connections.
rxterm	starts a secure remote **xterm**.
string2key	maps a password into a key.
su	is a kerberized su client program.
telnet	is a kerberized telnet client program.
telnetd	is a kerberized telnet server.
tenletxr	forwards X connections backwards.
verify_krb5_conf	checks `krb5.conf` file for obvious errors.
xnlock	is a program that acts as a secure screen saver for workstations running X.
`libasn1.{so,a}`	provides the ASN.1 and DER functions to encode and decode the Kerberos TGTs.
`libeditline.a`	is a command-line editing library with history.
`libgssapi.{so,a}`	contain the Generic Security Service Application Programming Interface (GSSAPI) functions which provides security services to callers in a generic fashion, supportable with a range of underlying mechanisms and technologies and hence allowing source-level portability of applications to different environments.
`libhdb.{so,a}`	is a Heimdal Kerberos 5 authentication/authorization database access library.
`libkadm5clnt.{so,a}`	contains the administrative authentication and password checking functions required by Kerberos 5 client-side programs.
`libkadm5srv.{so,a}`	contain the administrative authentication and password checking functions required by Kerberos 5 servers.
`libkafs.{so,a}`	contains the functions required to authenticated to AFS.
`libkrb5.{so,a}`	is an all-purpose Kerberos 5 library.
`libotp.{so,a}`	contains the functions required to handle authenticating one time passwords.
`libroken.{so,a}`	is a library containing Kerberos 5 compatibility functions.

MIT Kerberos V5-1.6

Introduction to MIT Kerberos V5

MIT Kerberos V5 is a free implementation of Kerberos 5. Kerberos is a network authentication protocol. It centralizes the authentication database and uses kerberized applications to work with servers or services that support Kerberos allowing single logins and encrypted communication over internal networks or the Internet.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://web.mit.edu/kerberos/www/dist/krb5/1.6/krb5-1.6-signed.tar*
-
- Download MD5 sum: a365e39ff7d39639556c2797a0e1c3f4
- Download size: 12.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 124 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.4 SBU

MIT Kerberos V5 Dependencies

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 (for **xdm** based logins), OpenLDAP-2.3.39, and DejaGnu-1.4.4 (required to run the test suite)

Note

Some sort of time synchronization facility on your system (like NTP-4.2.4p0) is required since Kerberos won't authenticate if there is a time difference between a kerberized client and the KDC server.

Installation of MIT Kerberos V5

MIT Kerberos V5 is distributed in a TAR file containing a compressed TAR package and a detached PGP ASC file. You'll need to unpack the distribution tar file, then unpack the compressed tar file before starting the build.

After unpacking the distribution tarball and if you have GnuPG-1.4.7 installed, you can authenticate the package with the following command:

```
gpg - -verify krb5-1.6.tar.gz.asc
```

Build MIT Kerberos V5 by running the following commands:

```
cd src &&
./configure CPPFLAGS="-I/usr/include/et -I/usr/include/ss" \
            --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/krb5 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --with-system-et \
            --with-system-ss \
            --enable-dns-for-realm \
            --mandir=/usr/share/man &&
make
```

The regression test suite is designed to be run after the installation has been completed.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

mv -v /usr/bin/ksu /bin &&
chmod -v 755 /bin/ksu &&
mv -v /usr/lib/libkrb5.so.3* /lib &&
mv -v /usr/lib/libk5crypto.so.3* /lib &&
mv -v /usr/lib/libkrb5support.so.0* /lib &&

ln -v -sf ../../lib/libkrb5.so.3.3 /usr/lib/libkrb5.so &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libk5crypto.so.3.1 /usr/lib/libk5crypto.so &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libkrb5support.so.0.1 /usr/lib/libkrb5support.so&&

install -m644 -v ../doc/*.info* /usr/share/info &&
for INFOFILE in 425 5-admin 5-install 5-user; do
    install-info --info-dir=/usr/share/info \
                 /usr/share/info/krb$INFOFILE.info
    rm ../doc/krb$INFOFILE.info*
done &&

install -m755 -v -d /usr/share/doc/krb5-1.6 &&
cp -Rv ../doc/* /usr/share/doc/krb5-1.6
```

Warning

login.krb5 does not support Shadow passwords. As a result, when the Kerberos server is unavailable, the default fall through to `/etc/passwd` will not work because the passwords have been moved to `/etc/shadow` during the LFS build process. Entering the following commands without moving the passwords back to `/etc/passwd` could prevent any logins.

After considering (and understanding) the above warning, the following commands can be entered as the `root` user to replace the existing **login** program with the Kerberized version (after preserving the original) and move the support libraries to a location available when the `/usr` filesystem is not mounted:

```
mv -v /bin/login /bin/login.shadow &&
install -m755 -v /usr/sbin/login.krb5 /bin/login &&

mv -v /usr/lib/libdes425.so.3* /lib &&
mv -v /usr/lib/libkrb4.so.2* /lib &&

ln -v -sf ../../lib/libdes425.so.3.0 /usr/lib/libdes425.so &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libkrb4.so.2.0 /usr/lib/libkrb4.so &&

ldconfig
```

To test the installation, you must have DejaGnu-1.4.4 installed and issue: **make check**. The RPC layer tests will require a portmap daemon (see portmap-6.0) running and configured to listen on the regular network interface (not localhost). See the “Testing the Build” section of the `krb5-install.html` file in the `../doc` directory for complete information on running the regression tests.

Command Explanations

`--enable-dns-for-realm`: This parameter allows realms to be resolved using the DNS server.

`--with-system-et`: This parameter causes the build to use the system-installed versions of the error-table support software.

`--with-system-ss`: This parameter causes the build to use the system-installed versions of the subsystem command-line interface software.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that the Kerberos variable run-time data is located in `/var/lib` instead of `/usr/var`.

mv -v /usr/bin/ksu /bin: Moves the **ksu** program to the `/bin` directory so that it is available when the `/usr` filesystem is not mounted.

mv -v ... /lib && ln -v -sf ...: These libraries are moved to `/lib` so they are available when the `/usr` filesystem is not mounted.

Configuring MIT Kerberos V5

Config Files

`/etc/krb5/krb5.conf` and `/var/lib/krb5kdc/kdc.conf`

Configuration Information

Kerberos Configuration

Tip

You should consider installing some sort of password checking dictionary so that you can configure the installation to only accept strong passwords. A suitable dictionary to use is shown in the CrackLib-2.8.12 instructions. Note that only one file can be used, but you can concatenate many files into one. The configuration file shown below assumes you have installed a dictionary to `/usr/share/dict/words`.

Create the Kerberos configuration file with the following commands issued by the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /etc/krb5 &&
cat > /etc/krb5/krb5.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/krb5/krb5.conf

[libdefaults]
    default_realm = <LFS.ORG>
    encrypt = true

[realms]
    <LFS.ORG> = {
        kdc = <belgarath.lfs.org>
        admin_server = <belgarath.lfs.org>
        dict_file = /usr/share/dict/words
    }

[domain_realm]
    .<lfs.org> = <LFS.ORG>

[logging]
    kdc = SYSLOG[:INFO[:AUTH]]
    admin_server = SYSLOG[INFO[:AUTH]]
    default = SYSLOG[[:SYS]]

# End /etc/krb5/krb5.conf
EOF
```

You will need to substitute your domain and proper hostname for the occurences of the *<belgarath>* and *<lfs.org>* names.

`default_realm` should be the name of your domain changed to ALL CAPS. This isn't required, but both Heimdal and MIT recommend it.

`encrypt = true` provides encryption of all traffic between kerberized clients and servers. It's not necessary and can be left off. If you leave it off, you can encrypt all traffic from the client to the server using a switch on the client program instead.

The `[realms]` parameters tell the client programs where to look for the KDC authentication services.

The `[domain_realm]` section maps a domain to a realm.

Create the KDC database:

```
kdb5_util create -r <LFS.ORG> -s
```

Now you should populate the database with principles (users). For now, just use your regular login name or `root`.

```
kadmin.local
kadmin: add_policy dict-only
kadmin: addprinc -policy dict-only <loginname>
```

The KDC server and any machine running kerberized server daemons must have a host key installed:

```
kadmin: addprinc -randkey host/<belgarath.lfs.org>
```

After choosing the defaults when prompted, you will have to export the data to a keytab file:

```
kadmin: ktadd host/<belgarath.lfs.org>
```

This should have created a file in `/etc/krb5` named `krb5.keytab` (Kerberos 5). This file should have 600 (`root` rw only) permissions. Keeping the keytab files from public access is crucial to the overall security of the Kerberos installation.

Eventually, you'll want to add server daemon principles to the database and extract them to the keytab file. You do this in the same way you created the host principles. Below is an example:

```
kadmin: addprinc -randkey ftp/<belgarath.lfs.org>
kadmin: ktadd ftp/<belgarath.lfs.org>
```

Exit the **kadmin** program (use **quit** or **exit**) and return back to the shell prompt. Start the KDC daemon manually, just to test out the installation:

```
/usr/sbin/krb5kdc &
```

Attempt to get a ticket with the following command:

```
kinit <loginname>
```

You will be prompted for the password you created. After you get your ticket, you can list it with the following command:

```
klist
```

Information about the ticket should be displayed on the screen.

To test the functionality of the keytab file, issue the following command:

```
ktutil
ktutil: rkt /etc/krb5/krb5.keytab
ktutil: l
```

This should dump a list of the host principal, along with the encryption methods used to access the principal.

At this point, if everything has been successful so far, you can feel fairly confident in the installation and configuration of the package.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/kerberos` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-kerberos
```

Using Kerberized Client Programs

To use the kerberized client programs (**telnet**, **ftp**, **rsh**, **rcp**, **rlogin**), you first must get an authentication ticket. Use the **kinit** program to get the ticket. After you've acquired the ticket, you can use the kerberized programs to connect to any kerberized server on the network. You will not be prompted for authentication until your ticket expires (default is one day), unless you specify a different user as a command line argument to the program.

The kerberized programs will connect to non kerberized daemons, warning you that authentication is not encrypted.

Using Kerberized Server Programs

Using kerberized server programs (**telnetd**, **kpropd**, **klogind** and **kshd**) requires two additional configuration steps. First the `/etc/services` file must be updated to include eklogin and krb5_prop. Second, the `inetd.conf` or `xinetd.conf` must be modified for each server that will be activated, usually replacing the server from Inetutils-1.5.

Additional Information

For additional information consult *Documentation for krb-1.6* on which the above instructions are based.

Contents

Installed Programs:	ftp, ftpd, gss-client, gss-server, k5srvutil, kadmin, kadmin.local, kadmind, kdb5_ldap_util, kdb5_util, kdestroy, kinit, klist, klogind, kpasswd, kprop, kpropd, krb5-config, krb5-send-pr, krb524d, krb524init, krb5kdc, kshd, ksu, ktutil, kvno, login.krb5, rcp, rlogin, rsh, sclient, sim_client, sim_server, sserver, telnet, telnetd, uuclient, uuserver and v4rcp
Installed Libraries:	libdes425.so, libgssapi_krb5.so, libgssrpc.so, libk5crypto.so, libkadm5clnt.so, libkadm5srv.so, libkdb5.so, libkdb_ldap.so, libkrb4.so, libkrb5.so and libkrb5support.so
Installed Directories:	/etc/krb5, /usr/include/{gssapi,gssrpc,kerberosIV,krb5}, /usr/lib/krb5, /usr/share/{doc/krb5-1.6,examples,gnats} and /var/lib/krb5kdc

Short Descriptions

ftp	is a kerberized FTP client.
ftpd	is a kerberized FTP daemon.
k5srvutil	is a host keytable manipulation utility.
kadmin	is an utility used to make modifications to the Kerberos database.
kadmind	is a server for administrative access to a Kerberos database.
kdb5_util	is the KDC database utility.
kdestroy	removes the current set of tickets.
kinit	is used to authenticate to the Kerberos server as a principal and acquire a ticket granting ticket that can later be used to obtain tickets for other services.
klist	reads and displays the current tickets in the credential cache.
klogind	is the server that responds to **rlogin** requests.
kpasswd	is a program for changing Kerberos 5 passwords.
kprop	takes a principal database in a specified format and converts it into a stream of database records.
kpropd	receives a database sent by **kprop** and writes it as a local database.
krb5-config	gives information on how to link programs against libraries.
krb5kdc	is a Kerberos 5 server.

kshd is the server that responds to **rsh** requests.

ksu is the super user program using Kerberos protocol. Requires a properly configured `/etc/shells` and `~/.k5login` containing principals authorized to become super users.

ktutil is a program for managing Kerberos keytabs.

kvno prints keyversion numbers of Kerberos principals.

login.krb5 is a kerberized login program.

rcp is a kerberized rcp client program.

rlogin is a kerberized rlogin client program.

rsh is a kerberized rsh client program.

telnet is a kerberized telnet client program.

telnetd is a kerberized telnet server.

`libgssapi_krb5.so` contain the Generic Security Service Application Programming Interface (GSSAPI) functions which provides security services to callers in a generic fashion, supportable with a range of underlying mechanisms and technologies and hence allowing source-level portability of applications to different environments.

`libkadm5clnt.so` contains the administrative authentication and password checking functions required by Kerberos 5 client-side programs.

`libkadm5srv.so` contain the administrative authentication and password checking functions required by Kerberos 5 servers.

`libkdb5.so` is a Kerberos 5 authentication/authorization database access library.

`libkrb5.so` is an all-purpose Kerberos 5 library.

Cyrus SASL-2.1.22

Introduction to Cyrus SASL

The Cyrus SASL package contains a Simple Authentication and Security Layer, a method for adding authentication support to connection-based protocols. To use SASL, a protocol includes a command for identifying and authenticating a user to a server and for optionally negotiating protection of subsequent protocol interactions. If its use is negotiated, a security layer is inserted between the protocol and the connection.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.andrew.cmu.edu/pub/cyrus-mail/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.andrew.cmu.edu/pub/cyrus-mail/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 45dde9d19193ae9dd388eb68b2027bc9
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 14 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Cyrus SASL Dependencies

Required

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, JDK-6 Update 5, MySQL-5.0.41, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, GDBM-1.8.3, *krb4*, *SQLite*, and *Dmalloc*

Installation of Cyrus SASL

Install Cyrus SASL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --with-dbpath=/var/lib/sasl/sasldb2 \
            --with-saslauthd=/var/run/saslauthd &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite. If you are planning on using the GSSAPI authentication mechanism, it is recommended to test it after installing the package using the sample server and client programs which were built in the preceding step. Instructions for performing the tests can be found at *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/cyrus-sasl.txt*.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22 &&
install -v -m644 doc/{*.{html,txt,fig},ONEWS,TODO} \
    saslauthd/LDAP_SASLAUTHD /usr/share/doc/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22 &&
install -v -m700 -d /var/lib/sasl /var/run/saslauthd
```

Command Explanations

--with-dbpath=/var/lib/sasl/sasldb2: This parameter forces the **sasldb** database to be created in `/var/lib/sasl` instead of `/etc`.

--with-saslauthd=/var/run/saslauthd: This parameter forces **saslauthd** to use the FHS compliant directory `/var/run/saslauthd` for variable run-time data.

--with-dblib=gdbm: This parameter forces GDBM to be used instead of Berkeley DB.

`--with-ldap`: This parameter enables use with OpenLDAP.

`--enable-ldapdb`: This parameter enables the LDAPDB authentication backend. There is a circular dependency with this parameter. See *http://wiki.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/wiki/cyrus-sasl* for a solution to this problem.

install -v -m644 ...: These commands install documentation which is not installed by the **make install** command.

install -v -m700 -d /var/lib/sasl /var/run/saslauthd: These directories must exist when starting **saslauthd** or using the sasldb plugin. If you're not going to be running the daemon or using the plugins, you may omit the creation of this directory.

Configuring Cyrus SASL

Config Files

`/etc/saslauthd.conf` (for **saslauthd** LDAP configuration) and `/etc/sasl2/Appname.conf` (where "Appname" is the application defined name of the application)

Configuration Information

See *file:///usr/share/doc/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22/sysadmin.html* for information on what to include in the application configuration files. See *file:///usr/share/doc/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22/LDAP_SASLAUTHD* for configuring **saslauthd** with OpenLDAP.

Init Script

If you need to run the **saslauthd** daemon at system startup, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/cyrus-sasl` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-cyrus-sasl
```

Note

You'll need to modify the init script and replace the `<authmech>` parameter to the `-a` switch with your desired authentication mechanism.

Contents

Installed Programs:	saslauthd, sasldblistusers2, and saslpasswd2
Installed Libraries:	libjavasasl.so, libsasl2.so, and numerous SASL plugins and Java classes
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/sasl, /usr/lib/java/classes/sasl, /usr/lib/sasl2, /usr/share/doc/cyrus-sasl-2.1.22, and /var/lib/sasl

Short Descriptions

saslauthd is the SASL authentication server.

sasldblistusers2 is used to list the users in the SASL password database `sasldb2`.

saslpasswd2 is used to set and delete a user's SASL password and mechanism specific secrets in the SASL password database `sasldb2`.

`libsasl2.so` is a general purpose authentication library for server and client applications.

Stunnel-4.21

Introduction to Stunnel

The Stunnel package contains a program that allows you to encrypt arbitrary TCP connections inside SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) so you can easily communicate with clients over secure channels. Stunnel can be used to add SSL functionality to commonly used Inetd daemons like POP-2, POP-3, and IMAP servers, to standalone daemons like NNTP, SMTP and HTTP, and in tunneling PPP over network sockets without changes to the server package source code.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.stunnel.org/download/stunnel/src/stunnel-4.21.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://stunnel.mirt.net/stunnel/stunnel-4.21.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 1eaec5228979beca4d548f453304e311
- Download size: 528 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/stunnel-4.21-setuid-1.patch*

Stunnel Dependencies

Required

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

TCP Wrapper-7.6

Installation of Stunnel

The **stunnel** daemon will be run in a **chroot** jail by an unprivileged user. Create the new user and group using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 51 stunnel &&
useradd -c "Stunnel Daemon" -d /var/lib/stunnel \
        -g stunnel -s /bin/false -u 51 stunnel
```

Note

A signed SSL Certificate and a Private Key is necessary to run the **stunnel** daemon. If you own, or have already created a signed SSL Certificate you wish to use, copy it to `/etc/stunnel/stunnel.pem` before starting the build (ensure only `root` has read and write access), otherwise you will be prompted to create one during the installation process. The `.pem` file must be formatted as shown below:

```
-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
<many encrypted lines of unencrypted key>
-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
<many encrypted lines of certificate>
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Install Stunnel by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../stunnel-4.21-setuid-1.patch &&

sed -i 's|nogroup|stunnel|g' configure &&
sed -i 's|$(prefix)/var/lib|$(localstatedir)|' tools/Makefile.in &&

./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --disable-libwrap &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make docdir=/usr/share/doc/stunnel-4.21 install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's|nogroup|stunnel|g' configure: This command is used to change the default group for the installed files in `/var/lib/stunnel` from `nogroup` to `stunnel`.

sed -i '...' tools/Makefile.in: This command ensures that the chroot jail will be located in `/var/lib/stunnel` instead of `/usr/var/lib/stunnel`.

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This parameter forces the configuration directory to `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter sets the installation to use `/var/lib/stunnel` instead of creating and using `/usr/var/stunnel`.

`--disable-libwrap`: This parameter is required if you don't have tcpwrappers installed. Remove the parameter if tcpwrappers is installed.

make docdir=... install: This command installs the package, changes the documentation installation directory to standard naming conventions and, if you did not copy an `stunnel.pem` file to the `/etc/stunnel` directory, prompts you for the necessary information to create one. Ensure you reply to the

```
Common Name (FQDN of your server) [localhost]:
```

prompt with the name or IP address you will be using to access the service(s).

Configuring Stunnel

Config Files

`/etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf`

Configuration Information

As the `root` user, create the directory used for the `.pid` file that is created when the Stunnel daemon starts:

```
install -v -m750 -o stunnel -g stunnel -d /var/lib/stunnel/run
```

Next, create a basic `/etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf` configuration file using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
cat >/etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf << "EOF" &&
; File: /etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf

pid    = /run/stunnel.pid
chroot = /var/lib/stunnel
client = no
setuid = stunnel
setgid = stunnel

EOF
chmod -v 644 /etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf
```

Finally, you need to add the service(s) you wish to encrypt to the configuration file. The format is as follows:

```
[<service>]
accept  = <hostname:portnumber>
connect = <hostname:portnumber>
```

If you use Stunnel to encrypt a daemon started from **[x]inetd**, you may need to disable that daemon in the `/etc/[x]inetd.conf` file and enable a corresponding *<service>*_stunnel service. You may have to add an appropriate entry in `/etc/services` as well.

For a full explanation of the commands and syntax used in the configuration file, run **man stunnel**. To see a BLFS example of an actual setup of an **stunnel** encrypted service, read the the section called “Configuring SWAT” in the Samba instructions.

Boot Script

To automatically start the **stunnel** daemon when the system is rebooted, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/stunnel` bootscript from the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-stunnel
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	stunnel and stunnel3
Installed Library:	libstunnel.so
Installed Directories:	/etc/stunnel, /usr/lib/stunnel, /usr/share/doc/stunnel-4.21 and /var/lib/stunnel

Short Descriptions

stunnel is a program designed to work as an SSL encryption wrapper between remote clients and local (**{x}inetd**-startable) or remote servers.

stunnel3 is a Perl wrapper script to use **stunnel** 3.x syntax with **stunnel** >=4.05.

`libstunnel.so` contains the API functions required by Stunnel.

Sudo-1.6.9p15

Introduction to Sudo

The sudo package allows a system administrator to give certain users (or groups of users) the ability to run some (or all) commands as `root` or another user while logging the commands and arguments.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.sudo.ws/sudo/dist/sudo-1.6.9p15.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.twaren.net/Unix/Security/Sudo/sudo-1.6.9p15.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 06cfeed4ececfce6c82e03974c588066
- Download size: 581 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.9 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Sudo Dependencies

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, *Opie*, *SecurID*, *FWTK*, an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command), *krb4*, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, and *AFS*

Installation of Sudo

Install sudo by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib \
    --with-ignore-dot --with-all-insults \
    --enable-shell-sets-home --disable-root-sudo \
    --with-logfac=auth --without-pam --without-sendmail &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-ignore-dot`: This switch causes sudo to ignore '.' in the PATH.

`--with-all-insults`: This switch includes all the sudo insult sets.

`--enable-shell-sets-home`: This switch sets HOME to the target user in shell mode.

`--disable-root-sudo`: This switch keeps the `root` user from running sudo, preventing users from chaining commands to get a root shell.

`--with-logfac=auth`: This switch forces use of the auth facility for logging.

`--without-pam`: This switch disables the use of PAM authentication. Omit if you have PAM installed.

`--without-sendmail`: This switch disables the use of sendmail. Remove if you have a sendmail compatible MTA.

`--enable-noargs-shell`: This switch allows sudo to run a shell if invoked with no arguments.

Note

There are many options to sudo's **configure** command. Check the **configure --help** output for a complete list.

Configuring Sudo

Config File

`/etc/sudoers`

Configuration Information

The `sudoers` file can be quite complicated. It is composed of two types of entries: aliases (basically variables) and user specifications (which specify who may run what). The installation installs a default configuration that has no privileges installed for any user.

One example usage is to allow the system administrator to execute any program without typing a password each time root privileges are needed. This can be configured as:

```
# User alias specification
User_Alias  ADMIN = YourLoginId

# Allow people in group ADMIN to run all commands without a password
ADMIN       ALL = NOPASSWD: ALL
```

For details, see **man sudoers**.

Note

The Sudo developers highly recommend using the **visudo** program to edit the `sudoers` file. This will provide basic sanity checking like syntax parsing and file permission to avoid some possible mistakes that could lead to a vulnerable configuration.

If you've built Sudo with PAM support, issue the following command as the `root` user to create the PAM configuration file:

```
sed -e 's@/su@/sudo@' -e '/pam_rootok/d' \
    /etc/pam.d/su > /etc/pam.d/sudo
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	sudo, sudoedit, and visudo
Installed Library:	sudo_noexec.so
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

sudo	executes a command as another user as permitted by the `/etc/sudoers` configuration file.
sudoedit	is a hard link to **sudo** that implies the `-e` option to invoke an editor as another user.
visudo	allows for safer editing of the `sudoers` file.
`sudo_noexec.so`	enables support for the "noexec" functionality which prevents a dynamically-linked program being run by sudo from executing another program (think shell escapes).

NSS-3.11.7

Introduction to NSS

The Network Security Services (NSS) package is a set of libraries designed to support cross-platform development of security-enabled client and server applications. Applications built with NSS can support SSL v2 and v3, TLS, PKCS #5, PKCS #7, PKCS #11, PKCS #12, S/MIME, X.509 v3 certificates, and other security standards. This is useful for implementing SSL and S/MIME or other Internet security standards into an application.

The NSS package requires the Netscape Portable Runtime (NSPR) libraries as a prerequisite for building. The NSS package tarball contains the code necessary to build the NSPR libraries. These libraries are built and installed using the instructions below. Essentially, the NSS package is now a combined NSS/NSPR installation.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/security/nss/releases/NSS_3_11_7_RTM/src/nss-3.11.7-with-nspr-4.6.7.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/security/nss/releases/NSS_3_11_7_RTM/src/nss-3.11.7-with-nspr-4.6.7.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 0b0c6bdf63c442d68453e470b8747a9d
- Download size: 5.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 71 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU (additional 0.9 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/nss-3.11.7-with-nspr-4.6.7-fedora_fixes-1.patch*

Installation of NSS

Install NSS by running the following commands:

```
bash

export WORKINGDIR=$PWD &&
export BUILD_OPT=1 &&

patch -Np1 -i ../nss-3.11.7-with-nspr-4.6.7-fedora_fixes-1.patch &&

cd mozilla/security/nss &&
make nss_build_all &&
cd ../.. &&

export NSS_LINUXDIR=$(basename `ls -d $WORKINGDIR/mozilla/dist/Linux*`)
```

To test the results, you'll need to set the domain name of your system in the DOMSUF environment variable. Most of the tests will fail if you don't provide the correct domain name. A self-generated log file will be parsed at the end of the test to display how many tests passed. It should return 800. To run the tests, ensure you change the **export DOMSUF** command below to an appropriate value, e.g., *mydomain.com* and issue the following commands:

```
bash

export DOMSUF=<validdomain.name> &&
export PATH=$PATH:$WORKINGDIR/mozilla/dist/$NSS_LINUXDIR/bin &&
export TEST_RESULTSDIR=$WORKINGDIR/mozilla/tests_results/security &&

cd security/nss/tests &&
sed -i 's/gmake/make/' common/init.sh &&
./all.sh &&

grep Passed $TEST_RESULTSDIR/$(hostname).1/results.html | wc -l &&

exit
```

Caution

If you switch to the root user using a method that does not inherit the environment from the unprivileged user, ensure that root's NSS_LINUXDIR environment variable is set correctly before proceeding with the installation commands.

Now, as the root user:

```
install -v -m755 nsprpub/$NSS_LINUXDIR/config/nspr-config \
                 security/nss/cmd/config/nss-config \
    /usr/bin &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/lib/pkgconfig &&
install -v -m644 nsprpub/lib/pkgconfig/nspr.pc \
                 security/nss/lib/pkgconfig/nss.pc \
    /usr/lib/pkgconfig &&

cd dist &&

install -v -m755 $NSS_LINUXDIR/lib/*.so /usr/lib &&
install -v -m644 $NSS_LINUXDIR/lib/{*.chk,libcrmf.a} /usr/lib &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/include/{nss,nspr} &&
install -v -m644 {public,private}/nss/* /usr/include/nss &&
cp -v -RL $NSS_LINUXDIR/include/* /usr/include/nspr &&
chmod -v 644 /usr/include/nspr/prvrsion.h
```

Now as the unprivileged user, exit the **bash** shell started at the beginning of the installation to restore the environment to the original state.

```
exit
```

Command Explanations

bash: Shells are started as many environment variables are created during the installation process. Exiting the shells serves the purpose of restoring the environment and returning back to the original directory when the installation is complete.

export WORKINGDIR=$PWD: This variable is set because many of the commands are dependent on knowing the full path of certain directories. `WORKINGDIR` establishes a known path so that all others can be determined relative to this.

export BUILD_OPT=1: This variable is set so that the build is performed with no debugging symbols built into the binaries and that the default compiler optimizations are used.

export NSS_LINUXDIR=...: This variable is set so that the exact name of the architecture specific directories where the binaries are stored in the source tree can be determined.

make nss_build_all: This command builds the NSPR and NSS libraries and creates a `dist` directory which houses all the programs, libraries and interface headers. None of the programs created by this process are installed onto the system using the default instructions. If you need any of these programs installed, you can find them in the `mozilla/dist/bin` directory of the source tree.

export PATH=...: This command sets the `PATH` environment variable to include the executables in the source tree as some of them are required to run the test suite.

sed -i 's/gmake/make/' common/init.sh: This command changes the command used to compile some test programs.

Contents

Installed Programs:	nspr-config and nss-config
Installed Libraries:	libcrmf.a, libfreebl3.so, libnspr4.so, libnss3.so, libnssckbi.so, libplc4.so, libplds4.so, libsmime3.so, libsoftokn3.so and libssl3.so
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/nspr and /usr/include/nss

Short Descriptions

nspr-config	is used to determine the NSPR installation settings of the installed NSPR libraries.
nss-config	is used to determine the NSS library settings of the installed NSS libraries.

The `libnspr4.so`, `libplc4.so` and `libplds4.so` libraries make up the Netscape Portable Runtime (NSPR) libraries. These libraries provide a platform-neutral API for system level and libc like functions. The API is used in the Mozilla client, many of the Netscape/AOL/iPlanet offerings and other software applications.

The `libcrmf.a`, `libfreebl.so`, `libnss3.so`, `libnssckbi.so`, `libsmime3.so`, `libsoftokn3.so` and `libnssl3.so` libraries make up the NSS libraries.

Chapter 5. File Systems

Journaling file systems reduce the time needed to recover a file system that was not unmounted properly. While this can be extremely important in reducing downtime for servers, it has also become popular for desktop environments. This chapter contains two other journaling file systems you can use instead of the default LFS third extended file system.

ReiserFS-3.6.20

Introduction to ReiserFS

The ReiserFS package contains various utilities for use with the Reiser file system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/r/reiserfsprogs-3.6.20.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/r/reiserfsprogs-3.6.20.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 3b3392f59c5d302cf858bc4cf194b258
- Download size: 500 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of ReiserFS

Install ReiserFS by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sbindir=/sbin &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -sf reiserfsck /sbin/fsck.reiserfs &&
ln -sf mkreiserfs /sbin/mkfs.reiserfs
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=/usr`: This ensures that the manual pages are installed in the correct location while still installing the programs in `/sbin` as they should be.

`--sbindir=/sbin`: This ensures that the ReiserFS utilities are installed in `/sbin` as they should be.

Contents

Installed Programs: debugreiserfs, mkreiserfs, reiserfsck, reiserfstune, and resize_reiserfs
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

debugreiserfs can sometimes help to solve problems with ReiserFS file systems. If it is called without options, it prints the super block of any ReiserFS file system found on the device.

mkreiserfs creates a ReiserFS file system.

reiserfsck is used to check or repair a ReiserFS file system.

reiserfstune is used for tuning the ReiserFS journal. *WARNING*: Don't use this utility without first reading the man page thoroughly.

resize_reiserfs is used to resize an unmounted ReiserFS file system.

XFS-2.9.7

Introduction to XFS

The XFS package contains administration and debugging tools for the XFS file system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/sources/xfsprogs_2.9.7-1.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 2bba6d3e4183defacf99e5e8ce805460
- Download size: 976 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 37 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Caution

The XFS developers regularly remove the current package when a new package is available. Unfortunately, this has led to severe incompatibilities, including *unmountable filesystems*, due to kernel version requirements in new versions of the package. Using a version not in the book is strongly discouraged. Additional information, is available at the *XFS* project page.

Installation of XFS

Install XFS by running the following commands:

```
make DEBUG=-DNDEBUG INSTALL_USER=root INSTALL_GROUP=root \
    LOCAL_CONFIGURE_OPTIONS="--enable-readline=yes"
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-dev &&
chmod -v 755 /lib/libhandle.so* &&
rm -f /lib/libhandle.{a,la,so} &&
ln -svf ../../lib/libhandle.so.1 /usr/lib/libhandle.so
```

Command Explanations

make DEBUG=-DNDEBUG: Turns off debugging symbols.

`INSTALL_USER=root INSTALL_GROUP=root`: This sets the owner and group of the installed files.

`LOCAL_CONFIGURE_OPTIONS="..."`: This passes extra configuration options to the `configure` script. The example *`--enable-readline=yes`* parameter enables linking the XFS programs with the `libreadline.so` library, in order to allow editing interactive commands.

`OPTIMIZER="..."`: Adding this parameter to the end of the **make** command overrides the default optimization settings.

make install-dev: This command installs static XFS libraries, their headers and the corresponding documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	fsck.xfs, mkfs.xfs, xfs_admin, xfs_bmap, xfs_check, xfs_copy, xfs_db, xfs_freeze, xfs_growfs, xfs_info, xfs_io, xfs_logprint, xfs_mdrestore, xfs_metadump, xfs_mkfile, xfs_ncheck, xfs_quota, xfs_repair, and xfs_rtcp
Installed Libraries:	libdisk.a, libhandle.{so,a}, libxcmd.a, libxfs.a, and libxlog.a
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/xfsprogs

Short Descriptions

fsck.xfs	simply exits with a zero status, since XFS partitions are checked at mount time.
mkfs.xfs	constructs an XFS file system.
xfs_admin	changes the parameters of an XFS file system.
xfs_bmap	prints block mapping for an XFS file.
xfs_check	checks XFS file system consistency.
xfs_copy	copies the contents of an XFS file system to one or more targets in parallel.
xfs_db	is used to debug an XFS file system.
xfs_freeze	suspends access to an XFS file system.
xfs_growfs	expands an XFS file system.
xfs_info	is equivalent to invoking **xfs_growfs**, but specifying that no change to the file system is to be made.
xfs_io	is a debugging tool like **xfs_db**, but is aimed at examining the regular file I/O path rather than the raw XFS volume itself.
xfs_logprint	prints the log of an XFS file system.
xfs_mdrestore	restores an XFS metadump image to a filesystem image.
xfs_metadump	copies XFS filesystem metadata to a file.
xfs_mkfile	creates an XFS file, padded with zeroes by default.
xfs_ncheck	generates pathnames from inode numbers for an XFS file system.
xfs_quota	is a utility for reporting and editing various aspects of filesystem quota.
xfs_repair	repairs corrupt or damaged XFS file systems.
xfs_rtcp	copies a file to the real-time partition on an XFS file system.
`libhandle.so`	contains XFS-specific functions that provide a way to perform certain filesystem operations without using a file descriptor to access filesystem objects.

Chapter 6. Editors

This chapter is referenced in the LFS book for those wishing to use other editors on their LFS system. You're also shown how some LFS installed programs benefit from being recompiled after GUI libraries have been installed.

Vim-7.1

Introduction to Vim

The Vim package, which is an abbreviation for VI IMproved, contains a **vi** clone with extra features as compared to the original **vi**.

The default LFS instructions install vim as a part of the base system. If you would prefer to link vim against X, you should recompile vim to enable GUI mode. There is no need for special instructions since X support is automatically detected.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.at.vim.org/pub/vim/unix/vim-7.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/unix/vim-7.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 44c6b4914f38d6f9aa959640b89da329
- Download size: 6.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 75 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/vim-7.1-mandir-1.patch*
- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/vim-7.1-fixes-6.patch*
- Translated Vim messages: *http://ftp.at.vim.org/pub/vim/extra/vim-7.1-lang.tar.gz*

Vim Dependencies

Recommended

X Window System

Optional

GTK+-2.10.13 or LessTif-0.95.0 or GTK+-1.2.10, Python-2.5.2, Tcl-8.4.18, Ruby-1.8.6-p111, and GPM-1.20.1

Installation of Vim

Note

If you recompile Vim to link against X and your X libraries are not on the root partition, you will no longer have an editor for use in emergencies. You may choose to install an additional editor, not link Vim against X, or move the current **vim** executable to the `/bin` directory under a different name such as `vi`.

If desired, unpack the translated messages archive:

```
tar -xf ../vim-7.1-lang.tar.gz --strip-components=1
```

Install Vim by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../vim-7.1-mandir-1.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../vim-7.1-fixes-6.patch &&
echo '#define SYS_VIMRC_FILE "/etc/vimrc"' >> src/feature.h &&
echo '#define SYS_GVIMRC_FILE "/etc/gvimrc"' >> src/feature.h &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-features=huge &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**. The vim test suite outputs a lot of binary data to the screen, which can cause issues with the settings of the current terminal. This can be resolved by redirecting the output to a log file. Even if one of the tests fails to produce the file `test.out` in `src/testdir`, the remaining tests will still be executed. If all goes well,the final message in the log file will be `ALL DONE`. *Note*: Some color tests expect to be executed under the **xterm** terminal emulator.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

By default, Vim's documentation is installed in `/usr/share/vim`. The following symlink allows the documentation to be accessed via `/usr/share/doc/vim-7.1`, making it consistent with the location of documentation for other packages:

```
ln -snfv ../vim/vim71/doc /usr/share/doc/vim-7.1
```

If you wish to update the runtime files, issue the following command (requires rsync-3.0.2):

```
rsync -avzcP --delete --exclude="/dos/" --exclude="/spell/" \
    ftp.nluug.nl::Vim/runtime/ ./runtime/
```

To install the runtime files and regenerate the `tags` file, as the `root` user issue:

```
make -C src installruntime &&
vim -c ":helptags /usr/share/doc/vim-7.1" -c ":q"
```

Command Explanations

patch …: These patches are the same as the ones in the LFS build used to update the package with upstream patches and ensure the man pages are placed in the proper locations.

`--with-features=huge`: This switch enables all the additional features available in Vim.

`--enable-gui=no`: This will prevent compilation of the GUI. Vim will still link against X, so that some features such as the client-server model or the x11-selection (clipboard) are still available.

`--without-x`: If you prefer not to link Vim against X, use this switch.

`--enable-perlinterp`, `--enable-pythoninterp`, `--enable-tclinterp`, `--enable-rubyinterp`: These options include the Perl, Python, Tcl, or Ruby interpreters that allow using other application code in vim scripts.

Configuring Vim

Config Files

`/etc/vimrc` and `~/.vimrc`

Configuration Information

Vim has an integrated spell checker which you can enable it if you issue the following in a vim window:

```
:setlocal spell spelllang=ru
```

This setting will enable spell checking for the Russian language for the current session.

By default, Vim only installs spell files for the English language. If a spell file is not available for a language, then Vim will call the `$VIMRUNTIME/plugin/spellfile.vim` plugin and will try to obtain the *.spl and optionally *.sug from the vim ftp server, by using the `$VIMRUNTIME/plugin/netrwPlugin.vim` plugin.

Alternatively you can manually download the *.spl and *.sug files from: *ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/runtime/spell/* and save them to `~/.vim/spell` or in `/usr/share/vim/vim71/spell/`.

To find out what's new in Vim-7.1 issue the following command:

```
:help version-7.1
```

For additional information on setting up Vim configuration files, see The vimrc Files and *http://www.vi-improved.org/vimrc.php*.

Contents

A list of the reinstalled files, along with their short descriptions can be found in the *LFS Vim Installation Instructions*

Installed Programs: gview, gvim, gvimdiff, rgview, and rgvim
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/vim

Short Descriptions

gview starts **gvim** in read-only mode.

gvim is the editor that runs under X and includes a GUI.

gvimdiff edits two or three versions of a file with **gvim** and shows the differences.

rgview is a restricted version of **gview**.

rgvim is a restricted version of **gvim**.

Emacs-22.1

Introduction to Emacs

The Emacs package contains an extensible, customizable, self-documenting real-time display editor.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/emacs/emacs-22.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/emacs/emacs-22.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 6949df37caec2d7a2e0eee3f1b422726
- Download size: 36.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 260 MB
- Estimated build time: 3.3 SBU

Emacs Dependencies

Optional

X Window System, libjpeg-6b, libpng-1.2.29, LibTIFF-3.8.2, and *libungif*

Installation of Emacs

Install Emacs by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib \
            --localstatedir=/var &&
make bootstrap
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chown -v -R root:root /usr/share/emacs/22.1
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib`: Place library executables in a Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS) location.

`--localstatedir=/var`: Create game score files in `/var/games/emacs` instead of `/usr/var/games/emacs`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	b2m, ctags, ebrowse, emacs, emacsclient, etags, grep-changelog, and rcs-checkin
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/emacs, /usr/share/emacs and /var/games/emacs

Short Descriptions

b2m	is a program to convert mail files from RMAIL format to Unix “mbox” format.

ctags	creates cross-reference tagfile database files for source code.
ebrowse	permits browsing of C++ class hierarchies from within **emacs**.
emacs	is an editor.
emacsclient	attaches an **emacs** session to an already running **emacsserver** instance.
etags	is another program to generate source code cross-reference tagfiles.
grep-changelog	prints entries in Change Logs matching various criteria.
rcs-checkin	is a shell script used to check files into RCS.

Nano-2.0.7

Introduction to Nano

The nano package contains a small, simple text editor which aims to replace Pico, the default editor in the Pine package.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.nano-editor.org/dist/v2.0/nano-2.0.7.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/nano/nano-2.0.7.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 16187fed2bdefec6275ece6401ce4cd2
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Nano Dependencies

Optional

S-Lang-2.1.3

Installation of Nano

Install nano by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc/nano \
    --enable-color --enable-multibuffer --enable-nanorc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/nanorc.sample /etc/nano/nanorc.sample &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/nano-2.0.7 &&
install -v -m644 doc/{,man/,texinfo/}*.html /usr/share/doc/nano-2.0.7
```

Configuring nano

Config Files

`/etc/nano/nanorc` and `~/.nanorc`

Configuration Information

Example configuration (create as a system-wide `/etc/nano/nanorc` or a personal `~/.nanorc` file)

```
set autoindent
set const
set fill 72
set historylog
set multibuffer
set nohelp
set regexp
set smooth
set suspend
```

Another example is the `nanorc.sample` file in the `/etc/nano` directory. It includes color configurations and has some documentation included in the comments.

Contents

Installed Programs: nano and rnano
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /etc/nano, /usr/share/nano and /usr/share/doc/nano-2.0.7

Short Descriptions

nano is a small, simple text editor which aims to replace Pico, the default editor in the Pine package.

rnano is a restricted mode for **nano**.

JOE-3.5

Introduction to JOE

JOE (Joe's own editor) is a small text editor capable of emulating WordStar, Pico, and Emacs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/joe-editor/joe-3.5.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 9bdffecce7ef910feaa06452d48843de
- Download size: 600 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.13 SBU

Installation of JOE

Install JOE by running the following commands:

```
./configure --sysconfdir=/etc --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring JOE

Config Files

`/etc/joe/jmacsrc`, `/etc/joe/joerc`, `/etc/joe/jpicorc`, `/etc/joe/jstarrc`, `/etc/joe/rjoerc`, and `~/.joerc`

Contents

Installed Programs:	jmacs, joe, jpico, jstar, rjoe, and termidx
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/etc/joe

Short Descriptions

jmacs	is a symbolic link to **joe** used to launch Emacs emulation mode.
joe	is a small text editor capable of emulating WordStar, Pico, and Emacs.
jpico	is a symbolic link to **joe** used to launch Pico emulation mode.
jstar	is a symbolic link to **joe** used to launch WordStar emulation mode.
rjoe	is a symbolic link to **joe** that restricts JOE to editing only files which are specified on the command-line.
termidx	is a program used by **joe** to generate the termcap index file.

Ed-0.8

Introduction to Ed

Ed is a line-oriented text editor. It is used to create, display, modify and otherwise manipulate text files, both interactively and via shell scripts. Ed isn't something which many people use. It's described here because it can be used by the patch program if you encounter an ed-based patch file. This happens rarely because diff-based patches are preferred these days.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/ed/ed-0.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/ed/ed-0.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b359451fb32097974484b5ba7c19f5fb
- Download size: 66 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.3 MB
- Estimated build time: Less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Ed

Install Ed by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-man
```

Contents

Installed Programs: ed and red
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

ed is a line-oriented text editor.

red is a restricted **ed**—it can only edit files in the current directory and cannot execute shell commands.

Bluefish-1.0.7

Introduction to Bluefish

The Bluefish package contains a powerful X Window System editor designed for web designers, but also suitable as a programmer's editor. Bluefish supports many programming and markup languages, and as such is ideal for editing XML and HTML files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.bennewitz.com/bluefish/stable/source/bluefish-1.0.7.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/bluefish-1.0.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2c3b3c9c8f8e32b9473dfd879f216dea
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 18 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Bluefish Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and PCRE-7.6

Optional

GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1 (for remote files), Aspell-0.60.5 (for spellchecking), libgnomeui-2.18.1, GNOME MIME Data-2.4.3, desktop-file-utils-0.13, and shared-mime-info-0.21

Installation of Bluefish

Install Bluefish by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring Bluefish

Config Files

`~/.bluefish/*`

Configuration Information

The directory `~/.bluefish` is created by the program when it is first run, and the configuration files are maintained by the program automatically to preserve settings from run to run.

Contents

Installed Program: bluefish
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/bluefish

Short Descriptions

bluefish is an X Window System editor for markup and programming.

Other Editors

pico is a text editor installed as a part of Pine-4.64.

mcedit is a text editor installed as part of MC-4.6.1.

Chapter 7. Shells

We are all familiar with the Bourne Again SHell, but there are two other user interfaces that are considered useful modern shells – the Berkeley Unix C shell and the Korn shell. This chapter installs packages compatible with these additional shell types.

Tcsh-6.15.00

Introduction to Tcsh

The Tcsh package contains “an enhanced but completely compatible version of the Berkeley Unix C shell (**csh**)”. This is useful as an alternative shell for those who prefer C syntax to that of the **bash** shell, and also because some programs require the C shell in order to perform installation tasks.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/utils/shells/tcsh/tcsh-6.15.00.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.funet.fi/pub/unix/shells/tcsh/tcsh-6.15.00.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 67a0611620b080bd0eb032b1774382b6
- Download size: 870 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 10 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of Tcsh

Install Tcsh by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin &&
make &&
sh ./tcsh.man2html
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that test #68 (“nice” test) is known to fail.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install install.man &&
ln -v -sf tcsh   /bin/csh &&
ln -v -sf tcsh.1 /usr/man/man1/csh.1 &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/tcsh-6.15.00/html &&
install -v -m644 tcsh.html/* /usr/share/doc/tcsh-6.15.00/html &&
install -v -m644 FAQ         /usr/share/doc/tcsh-6.15.00
```

Command Explanations

`--bindir=/bin`: This installs the **tcsh** program in `/bin` instead of `/usr/bin`.

sh ./tcsh.man2html: This creates HTML documentation from the formatted man page.

ln -v -sf tcsh /bin/csh: The FHS states that if there is a C shell installed, there should be a symlink from `/bin/csh` to it. This creates that symlink.

Configuring Tcsh

Config Files

There are numerous configuration files for the C shell. Examples of these are `/etc/csh.cshrc`, `/etc/csh.login`, `/etc/csh.logout`, `~/.tcshrc`, `~/.cshrc`, `~/.history`, `~/.cshdirs`, `~/.login`, and `~/.logout`. More information on these files can be found in the `tcsh(1)` man page.

Configuration Information

Update `/etc/shells` to include the C shell program names (as the `root` user):

```
cat >> /etc/shells << "EOF"
/bin/tcsh
/bin/csh
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Program: tcsh
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/tcsh-6.15.00

Short Descriptions

tcsh is an enhanced but completely compatible version of the Berkeley Unix C shell, **csh**. It is usable as both an interactive shell and a script processor.

ZSH-4.3.6

Introduction to ZSH

The ZSH package contains a command interpreter (shell) usable as an interactive login shell and as a shell script command processor. Of the standard shells, ZSH most closely resembles KSH but includes many enhancements.

Note

This version of ZSH is a development release. The BLFS staff has determined that it provides a stable program which works properly with multibyte locales (e.g., UTF-8). To find the current stable release, refer to the *ZSH home page* and compile ZSH with the same instructions.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/zsh/zsh-4.3.6.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 16f399af1081ad3c303a794c9c7dc47e
- Download size: 2.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 49 MB (includes installing all documentation)
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Optional Documentation: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/zsh/zsh-4.3.6-doc.tar.bz2*
- MD5 sum: cab29228a90f58b1431a66ab24a0a0c2

ZSH Dependencies

Optional

PCRE-7.6 and *libcap*

Installation of ZSH

If you downloaded the optional documentation, unpack it with the following command:

```
tar --strip-components=1 -xvf ../zsh-4.3.6-doc.tar.bz2
```

Install ZSH by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --bindir=/bin \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/zsh \
            --enable-etcdir=/etc/zsh &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed, you can build additional formats of the documentation by issuing any or all of the following commands:

```
texi2pdf  Doc/zsh.texi -o Doc/zsh.pdf &&
texi2html Doc/zsh.texi --output=Doc/zsh_1file_t.html &&
makeinfo  Doc/zsh.texi --html --no-split --no-headers \
                       -o Doc/zsh_1file_m.html &&
makeinfo  Doc/zsh.texi --plaintext -o Doc/zsh.txt
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make infodir=/usr/share/info install.info
```

If you downloaded the optional documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
make htmldir=/usr/share/doc/zsh-4.3.6/html install.html &&
install -v -m644 Doc/zsh.dvi /usr/share/doc/zsh-4.3.6
```

If you built any additional formats of the documentation, install them by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 Doc/{zsh_1file*,*.{pdf,txt}} \
        /usr/share/doc/zsh-4.3.6
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/zsh` and *`--enable-etcdir=/etc/zsh`*: These parameters are used so that all the ZSH configuration files are consolidated into the `/etc/zsh` directory. Omit these parameters if you wish to retain historical compatibility by having all the files located in the `/etc` directory.

`--bindir=/bin`: This parameter places the **zsh** binaries into the root filesystem.

`--enable-cap`: This parameter enables POSIX capabilities.

`--enable-pcre`: This parameter allows to use the PCRE regular expression library in shell builtins. Note: Linking ZSH dynamically against PCRE, produces a runtime dependency on `libpcre.so`. If `/usr` is a separate mount point and **zsh** needs to be available at boot time, either you have to statically link ZSH against PCRE (you can examine the `config.modules` file on how to link statically the module), or move the library to `/lib` as follows:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libpcre.so.* /lib/ &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libpcre.so.0 /usr/lib/libpcre.so
```

Configuring ZSH

Config Files

There are a whole host of configuration files for ZSH including `/etc/zsh/zshenv`, `/etc/zsh/zprofile`, `/etc/zsh/zshrc`, `/etc/zsh/zlogin` and `/etc/zsh/zlogout`. You can find more information on these in the `zsh(1)` and related manual pages.

Configuration Information

Update `/etc/shells` to include the ZSH shell program names (as the `root` user):

```
cat >> /etc/shells << "EOF"
/bin/zsh
/bin/zsh-4.3.6
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs: zsh and zsh-4.3.6
Installed Libraries: Numerous plugin helper modules
Installed Directories: /etc/zsh, /usr/lib/zsh, /usr/share/doc/zsh-4.3.6 and /usr/share/zsh

Short Description

zsh is a shell which has command-line editing, built-in spelling correction, programmable command completion, shell functions (with autoloading), a history mechanism, and a host of other features.

Dash-0.5.4

Introduction to Dash

Dash is a POSIX compliant shell. It can be installed as /bin/sh or as the default shell for either `root` or a second user with a userid of 0. It depends on fewer libraries than the Bash shell and is therefore less likely to be affected by an upgrade problem or disk failure. Dash is also useful for checking that a script is completely compatible with POSIX syntax.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gondor.apana.org.au/~herbert/dash/files/dash-0.5.4.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: bc457e490a589d2f87f2333616b67931
- Download size: 200 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Dash Dependencies

Optional

libedit (command line editor library)

Installation of Dash

Install Dash by running the following commands:

```
./configure --bindir=/bin --mandir=/usr/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you would like to make **dash** the default **sh**, recreate the `/bin/sh` symlink as the `root` user:

```
ln -svf dash /bin/sh
```

Command Explanations

`--bindir=/bin`: This parameter places the **dash** binary into the root filesystem.

`--with-libedit`: To compile Dash with libedit support.

Configuring Dash

Config Files

Dash sources `/etc/profile` and `$HOME/.profile`

Configuration Information

Update `/etc/shells` to include the Dash shell by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
cat >> /etc/shells << "EOF"
/bin/dash
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Program: dash
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Description

dash is a POSIX compliant shell.

ksh-2008-02-02

Introduction to ksh

ksh is the AT&T Korn Shell.

Note

You must agree to the terms of the CPL-1.0 license in order to download the software. The download site is password protected, and the username and password are listed at the bottom of *this license*.

Package Information

- Ksh Download (HTTP): *http://www.research.att.com/~gsf/download/tgz/ast-ksh.2008-02-02.tgz*
-
- Ksh Download MD5 sum: d2a71e320fbaa7a0fd950a27c7e4b099
- Ksh Download size: 1.6 MB
- INIT Download (HTTP): *http://www.research.att.com/~gsf/download/tgz/INIT.2008-02-02.tgz*
-
- INIT Download MD5 sum: 740c6fc775bf2f7b6bff463bdbad1c31
- INIT Download size: 340 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 32 MB
- Estimated build time: 2 SBU

Installation of ksh

Unlike other BLFS packages, you will need to first create a working directory in which to extract the sources and perform the build. Install ksh by running the following commands:

```
mkdir ksh &&
cd ksh &&
tar -xf ../INIT.2008-02-02.tgz &&
tar -xf ../ast-ksh.2008-02-02.tgz &&
bin/package make
```

The test suite for this package requires other packages from the AT&T ast software library, namely nmake, in which case, you'd be better to install the ast-base package using the same instructions. The package command will accept a *`test`* argument to test the package.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 arch/linux.i386/bin/ksh /bin &&
install -v -m644 arch/linux.i386/man/man1/sh.1 \
    /usr/share/man/man1/ksh.1 &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/ksh-2008-02-02 &&
install -v -m644 lib/package/{ast-ksh,INIT}.html \
    /usr/share/doc/ksh-2008-02-02
```

Command Explanations

bin/package make: This command rebuilds the ast INIT package and builds the ast ksh package.

Configuring ksh

Config Files

ksh sources `/etc/profile`, `/etc/suid_profile`, and `$HOME/.profile`.

Configuration Information

Update `/etc/shells` to include the ksh shell by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
cat >> /etc/shells << "EOF"
/bin/ksh
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Program: ksh
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Description

ksh is the AT&T ast Korn shell.

Part III. General Libraries and Utilities

Chapter 8. General Libraries

Libraries contain code which is often required by more than one program. This has the advantage that each program doesn't need to duplicate code (and risk introducing bugs), it just has to call functions from the libraries installed on the system. The most obvious example of a set of libraries is Glibc which is installed during the LFS book. This contains all of the C library functions which programs use.

There are two types of libraries: static and shared. Shared libraries (usually `libXXX.so`) are loaded into memory from the shared copy at runtime (hence the name). Static libraries (`libXXX.a`) are actually linked into the program executable file itself, thus making the program file larger. Quite often, you will find both static and shared copies of the same library on your system.

Generally, you only need to install libraries when you are installing software that needs the functionality they supply. In the BLFS book, each package is presented with a list of (known) dependencies. Thus, you can figure out which libraries you need to have before installing that program. If you are installing something without using BLFS instructions, usually the `README` or `INSTALL` file will contain details of the program's requirements.

There are certain libraries which nearly *everyone* will need at some point. In this chapter we list these and some others and explain why you may want to install them.

PCRE-7.6

Introduction to PCRE

The PCRE package contains Perl Compatible Regular Expression libraries. These are useful for implementing regular expression pattern matching using the same syntax and semantics as Perl 5.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/pcre/pcre-7.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.csx.cam.ac.uk/pub/software/programming/pcre/pcre-7.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2af38e083fb90ef60fa9eda7cc290e86
- Download size: 780 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 11 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/pcre-7.6-abi_breakage-1.patch*
- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/pcre-7.6-security_fix-1.patch*

Installation of PCRE

Install PCRE by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../pcre-7.6-abi_breakage-1.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../pcre-7.6-security_fix-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/pcre-7.6 \
            --enable-utf8 \
            --enable-pcregrep-libz \
            --enable-pcregrep-libbz2 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note: The third set of the tests cannot be run if the "fr_FR" locale is missing from the system.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you reinstall Grep after installing PCRE, Grep will get linked against PCRE and may cause problems if `/usr` is a separate mount point. To avoid this, either pass the option `--disable-perl-regexp` when executing **./configure** for Grep or move `libpcre` to `/lib` as follows.

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libpcre.so.* /lib/ &&
ln -v -sf ../../lib/libpcre.so.0 /usr/lib/libpcre.so
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-utf8`: This switch includes the code for handling UTF-8 character strings in the library.

`--enable-unicode-properties`: This switch enables Unicode properties support.

`--enable-pcregrep-libz`: This switch adds support to **pcregrep** to read `.gz` compressed files.

`--enable-pcregrep-libbz2`: This switch adds support to **pcregrep** to read `.bz2` compressed files.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pcregrep, pcretest, and pcre-config
Installed Libraries:	libpcre.{so,a}, libpcrecpp.{so,a} and libpcreposix.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/pcre-7.6

Short Descriptions

pcregrep	is a **grep** that understands Perl compatible regular expressions.
pcretest	can test a Perl compatible regular expression.
pcre-config	is used during the compile process of programs linking to the PCRE libraries.

Popt-1.10.4

Introduction to Popt

The popt package contains the popt libraries which are used by some programs to parse command-line options.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://rpm5.org/files/popt/popt-1.10.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/p/popt-1.10.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: dd22a6873b43d00f75e1c1b7dcfd1ff7
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.3 MB (includes installing documentation)
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of Popt

Install popt by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e "/*origOptString ==/c 0)" popt.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have Doxygen-1.5.2 installed and wish to build the API documentation, issue **doxygen**.

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you built the API documentation, install it using the following commands issued by the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/popt-1.10.4 &&
install -v -m644 doxygen/html/* /usr/share/doc/popt-1.10.4
```

Command Explanations

sed ...: This fix taken backported from the development version of popt fixes a problem identified by the included testsuite.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libpopt.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/popt-1.10.4

Short Descriptions

`libpopt.{so,a}` is used to parse command-line options.

S-Lang-2.1.3

Introduction to S-Lang

The S-Lang package contains the S-Lang library, which provides facilities such as display/screen management, keyboard input, and keymaps.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/editors/davis/slang/v2.1/slang-2.1.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://space.mit.edu/pub/davis/slang/v2.1/slang-2.1.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0e4ae3aac75441eaa230bceb7811f088
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 26 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

S-Lang Dependencies

Optional

libpng-1.2.29, PCRE-7.6, and *Oniguruma*

Installation of S-Lang

Install S-Lang by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that this will also create a static version of the library which will then be installed in the next step.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make \
    install_doc_dir=/usr/share/doc/slang-2.1.3 \
    SLSH_DOC_DIR=/usr/share/doc/slang-2.1.3/slsh \
    install-all &&
chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libslang.so.2.1.3 \
             /usr/lib/slang/v2/modules/*.so
```

Command Explanations

make install_doc_dir=/usr/share/doc/slang-2.1.3 SLSH_DOC_DIR=/usr/share/doc/slang-2.1.3/slsh install-all: This command installs the static library as well as the dynamic shared version and related modules. It also changes the documentation installation directories to a versioned directory.

`--with-readline=gnu`: Use this parameter to use the Gnu Readline parser instead of the S-Lang internal version.

Configuring S-Lang

Config Files

`~/.slshrc` and `/etc/slsh.rc`

Configuration Information

As with most libraries, there is no configuration to do, save that the library directory, i.e., `/opt/lib` or `/usr/local/lib` should appear in `/etc/ld.so.conf` so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries. After checking that this is the case, **/sbin/ldconfig** should be run while logged in as `root`.

Contents

Installed Program:	slsh
Installed Libraries:	libslang.{so,a} and numerous support modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/slang, /usr/share/doc/slang-2.1.3 and /usr/share/slsh

Short Descriptions

slsh is a simple program for interpreting S-Lang scripts. It supports dynamic loading of S-Lang modules and includes a Readline interface for interactive use.

Gamin-0.1.9

Introduction to Gamin

The Gamin package contains a File Alteration Monitor which is useful for notifying applications of changes to the file system. Gamin is compatible with *FAM*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.gnome.org/~veillard/gamin/sources/gamin-0.1.9.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/gamin-0.1.9.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 2d3a6a70df090ed923238e381e6c2982
- Download size: 632 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU (up to 3 minutes, processor independent, to run the test suite)

Gamin Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12

Optional

Python-2.5.2

Installation of Gamin

Install Gamin by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/sbin &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that some tests may display errors.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gamin-0.1.9 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{html,fig,gif,txt} /usr/share/doc/gamin-0.1.9
```

Configuring Gamin

Configuration Information

No configuration is generally required and the default options should work for most users. See *http://www.gnome.org/~veillard/gamin/config.html* for details.

Contents

Installed Program:	gam_server
Installed Libraries:	libfam.{so,a}, libgamin-1.{so,a}, libgamin_shared.a and optionally, Python _gamin.{so,a} module
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/gamin-0.1.9

Short Descriptions

gam_server	is the file alteration monitor daemon that is started on demand for each user.
`libgamin.{so,a}`	contains functions that support the file allocation monitor.
`libfam.{so,a}`	contains functions that provide compatibility with FAM.

libxml2-2.6.31

Introduction to libxml2

The libxml2 package contains XML libraries. These are useful for parsing XML files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xmlsoft.org/sources/libxml2-2.6.31.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://xmlsoft.org/libxml2/libxml2-2.6.31.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 714b0683b1ec4bdc63bc356d729f9b18
- Download size: 4.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 85 MB (additional 184 MB to run the test suite)
- Estimated build time: 1.3 SBU (additional 1.0 SBU to run the test suite)

libxml2 Dependencies

Optional

libxslt-1.1.22 (used for the test suite if found, but not required) and Python-2.5.2 (will install a Python library module if found)

Optional (Required to Run the Full Suite of Tests)

Python-2.5.2 and Wget-1.10.2

Note

Some packages which utilize libxml2 (such as GNOME Doc Utils) need the Python module installed to function properly and some packages (such as GNOME Panel) will not build properly if the Python module is not available.

Installation of libxml2

Install libxml2 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-history`: If this option is used, it enables readline support when running **xmlcatalog** or **xmllint** in shell mode.

Caution

When using history support, **make check** will hang forever if either `/etc/inputrc` or `~/.inputrc` has the option `show-all-if-ambiguous` or `show-all-if-available` turned on.

Contents

Installed Programs:	xml2-config, xmlcatalog, and xmllint
Installed Libraries:	libxml2.{so,a} and optionally, the libxml2mod.{so,a} Python module
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libxml2, /usr/share/doc/libxml2-2.6.31, /usr/share/doc/libxml2-python-2.6.31 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libxml2

Short Descriptions

xml2-config	determines the compile and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use `libxml2`.
xmlcatalog	is used to monitor and manipulate XML and SGML catalogs.
xmllint	parses XML files and outputs reports (based upon options) to detect errors in XML coding.
`libxml2.{so,a}`	libraries provide the functions for programs to parse files that use the XML format.

libxslt-1.1.22

Introduction to libxslt

The libxslt package contains XSLT libraries. These are useful for extending `libxml2` libraries to support XSLT files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xmlsoft.org/sources/libxslt-1.1.22.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://xmlsoft.org/libxslt/libxslt-1.1.22.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: d6a9a020a76a3db17848d769d6c9c8a9
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 39 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

libxslt Dependencies

Required

libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

Python-2.5.2 and Libgcrypt-1.2.4

Installation of libxslt

Install libxslt by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	xslt-config and xsltproc
Installed Libraries:	libexslt.{so,a}, libxslt.{so,a} and optionally, libxsltmod.{so,a} Python modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/lib{e}xslt, /usr/lib/libxslt-plugins, /usr/share/doc/libxslt-1.1.22, and /usr/share/doc/libxslt-python-1.1.22

Short Descriptions

xslt-config	is used to find out the pre-processor, linking and compiling flags necessary to use the libxslt libraries in 3rd-party programs.
xsltproc	is used to apply XSLT stylesheets to XML documents.
`libxslt.{so,a}`	provides extensions to the `libxml2` libraries to parse files that use the XSLT format.
`libexslt.{so,a}`	is used to provide extensions to XSLT functions.

libgtkhtml-2.11.1

Introduction to libgtkhtml

The libgtkhtml package contains the `libgtkhtml-2` library. This library provides an API for rendering HTML.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgtkhtml/2.11/libgtkhtml-2.11.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgtkhtml/2.11/libgtkhtml-2.11.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a1d1a197dcff8c4571659deef5495e24
- Download size: 597 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 36 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

libgtkhtml Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

GAIL-1.18.0 and GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1 (only used in the test suite)

Installation of libgtkhtml

Install libgtkhtml by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-accessibility &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite. You can run a test program which includes many test cases; if desired, issue: **(cd tests; ./testgtkhtml)**

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-accessibility`: This forces the package to build without linking to the `libgailutil` accessibility library. Remove this switch if you have GAIL installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libgtkhtml-2.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/include/gtkhtml-2.0

Short Descriptions

`libgtkhtml-2.{so,a}` provides the functions necessary to render and/or edit HTML.

GMP-4.2.2

Introduction to GMP

The GMP package contains math libraries. These have useful functions for arbitrary precision arithmetic.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gmp/gmp-4.2.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gmp/gmp-4.2.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7ce52531644e6d12f16911b7e3151f3f
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 36 MB (additional 11 MB for alternative documentation)
- Estimated build time: 1.0 SBU (additional 0.6 SBU to run the testsuite)

Installation of GMP

Install GMP by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-cxx --enable-mpbsd &&
make
```

If you wish to create alternate formats of the documentation (Postscript, PDF and chunked HTML versions require a teTeX-3.0 installation), issue any or all of the following commands:

```
make -C doc pdf &&
make -C doc ps &&
make -C doc html &&
texi2html -o doc/gmp_nochunks.html  doc/gmp.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/gmp.txt doc/gmp.texi
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Due to various reports of mis-compilations, the maintainer strongly recommends running the test suite and reporting any failures. The libraries should not be used in a production environment if there are problems running **make check**. An easy way to determine if all the tests passed is to redirect the output of the tests to a file (**make check >check.log 2>&1**) and issue the following command:

```
awk '/tests passed/{total+=$2} ; END{print total}' check.log
```

139 should be returned.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gmp-4.2.2 &&
install -v -m644    doc/{isa_abi_headache,configuration} doc/*.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/gmp-4.2.2
```

If you created any of the alternate formats of the documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gmp-4.2.2/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/gmp.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gmp-4.2.2/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/gmp.{pdf,dvi,ps,html,txt} \
                    /usr/share/doc/gmp-4.2.2
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-cxx`: This parameter enables C++ support by building the `libgmpxx` libraries.

`--enable-mpbsd`: This parameter enables building the Berkeley MP compatibility (`libmp`) libraries.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libgmp.{so,a}, libgmpxx.{so,a} and libmp.{so,a}
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

`libgmp.{so,a}` contains functions to operate on signed integers, rational numbers, and floating point numbers.

GDBM-1.8.3

Introduction to GDBM

The GDBM package contains the GNU Database Manager. This is a disk file format database which stores key/data-pairs in single files. The actual data of any record being stored is indexed by a unique key, which can be retrieved in less time than if it was stored in a text file.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gdbm/gdbm-1.8.3.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gdbm/gdbm-1.8.3.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 1d1b1d5c0245b1c00aff92da751e9aa1
- Download size: 223 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.75 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.08 SBU

Installation of GDBM

Install GDBM by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make BINOWN=root BINGRP=root install
```

In addition, you may need to install the DBM and NDBM compatibility headers and library since some applications look for these older dbm routines.

```
make BINOWN=root BINGRP=root install-compat
```

Command Explanations

make BINOWN=root BINGRP=root install: This command overrides the `BINOWN` and `BINGRP` variables in the `Makefile` changing ownership of the installed files to `root` instead of the `bin` user.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libgdbm.{so,a} and libgdbm_compat.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

`libgdbm.{so,a}` contains functions to manipulate a hashed database.

GLib-1.2.10

Introduction to GLib

The glib package contains a low-level core library. This is useful for providing data structure handling for C, portability wrappers and interfaces for such runtime functionality as an event loop, threads, dynamic loading, and an object system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/graphics/gimp/gtk/v1.2/glib-1.2.10.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gtk.org/pub/gtk/v1.2/glib-1.2.10.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 6fe30dad87c77b91b632def29dd69ef9
- Download size: 412 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.19 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/glib-1.2.10-gcc34-1.patch*

Installation of GLib

Install glib by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../glib-1.2.10-gcc34-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libgmodule-1.2.so.0.0.10
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	glib-config
Installed Libraries:	libglib.{so,a}, libgmodule.{so,a} and libgthread.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/glib-1.2 and /usr/lib/glib

Short Descriptions

glib-config	is a tool that is used by **configure** scripts to determine the compiler and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use GLib.
`libglib.{so,a}`	libraries contain a low-level core library for the GIMP Toolkit.

GLib-2.12.12

Introduction to GLib

The GLib package contains a low-level core library. This is useful for providing data structure handling for C, portability wrappers and interfaces for such runtime functionality as an event loop, threads, dynamic loading, and an object system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/glib/2.12/glib-2.12.12.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gtk.org/pub/glib/2.12/glib-2.12.12.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0b3a42098243d054475ff6eb51ed2be1
- Download size: 2.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 53 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU (additional 1.3 SBU to run the test suite)

GLib Dependencies

Required

pkg-config-0.22

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of GLib

Install GLib by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Configuring GLib

Configuration Information

By default, GLib assumes that all filenames are in the UTF-8 charset. See the Wrong Filename Encoding section of the Locale Related Issues page for more details on this kind of issue. In order to tell GLib and applications that use it that filenames are in the default locale encoding, set the variable `G_FILENAME_ENCODING` to the value "@locale":

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/glib2-locale.sh << "EOF"
# Use the current locale charset for filenames
# in applications using GLib
export G_FILENAME_ENCODING=@locale
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	glib-genmarshal, glib-gettextize, glib-mkenums, and gobject-query
Installed Libraries:	libglib-2.0.so, libgobject-2.0.so, libgmodule-2.0.so, and libgthread-2.0.so
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/glib-2.0, /usr/lib/glib-2.0, /usr/share/glib-2.0, /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/glib, and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gobject

Short Descriptions

glib-genmarshal	is a C code marshaller generation utility for GLib closures.
glib-gettextize	is a variant of the gettext internationalization utility.
glib-mkenums	is a C language enum description generation utility.
gobject-query	is a small utility that draws a tree of types.
GLib libraries	contain a low-level core library for the GIMP Toolkit.

LibIDL-0.8.8

Introduction to LibIDL

The libIDL package contains libraries for Interface Definition Language files. This is a specification for defining portable interfaces.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libIDL/0.8/libIDL-0.8.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libIDL/0.8/libIDL-0.8.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 187c17f42533d76da435e90afb7b48cf
- Download size: 328 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

LibIDL Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12

Optional to Build Documentation

teTeX-3.0

Installation of LibIDL

Install libIDL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have teTeX installed and wish to build the documentation, issue the following commands:

```
make pdf &&
make ps &&
makeinfo --plaintext libIDL2.texi >libIDL2.txt
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you built the documentation, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install it:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libIDL-0.8.8 &&
install -v -m644 libIDL2.{pdf,dvi,ps,txt} README \
    /usr/share/doc/libIDL-0.8.8
```

Contents

Installed Program: libIDL-config-2
Installed Library: libIDL-2.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/libIDL-2.0/libIDL and /usr/share/doc/libIDL-0.8.8

Short Descriptions

libIDL-config-2 determines the compile and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use `libIDL-2`.

`libIDL-2.{so,a}` libraries provide the functions to create and maintain trees of CORBA Interface Definition Language (IDL) files.

Libcroco-0.6.1

Introduction to libcroco

The libcroco package contains `libcroco` libraries. This is useful for providing a CSS API.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libcroco/0.6/libcroco-0.6.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libcroco/0.6/libcroco-0.6.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b0975bd01eb11964f1b3f254f267a43d
- Download size: 381 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

libcroco Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12 and libxml2-2.6.31

Installation of libcroco

Install libcroco by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$(pwd)/src/.libs make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libcroco-0.6.1/examples &&
install -v -m644 README docs/usage.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/libcroco-0.6.1 &&
install -v -m644 docs/examples/*.c \
    /usr/share/doc/libcroco-0.6.1/examples
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	croco-0.6-config and csslint-0.6
Installed Library:	libcroco-0.6.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libcroco-0.6.1 and /usr/share/doc/libcroco-0.6.1

libgsf-1.14.7

Introduction to libgsf

The libgsf package contains `libgsf-1` libraries. These are useful for providing an extensible input/output abstraction layer for structured file formats.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgsf/1.14/libgsf-1.14.7.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgsf/1.14/libgsf-1.14.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 6612f1e57d3974d609bedd2fd8ff6317
- Download size: 580 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 14 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

libgsf Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12, libxml2-2.6.31, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

PyGTK-2.10.6, GConf-2.18.0.1 (required to build the **gsf-office-thumbnailer** program), GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1 and libbonobo-2.18.0 (required to build the `libgsf-gnome-1.so` library which provides GNOME-2 support), and GTK-Doc-1.8

Note: you should build the `libgsf-gnome-1.so` library if you plan on building GnuCash-2.2.4 or Gnumeric-1.8.2 with GNOME support.

Installation of libgsf

Install libgsf by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Running **make check** will build a battery of test programs which are built using the just-created `libgsf-1` library. All the programs should build successfully with no errors displayed.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: Pass this parameter to the **configure** script if you have GNOME-2 installed so that the GConf schema files are installed in the correct location.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program: gsf, gsf-office-thumbnailer (optional), and gsf-vba-dump
Installed Libraries: libgsf-1.{so,a} and optionally, libgsf-gnome-1.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/libgsf-1 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gsf

libglade-2.6.1

Introduction to libglade

The libglade package contains `libglade` libraries. These are useful for loading Glade interface files in a program at runtime.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libglade/2.6/libglade-2.6.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libglade/2.6/libglade-2.6.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 489be887b26b9973f77e2c6111ab7d5a
- Download size: 346 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libglade Dependencies

Required

libxml2-2.6.31 and GTK+-2.10.13

Optional

Python-2.5.2 and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libglade

Install libglade by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program:	libglade-convert (requires **python**)
Installed Library:	libglade-2.0.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libglade-2.0, /usr/share/xml/libglade, and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libglade

Short Descriptions

libglade-convert	is used to convert old Glade interface files to Glade-2.0 standards.
`libglade-2.0.{so,a}`	contain the functions necessary to load Glade interface files.

Expat-2.0.1

Introduction to Expat

The Expat package contains a stream oriented C library for parsing XML.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/expat/expat-2.0.1.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ee8b492592568805593f81f8cdf2a04c
- Download size: 446 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of Expat

Install Expat by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/expat-2.0.1 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{html,png,css} /usr/share/doc/expat-2.0.1
```

To test the results, issue: **make check** as an unprivileged user. Note this must be done after the package is installed.

Contents

Installed Program:	xmlwf
Installed Library:	libexpat.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/expat-2.0.1

Short Descriptions

xmlwf	is a non-validating utility to check whether or not XML documents are well formed.
`libexpat.{so,a}`	contains API functions for parsing XML.

libESMTP-1.0.4

Introduction to libESMTP

The libESMTP package contains the libESMTP libraries which are used by some programs to manage email submission to a mail transport layer.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.stafford.uklinux.net/libesmtp/libesmtp-1.0.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libesmtp-1.0.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 8b4e8a794adc46268f0c6a0b3fb79486
- Download size: 351 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

libESMTP Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Installation of libESMTP

Install libESMTP by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Program: libesmtp-config
Installed Libraries: libesmtp.{so,a} and libESMTP SASL plugins
Installed Directory: /usr/lib/esmtp-plugins

Short Descriptions

libesmtp-config displays version information and the options used to compile libESMTP.
`libesmtp.{so,a}` is used to manage submission of electronic mail to a Mail Transport Agent.
`libesmtp SASL plugins` are used to integrate libesmtp with SASL authentication.

Aspell-0.60.5

Introduction to Aspell

The Aspell package contains an interactive spell checking program and the Aspell libraries. Aspell can either be used as a library or as an independent spell checker.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/aspell/aspell-0.60.5.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/aspell/aspell-0.60.5.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 17fd8acac6293336bcef44391b71e337
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 40 MB (Additional 8 MB for EN dictionary)
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

Additional Downloads

You'll need to download at least one dictionary. The link below will take you to a page containing links to dictionaries in many languages.

- Aspell dictionaries: *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/aspell/dict*

Aspell Dependencies

Required

which-2.19

Installation of Aspell

Install Aspell by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/aspell-0.60.5/aspell{,-dev}.html &&
install -v -m644 manual/aspell.html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/aspell-0.60.5/aspell.html &&
install -v -m644 manual/aspell-dev.html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/aspell-0.60.5/aspell-dev.html
```

If you do not plan to install Ispell, then copy the wrapper script **ispell**:

```
install -v -m 755 scripts/ispell /usr/bin/
```

If you do not plan to install Spell, then copy the wrapper script **spell**:

```
install -v -m 755 scripts/spell /usr/bin/
```

Configuring Aspell

Configuration Information

After Aspell is installed, you must set up at least one dictionary. Install one or more dictionaries by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	aspell, aspell-import, precat, preunzip, prezip, prezip-bin, pspell-config, run-with-aspell, word-list-compress and optionally, ispell and spell
Installed Libraries:	libaspell.so and libpspell.so
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/pspell and /usr/lib/aspell-0.60

Short Descriptions

aspell	is a utility that can function as an **ispell -a** replacement, as an independent spell checker, as a test utility to test out Aspell features, and as a utility for managing dictionaries.
ispell	is a wrapper around **aspell** to invoke it in **ispell** compatible mode.
spell	is a wrapper around **aspell** to invoke it in **spell** compatible mode.
aspell-import	imports old personal dictionaries into Aspell.
precat	decompresses a **prezip**ped file to stdout.
preunzip	decompresses a **prezip**ped file.
prezip	is a prefix delta compressor, used to compress sorted word lists or other similar text files.
prezip-bin	is called by the various wrapper scripts to perform the actual compressing and decompressing.
pspell-config	displays information about the `libpspell` installation, mostly for use in build scripts.
run-with-aspell	is a script to help use Aspell as an **ispell** replacement.
word-list-compress	compresses or decompresses sorted word lists for use with the Aspell spell checker.
`libaspell.so`	contains spell checking API functions.
`libpspell.so`	is an interface to the `libaspell` library. All the spell checking functionality is now in `libaspell` but this library is included for backward compatibility.

SLIB-3a4

Introduction to SLIB

The SLIB package is a portable library for the Scheme programming language. It provides a platform independent framework for using “packages” of Scheme procedures and syntax. Its catalog can be transparently extended to accommodate packages specific to a site, implementation, user or directory. SLIB provides compatibility and utility functions for all standard Scheme implementations including Bigloo, Chez, ELK 3.0, GAMBIT 3.0, Guile, JScheme, MacScheme, MITScheme, PLT Scheme (DrScheme and MzScheme), Pocket Scheme, RScheme, scheme->C, Scheme48, SCM, SCM Mac, scsh, Stk, T3.1, umb-scheme, and VSCM.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://swiss.csail.mit.edu/ftpdir/scm/OLD/slib3a4.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 87bc0b62370c0bf8a510a2acf6868eb9
- Download size: 877 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB (includes building and installing docs)
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/slib-3a4-guile_fixes-1.patch*

SLIB Dependencies

There are no build dependencies as this package is nothing but many text script files which are copied to the system. If you are installing this package to support a GnuCash installation, you should ensure that Guile-1.8.2 is installed so the SLIB catalog for Guile can be created.

Installation of SLIB

Install SLIB by issuing the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../slib-3a4-guile_fixes-1.patch &&
sed -i 's|usr/lib|usr/share|' {RScheme,guile}.init
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and wish to build PDF, Postscript, HTML or text documentation, issue any or all of the following commands:

```
texi2pdf  slib.texi           &&
texi2html slib.texi           &&
texi2dvi  slib.texi           &&
dvips    -o slib.ps  slib.dvi &&
makeinfo -o slib.txt --plaintext slib.texi
```

This package does not come with a functional test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make prefix=/usr/ \
     libdir=/usr/share/ \
     mandir=/usr/share/man/ \
     infodir=/usr/share/info/ \
  install installinfo &&

install -v -m755 -d                  /usr/share/doc/slib-3a4 &&
install -v -m644 ANNOUNCE FAQ README /usr/share/doc/slib-3a4
```

If you have Guile-1.8.2 installed, create the following symbolic link as the `root` user to satisfy Guile's default "Implementation Vicinity" directory.

```
ln -v -s ../slib /usr/share/guile
```

If you built any of the documentation, install it using the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 slib.{pdf,html,dvi,ps,txt,texi} \
                 /usr/share/doc/slib-3a4
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's|usr/lib|usr/share|' {RScheme,guile}.init: This command is used to change the `libdir` variable embedded in the two scripts to match the installation variable.

make ... install installinfo: This command installs the package and the **info** documentation into the indicated directories.

Configuring SLIB

For many of the Scheme implementations, an SLIB Scheme implementation catalog must be created. If you have Guile-1.8.2 installed to support a GnuCash installation, you must create a catalog. You can use the **make catalogs** command, but there will be many warnings and confusing messages as it tries to create a catalog for many of the possible Scheme implementations which are probably not installed on the system. To create a single catalog just for the Guile installation, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
guile -l guile.init \
      -c "(use-modules (ice-9 slib)) (require 'new-catalog)"
```

If there was no output from the previous command, and the file `/usr/share/guile/slibcat` now exists, the catalog was properly created.

Contents

Installed Program: slib
Installed Libraries: a Scheme library system
Installed Directory: /usr/share/slib and /usr/share/doc/slib-3a4

Short Descriptions

slib is a shell script used to initialize SLIB in a named Scheme implementation. It can also be used to initialize an SLIB session using a given executable.

G-Wrap-1.3.4

Introduction to G-Wrap

The G-Wrap package contains tools for exporting C libraries into Scheme interpreters.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.gnucash.org/pub/g-wrap/source/g-wrap-1.3.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/g-wrap-1.3.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: bf29b8b563cc27d9f7fd90a6243653aa
- Download size: 403 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.0 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

G-Wrap Dependencies

Required

SLIB-3a4 and GLib-1.2.10

Optional

guile-gtk and GCC-4.1.2 (build Java so that `libffi` is built)

Installation of G-Wrap

Install G-Wrap by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and wish to create alternate formats of the documentation, issue the following commands:

```
cd doc &&
texi2pdf g-wrap.texi &&
texi2html g-wrap.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o g-wrap.txt g-wrap.texi &&
mv texinfo.tex texinfo.tex.SAVE &&
texi2dvi g-wrap.texi &&
dvips -o g-wrap.ps g-wrap.dvi &&
cd ..
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you created the alternate formats of the documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/g-wrap-1.3.4 &&
install -v -m644 doc/g-wrap.{pdf,html,txt,dvi,ps} \
                 /usr/share/doc/g-wrap-1.3.4
```

Contents

Installed Program:	g-wrap-config
Installed Libraries:	libgw-glib.{so,a}, libgw-gtk.{so,a}, libgw-standard.{so,a}, libgw-wct.{so,a}, libgwrap-glib.{so,a} and libgwrap-wct.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/g-wrap, /usr/share/doc/g-wrap-1.3.4 and /usr/share/guile/site

Short Descriptions

g-wrap-config is a tool to generate `CFLAGS` for linking C code to the Scheme runtime libraries.

LZO-2.02

Introduction to LZO

LZO is a data compression library which is suitable for data decompression and compression in real-time. This means it favors speed over compression ratio.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.oberhumer.com/opensource/lzo/download/lzo-2.02.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.uni-koeln.de/util/arc/lzo-2.02.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 6760e5819f4238328709bf93bf10071c
- Download size: 599 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 11.9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU (additional 0.4 SBU to run the tests)

Installation of LZO

Install LZO by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared &&
make
```

To test the results, issue **make check**. All the checks should pass. Now issue **make test** to run the full suite of tests.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/lzo-2.02 &&
install -v -m644 doc/* /usr/share/doc/lzo-2.02
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	liblzo2.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/include/lzo and /usr/share/doc/lzo-2.02

Short Descriptions

`liblzo2.{so,a}` is a data compression and decompression library.

libusb-0.1.12

Introduction to libusb

The libusb package contains a library used by some applications for USB device access.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/libusb/libusb-0.1.12.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: caf182cbc7565dac0fd72155919672e6
- Download size: 389 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.4 MB (includes installing all documentation)
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU (includes building all documentation)

libusb Dependencies

Optional

pkg-config-0.22

Optional (Required to Build the HTML User Manual)

OpenJade-1.3.2 and *DocBOOK SGML DTD-4.2*

Optional (Required to Build the API Documentation)

Doxygen-1.5.2 and Graphviz-2.12

Installation of libusb

Install libusb by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-build-docs &&
make
```

If you wish to build the API documentation (see the required dependencies), issue the following command:

```
make apidox
```

To test the results, issue **make -k check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you built the HTML user manual (by having the required dependencies installed and removing the *`--disable-build-docs`* parameter from the **configure** command), install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/libusb-0.1.12/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/html/* /usr/share/doc/libusb-0.1.12/html
```

If you built the API documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/libusb-0.1.12/apidocs &&
install -v -m644 apidocs/html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/libusb-0.1.12/apidocs
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-build-docs`: This switch avoids building the HTML user manual. Remove it if you have the required dependencies installed and wish to build the manual.

Configuring Libusb

To access raw USB devices (those not treated as a disk by the mass-storage driver), appropriate support must be available in the kernel. Check your kernel configuration for Device Drivers # USB support # Support for Host-side USB. Select any USB hardware device drivers you may need on the same page.

To have raw USB devices set up properly, add the following udev rule.

```
cat > /etc/udev/rules.d/23-usb.rules << "EOF"
# Set group ownership for raw USB devices
SUBSYSTEM=="usb", ENV{DEVTYPE}=="usb_device", GROUP="usb"
EOF
```

Add any users that need to access raw USB devices to the `usb` group.

```
usermod -a -G usb <username>
```

Contents

Installed Program:	libusb-config
Installed Libraries:	libusb.{so,a} and libusbpp.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/libusb-0.1.12

Short Descriptions

libusb-config	is a script that provides the right compiler and linker flags for programs using `libusb`.
`libusb.{so,a}`	libraries contain C functions for accessing USB hardware.

ISO Codes-1.2

Introduction to ISO Codes

The ISO Codes package contains a list of country, language and currency names. This is useful when used as a central database for accessing this data.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://pkg-isocodes.alioth.debian.org/pub/pkg-isocodes/iso-codes-1.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 9326469ec0e9e97d604821bd3c132fc6
- Download size: 6.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 73 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

ISO Codes Dependencies

Required

Python-2.5.2

Installation of ISO Codes

Install ISO Codes by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/share/iso-codes, /usr/share/xml/iso-codes and many directories in the /usr/share/locale hierarchy

GMime-2.2.10

Introduction to GMime

The GMime package contains a set of utilities for parsing and creating messages using the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension (MIME) as defined by the applicable RFCs. See the *GMime web site* for the RFCs resourced. This is useful as it provides an API which adheres to the MIME specification as closely as possible while also providing programmers with an extremely easy to use interface to the API functions.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://spruce.sourceforge.net/gmime/sources/v2.2/gmime-2.2.10.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6b5be6a0d4d9380fd0491ad2536c4087
- Download size: 947 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU (includes building the Mono bindings)

GMime Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8 and *Gtk#* (requires *Mono*)

Installation of GMime

Install GMime by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have DocBook-utils-0.6.14 installed and you wish to generate the API tutorials, issue the following commands:

```
cd docs/tutorial &&
docbook2html --nochunks gmime-tut.sgml &&
docbook2pdf             gmime-tut.sgml &&
docbook2ps              gmime-tut.sgml &&
docbook2txt             gmime-tut.sgml &&
cd ../..
```

To test the results, issue **make check**. Note that some tests may fail because the corresponding sub-system is not installed or configured properly.

This package will overwrite the **uudecode** and **uuencode** programs installed by the sharutils package (or any other package that may install these programs) if they exist in `/usr/bin`. If you wish to preserve the existing programs, ensure you rename them before issuing the following commands.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gmime-2.2.10 &&
install -v -m644 README docs{,/tutorial}/gmime* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gmime-2.2.10
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gmime-config, uudecode and uuencode
Installed Libraries:	libgmime-2.0.{so,a} and optionally, Mono bindings
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/gmime-2.0, /usr/lib/mono/gac/gmime-sharp, /usr/lib/mono/gmime-sharp, /usr/share/doc/gmime-2.2.10 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gmime

Short Descriptions

gmime-config	is used to gather information about how and where GMime was installed. It is typically used by other programs seeking to link to the GMime library.
uudecode	is used to decode files or data encoded with **uuencode**.
uuencode	is a method of encoding binary data into 7-bit ASCII data.
`libgmime-2.0.{so,a}`	contains API functions used by programs that need to adhere to the MIME standards.

Libidn-0.6.14

Introduction to Libidn

Libidn is a package designed for internationalized string handling based on the *Stringprep*, *Punycode*, *IDNA* and *TLD* specifications defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Internationalized Domain Names (IDN) working group, used for internationalized domain names. This is useful for converting data from the system's native representation into UTF-8, transforming Unicode strings into ASCII strings, allowing applications to use certain ASCII name labels (beginning with a special prefix) to represent non-ASCII name labels, and converting entire domain names to and from the ASCII Compatible Encoding (ACE) form.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/libidn-0.6.14.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://alpha.gnu.org/pub/gnu/libidn/libidn-0.6.14.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 040f012a45feb56168853998bb87ad4d
- Download size: 2.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Libidn Dependencies

Optional

Emacs-22.1, pkg-config-0.22, GTK-Doc-1.8, a Java compiler—one of (looked for in this order) GCC-4.1.2 (for **gcj** and you must also have the *gjdoc* package installed), *Jikes* or JDK-6 Update 5, and a C# compiler—*Mono* or *DotGNU Portable.NET*

Installation of Libidn

Install Libidn by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
find doc -name "Makefile*" -exec rm {} \; &&

install -v -m755 -d \
    /usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14/{api,java,specifications,tld} &&
install -v -m644 doc/components* \
                 doc/libidn.{pdf,ps,html} \
    /usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14 &&
install -v -m644 doc/reference/html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14/api &&
install -v -m644 doc/specifications/* \
    /usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14/specifications &&
install -v -m644 doc/tld/* /usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14/tld &&
cp -v -R doc/java/* /usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14/java
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program:	idn
Installed Libraries:	libidn.{so,a} and optionally, Java and C# modules
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/libidn-0.6.14

Short Descriptions

idn	is a command line interface to the internationalized domain name library.
`libidn.{so,a}`	contains a generic Stringprep implementation that does Unicode 3.2 NFKC normalization, mapping and prohibition of characters, and bidirectional character handling. Profiles for Nameprep, iSCSI, SASL and XMPP are included as well as support for Punycode and ASCII Compatible Encoding (ACE) via IDNA. A mechanism to define Top-Level Domain (TLD) specific validation tables, and to compare strings against those tables, as well as default tables for some TLDs are included.

libdrm-2.3.0

Introduction to libdrm

libdrm provides core library routines for the X Window System to directly interface with video hardware using the Linux kernel's Direct Rendering Modules.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://dri.freedesktop.org/libdrm/libdrm-2.3.0.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libdrm-2.3.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: f2f5d3186bee51be49e1389bed39a7ed
- Download size: 382 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of libdrm

Install libdrm by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$XORG_PREFIX &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libdrm.{so,a}
Installed Directory: `$XORG_PREFIX`/include/drm

Short Descriptions

`libdrm.{so,a}` contains the Direct Rendering Module library functions.

D-Bus Bindings

Introduction to D-Bus Bindings

The D-Bus Bindings are a group of packages that contain programming language and platform interfaces to the D-Bus API. This is useful for programmers to easily interface D-Bus with their supported platform or language of choice. Some non-D-Bus packages will require one or more of the Bindings packages in order to build successfully.

The GLib, Python and Qt3 Bindings are included on this page. Other language bindings will be added soon. Until then, see the *D-Bus Bindings* page for information.

- D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74
- D-Bus Python Bindings-0.82.0
- D-Bus Qt3 Bindings-0.62

D-Bus GLib Bindings

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://dbus.freedesktop.org/releases/dbus-glib/dbus-glib-0.74.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 0923d825a0aff2e4eb23338b630286fb
- Download size: 654 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

D-Bus GLib Dependencies

Required

D-BUS-1.0.2, GLib-2.12.12, and expat-2.0.1

Installation of D-Bus GLib Bindings

Install D-Bus GLib Bindings by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program:	dbus-binding-tool
Installed Library:	libdbus-glib-1.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/gtk-doc/html/dbus-glib

Short Descriptions

dbus-binding-tool is a tool used to interface with the D-Bus API.

`libdbus-glib-1.{so,a}` contains GLib interface functions to the D-Bus API.

D-Bus Python Bindings

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://dbus.freedesktop.org/releases/dbus-python/dbus-python-0.82.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 024522ffba612f0d41b64269e925835c
- Download size: 482 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

D-Bus Python Dependencies

Required

Python-2.5.2 and D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74

Recommended

pkg-config-0.22

Optional

PyGObject (required to run the test suite)

Optional (Required to build the API Documentation)

Epydoc and *Docutils*

Installation of D-Bus Python Bindings

Install D-Bus Python Bindings by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note you must have PyGObject installed.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Python D-Bus modules
Installed Directory: /usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/dbus and /usr/share/doc/dbus-python

D-Bus Qt3 Bindings

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/sources/dbus-qt3-0.62.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 307e119f501c207a437d1dd087c9af80
- Download size: 390 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

D-Bus Qt3 Dependencies

Required

D-BUS-1.0.2 and Qt-3.3.8b

Recommended

pkg-config-0.22

Installation of D-Bus Qt3 Bindings

Install D-Bus Qt3 Bindings by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libdbus-qt-1.so
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

`libdbus-qt-1.{so,a}` contains Qt3 interface functions to the D-Bus API.

libpthread-stubs-0.1

Introduction to libpthread-stubs

The libpthread-stubs package provides weak aliases for pthread functions not provided in libc or otherwise available by default. This is useful for libraries that rely on pthread stubs to use pthreads optionally. On Linux, all necessary pthread functions are available, so this package is simply a placeholder.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xcb.freedesktop.org/dist/libpthread-stubs-0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/lib/libpthread-stubs-0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 774eabaf33440d534efe108ef9130a7d
- Download size: 190 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.6 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of libpthread-stubs

Install libpthread-stubs by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Pth-2.0.7

Introduction to Pth

The Pth package contains a very portable POSIX/ANSI-C based library for Unix platforms which provides non-preemptive priority-based scheduling for multiple threads of execution (multithreading) inside event-driven applications. All threads run in the same address space of the server application, but each thread has its own individual program-counter, run-time stack, signal mask and errno variable.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/pth/pth-2.0.7.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/pth/pth-2.0.7.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 9cb4a25331a4c4db866a31cbe507c793
- Download size: 652 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of Pth

Caution

Don't add the `--enable-pthread` parameter to the **configure** command below else you will overwrite the pthread library and interface header installed by the Glibc package in LFS.

Install Pth by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/pth-2.0.7 &&
install -v -m644    README PORTING SUPPORT TESTS \
                    /usr/share/doc/pth-2.0.7
```

Contents

Installed Program: pth-config
Installed Library: libpth.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/pth-2.0.7

Short Descriptions

pth-config is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the pth(3) library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the pth(3) library.

`libpth.{so,a}` contains the API functions used by the GNU Portable Threads Library.

Libassuan-1.0.4

Introduction to Libassuan

The Libassuan package contains an IPC library used by some of the other GnuPG related packages. Libassuan's primary use is to allow a client to interact with a non-persistent server. Libassuan is not, however, limited to use with GnuPG servers and clients. It was designed to be flexible enough to meet the demands of many transaction based environments with non-persistent servers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/libassuan-1.0.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/libassuan/libassuan-1.0.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ffb95bf2bac23e173f5a83a270f7524a
- Download size: 297 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Libassuan Dependencies

Optional

Pth-2.0.7

Other packages (such as GnuPG-2) will require that the Libassuan library is linked to the Pth library. Ensure Pth is installed before beginning the build if you have any doubts.

Installation of Libassuan

Install Libassuan by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Only **info** documentation is shipped in the package tarball. If you wish to build alternate formats of the documentation, you must have teTeX-3.0 installed, then issue the following commands:

```
make -k -C doc pdf ps html &&
makeinfo --html --no-split -o doc/assuan_nochunks.html doc/assuan.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext       -o doc/assuan.txt           doc/assuan.texi
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/libassuan-1.0.4/README
```

If you built the additional documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libassuan-1.0.4/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/assuan.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/libassuan-1.0.4/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/assuan_*.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/libassuan-1.0.4 &&
install -v -m644 doc/assuan.{pdf,ps,dvi,txt,texi} \
                    /usr/share/doc/libassuan-1.0.4
```

Contents

Installed Program:	libassuan-config
Installed Libraries:	libassuan.a and libassuan-pth.a
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/libassuan-1.0.4

Short Descriptions

libassuan-config	is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the libassuan(3) library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the libassuan(3) library.
`libassuan.a`	is the IPC library.
`libassuan-pth.a`	is the IPC library linked with the GNU Portable Threads Library.

Libgpg-error-1.5

Introduction to Libgpg-error

The Libgpg-error package contains a library that defines common error values for all GnuPG components. Among these are GPG, GPGSM, GPGME, GPG-Agent, libgcrypt, Libksba, DirMngr, Pinentry, SmartCard Daemon and more.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/libgpg-error-1.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/libgpg-error/libgpg-error-1.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 8599b96c911b1df1be24a6ff4ec3c364
- Download size: 372 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of Libgpg-error

Install Libgpg-error by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/libgpg-error-1.5/README
```

Contents

Installed Program: libgpg-error and libgpg-error-config
Installed Library: liblibgpg-error.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/share/common-lisp

Short Descriptions

gpg-error is used to determine Libgpg-error error codes.

gpg-error-config is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the Libgpg-error library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the Libgpg-error library.

`liblibgpg-error.{so,a}` contains the Libgpg-error API functions.

Libgcrypt-1.2.4

Introduction to Libgcrypt

The Libgcrypt package contains a general purpose crypto library based on the code used in GnuPG. The library provides a high level interface to cryptographic building blocks using an extendable and flexible API.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/libgcrypt-1.2.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/libgcrypt/libgcrypt-1.2.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3675d3e74c3a44aed629d9b12a30bb51
- Download size: 799 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Libgcrypt Dependencies

Required

Libgpg-error-1.5

Installation of Libgcrypt

Install Libgcrypt by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Only **info** documentation is shipped in the package tarball. If you wish to build alternate formats of the documentation, you must have teTeX-3.0 installed, then issue the following commands:

```
make -C doc pdf ps html &&
makeinfo --html --no-split -o doc/gcrypt_nochunks.html doc/gcrypt.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext       -o doc/gcrypt.txt           doc/gcrypt.texi
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/libgcrypt-1.2.4/README
```

If you built the additional documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libgcrypt-1.2.4/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/gcrypt.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/libgcrypt-1.2.4/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/gcrypt_*.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/libgcrypt-1.2.4 &&
install -v -m644 doc/gcrypt.{pdf,ps,dvi,txt,texi} \
                    /usr/share/doc/libgcrypt-1.2.4
```

Contents

Installed Program: libgcrypt-config
Installed Libraries: libgcrypt.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/libgcrypt-1.2.4

Short Descriptions

libgcrypt-config is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the libgcrypt(3) library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the libgcrypt(3) library.

`libgcrypt.{so,a}` contains the cryptographic API functions.

Libksba-1.0.2

Introduction to Libksba

The Libksba package contains a library used to make X.509 certificates as well as making the CMS (Cryptographic Message Syntax) easily accessible by other applications. Both specifications are building blocks of S/MIME and TLS. The library does not rely on another cryptographic library but provides hooks for easy integration with Libgcrypt.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/libksba-1.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/libksba/libksba-1.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3cccb3ef697e1e69eeceeea0715ff220
- Download size: 525 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 13 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Libksba Dependencies

Required

Libgpg-error-1.5

Installation of Libksba

Install Libksba by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Only **info** documentation is shipped in the package tarball. If you wish to build alternate formats of the documentation, you must have teTeX-3.0 installed, then issue the following commands:

```
tex --output-directory=doc ksba.texi &&
dvips -o doc/ksba.ps doc/ksba.dvi    &&
make -C doc pdf html                 &&
makeinfo --html --no-split -o doc/ksba_nochunks.html doc/ksba.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext       -o doc/ksba.txt           doc/ksba.texi
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/libksba-1.0.2/README
```

If you built the additional documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libksba-1.0.2/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/ksba.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/libksba-1.0.2/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/ksba_*.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/libksba-1.0.2 &&
install -v -m644 doc/ksba.{pdf,ps,dvi,txt,texi} \
                    /usr/share/doc/libksba-1.0.2
```

Contents

Installed Program: libksba-config
Installed Libraries: libksba.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/libksba-1.0.2

Short Descriptions

libksba-config is a utility used to configure and build applications based on the libksba(3) library. It can be used to query the C compiler and linker flags which are required to correctly compile and link the application against the libksba(3) library.

`libksba.{so,a}` contains the cryptographic API functions.

Mowgli-0.6.1

Introduction to Mowgli

The Mowgli package contains a development framework for C, similar to GLib-2.12.12. It provides high performance and highly flexible algorithms for routine tasks such as reference-counting, linked lists and spinlocks, and thus helps programmers write better engineered code.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://distfiles.atheme.org/libmowgli-0.6.1.tgz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 80f8a27f1b44b0b129215f858ab1ab82
- Download size: 106 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.0 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Mowgli

Install Mowgli by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a formal test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libmowgli.so
Installed Directories: /usr/include/libmowgli

Short Descriptions

`libmowgli.so` libraries contain optimized functions for various common C programming tasks.

mcs-0.7.0

Introduction to mcs

The mcs package is a library and set of tools which abstract the storage of configuration settings away from userland applications. There are similar projects like this (such as GConf), but unlike those projects, mcs strictly handles abstraction. It does not impose any specific data storage requirement, nor is it tied to any desktop environment or software suite.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://distfiles.atheme.org/libmcs-0.7.0.tgz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 0f0c779609b3481a79937c2e86660a99
- Download size: 103 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

mcs Dependencies

Required

Mowgli-0.6.1

Optional

GConf-2.18.0.1 and kdelibs-3.5.9

Installation of mcs

Install mcs by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/mcs-0.7.0/README
```

Command Explanations

`--with-qt-path=/usr/share/qt`: If you have kdelibs-3.5.9 installed, you must pass additional parameters to the **configure** script to identify the location of Qt and, possibly, KDE libraries and interface headers.

For additional information about the various storage backends (including the default XDG-compliant backend), see the `README` file in the source tree.

Configuring mcs

There are various ways to configure mcs to use a specific backend on a site-wide or individual user basis. If the default file-based storage backend is suitable, no configuration steps are required. See section 2 of the `README` file in the source tree for details.

Contents

Installed Programs: mcs-getconfval, mcs-info, mcs-query-backends and mcs-setconfval
Installed Libraries: libmcs.so and backend storage modules
Installed Directories: /usr/include/mcs, /usr/lib/mcs and /usr/share/doc/mcs-0.7.0

Short Descriptions

mcs-getconfval queries mcs for a configuration value.

mcs-info displays information about the current installation and configuration of mcs.

mcs-query-backends queries mcs to determine what backends are available.

mcs-setconfval instructs mcs to change a configuration value.

`libmcs.so` contains the API functions required by the mcs userspace tools.

Chapter 9. Graphics and Font Libraries

Depending on what your system will be used for, you may or may not require the graphics and font libraries. Most desktop machines will want them for use with graphical applications. Most servers on the other hand, will not require them.

libjpeg-6b

Introduction to libjpeg

The libjpeg package contains libraries that allow compression of image files based on the Joint Photographic Experts Group standard. It is a "lossy" compression algorithm.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.ijg.org/files/jpegsrc.v6b.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.uu.net/graphics/jpeg/jpegsrc.v6b.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: dbd5f3b47ed13132f04c685d608a7547
- Download size: 599 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of libjpeg

Install libjpeg by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-static --enable-shared &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-static --enable-shared`: These switches tell libjpeg to build both shared and static libraries.

Configuring libjpeg

Configuration Information

As with most libraries, there is no configuration to do, save that the library directory, i.e., `/opt/lib` or `/usr/local/lib` should appear in `/etc/ld.so.conf` so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries. After checking that this is the case, **/sbin/ldconfig** should be run while logged in as `root`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cjpeg, djpeg, jpegtran, rdjpgcom, and wrjpgcom
Installed Library:	libjpeg.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

cjpeg	compresses image files to produce a JPEG/JFIF file on the standard output. Currently supported input file formats are: PPM (PBMPLUS color format), PGM (PBMPLUS gray-scale format), BMP, and Targa.

djpeg	decompresses image files from JPEG/JFIF format to either PPM (PBMPLUS color format), PGM (PBMPLUS gray-scale format), BMP, or Targa format.
jpegtran	is used for lossless transformation of JPEG files.
rdjpgcom	displays text comments from within a JPEG file.
wrjpgcom	inserts text comments into a JPEG file.
`libjpeg.{so,a}`	library is used by many programs for reading and writing JPEG format files.

libpng-1.2.29

Introduction to libpng

The libpng package contains libraries used by other programs for reading and writing PNG files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/libpng/libpng-1.2.29.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f588cb4ee39e3a333604096f937ea157
- Download size: 616 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 11.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Installation of libpng

Install libpng by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libpng-1.2.29 &&
install -v -m644 README libpng-1.2.29.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/libpng-1.2.29
```

Configuring libpng

Configuration Information

As with most libraries, there is no configuration to do, save that the library directory, i.e., `/opt/lib` or `/usr/local/lib` should appear in `/etc/ld.so.conf` so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries. After checking that this is the case, **/sbin/ldconfig** should be run while logged in as `root`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	libpng-config and libpng12-config
Installed Libraries:	libpng.so and libpng12.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/include/libpng12 and /usr/share/doc/libpng-1.2.29

Short Descriptions

libpng-config	is a symlink to **libpng12-config**.
libpng12-config	provides configuration information for libpng.
`libpng.so and libpng12.{so,a}`	are a collection of routines used to create and manipulate PNG format graphics files. The PNG format was designed as a

replacement for GIF and, to a lesser extent, TIFF, with many improvements and extensions and lack of patent problems.

LibTIFF-3.8.2

Introduction to LibTIFF

The LibTIFF package contains the TIFF libraries and associated utilities. The libraries are used by many programs for reading and writing TIFF files and the utilities are useful for general work with TIFF files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://libtiff.maptools.org/dl/tiff-3.8.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.remotesensing.org/libtiff/tiff-3.8.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: fbb6f446ea4ed18955e2714934e5b698
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 18.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

LibTIFF Dependencies

Optional

libjpeg-6b, X Window System, and freeglut-2.4.0

Note that if you installed the optional MesaGLUT package with the MesaLib-6.5.2 package during an Xorg7 installation, a GLUT library is already installed and you don't need freeglut.

Installation of LibTIFF

Install LibTIFF by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	bmp2tiff, fax2ps, fax2tiff, gif2tiff, pal2rgb, ppm2tiff, ras2tiff, raw2tiff, rgb2ycbcr, thumbnail, tiff2bw, tiff2pdf, tiff2ps, tiff2rgba, tiffcmp, tiffcp, tiffdither, tiffdump, tiffgt, tiffinfo, tiffmedian, tiffset, and tiffsplit
Installed Libraries:	libtiff.{so,a} and libtiffxx.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/tiff-3.8.2

Short Descriptions

bmp2tiff	converts a Microsoft Windows Device Independent Bitmap image file to a TIFF image.
fax2ps	converts a TIFF facsimile to compressed PostScript file.
fax2tiff	creates a TIFF Class F fax file from raw fax data.

gif2tiff	creates a TIFF file from a GIF87 format image file.
pal2rgb	converts a palette color TIFF image to a full color image.
ppm2tiff	creates a TIFF file from a PPM image file.
ras2tiff	creates a TIFF file from a Sun rasterfile.
raw2tiff	converts a raw byte sequence into TIFF.
rgb2ycbcr	converts non-YCbCr TIFF images to YCbCr TIFF images.
thumbnail	creates a TIFF file with thumbnail images.
tiff2bw	converts a color TIFF image to grayscale.
tiff2pdf	converts a TIFF image to a PDF document.
tiff2ps	converts a TIFF image to a PostScript file.
tiff2rgba	converts a wide variety of TIFF images into an RGBA TIFF image.
tiffcmp	compares two TIFF files.
tiffcp	copies (and possibly converts) a TIFF file.
tiffdither	converts a grayscale image to bilevel using dithering.
tiffdump	prints verbatim information about TIFF files.
tiffgt	displays an image stored in a TIFF file in an X window.
tiffinfo	prints information about TIFF files.
tiffmedian	applies the median cut algorithm to data in a TIFF file.
tiffset	sets the value of a TIFF header to a specified value.
tiffsplit	splits a multi-image TIFF into single-image TIFF files.
`libtiff.{so,a}`	contains the API functions used by the libtiff programs as well as other programs to read and write TIFF files.
`libtiffxx.{so,a}`	contains the C++ API functions used by programs to read and write TIFF files.

giflib-4.1.4

Introduction to giflib

The giflib package contains libraries for reading and writing GIFs as well as programs for converting and working with GIF files. The libraries are useful for any graphics program wishing to deal with GIF files while the programs are useful for conversion purposes as well as cleaning up images.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/giflib/giflib-4.1.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/giflib-4.1.4.tar.gz*
- Download (HTTP) MD5 sum: 827d338961482a986f39c7f114531636
- Download (HTTP) size: 483 KB
- Download (FTP) MD5 sum: 950943daa71350a558c3edf41c3f0f9f
- Download (FTP) size: 605 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

giflib Dependencies

Optional

X Window System and *Utah Raster Toolkit* (or *URT-3.1b*)

Installation of giflib

Install giflib by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/giflib-4.1.4/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{png,html} \
    /usr/share/doc/giflib-4.1.4/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/giflib-4.1.4
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	gif2epsn, gif2ps, gif2rgb, gif2x11, gifasm, gifbg, gifburst, gifclip, gifclrmp, gifcolor, gifcomb, gifcompose, giffiltr, giffix, gifflip, gifhisto, gifinfo, gifinter, gifinto, gifovly, gifpos, gifrotat, gifrsize, gifspnge, giftext, gifwedge, icon2gif, raw2gif, rgb2gif, and text2gif
Installed Library:	libgif.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/giflib-4.1.4

Short Descriptions

gif2epsn	dumps images saved as GIF files on Epson type printers.
gif2ps	prints GIF files on laser printers supporting PostScript.
gif2rgb	converts images saved as GIF to 24-bit RGB images.
gif2x11	displays images saved as GIF files under X Window System.
gifasm	assembles multiple GIFs into one, or burst a multiple-image GIF.
gifbg	generates a single-color test pattern GIF.
gifburst	bursts a GIF image into subrectangles.
gifclip	clips or crops a GIF image.
gifclrmp	modifies GIF image colormaps.
gifcolor	generates color test patterns.
gifcomb	combines two GIF images of exactly the same size into one.
gifcompose	uses giflib tools to compose images.
giffiltr	is a template for filtering a GIF sequentially.
giffix	clumsily attempts to fix truncated GIF images.
gifflip	flips a GIF image along the X or Y axis or rotates an image by 90 degrees.
gifhisto	generate a color-frequency histogram from a GIF.
gifinfo	gives information about a GIF file.
gifinter	converts between interlaced and non-interlaced images.
gifinto	is an end-of-pipe fitting for GIF-processing pipelines.
gifovly	generates one composite GIF from a multiple-image GIF.
gifpos	changes a GIF's screen size or reconditions it.
gifrotat	rotates a GIF through any desired angle.
gifrsize	resizes a GIF by deletion or duplication of bits.
gifspnge	is a template for filtering a GIF with in-core operations.
giftext	prints (text only) general information about a GIF file.
gifwedge	creates a test GIF image resembling a color monitor test pattern.
icon2gif	is a converter/deconverter to/from an editable text format.
raw2gif	converts raw 8-bit image data into GIF files.
rgb2gif	converts 24 bit images to a GIF image using color quantization.
text2gif	generates GIF images out of regular text in 8x8 font.
`libgif.{so,a}`	contains API functions required by the giflib programs and any other programs needing library functionality to read, write and manipulate GIF images.

little cms-1.16

Introduction to little cms

The little cms library is used by other programs to provide color management facilities.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.littlecms.com/lcms-1.16.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/lcms-1.16.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: b07b623f3e712373ff713fb32cf23651
- Download size: 911 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 25 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU (includes building the Python module)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/lcms-1.16-swig_fixes-1.patch*

little cms Dependencies

Optional

LibTIFF-3.8.2, libjpeg-6b, and Python-2.5.2 (with *SWIG* also)

Installation of little cms

Install little cms by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../lcms-1.16-swig_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/lcms-1.16 &&
install -v -m644 README.1ST doc/* /usr/share/doc/lcms-1.16
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	icc2ps, icclink, icctrans, wtpt and optionally, jpegicc, tiffdiff and tifficc
Installed Libraries:	liblcms.{so,a} and the optional _lcms.so Python module
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/lcms-1.16

Short Descriptions

icc2ps	generates PostScript CRD or CSA from ICC profiles.
icclink	links two or more profiles into a single device link profile.
icctrans	is a color space conversion calculator.

jpegicc	is an ICC profile applier for JPEG files.
tifficc	is an ICC profile applier for TIFF files.
wtpt	shows media white of profiles, identifying black body locus.
`liblcms.{so,a}`	is used by the lcms programs as well as other programs to provide color management facilities.

libmng-1.0.9

Introduction to libmng

The libmng libraries are used by programs wanting to read and write Multiple-image Network Graphics (MNG) files which are the animation equivalents to PNG files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/libmng/libmng-1.0.9.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ff1205ef70855a75c098ea09690413c6
- Download size: 554 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libmng Dependencies

Required

libjpeg-6b and little cms-1.16

Installation of libmng

Install libmng by running the following commands:

```
cp makefiles/makefile.linux Makefile &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make prefix=/usr install &&
install -v -m644 doc/man/*.3 /usr/share/man/man3 &&
install -v -m644 doc/man/*.5 /usr/share/man/man5 &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libmng-1.0.9 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{png,txt} /usr/share/doc/libmng-1.0.9
```

Command Explanations

cp makefiles/makefile.linux Makefile: There are no autotools shipped with this package. The Linux `Makefile` is copied to the root of the source tree, facilitating the installation.

install ...: The documentation files are not installed by the installation procedure, so they are copied manually.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libmng.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/libmng-1.0.9

Short Descriptions

`libmng.{so,a}` provides functions for programs wishing to read and write MNG files which are animation files without the patent problems associated with certain other formats.

FreeType-2.3.7

Introduction to FreeType2

The FreeType2 package contains a library to allow applications to properly render TrueType fonts.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/freetype/freetype-2.3.7.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/freetype-2.3.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 83306194817ebdea554133b4232a34aa
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 28.2 (includes installing additional documentation)
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

Additional Documentation

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/freetype/freetype-doc-2.3.7.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/freetype-doc-2.3.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2ba135e6a126ed86e9b462167511ced8
- Download size: 97 KB

Installation of FreeType2

If you downloaded the additional documentation, unpack it into the source tree using the following command:

```
tar xf ../freetype-doc-2.3.7.tar.bz2 \
    --strip-components=2 -C docs
```

Install FreeType2 by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -r -e 's:.*(#.*BYTE.*) .*:\1:' \
          -e 's:.*(#.*SUBPIX.*) .*:\1:' \
          include/freetype/config/ftoption.h &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/freetype-2.3.7 &&
cp -v -R docs/* /usr/share/doc/freetype-2.3.7
```

Command Explanations

sed -i ... 's:.*(#.*BYTE.*) .*:\1:' ... 's:.*(#.*SUBPIX.*) .*:\1:' include/freetype/config/ftoption.h: This command enables the TrueType native bytecode interpreter and LCD optimized rendering features. These options result in improved rendering of fonts, but may have patent restrictions. Be sure to read *http://www.freetype.org/patents.html* before enabling these options.

Contents

Installed Program: freetype-config
Installed Library: libfreetype.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/include/freetype2

Short Descriptions

freetype-config is used to get FreeType compilation and linking information.

`libfreetype.{so,a}` contains functions for rendering various font types, such as TrueType and Type1.

Fontconfig-2.4.2

Introduction to Fontconfig

The Fontconfig package is a library for configuring and customizing font access.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://fontconfig.org/release/fontconfig-2.4.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/fontconfig-2.4.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: f035852f521b54677f2b5c9e2f6d54a4
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 11.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Fontconfig Dependencies

Required

FreeType-2.3.7 and either expat-2.0.1 or libxml2-2.6.31 (requires pkg-config-0.22)

Optional

DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Note

If you have DocBook-utils installed and you remove the *--disable-docs* parameter from the **configure** command below, you must have SGMLSpm-1.03ii and JadeTeX-3.13 installed also, or the Fontconfig build will fail.

Installation of Fontconfig

Install Fontconfig by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
    --sysconfdir=/etc --localstatedir=/var \
    --disable-docs --without-add-fonts \
    --with-docdir=/usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.3 /usr/share/man/man3 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.5 /usr/share/man/man5 &&
install -v -m755 \
        -d /usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2/fontconfig-devel &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{html,pdf,txt} \
        /usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2 &&
install -v -m644 doc/fontconfig-devel/* \
        /usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2/fontconfig-devel
```

Command Explanations

`--localstatedir=/var`: This switch places the system font cache files in `/var/cache/fontconfig`.

`--disable-docs`: This switch avoids building the documentation (the release tarball includes pre-generated documentation).

`--without-add-fonts`: This switch disables the automatic search for X Window System fonts which, if found, may confuse some applications.

`--with-docdir=/usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2`: Though this parameter seems counter-intuitive following the preceding parameter to the **configure** command, it is used so that if the builder removes the *`--disable-docs`* parameter, the documentation will be installed in a versioned directory name instead of the default `/usr/share/doc/fontconfig`.

Configuring Fontconfig

Config Files

`/etc/fonts/*, /etc/fonts/conf.avail/*, and /etc/fonts/conf.d/*`

Configuration Information

The main configuration file for Fontconfig is `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf`. Generally you do not want to edit this file. It will also read `/etc/fonts/local.conf` and any files in `/etc/fonts/conf.d`. To put a new font directory in the configuration, create (or update) the `/etc/fonts/local.conf` file with your local information or add a new file in `/etc/fonts/conf.d`. The default location of fonts in Fontconfig is:

- /usr/share/fonts
- ~/.fonts

Fontconfig also ships many example configuration files in the `/etc/fonts/conf.avail` directory. Symlinking to specific files from `/etc/fonts/conf.d` will enable them. The default setup is generally good enough for most users. See `/etc/fonts/conf.avail/README` for a description of the configuration files.

More information about configuring Fontconfig can be found in the user's manual in *file:///usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2/fontconfig-user.html*.

Contents

Installed Programs: fc-cache, fc-cat, fc-list, and fc-match
Installed Library: libfontconfig.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /etc/fonts, /usr/include/fontconfig, /usr/share/doc/fontconfig-2.4.2 and /var/cache/fontconfig

Short Descriptions

fc-cache is used to create font information caches.

fc-cat is used to read font information caches.

fc-list is used to create font lists.

fc-match is used to match available fonts, or find fonts that match a given pattern.

`libfontconfig.{so,a}` contains functions used by the Fontconfig programs and also by other programs to configure or customize font access.

libart_lgpl-2.3.19

Introduction to libart_lgpl

The libart_lgpl package contains the `libart` libraries. These are useful for high-performance 2D graphics.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libart_lgpl/2.3/libart_lgpl-2.3.19.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libart_lgpl/2.3/libart_lgpl-2.3.19.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ac885805d1918026a18b560f4015bc66
- Download size: 302 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libart_lgpl-2.3.19-upstream_fix-1.patch*

Installation of libart_lgpl

Install libart_lgpl by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../libart_lgpl-2.3.19-upstream_fix-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Program: libart2-config
Installed Library: libart_lgpl_2.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/include/libart-2.0

Short Descriptions

`libart_lgpl_2.{so,a}` is used as the anti-aliased render engine for libgnomecanvas and as a graphics support library for many other packages.

librsvg-2.16.1

Introduction to librsvg

The librsvg package contains `librsvg` libraries and tools used to manipulate, convert and view Scalable Vector Graphic (SVG) images.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/librsvg/2.16/librsvg-2.16.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/librsvg/2.16/librsvg-2.16.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 37e046571097ff7ce77ae6e07f096324
- Download size: 416 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

librsvg Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and libxml2-2.6.31

Recommended

libcroco-0.6.1 and libgsf-1.14.7

Optional

GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1, libgnomeprintui-2.18.0, GTK-Doc-1.8, DocBook-utils-0.6.14, and Python-2.5.2, providing a legacy wrapper interface **rsvg** for the newer **rsvg-convert**.

Installation of librsvg

Install librsvg by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --disable-mozilla-plugin &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-mozilla-plugin`: This parameter prevents building the browser plugin as Firefox and SeaMonkey have built-in SVG render capability and don't need it.

`--disable-gtk-doc`: This parameter prevents the rebuilding of documentation during the **make** command. It will also prevent the existing documentation in the source tree from being installed.

Contents

Installed Programs: rsvg, rsvg-convert and rsvg-view
Installed Libraries: librsvg-2.{so,a}, GTK+ modules and optionally a Mozilla plugin
Installed Directories: /usr/include/librsvg-2 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/rsvg

Short Descriptions

rsvg is a legacy wrapper interface to rsvg-convert.

rsvg-convert is used to covert SVG images into PNG, JPEG and ICO raster images.

rsvg-view is used to view an SVG file in an X window.

`librsvg-2.{so,a}` libraries provide the functions to render Scalable Vector Graphics.

AAlib-1.4rc5

Introduction to AAlib

AAlib is a library to render any graphic into ASCII Art.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/aa-project/aalib-1.4rc5.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.ratmir.tver.ru/pub/FreeBsd/ports/distfiles/aalib-1.4rc5.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 9801095c42bba12edebd1902bcf0a990
- Download size: 388 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.15 SBU

AAlib Dependencies

Optional

X Window System, S-Lang-2.1.3, and GPM-1.20.1

Installation of AAlib

Install AAlib by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: aafire, aainfo, aalib-config, aasavefont, and aatest
Installed Library: libaa.{so,a}
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

aafire is little toy of AAlib, rendering an animated fire in ASCII Art.

aainfo provides information for your current settings related to AAlib.

aalib-config provides configuration info for AAlib.

aatest shows the abilities of AAlib in a little test.

`libaa.{so,a}` is a collection of routines to render any graphical input in portable format to ASCII Art. It can be used through many programs and has a very well documented API, so you can easily put it into your own programs.

Imlib2-1.4.0

Introduction to Imlib2

Imlib2 is a graphics library for fast file loading, saving, rendering and manipulation.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/enlightenment/imlib2-1.4.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 69f7ee996c943142332b4c98597b095c
- Download size: 955 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 16 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Imlib2 Dependencies

Required

FreeType-2.3.7, libpng-1.2.29, and libjpeg-6b

Recommended

X Window System

Optional

LibTIFF-3.8.2, giflib-4.1.4, and *libid3tag*

Installation of Imlib2

Install Imlib2 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/imlib2-1.4.0 &&
install -v -m644 doc/{*.gif,index.html} \
    /usr/share/doc/imlib2-1.4.0
```

Command Explanations

`--without-x`: Add this parameter if you do not have an X Window System installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	imlib2_bumpmap, imlib2_colorspace, imlib2-config, imlib2_conv, imlib2_grab, imlib2_poly, imlib2_show, imlib2_test, and imlib2_view
Installed Libraries:	libImlib2.{so,a} and various filters and image loader modules.
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/imlib2, /usr/share/doc/imlib2-1.4.0, and /usr/share/imlib2

Short Descriptions

`libImlib2.{so,a}` provides the functions for programs to deal with various image data formats.

libexif-0.6.16

Introduction to libexif

The libexif package contains a library for parsing, editing, and saving EXIF data. Most digital cameras produce EXIF files, which are JPEG files with extra tags that contain information about the image. All EXIF tags described in EXIF standard 2.1 are supported.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/libexif/libexif-0.6.16.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: deee153b1ded5a944ea05d041d959eca
- Download size: 691 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 10 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libexif Dependencies

Optional (to Build Documentation)

Doxygen-1.5.2 and Graphviz-2.12

Installation of libexif

Install libexif by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --with-doc-dir=/usr/share/doc/libexif-0.6.16 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Documentation was built and installed if you have the dependencies shown above installed. If you don't have the dependencies installed, there is a compressed tarball in the source tree `doc` directory that can be unpacked into /usr/share/doc/libexif-0.6.16.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libexif.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/include/libexif and /usr/share/doc/libexif-0.6.16

Short Descriptions

`libexif.{so,a}` contains functions used for parsing, editing, and saving EXIF data.

FriBidi-0.10.8

Introduction to FriBidi

The FriBidi package is an implementation of the *Unicode Bidirectional Algorithm (bidi)*. This is useful for supporting Arabic and Hebrew alphabets in other packages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://fribidi.org/download/fribidi-0.10.8.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: fe6a1e370353e330bbe043bb1697d04e
- Download size: 619 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/fribidi-0.10.8-test_fixes-1.patch*

Installation of FriBidi

Install FriBidi by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../fribidi-0.10.8-test_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: fribidi and fribidi-config
Installed Library: libfribidi.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/include/fribidi

Short Descriptions

fribidi is a command-line interface to the `libfribidi` library and can be used to convert a logical string to visual output.

fribidi-config is used to acquire information about the installed `libfribidi` library.

`libfribidi.{so,a}` contains functions used to implement the *Unicode Bidirectional Algorithm*.

Poppler-0.5.4

Introduction to Poppler

The Poppler package contains a PDF rendering library and command line tools used to manipulate PDF files. This is useful for providing PDF rendering functionality as a shared library.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://poppler.freedesktop.org/poppler-0.5.4.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 053fdfd70533ecce1a06353fa945f061
- Download size: 1.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 49 MB (additional 15 MB to install the encoding data package)
- Estimated build time: 1.0 SBU (includes building with all dependencies)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/poppler-0.5.4-security_fixes-2.patch*
- Poppler Encoding Data: *http://poppler.freedesktop.org/poppler-data-0.1.tar.gz*

The additional package consists of encoding files for use with Poppler. The encoding files are optional and poppler will automatically read them if they are present. When installed, they enable Poppler to render CJK and Cyrillic properly.

Poppler Dependencies

Required

pkg-config-0.22 and Fontconfig-2.4.2

Optional

libjpeg-6b, cairo-1.4.14, GTK+-2.10.13, Qt-3.3.8b, and *Qt-4.x.x*

If you're installing Poppler to support kdegraphics-3.5.9, you will need to have Qt-3.3.8b installed so that the `libpoppler-qt` library is built.

Installation of Poppler

Caution

Poppler will overwrite command-line utilities and man pages previously installed by the Xpdf package. If you prefer to keep the Xpdf versions of these files, pass the `--disable-utils` parameter to the **configure** command below.

The **configure** command below includes three parameters which disable various rendering back-ends. Ensure you remove any of the parameters for which you have the corresponding dependency installed. Install Poppler by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../poppler-0.5.4-security_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --enable-zlib \
            --disable-cairo-output \
            --disable-poppler-glib \
            --disable-gtk-test &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d      /usr/share/doc/poppler-0.5.4 &&
install -v -m644 README* /usr/share/doc/poppler-0.5.4
```

If you downloaded the additional encoding data package, install it by issuing the following command after unpacking the tarball and changing into the newly-created package source directory (as the `root` user):

```
make prefix=/usr install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-zlib`: This parameter forces the build to link with the system-installed `libz` library to enable compressed PDF functionality.

`--disable-cairo-output`: This parameter disables building the cairo graphics backend. Remove this parameter if you have cairo installed.

`--disable-poppler-glib` and *`--disable-gtk-test`*: These parameters disable building the GLib wrapper and GTK+ test program. Remove these parameters if you have GTK+-2 installed. Note that if you plan on building Evince-0.8.3, you must build the GLib wrapper.

Configuring Poppler

Config Files

`/etc/xpdfrc`

Contents

Installed Programs:	See the Xpdf-3.02 program descriptions
Installed Libraries:	libpoppler.{so,a}, libpoppler-glib.{so,a}, libpoppler-qt.{so,a} and libpoppler-qt4.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/poppler, /usr/share/doc/poppler-0.5.4, /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/poppler and /usr/share/poppler

Short Descriptions

`libpoppler.{so,a}`	contains the API functions to render PDF files.
`libpoppler-glib.{so,a}`	is a wrapper library used to interface the PDF rendering functions with GTK+.
`libpoppler-qt.{so,a}`	is a wrapper library used to interface the PDF rendering functions with Qt.
`libpoppler-qt4.{so,a}`	is a wrapper library used to interface the PDF rendering functions with Qt-4.

Chapter 10. General Utilities

This chapter contains various utilities that do not fit conveniently into other chapters. Programs include a command line calculator, several utilities for manipulating text and graphics, a program to interface with a palm-pilot, a program for entering PIN numbers and pass-phrases, and a hash generator.

Bc-1.06

Introduction to Bc

The bc package contains an arbitrary precision numeric processing language.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bc/bc-1.06.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bc/bc-1.06.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: d44b5dddebd8a7a7309aea6c36fda117
- Download size: 273 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.36 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU (0.2 SBU if running the testsuite)

Installation of Bc

Install bc by running the following commands:

```
sed -i '/PROTO.*readline/d' bc/scan.l &&
sed -i '/flex -I8/s/8//' configure &&
sed -i '/stdlib/a #include <string.h>' lib/number.c &&
sed -i 's/program.*save/static &/' bc/load.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-readline &&
make
```

To test bc, run the commands below. There is quite a bit of output, so you may want to redirect it to a file. There are a very small percentage of tests (10 of 12,144) that will indicate a roundoff error at the last digit.

```
echo "quit" | ./bc/bc -l Test/checklib.b
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '/PROTO.*readline/d' bc/scan.l: This command fixes the Readline library call.

sed -i '/flex -I8/s/8//' configure: This command fixes the Flex invocation.

sed -i '/stdlib/a #include <string.h>' lib/number.c: This command inserts a missing header.

sed -i 's/program.*save/static &/' bc/load.c: This command fixes a segfault when running bc with **bc -l**.

`--with-readline`: This option enables Readline support in interactive mode.

Contents

Installed Programs:	bc and dc
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

bc is a calculator.

dc is a reverse-polish calculator.

Rep-gtk-0.18

Introduction to Rep-gtk

The rep-gtk package contains a Lisp and GTK binding. This is useful for extending GTK-2 and GDK libraries with Lisp. Starting at rep-gtk-0.15, the package contains the bindings to GTK and uses the same instructions. Both can be installed, if needed.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/rep-gtk/rep-gtk-0.18.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 220b0d728656472c068e40823f0a3b22
- Download size: 152 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.18 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/rep-gtk-0.18-gtk2.4-1.patch*

Rep-gtk Dependencies

Required

libglade-2.6.1 and librep-0.17

Installation of Rep-gtk

Install rep-gtk by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../rep-gtk-0.18-gtk2.4-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Lisp bindings
Installed Directory: /usr/lib/rep/i686-pc-linux-gnu/gui/

Short Descriptions

`Lisp bindings` are libraries stored in `/usr/lib/rep/i686-pc-linux-gnu/gui/` that assist communication between Lisp and the GTK libraries.

Compface-1.5.2

Introduction to Compface

Compface provides utilities and a library to convert from/to X-Face format, a 48x48 bitmap format used to carry thumbnails of email authors in a mail header.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.xemacs.org/pub/xemacs/aux/compface-1.5.2.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 62f4f79c0861ad292ba3cf77b4c48319
- Download size: 47 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 520 KB
- Estimated build time: Less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Compface

Install Compface by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -m755 -v xbm2xface.pl /usr/bin
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	compface, uncompface and xbm2xface.pl
Installed Library:	libcompface.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

compface	is a filter for generating highly compressed representations of 48x48x1 face image files.
uncompface	is an inverse filter which performs an inverse transformation with no loss of data.
xbm2xface.pl	is a script to generate xfaces.
`libcompface.{so,a}`	allows the compression and decompression algorithms to be used in other programs such as MTAs.

ImageMagick-6.3.5-10

Introduction to ImageMagick

ImageMagick is a collection of tools and libraries to read, write, and manipulate an image in various image formats. Image processing operations are available from the command line. Bindings to various programming languages are also available.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/imagemagick/ImageMagick-6.3.5-10.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.imagemagick.net/pub/ImageMagick/legacy/ImageMagick-6.3.5-10.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0e638f94ab70272a645b4d6ae06201d8
- Download size: 7.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 211 MB (additional 75 MB if you run the Image::Magick demo)
- Estimated build time: 4.2 SBU (Additional 1.8 SBU to run the test suite)

The ImageMagick source releases are updated frequently and the version shown above may no longer be available from the download locations. You can download a more recent version and use the existing BLFS instructions to install it. Chances are that it will work just fine, but this has not been tested by the BLFS team. If the package version shown above is not available from the locations shown above, you can download it from the BLFS package server at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/i/ImageMagick-6.3.5-10.tar.bz2*.

ImageMagick Dependencies

Recommended

X Window System

The optional dependencies listed below should be installed if you need support for the specific format or the conversion tool the dependency provides. Many of the dependencies' capabilities and uses are described in the "MAGICK DELEGATES" section of the `README.txt` file located in the source tree. Additional information about the dependencies can be found in the `Install-unix.txt` file located in the source tree as well as issuing the **./configure --help** command. A summary of this information, as well as some additional notes can be viewed on-line at *http://www.imagemagick.org/script/advanced-unix-installation.php*.

Optional System Utilities

pkg-config-0.22, CUPS-1.2.12 or LPRng-3.8.28 (or any other print utility that provides an **lpr** command), *dcraw*, *Dmalloc*, *Electric Fence*, *PGP* or GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8 (you'll have to do some hacking to use GnuPG), SANE-1.0.18, and Wget-1.10.2

Optional Graphics Libraries

corefonts, *FlashPIX* (or *FlashPIX library*), FreeType-2.3.7, *Jasper*, *JBIG-KIT*, little cms-1.16, libexif-0.6.16, libjpeg-6b, libpng-1.2.29, librsvg-2.16.1, LibTIFF-3.8.2, libxml2-2.6.31, *DjVuLibre*, and *RALCGM* (or *RALCGM-3.50*)

Optional Graphics Utilities

ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 or AFPL Ghostscript-8.53, *GhostPCL*, GIMP-2.2.17, *Gnuplot*, Graphviz-2.12, *POV-Ray*, and *Radiance*

Optional Conversion Tools

AutoTrace, Enscript-1.6.4, *hp2xx*, *html2ps*, *libwmf*, *MPEG-2 Video Codec*, *Netpbm*, teTeX-3.0, *Transfig*, *txt2html* (requires Module::Build-0.2808 and Perl Module *Getopt::ArgvFile*), and *Utah Raster Toolkit* (or *URT-3.1b*)

Installation of ImageMagick

Install Imagemagick by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e "s/\xc2\xae/\\\[rg\]/g" \
   -e "s/B...'e./Be/" utilities/ImageMagick.1.in &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-modules &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that some of the tests may fail due to system and/or build parameter settings.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e "..." -e "...": One man page is installed with character encoding not displayable using the Man-db package. This command changes the offending bytes to characters **man** can properly display.

`--with-modules`: Enables support for dynamically loadable modules.

`--with-gslib=/usr/lib`: Enables support to use the Ghostscript shared library.

`--with-fpx`: Enables support to use the FlashPix library.

`--with-windows-font-dir=<Some/Directory>`: This option specifies the directory where the Windows CoreFonts are installed.

The options and parameters listed above are the only ones you should have to pass to the **configure** script to activate all the delegate dependencies. All other dependencies will be automatically detected and utilized in the build if they are installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	animate, compare, composite, conjure, convert, display, identify, import, Magick-config, Magick++-config, mogrify, montage, stream, and Wand-config
Installed Libraries:	libMagick.{so,a}, libMagick++.{so,a}, libWand.{so,a}, the Magick.so Perl module, and numerous plugin modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/Magick++, /usr/include/magick, /usr/include/wand, /usr/lib/ImageMagick-6.3.5, /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/5.8.8/i686-linux/auto/Image/Magick, /usr/share/ImageMagick-6.3.5 and /usr/share/doc/ImageMagick-6.3.5

Short Descriptions

animate	animates a sequence of images.
compare	compares an image to a reconstructed image.

composite	composites various images into the given base image.
conjure	processes a MSL script to create an image.
convert	converts image(s) from one format to another.
display	displays an image.
identify	describes the format and characteristics of an image file.
import	captures an X window.
Magick-config and **Magick++-config**	show information about the installed versions of ImageMagick and Magick++.
mogrify	transforms an image.
montage	composites various images into a new image.
stream	streams one or more pixel components of an image or portion of the image to your choice of storage formats.
Wand-config	shows the options required to use the Wand library.
`Image::Magick`	allows the reading, manipulation and writing of a large number of image file formats using the ImageMagick library. Run **make** in the `PerlMagick/demo` directory of the package source tree after the package is installed to see a nice demo of the module's capabilities.

Hd2u-1.0.1

Introduction to Hd2u

The hd2u package contains an any to any text format converter.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.megaloman.com/~hany/_data/hd2u/hd2u-1.0.1.tgz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: dbab0f0c3ee473880ee1fc9740e43515
- Download size: 54 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 364 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Hd2u Dependencies

Required

popt-1.10.4

Installation of Hd2u

Install hd2u by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Program: dos2unix
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

dos2unix converts text between various OS formats (such as converting from DOS format to Unix).

GTK-Doc-1.8

Introduction to GTK-Doc

The GTK-Doc package contains a code documentor. This is useful for extracting specially formatted comments from the code to create API documentation. This package is *optional*; if it is not installed, packages will not build the documentation. This does not mean that you will not have any documentation. If GTK-Doc is not available, the install process will copy any pre-built documentation to your system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtk-doc/1.8/gtk-doc-1.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtk-doc/1.8/gtk-doc-1.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e61595df21431db28c83fe4c7d4a4fa8
- Download size: 186 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

GTK-Doc Dependencies

Required

libxslt-1.1.22, DocBook XML DTD-4.5, and DocBook XSL Stylesheets-1.71.1

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, ScrollKeeper-0.3.14, OpenJade-1.3.2, DocBook SGML DTD-4.5, and DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets-1.79

Installation of GTK-Doc

Install GTK-Doc by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gtkdocize, gtkdoc-fixxref, gtkdoc-mkdb, gtkdoc-mkhtml, gtkdoc-mkman, gtkdoc-mktmpl, gtkdoc-scan, gtkdoc-scangobj, and gtkdoc-scanobj
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of /usr/share/: doc/gtk-doc-1.8, gnome/help/gtk-doc-manual, gtk-doc/data and {omf,sgml}/gtk-doc

Short Descriptions

gtkdoc* these are all Perl scripts used by package `Makefile` scripts to generate documentation for the package being built.

ScrollKeeper-0.3.14

Introduction to ScrollKeeper

The ScrollKeeper package contains a cataloging system for documentation. This is useful for managing documentation metadata and providing an API to help browsers find, sort and search the document catalog.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/scrollkeeper/0.3/scrollkeeper-0.3.14.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/scrollkeeper/0.3/scrollkeeper-0.3.14.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b175e582a6cec3e50a9de73a5bb7455a
- Download size: 546 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

ScrollKeeper Dependencies

Required

libxslt-1.1.22, DocBook XML DTD-4.5, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of ScrollKeeper

Install ScrollKeeper by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --disable-static \
            --with-omfdirs=/usr/share/omf:\
/opt/kde-3.5.9/share/omf:\
/opt/gnome-2.18.3/share/omf &&

make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This switch puts the configuration files in `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--localstatedir=/var`: This switch puts ScrollKeeper's database directory in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper`.

`--disable-static`: This switch prevents the static library from being built.

--with-omfdirs=...: This switch defines the locations of OMF files for ScrollKeeper. Change the locations if you have KDE and/or GNOME-2 installed in a prefix other than the ones shown. This information is stored in /etc/scrollkeeper.conf and can be updated manually, if necessary.

Configuring ScrollKeeper

Config Files

/etc/scrollkeeper.conf

Configuration Information

The configuration file sets the OMF_DIR variable to the location of all of the omf directories in the system. This was set in the **configure** command so no further action is needed until another OMF directory is created.

Contents

Installed Programs:	scrollkeeper-config, scrollkeeper-extract, scrollkeeper-gen-seriesid, scrollkeeper-get-cl, scrollkeeper-get-content-list, scrollkeeper-get-extended-content-list, scrollkeeper-get-index-from-docpath, scrollkeeper-get-toc-from-docpath, scrollkeeper-get-toc-from-id, scrollkeeper-install, scrollkeeper-preinstall, scrollkeeper-rebuilddb, scrollkeeper-uninstall, and scrollkeeper-update
Installed Library:	libscrollkeeper.so
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/scrollkeeper-0.3.14, /usr/share/{omf, {,xml/}scrollkeeper}, and /var/lib/scrollkeeper

Short Descriptions

ScrollKeeper utility programs	The ScrollKeeper utility programs and scripts listed above are for performing installation, building, getting and updating table of contents files.
libscrollkeeper.so	provides the API necessary for help browsers to interact with documentation written to utilize ScrollKeeper.

Intltool-0.35.5

Introduction to Intltool

The intltool package contains an internationalization tool. This is useful for extracting translatable strings from source files, collecting the extracted strings with messages from traditional source files (`<source directory>/<package>/po`) and merging the translations into `.xml`, `.desktop` and `.oaf` files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/intltool/0.35/intltool-0.35.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/intltool/0.35/intltool-0.35.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f52d5fa7f128db94e884cd21dd45d2e2
- Download size: 132 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Intltool Dependencies

Required

XML::Parser-2.34

Installation of Intltool

Install intltool by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/I18N-HOWTO \
    /usr/share/doc/intltool-0.35.5/I18N-HOWTO
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	intltoolize, intltool-extract, intltool-merge, intltool-prepare, and intltool-update
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/intltool and /usr/share/doc/intltool-0.35.5

Short Descriptions

intltoolize	prepares a package to use intltool.
intltool-extract	generates header files that can be read by **gettext**.
intltool-merge	merges translated strings into various file types.
intltool-prepare	updates pot files and merges them with translation files.

intltool-update updates the po template files and merges them with the translations.

Screen-4.0.3

Introduction to Screen

Screen is a terminal multiplexor that runs several separate processes, typically interactive shells, on a single physical character-based terminal. Each virtual terminal emulates a DEC VT100 plus several ANSI X3.64 and ISO 2022 functions and also provides configurable input and output translation, serial port support, configurable logging, multi-user support, and many character encodings, including UTF-8. Screen sessions can be detached and resumed later on a different terminal.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.uni-erlangen.de/pub/utilities/screen/screen-4.0.3.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.uni-erlangen.de/pub/utilities/screen/screen-4.0.3.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 8506fd205028a96c741e4037de6e3c42
- Download size: 821 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Screen Dependencies

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0

Installation of Screen

Install Screen by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-socket-dir=/var/run/screen \
    --with-sys-screenrc=/etc/screenrc &&
sed -i -e "s%/usr/local/etc/screenrc%/etc/screenrc%" {etc,doc}/* &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -m 644 etc/etcscreenrc /etc/screenrc
```

Command Explanations

`--with-socket-dir=/var/run/screen`: This option places the per-user sockets in a standard location.

`--with-sys-screenrc=/etc/screenrc`: This option places the global screenrc file in `/etc`.

sed -i -e "s%/usr/local/etc/screenrc%/etc/screenrc%" {etc,doc}/*: This command corrects the configuration and documentation files to the location that is used here for the global screenrc file.

Configuring Screen

Config Files

`/etc/screenrc` and `~/.screenrc`

Configuration Information

You may want to look at the example configuration file that was installed and customize it for your needs.

Contents

Installed Program: screen
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /var/run/screen

Short Descriptions

screen is a terminal multiplexor with VT100/ANSI terminal emulation.

HTML Tidy-cvs_20070326

Introduction to HTML Tidy

The HTML Tidy package contains a command line tool and libraries used to read HTML, XHTML and XML files and write cleaned up markup. It detects and corrects many common coding errors and strives to produce visually equivalent markup that is both W3C compliant and compatible with most browsers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/sources/tidy-cvs_20070326.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 468bfaa5cf917a8ecbe7834c13a61376
- Download size: 872 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

HTML Tidy tarballs are no longer generated by the maintainers. To build from source, the HTML Tidy developers recommend using current CVS. The source tarball shown above was created by the BLFS team by pulling a CVS version and generating the autotool components. BLFS made no changes to the existing source files.

HTML Tidy Dependencies

Optional

Dmalloc

Installation of HTML Tidy

Install HTML Tidy by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you wish to install the API documentation, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
make -C htmldoc install_apidocs
```

Configuring HTML Tidy

Config Files

The absolute path of the file specified in `$HTML_TIDY`.

Configuration Information

The default configuration options can be set in the file defined in `$HTML_TIDY`. Additional configuration options can be passed to **tidy** via command line parameters or the `-config <file>` parameter.

Contents

Installed Programs: tab2space and tidy
Installed Library: libtidy.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/tidy-051020

Short Descriptions

tab2space is a utility to expand tabs and ensure consistent line endings.

tidy validates, corrects, and pretty-prints HTML files.

`libtidy.{so,a}` libraries provide the HTML Tidy API functions to **tidy** and can also be called by other programs.

desktop-file-utils-0.13

Introduction to desktop-file-utils

The desktop-file-utils package contains command line utilities for working with *desktop entries*. These utilities are used by GNOME-2 and other applications to manipulate the MIME-types application databases and help adhere to the Desktop Entry Specification.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://freedesktop.org/software/desktop-file-utils/releases/desktop-file-utils-0.13.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 2ee84d0de753d4052011714c20d6efae
- Download size: 347 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

desktop-file-utils Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12

Optional

Emacs-22.1

Installation of desktop-file-utils

Install desktop-file-utils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring desktop-file-utils

Configuration Information

The *XDG Base Directory* specification defines the standard locations for applications to place data and configuration files. These files can be used, for instance, to define the menu structure and menu items in a desktop environment.

The default location for configuration files to be installed is `/etc/xdg`, and the default locations for data files are `/usr/local/share` and `/usr/share`. These locations can be extended with the environment variables `XDG_CONFIG_DIRS` and `XDG_DATA_DIRS`, respectively. The GNOME, KDE and XFCE environments respect respect these settings. Update the `XDG_DATA_DIRS` (if necessary) and `XDG_CONFIG_DIRS` environment variables so that the additional MIME-types application databases and desktop menu files are properly maintained and discovered by adding the following to the system-wide or personal profile:

For GNOME:

```
XDG_DATA_DIRS=$GNOME_PREFIX/share:/usr/local/share:/usr/share
XDG_CONFIG_DIRS=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/xdg:/etc/xdg
export XDG_DATA_DIRS XDG_CONFIG_DIRS
```

For KDE:

```
XDG_DATA_DIRS=$KDE_PREFIX/share:/usr/local/share:/usr/share
XDG_CONFIG_DIRS=/etc/kde/xdg:/etc/xdg
export XDG_DATA_DIRS XDG_CONFIG_DIRS
```

For XFCE, the default locations should be appropriate if the instructions in the BLFS book were followed.

When a package installs a `.desktop` file to a location in one of the base data directories, the database that maps MIME-types to available applications can be updated. For instance, the cache file at `/usr/share/applications/mimeinfo.cache` can be rebuilt by executing the following command as the `root` user:

```
update-desktop-database /usr/share/applications
```

Contents

Installed Programs: desktop-file-install, desktop-file-validate, and update-desktop-database
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

desktop-file-install is used to install a new, or modify an existing desktop file entry. It is also used to rebuild or modify the MIME-types application database.

desktop-file-validate is used to verify the integrity of a desktop file.

update-desktop-database is used to update the MIME-types application database.

XScreenSaver-5.03

Introduction to XScreenSaver

The XScreenSaver is a modular screen saver and locker for the X Window System. It is highly customizable and allows the use of any program that can draw on the root window as a display mode. The purpose of XScreenSaver is to display pretty pictures on your screen when it is not in use, in keeping with the philosophy that unattended monitors should always be doing something interesting, just like they do in the movies. However, XScreenSaver can also be used as a screen locker, to prevent others from using your terminal while you are away.

There may be a more recent release available from the XScreenSaver home page. You can check *http://www.jwz.org/xscreensaver/* and probably use the existing BLFS instructions. Note that versions other than the one shown in the download URLs have not been tested in a BLFS environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/x/xscreensaver-5.03.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/x/xscreensaver-5.03.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 367b0397132102faf43e71e27bbdc181
- Download size: 5.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 129 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.1 SBU

XScreenSaver Dependencies

Required

bc-1.06 and libglade-2.6.1 (alternatively LessTif-0.95.0 but not recommended)

Optional

libjpeg-6b, libgnome-2.18.0, *GLE*, *Netpbm*, *XDaliClock*, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 (built with Kerberos V4 backwards compatibility), and *krb4* and Heimdal-1.1 (Kerberos authentication requires having Kerberos V4 and V5 on the system)

Installation of XScreenSaver

Install XScreenSaver by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-setuid-hacks`: This switch allows some demos to be installed setuid `root` which is needed in order to ping other hosts.

`--enable-locking`: This switch provides support for locking the display.

Configuring XScreenSaver

Config Files

`/etc/X11/app-defaults/XScreenSaver`, `~/.xscreensaver` and `/etc/pam.d/xscreensaver` or `/etc/pam.conf`

Contents

Installed Programs:	xscreensaver, xscreensaver-command, xscreensaver-demo, xscreensaver-getimage, xscreensaver-getimage-file, xscreensaver-getimage-video, xscreensaver-gl-helper, and xscreensaver-text
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/xscreensaver and /usr/share/xscreensaver

Short Descriptions

xscreensaver	is a screen saver and locker daemon.
xscreensaver-command	controls a running **xscreensaver** process by sending it client messages.
xscreensaver-demo	is a graphical front-end for setting the parameters used by the background **xscreensaver** daemon.
xscreensaver-getimage	is a helper program for the **xscreensaver** modules that manipulate images.
xscreensaver-getimage-file	is a helper program for the **xscreensaver** modules that manipulate images.
xscreensaver-getimage-video	is a helper program for the **xscreensaver** modules that manipulate images.
xscreensaver-gl-helper	is a helper program for the **xscreensaver** OpenGL modules.
xscreensaver-text	prints some text to stdout, for use by screen savers.

pilot-link-0.12.2

Introduction to pilot-link

The pilot-link package provides a suite of tools containing a series of conduits, libraries, and language bindings for moving information to and from your Palm device and your desktop or server/workstation system, as well as across a network.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.pilot-link.org/pilot-link-0.12.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/pilot-link-0.12.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: c1f4db8f32a2ee916fedb9a2dac8aa26
- Download size: 964 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 20 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/pilot-link-0.12.2-bindings_fix-1.patch*

pilot-link Dependencies

Optional

libpng-1.2.29, popt-1.10.4, libusb-0.1.12, JDK-6 Update 5, Tcl-8.4.18, Python-2.5.2, *BlueZ*, and *Electric Fence*

Kernel Configuration

You may need to configure the “USB_SERIAL_VISOR” device into the kernel before your system can communicate with your Palm device. Add this device by enabling the following kernel parameter setting and rebuilding the kernel (and modules, if applicable):

```
Device Drivers:
  USB support:
    USB Serial Converter support:
      USB Handspring Visor / Palm m50x / Sony Client Driver
```

For additional information about connecting your USB Palm device, see: *http://www.pilot-link.org/README.usb*.

Installation of pilot-link

Install pilot-link by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../pilot-link-0.12.2-bindings_fix-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-threads \
            --enable-conduits \
            --with-perl &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/pilot-link-0.12.2 &&
install -v -m644 README doc/{README.*,TODO,CodingGuidelines} \
                    /usr/share/doc/pilot-link-0.12.2
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-threads`: This parameter is required to link the threading library into the build.

`--enable-conduits`: This parameter is required to build the userspace programs. Omit it if you only need the pilot-link libraries.

`--with-perl`: This parameter is required to build the Perl bindings.

`--with-java --with-tcl=/usr/lib --with-python`: Use any or all of these options to enable the respective language bindings desired.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pilot-650foto, pilot-addresses, pilot-clip, pilot-csd, pilot-debugsh, pilot-dedupe, pilot-dlpsh, pilot-file, pilot-foto, pilot-getram, pilot-getrom, pilot-getromtoken, pilot-hinotes, pilot-ietf2datebook, pilot-install-datebook, pilot-install-expenses, pilot-install-hinote, pilot-install-memo, pilot-install-netsync, pilot-install-todo, pilot-install-todos, pilot-install-user, pilot-memos, pilot-nredir, pilot-read-expenses, pilot-read-ical, pilot-read-notepad, pilot-read-palmpix, pilot-read-screenshot, pilot-read-todos, pilot-read-veo, pilot-reminders, pilot-schlep, pilot-sync-plan, pilot-treofoto, pilot-undelete, pilot-wav, pilot-xfer and optionally, pitclsh
Installed Libraries:	libjpisock.so JDK library, libpitcl.{so,a} Tcl library, _pisock.so Python module and Pilot.so Perl module
Installed Bindings:	/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/5.8.8/i686-linux/auto/PDA, /usr/share/doc/pilot-link-0.12.2 and/usr/share/pilot-link

Short Descriptions

pilot-link programs and utilities	Describing the functionality of each pilot-link program and utility would take several pages. Instead, after you've installed the package, review the pilot-link man page (**man pilot-link**). If you wish to review before installing the package, unpack the tarball and issue **man doc/man/pilot-link.7.in**.

unixODBC-2.2.12

Introduction to unixODBC

The unixODBC package is an Open Source ODBC (Open DataBase Connectivity) sub-system and an ODBC SDK for Linux, Mac OSX, and UNIX. ODBC is an open specification for providing application developers with a predictable API with which to access data sources. Data sources include SQL Servers and any data source with an ODBC Driver. unixODBC contains the following components used to assist with the manipulation of ODBC data sources: a driver manager, an installer library and command line tool, command line tools to help install a driver and work with SQL, drivers and driver setup libraries and a suite of graphical tools used to administer ODBC, test drivers and browse data sources.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.unixodbc.org/unixODBC-2.2.12.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/unixODBC-2.2.12.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 9a116aad4059c31d231b626ffdf1869a
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 101 MB
- Estimated build time: 3.5 SBU (includes building the GUI tools)

unixODBC Dependencies

Optional

Qt-3.3.8b (required to build the GUI tools), Pth-2.0.7, and *Mini SQL*

Note

There is a circular dependency with Qt and unixODBC. If you need to build the Qt unixODBC plugin module, you will have to build and install unixODBC once without the GUI tools to satisfy the Qt build. Then, after Qt has been installed, you'll need to build and install unixODBC again if you wish to build the GUI tools.

Installation of unixODBC

Install unixODBC by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/unixodbc \
            --enable-fdb \
            --disable-gui &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

find doc -name "Makefile*" -exec rm {} \; &&
chmod 644 doc/{lst,ProgrammerManual/Tutorial}/* &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/unixODBC-2.2.12 &&
cp -v -R doc/* /usr/share/doc/unixODBC-2.2.12
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-fdb`: This parameter enables support for file-based data access.

`--disable-gui`: This parameter disables building the GUI tools. Remove it if you have Qt installed and wish to build the GUI tools.

Configuring unixODBC

Config Files

`/etc/unixodbc/*`

Configuration Information

The files in `/etc/unixodbc` are meant to be configured by the system administrator (or the ODBC site administrator if appropriate privileges are granted to `/etc/unixodbc`). These files are not meant to be directly edited. The ODBC installer library is responsible for reading and writing the unixODBC config files.

Unfortunately, there are no **man** or **info** pages for the various programs available in the unixODBC package. Along with the information in the "Short Descriptions" below and the documentation installed in `/usr/share/doc/unixODBC-2.2.12`, there are many `README` files throughout the source tree where the use and functionality of the programs can be found. Additionally, you can use the parameter `-?` with the non-GUI tools for syntax and usage information. Lastly, the unixODBC web site at *http://www.unixodbc.org/* has very good information.

Contents

Installed Programs:	DataManager, DataManagerII, ODBCConfig, dltest, isql, iusql, odbc_config, odbcinst and odbctest
Installed Libraries:	libboundparam.so, libesoobS.so, libgtrtst.so, libmimerS.so, libnn.so, libodbc.so, libodbccr.so, libodbcdrvcfg1S.so, libodbcdrvcfg2S.so, libodbcinst.so, libodbcinstQ.so, libodbcminiS.so, libodbcmyS.so, libodbcnnS.so, libodbcpsql.so, libodbcpsqlS.so, libodbctxt.so, libodbctxtS.so, liboplodbcS.so, liboraodbcS.so, libsapdbS.so, libtdsS.so and libtemplate.so
Installed Directories:	/etc/unixodbc and /usr/share/doc/unixODBC-2.2.12

Short Descriptions

DataManager	is a graphical program which can be used to browse/explore ODBC data sources.
DataManagerII	is an enhanced version of **DataManager**.

ODBCConfig is a graphical program used to make configuration of ODBC data sources extremely easy.

dltest is a utility used to check a share library to see if it can be loaded and if a given symbol exists in it.

isql is a utility which can be used to submit SQL to a data source and to format/output results. It can be used in batch or interactive mode.

iusql provides the same functionality as the **isql** program.

odbc_config is used to find out details about the installation of the unixODBC package.

odbcinst is a utility created for install script/RPM writers. It is a command line interface to key functionality in the `libodbcinst` library. It does not copy any files (i.e., libraries) but it will modify the ODBC System Information for the user.

odbctest is a graphical program used to test the ODBC API.

Graphviz-2.12

Introduction to Graphviz

The Graphviz package contains graph visualization software. Graph visualization is a way of representing structural information as diagrams of abstract graphs and networks. Graphviz has several main graph layout programs. It also has web and interactive graphical interfaces, auxiliary tools, libraries, and language bindings.

The Graphviz layout programs take descriptions of graphs in a simple text language, and creates diagrams in several useful formats such as images and SVG for web pages, Postscript for inclusion in PDF or other documents, or as objects displayed in an interactive graph browser. (Graphviz also supports GXL, an XML dialect.) In practice, graphs are usually generated from external data sources, but they can also be created and edited manually, either as raw text files or within a graphical editor. (Graphviz was not intended to be a Visio replacement, so it would probably be frustrating to try to use it that way.)

This package is useful for automatic graph drawing which has many important applications in software engineering, database and web design, networking, and in visual interfaces for many other domains. Graphviz has many useful features for concrete diagrams, such as options for colors, fonts, tabular node layouts, line styles, hyperlinks, and custom shapes.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.graphviz.org/pub/graphviz/ARCHIVE/graphviz-2.12.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/graphviz-2.12.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: e5547bc0ec47943c72f5c3e2b5dff58f
- Download size: 4.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 102 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.8 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/graphviz-2.12-gd_fixes-1.patch*

Graphviz Dependencies

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, expat-2.0.1, libpng-1.2.29, libjpeg-6b, FreeType-2.3.7, Fontconfig-2.4.2, X Window System, Pango-1.16.4 (built with cairo support), GTK+-2.10.13, libgnomeui-2.18.1, libglade-2.6.1, Tcl-8.4.18, Tk-8.4.18, *GD Library*, and *Electric Fence*

Optional (to Build Language Bindings)

SWIG (SWIG must be installed or no bindings will be built), Guile-1.8.2, JDK-6 Update 5, PHP-5.2.3, Python-2.5.2, Ruby-1.8.6-p111, Tcl-8.4.18, C# (*DotGNU Portable.NET* or *Mono*), *Io*, *Lua*, and *Objective Caml*

Installation of Graphviz

If you wish to compile the Java language bindings, you will need to supply the path to the Java headers with the following command:

```
export CPPFLAGS="$CPPFLAGS -I$JAVA_HOME/include -I$JAVA_HOME/include/linux"
```

Install Graphviz by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../graphviz-2.12-gd_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite that provides meaningful results.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If desired, create a symbolic link in the system documents directory to the documentation installed in `/usr/share/graphviz/doc` using the following command as the `root` user:

```
ln -v -s /usr/share/graphviz/doc \
         /usr/share/doc/graphviz-2.12
```

Configuring Graphviz

Config Files

`/usr/lib/graphviz/config`

Configuration Information

There are no specific configuration requirements for Graphviz. You may consider installing the additional plugins and tools available from the download page at *http://www.graphviz.org/Download_source.php* for additional capabilities. If additional plugins are installed, you can run **dot_static -c** (as the `root` user) to update the `config` file in `/usr/lib/graphviz`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	acyclic, bcomps, ccomps, circo, dijkstra, dot, dot2gxl, dot_static, dotty, fdp, gc, gvcolor, gvpack, gvpr, gxl2dot, lefty, lneato, nop, prune, sccmap, tred, twopi and unflatten
Installed Libraries:	libagraph.{so,a}, libcdt.{so,a}, libexpr.{so,a}, libgraph.{so,a}, libpack.{so,a}, libpathplan.{so,a}, additional support libraries and language bindings
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/graphviz, /usr/lib/graphviz and /usr/share/graphviz

Short Descriptions

acyclic	is a filter that takes a directed graph as input and outputs a copy of the graph with sufficient edges reversed to make the graph acyclic. The reversed edge inherits all of the attributes of the original edge.
bcomps	decomposes graphs into their biconnected components, printing the components to standard output.
ccomps	decomposes graphs into their connected components, printing the components to standard output.
circo	draws graphs using a circular layout. The tool identifies biconnected components and draws the nodes of the component on a circle. The block-cutpoint tree is then laid

out using a recursive radial algorithm. Edge crossings within a circle are minimized by placing as many edges on the circle's perimeter as possible. In particular, if the component is outerplanar, the component will have a planar layout.

dijkstra reads a stream of graphs and for each computes the distance of every node from sourcenode.

dot draws directed graphs. It works well on DAGs and other graphs that can be drawn as hierarchies. It reads attributed graph files and writes drawings. By default, the output format dot is the input file with layout coordinates appended.

dot2gxl converts between graphs represented in GXL and in the DOT language. Unless a conversion type is specified using a flag, **gxl2dot** will deduce the type of conversion from the suffix of the input file, a `.dot` suffix causing a conversion from DOT to GXL, and a `.gxl` suffix causing a conversion from GXL to DOT.

dot_static is a version of **dot**that has all the Graphviz libraries compiled statically.

dotty is a graph editor for the X Window System. It may be run as a standalone editor, or as a front end for applications that use graphs. It can control multiple windows viewing different graphs.

fdp draws undirected graphs using a “spring” model. It relies on a force-directed approach in the spirit of Fruchterman and Reingold.

gc is a graph analogue to **wc** in that it prints to standard output the number of nodes, edges, connected components or clusters contained in the input files. It also prints a total count for all graphs if more than one graph is given.

gvcolor is a filter that sets node colors from initial seed values. Colors flow along edges from tail to head, and are averaged (as HSB vectors) at nodes. The graph must already have been processed by **dot**.

gvpack reads in a stream of graphs, combines the graphs into a single layout, and produces a single graph serving as the union of the input graphs. The input graphs must be in **dot** format, and must have all necessary layout information.

gvpr is a graph stream editor inspired by **awk**. It copies input graphs to its output, possibly transforming their structure and attributes, creating new graphs, or printing arbitrary information.

gxl2dot converts between graphs represented in GXL and in the DOT language. Unless a conversion type is specified using a flag, **gxl2dot** will deduce the type of conversion from the suffix of the input file, a `.dot` suffix causing a conversion from DOT to GXL, and a `.gxl` suffix causing a conversion from GXL to DOT.

lefty is a two-view graphics editor for technical pictures.

lneato is a graph editor for the X Window System. It may be run as a standalone editor, or as a front end for applications that use graphs. It can control multiple windows viewing different graphs.

nop reads a stream of graphs and prints each in pretty-printed (canonical) format on stdout. If no files are given, it reads from stdin.

prune reads directed graphs in the same format used by **dot** and removes subgraphs rooted at nodes specified on the command line via options. These nodes themselves will not be

removed, but can be given attributes so that they can be easily located by a graph stream editor such as **gpr**. **prune** correctly handles cycles, loops and multi-edges.

sccmap decomposes digraphs into strongly connected components and an auxiliary map of the relationship between components. In this map, each component is collapsed into a node. The resulting graphs are printed to standard out. The number of nodes, edges and strongly connected components are printed to standard error. **sccmap** is a way of partitioning large graphs into more manageable pieces.

tred computes the transitive reduction of directed graphs, and prints the resulting graphs to standard output. This removes edges implied by transitivity. Nodes and subgraphs are not otherwise affected. The “meaning” and validity of the reduced graphs is application dependent. **tred** is particularly useful as a preprocessor to **dot** to reduce clutter in dense layouts.

twopi draws graphs using a radial layout. Basically, one node is chosen as the center and put at the origin. The remaining nodes are placed on a sequence of concentric circles centered about the origin, each a fixed radial distance from the previous circle.

unflatten is a preprocessor to **dot** that is used to improve the aspect ratio of graphs having many leaves or disconnected nodes. The usual layout for such a graph is generally very wide or tall. **unflatten** inserts invisible edges or adjusts the minlen on edges to improve layout compaction.

`libagraph.{so,a}` supports graph programming by maintaining graphs in memory and reading and writing graph files. Graphs, nodes and edges may be attributed with programmer-defined records and string name-value pairs. Graphs are composed of nodes, edges, and nested subgraphs. Internally, `libagraph` depends extensively on `libcdt` (formerly `libdict`) for set representation.

`libcdt.{so,a}` manages run-time dictionaries using standard container data types: unordered set/multiset, ordered set/multiset, list, stack, and queue.

`libexpr.{so,a}` is a C-like expression library.

`libgraph.{so,a}` maintains directed and undirected attributed graphs in memory and reads and writes graph files. Graphs are composed of nodes, edges, and nested subgraphs. A subgraph may contain any nodes and edges of its parents, and may be passed to any `libgraph` function taking a graph pointer, except the three that create new attributes (where a main graph is required).

`libpack.{so,a}` supports the use of connected components in the context of laying out graphs using other Graphviz libraries. One set of functions can be used to take a single graph and break it apart into connected components. A complementary set of functions takes a collection of graphs (not necessarily components of a single graph) which have been laid out separately, and packs them together moderately tightly. The packing is done using the polyomino algorithm of K. Freivalds et al.

`libpathplan.{so,a}` contains functions to find the shortest path between two points in a simple polygon.

xterm-231

Introduction to xterm

xterm is a terminal emulator for the X Window System.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://invisible-island.net/xterm/xterm-231.tgz*
- Download MD5 sum: b767d702e1464e16802b90c2187252c6
- Download size: 830 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.0 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

xterm Dependencies

Required

Xorg Libraries

Optional

luit-1.0.2 (required in non-UTF-8 locales if the user wants TrueType fonts, and always required in Chinese, Japanese, and Korean locales). Configuration instructions below assume that Luit is installed.

Installation of xterm

Install xterm by running the following commands:

```
sed -i '/v0/,+1s/new:/new:kb=^?:/' termcap &&
echo -e '\tkbs=\\177,' >>terminfo &&
TERMINFO=/usr/lib/terminfo ./configure $XORG_CONFIG \
    --enable-luit --enable-wide-chars \
    --with-app-defaults=$XORG_PREFIX/share/X11/app-defaults &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-ti
```

Command Explanations

sed -i ... termcap, **echo ... >>terminfo**: these commands modify the terminal description, so that the Backspace key is expected to send the character with ASCII code 127, for consistency with the Linux console.

`TERMINFO=/usr/lib/terminfo`: This ensures that the **xterm** terminfo file is installed to the system terminfo database when the installation prefix is not `/usr`.

`--with-app-defaults=...`: Sets the location for the `app-defaults` directory.

`--enable-luit`: Enables the luit filter for translation between Unicode (used by xterm internally in the configuration below) and the locale encoding. If **luit** is not found in the PATH, the default of `/usr/X11R6/bin/luit` will be used.

`--enable-wide-chars`: Adds support for wide characters.

make install-ti: This command installs corrected terminfo description files for use with xterm.

Configuring xterm

There are two ways to configure xterm. You can add X resource definitions to the user's `~/.Xresources` file, or add them to the system-wide `$XORG_PREFIX/share/X11/app-defaults/Xterm` file.

In order for xterm to follow the locale settings in the environment, use TrueType fonts, and follow the Linux convention about the code sent by the Backspace key, add the following definitions as the `root` user:

```
cat >> $XORG_PREFIX/share/X11/app-defaults/XTerm << "EOF"
*VT100*locale: true
*VT100*faceName: Monospace
*VT100*faceSize: 10
*backarrowKeyIsErase: true
*ptyInitialErase: true
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs: resize, uxterm, and xterm

Short Descriptions

`resize` prints a shell command for setting the TERM and TERMCAP environment variables to indicate the current size of xterm window.

`uxterm` is a wrapper script that modifies the current locale to use UTF-8 and starts xterm with the proper settings.

`xterm` is a terminal emulator for the X Window System.

rman-3.2

Introduction to rman

rman is a utility to convert manual pages into other formats. It can currently supports HTML, ASCII, LaTeX, LaTeX2e, RTF, POD, and partial DocBook XML output.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/polyglotman/rman-3.2.tar.gz?download*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6d1d67641c6d042595a96a62340d3cc6
- Download size: 80 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 629 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of rman

rman is no longer part of the Xorg distribution, however, packages that use it may expect it to be in the same location as your Xorg programs. Adjust the makefile to account for this:

```
sed -i -e "s@/opt/local@$XORG_PREFIX@" \
    -e "s@/usr/local@$XORG_PREFIX@" Makefile
```

Build rman by running the following command:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: rman

Short Description

`rman` is a manpage converter.

Recode-3.6

Introduction to Recode

The Recode package contains a program for converting text between character sets, and a library that exposes this functionality to other applications. Note that the same functionality (but with different API) is provided by **iconv**, which is installed in LFS as a part of Glibc.

Note

The Recode package is no longer maintained upstream. Wishlist bugs such as *http://bugs.debian.org/94966* will never be fixed.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/recode/recode-3.6.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/recode/recode-3.6.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: be3f40ad2e93dae5cd5f628264bf1877
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 24 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/recode-3.6-fixes-1.patch*

Recode Dependencies

Optional

Python-2.5.2 (for the “bigauto” test) and *Dmalloc*

Installation of Recode

Install Recode by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../recode-3.6-fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --without-included-gettext &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. The testsuite will warn about the “bigauto” test being skipped. The editors did not attempt to run this test to the end, because it uses obsolete Python constructions.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--without-included-gettext`: This parameter forces the use of `gettext` implementation provided by Glibc instead of the very old internal copy. The internal copy produces incorrect output in UTF-8 locales.

Contents

Installed Program: recode
Installed Library: librecode.{so,a}
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

recode converts text between character sets.

`librecode.{so,a}` contains functions for character set conversion.

icon-naming-utils-0.8.2

Introduction to icon-naming-utils

The icon-naming-utils package contains a Perl script used for maintaining backwards compatibility with current desktop icon themes, while migrating to the names specified in the *Icon Naming Specification*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://tango.freedesktop.org/releases/icon-naming-utils-0.8.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/icon-naming-utils-0.8.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 76e6afde567bd17b4fe095aa0ec90531
- Download size: 66 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 500 KB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

icon-naming-utils Dependencies

Required

XML::Simple-2.18

Installation of icon-naming-utils

Install icon-naming-utils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib/icon-naming-utils &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib/icon-naming-utils`: This parameter is used so that the main program script is placed in `/usr/lib/icon-naming-utils` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Programs: icon-name-mapping
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/share/dtds and /usr/share/icon-naming-utils

Short Descriptions

icon-name-mapping is a Perl script used for maintaining backwards compatibility with current desktop icon themes, while migrating to the names specified in the Icon Naming Specification.

rxvt-unicode-9.02

Introduction to rxvt-unicode

rxvt-unicode is a clone of the terminal emulator rxvt, an X Window System terminal emulator which includes support for XFT and Unicode.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://dist.schmorp.de/rxvt-unicode/Attic/rxvt-unicode-9.02.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f3c4fea3d544a340fa5a1d601ff5f204
- Download size: 860 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 27 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/rxvt-unicode-9.02-DISPLAY_fix-1.patch*

rxvt-unicode Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Optional

libAfterImage (adds support for transparency and background images)

Installation of rxvt-unicode

Install rxvt-unicode by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../rxvt-unicode-9.02-DISPLAY_fix-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-everything &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-everything`: Add support for all non-multichoice options. Details about the different options can be found in the file `README.configure`.

`--disable-xft`: Remove support for Xft fonts.

`--disable-perl`: Disable the embedded Perl interpreter.

`--disable-afterimage`: Remove support for libAfterImage.

Configuring rxvt-unicode

The rxvt-unicode terminal emulator uses the resource class `URxvt` and the resource name `urxvt`. You can add X resource definitions to a user's `~/.Xresources` file or to the system-wide `/etc/X11/app-defaults/URxvt` file. The following example will load the `matcher` Perl extension (assuming Perl support wasn't disabled), which enables a middle button click to open an underlined URL in the specified browser, sets a background and foreground color and loads an Xft font:

```
cat >> /etc/X11/app-defaults/URxvt << "EOF"
URxvt*perl-ext: matcher
URxvt*urlLauncher: firefox
URxvt.background: black
URxvt.foreground: yellow
URxvt*font: xft:Monospace:pixelsize=12
EOF
```

The rxvt-unicode application can also run in a daemon mode, which makes it possible to open multiple terminal windows within the same process. The **urxvtc** client then connects to the **urxvtd** daemon and requests a new terminal window. Use this option with caution. If the daemon crashes, all the running processes in the terminal windows are terminated.

You can start the **urxvtd** daemon in the system or personal startup **X** session script (e.g., `~/.xinitrc`) by adding the following lines near the top of the script:

```
# Start the urxvtd daemon
urxvtd -q -f -o &
```

For more information, examine the **urxvt**, **urxvtd**, **urxvtc**, and `urxvtperl` man pages.

Contents

Installed Programs:	urxvt, urxvtd, and urxvtc
Installed Libraries:	Many Perl extensions located under `/usr/lib/urxvt/perl`
Installed Directory:	/usr/lib/urxvt

Short Descriptions

urxvt	is a terminal emulator for the X Window System.
urxvtd	is the **urxvt** terminal daemon.
urxvtc	controls the **urxvtd** daemon.

PIN-Entry-0.7.3

Introduction to PIN-Entry

The PIN-Entry package contains a collection of simple PIN or pass-phrase entry dialogs which utilize the Assuan protocol as described by the *Äegypten project*. PIN-Entry programs are usually invoked by the **gpg-agent** daemon, but can be run from the command line as well. There are programs for various text-based and GUI environments, including interfaces designed for Ncurses (text-based), Gtk+, Gtk+-2, and Qt-3.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/p/pinentry-0.7.3.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnupg.org/gcrypt/pinentry/pinentry-0.7.3.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 59282278405a8264b39ea28678c78cf4
- Download size: 417 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

PIN-Entry Dependencies

Optional

GTK+-1.2.10, GTK+-2.10.13, Qt-3.3.8b, and *libcap*

Installation of PIN-Entry

Install PIN-Entry by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-pin-entry-curses       \
            --enable-fallback-curses        \
            --disable-pinentry-gtk          \
            --disable-pinentry-gtk2         \
            --disable-pinentry-qt           &&
make
```

Only **info** documentation is shipped in the package tarball. If you wish to build alternate formats of the documentation, you must have teTeX-3.0 installed, then issue the following commands:

```
make -k -C doc pdf ps html &&
makeinfo --html --no-split -o doc/pinentry_nochunks.html doc/pinentry.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext       -o doc/pinentry.txt           doc/pinentry.texi
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/pinentry-0.7.3/README
```

If you built the additional documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/pinentry-0.7.3/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/pinentry.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/pinentry-0.7.3/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/pinentry_*.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/pinentry-0.7.3 &&
install -v -m644 doc/pinentry.{pdf,ps,dvi,txt,texi} \
                    /usr/share/doc/pinentry-0.7.3
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-...`: These two parameters are used to fix a problem with the **configure** script if the optional dependencies are not installed. If the dependencies are installed, these parameters may be omitted.

`--disable-...`: These three parameters are used to fix a problem with the **configure** script if the optional dependencies are not installed. If the dependencies are installed, these parameters may be omitted.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pinentry, pinentry-curses, pinentry-gtk, pinentry-gtk-2, and pinentry-qt
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/pinentry-0.7.3

Short Descriptions

pinentry	is a symbolic link to the default PIN-Entry program.
pinentry-curses	is an Ncurses text-based PIN-Entry program.
pinentry-gtk	is a Gtk GUI PIN-Entry program.
pinentry-gtk-2	is a Gtk-2 GUI PIN-Entry program.
pinentry-qt	is a Qt GUI PIN-Entry program.

Gperf-3.0.3

Introduction to Gperf

Gperf generates a perfect hash function from a key set.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gperf/gperf-3.0.3.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gperf/gperf-3.0.3.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: cc20e58975a38075440423c8fb85fd00
- Download size: 866 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Gperf

Install Gperf by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If desired, create a text version of the documentation by issuing the following command:

```
makeinfo -o doc/gperf.txt --plaintext doc/gperf.texi
```

To test the results, issue **make check**. There should be no output from the **diff** commands.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gperf-3.0.3 &&
install -m644 -v doc/gperf.{dvi,ps,pdf,txt} /usr/share/doc/gperf-3.0.3
```

Command Explanations

install -m644 -v doc/gperf.{dvi,ps,pdf,txt} ...: This command installs documentation. Modify the command (remove ',txt') if you did not build the text version.

Contents

Installed Programs: gperf
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/share/doc/gperf-3.0.3

Short Descriptions

gperf generates a perfect hash function from a key set.

Chapter 11. System Utilities

This chapter contains mainly hardware utilities. It also contains some applications used by other applications in the book for installation or configuration purposes.

GPM-1.20.1

Introduction to GPM

The GPM (General Purpose Mouse daemon) package contains a mouse server for the console and **xterm**. It not only provides cut and paste support generally, but its library component is used by various software such as Links to provide mouse support to the application. It is useful on desktops, especially if following (Beyond) Linux From Scratch instructions; it's often much easier (and less error prone) to cut and paste between two console windows than to type everything by hand!

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.schottelius.org/pub/linux/gpm/gpm-1.20.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/gpm-1.20.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2c63e827d755527950d9d13fe3d87692
- Download size: 556 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Recommended Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/gpm-1.20.1-segfault-1.patch*
- Recommended Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/gpm-1.20.1-silent-1.patch*

Installation of GPM

Install GPM by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gpm-1.20.1-segfault-1.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../gpm-1.20.1-silent-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
LDFLAGS="-lm" make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
cp -v conf/gpm-root.conf /etc &&
ldconfig
```

Command Explanations

LDFLAGS="-lm": The math library must be linked with **gpm**, as ceil() is used in some cursor scrolling logic.

Configuring GPM

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/gpm` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-gpm
```

Config Files

`/etc/gpm-root.conf` and `~/.gpm-root`: The default and individual user **gpm-root** configuration files.

`/etc/sysconfig/mouse`: This file contains the name of your mouse device and the protocol which it uses. To create this file, run the following as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/sysconfig/mouse << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/sysconfig/mouse

MDEVICE="<yourdevice>"
PROTOCOL="<yourprotocol>"
GPMOPTS="<additional options>"

# End /etc/sysconfig/mouse
EOF
```

Configuration Information

Examples of values to set `MDEVICE`, `PROTOCOL`, and `GPMOPTS` to are:

```
MDEVICE="/dev/psaux"
PROTOCOL="imps2"
GPMOPTS=""
```

A list of which protocol values are known can be found by running **gpm -m *[device]* -t -help**. The `MDEVICE` setting depends on which type of mouse you have. For example, `/dev/ttyS0` for a serial mouse (on Windows this is COM1), `/dev/input/mice` is often used for USB mice and `/dev/psaux` for PS2 mice. `GPMOPTS` is the 'catch all' for any additional options that are needed for your hardware.

Contents

Installed Programs:	disable-paste, gpm, gpm-root, hltest, mev, and mouse-test
Installed Libraries:	libgpm.{so.a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

disable-paste	is a security mechanism used to disable the paste buffer.
gpm	is a cut and paste utility and mouse server for virtual consoles.
gpm-root	is a default handler for **gpm**. It is used to draw menus on the root window.
hltest	is a simple sample application using the high-level library, meant to be read by programmers trying to use the high-level library.
mev	is a program to report mouse events.
mouse-test	is a tool for determining the mouse type and device it's attached to.
`libgpm.{so.a}`	contains the API functions to access the GPM daemon.

Fcron-3.0.3

Introduction to Fcron

The Fcron package contains a periodical command scheduler which aims at replacing Vixie Cron.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://fcron.free.fr/archives/fcron-3.0.3.src.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.seul.org/pub/fcron/fcron-3.0.3.src.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: c85e6eecd0564f37658ae250a491fd31
- Download size: 536 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Fcron Dependencies

Optional

An MTA, *text editor* (default is **vi** from the Vim-7.1 package), Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of Fcron

Fcron uses the cron facility of **syslog** to log all messages. Since LFS does not set up this facility in `/etc/syslog.conf`, it needs to be done prior to installing Fcron. This command will append the necessary line to the current `/etc/syslog.conf` (perform as the `root` user):

```
cat >> /etc/syslog.conf << "EOF"
# Begin fcron addition to /etc/syslog.conf

cron.* -/var/log/cron.log

# End fcron addition
EOF
```

The configuration file has been modified, so reloading the **sysklogd** daemon will activate the changes (again as the `root` user).

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/sysklogd reload
```

For security reasons, an unprivileged user and group for Fcron should be created (perform as the `root` user):

```
groupadd -g 22 fcron &&
useradd -d /dev/null -c "Fcron User" -g fcron -s /bin/false -u 22 fcron
```

Install Fcron by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --localstatedir=/var --without-sendmail --with-boot-install=no  &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--without-sendmail`: By default, Fcron will attempt to use the **sendmail** command from an MTA package to email you the results of the **fcron** script. This switch is used to disable default email notification. Omit the switch to enable the default. Alternatively, you can use the `--with-sendmail=</path/to/MTA command>` to use a different mailer command.

`--with-boot-install=no`: This prevents installation of the bootscript included with the package.

`--with-editor=</path/to/editor>`: This switch allows you to set the default text editor.

Configuring Fcron

Config Files

`/etc/fcron.conf`, `/etc/fcron.allow`, and `/etc/fcron.deny`

Configuration Information

There are no required changes in any of the config files. Configuration information can be found in the man page for `fcron.conf`.

fcron scripts are written using **fcrontab**. Refer to the **fcrontab** man page for proper parameters to address your situation.

If Linux-PAM is installed, two PAM configuration files are installed in `/etc/pam.d`. Alternatively if `/etc/pam.d` is not used, the installation will append two configuration sections to the exiting `/etc/pam.conf` file. You should ensure the files match your preferences. Modify them as required to suit your needs.

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/fcron` init script from the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-fcron
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	fcron, fcrondyn, fcronsighup, and fcrontab
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/fcron-3.0.3 and /var/spool/fcron

Short Descriptions

fcron	is the scheduling daemon.
fcrondyn	is a user tool intended to interact with a running **fcron** daemon.
fcronsighup	instructs **fcron** to reread the Fcron tables.
fcrontab	is a program used to install, edit, list and remove the tables used by **fcron**.

Hdparm-7.7

Introduction to Hdparm

The hdparm package contains a utility that is useful for controlling ATA/IDE controllers and hard drives both to increase performance and sometimes to increase stability.

Warning

As well as being useful, incorrect usage of hdparm can destroy your information and in rare cases, drives. Use with caution and make sure you know what you are doing. If in doubt, it is recommended that you leave the default kernel parameters alone.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/hdparm/hdparm-7.7.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 0d96f03155fe5c119ca338a51ad1eaa7
- Download size: 62 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 524 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of Hdparm

Build hdparm by running the following command:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Note that by default, **hdparm** is installed in `/sbin` as some systems may require it during the boot process before `/usr` is mounted. If you wish to install **hdparm** under the `/usr` hierarchy, then replace the above command with the following:

```
make binprefix=/usr/ install
```

Contents

Installed Program: hdparm
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

hdparm provides a command-line interface to various hard disk ioctls supported by the stock Linux ATA/IDE device driver subsystem.

Which-2.19 and Alternatives

The presence or absence of the **which** program in the main LFS book is probably one of the most contentious issues on the mailing lists. It has resulted in at least one flame war in the past. To hopefully put an end to this once and for all, presented here are two options for equipping your system with **which**. The question of which "**which**" is for you to decide.

The first option is to install the actual GNU which package.

Introduction to Which

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.xs4all.nl/~carlo17/which/which-2.19.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/which/which-2.19.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: bbd094cec2444cd78befbc0cf09deea4
- Download size: 132 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Which

Install which by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Program: which
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

which shows the full path of (shell) commands installed in your `PATH`.

The 'which' Script

The second option (for those who don't want to install the package) is to create a simple script (execute as the `root` user):

```
cat > /usr/bin/which << "EOF"
#!/bin/bash
type -pa "$@" | head -n 1 ; exit ${PIPESTATUS[0]}
EOF
chmod -v 755 /usr/bin/which
chown -v root:root /usr/bin/which
```

This should work OK and is probably the easiest solution for most cases, but is not the most comprehensive implementation.

UnZip-5.52

Introduction to UnZip

The UnZip package contains `ZIP` extraction utilities. These are useful for extracting files from `ZIP` archives. `ZIP` archives are created with PKZIP or Info-ZIP utilities, primarily in a DOS environment.

Caution

The UnZip package has some locale related issues. See the discussion below in the section called “UnZip Locale Issues”. A more general discussion of these problems can be found in the Program Assumes Encoding section of the Locale Related Issues page.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/infozip/unzip552.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://tug.ctan.org/tex-archive/tools/zip/info-zip/src/unzip552.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 9d23919999d6eac9217d1f41472034a9
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.7 MB
- Estimated build time: Less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/unzip-5.52-security_fix-1.patch*
- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/unzip-5.52-security_fix-2.patch*
- Optional patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/unzip-5.50-alt-iconv-v1.1.patch*

UnZip Locale Issues

Note

Use of UnZip in the JDK, Mozilla, DocBook or any other BLFS package installation is not a problem, as BLFS instructions never use UnZip to extract a file with non-ASCII characters in the file's name.

The UnZip package assumes that filenames stored in the ZIP archives created on non-Unix systems are encoded in CP850, and that they should be converted to ISO-8859-1 when writing files onto the filesystem. Such assumptions are not always valid. In fact, inside the ZIP archive, filenames are encoded in the DOS codepage that is in use in the relevant country, and the filenames on disk should be in the locale encoding. In MS Windows, the OemToChar() C function (from `User32.DLL`) does the correct conversion (which is indeed the conversion from CP850 to a superset of ISO-8859-1 if MS Windows is set up to use the US English language), but there is no equivalent in Linux.

When using **unzip** to unpack a ZIP archive containing non-ASCII filenames, the filenames are damaged because **unzip** uses improper conversion when any of its encoding assumptions are incorrect. For example, in the ru_RU.KOI8-R locale, conversion of filenames from CP866 to KOI8-R is required, but conversion from CP850 to ISO-8859-1 is done, which produces filenames consisting of undecipherable characters instead of words (the closest equivalent understandable example for English-only users is rot13). There are several ways around this limitation:

1) For unpacking ZIP archives with filenames containing non-ASCII characters, use *WinZip* while running the *Wine* Windows emulator.

2) After running **unzip**, fix the damage made to the filenames using the **convmv** tool (*http://j3e.de/linux/convmv/*). The following is an example for the ru_RU.KOI8-R locale:

Step 1. Undo the conversion done by **unzip**:

```
convmv -f iso-8859-1 -t cp850 -r --nosmart --notest \
    </path/to/unzipped/files>
```

Step 2. Do the correct conversion instead:

```
convmv -f cp866 -t koi8-r -r --nosmart --notest \
    </path/to/unzipped/files>
```

3) Apply the optional `unzip-5.50-alt-iconv-v1.1.patch` patch to UnZip. It will apply with some offsets.

It allows to specify the assumed filename encoding in the ZIP archive using the `-O charset_name` option and the on-disk filename encoding using the `-I charset_name` option. Defaults: the on-disk filename encoding is the locale encoding, the encoding inside the ZIP archive is guessed according to the builtin table based on the locale encoding. For US English users, this still means that unzip converts from CP850 to ISO-8859-1 by default.

Caveat: this method works only with 8-bit locale encodings, not with UTF-8. Attempting to use a patched **unzip** in UTF-8 locales may result in a segmentation fault and is probably a security risk.

Installation of UnZip

Note that if you applied the patch described above for locale issues, the first required security patch will have some offsets. Now install UnZip by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../unzip-5.52-security_fix-1.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../unzip-5.52-security_fix-2.patch &&
make -f unix/Makefile LOCAL_UNZIP=-D_FILE_OFFSET_BITS=64 linux
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make prefix=/usr install
```

Command Explanations

`linux`: This target in the `Makefile` makes assumptions that are useful for a Linux system when compiling the executables. To obtain alternatives to this target, use **make list**

`LOCAL_UNZIP=...`: This sets the compilation flags to allow UnZip to handle files up to 4 GB.

Contents

Installed Programs:	funzip, unzip, unzipfsx, zipgrep, and zipinfo
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

funzip	allows the output of **unzip** commands to be redirected.

unzip lists, tests or extracts files from a ZIP archive.

unzipfsx is a self-extracting stub that can be prepended to a ZIP archive. Files in this format allow the recipient to decompress the archive without installing UnZip.

zipgrep searches files in a ZIP archive for lines matching a pattern.

zipinfo produces technical information about the files in a ZIP archive, including file access permissions, encryption status, type of compression, etc.

`libunzip.so` contains the API functions required by the UnZip programs.

Zip-2.32

Introduction to Zip

The Zip package contains Zip utilities. These are useful for compressing files into ZIP archives.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://fresh.t-systems-sfr.com/unix/src/misc/zip232.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://tug.ctan.org/tex-archive/tools/zip/info-zip/src/zip232.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 8a4da4460386e324debe97f3b7fe4d96
- Download size: 789 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.0 MB
- Estimated build time: Less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Zip

Install Zip by running the following commands:

```
make -f unix/Makefile generic_gcc
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the root user:

```
make prefix=/usr -f unix/Makefile install
```

Command Explanations

make prefix=/usr -f unix/Makefile install: This command overrides the prefix variable that is set to /usr/local in the unix/Makefile. Alternatives to generic_gcc can be seen with a **make -f unix/Makefile list** command.

Contents

Installed Programs:	zip, zipcloak, zipnote, and zipsplit
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

zip	compresses files into a ZIP archive.
zipcloak	is a utility to encrypt and decrypt a ZIP archive.
zipnote	reads or writes comments stored in a ZIP file.
zipsplit	is a utility to split ZIP files into smaller files.

UnRar-3.7.8

Introduction to UnRar

The UnRar package contains a RAR extraction utility. This is useful for extracting files from RAR archives. RAR archives are usually created with WinRAR, primarily in a Windows environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.rarlab.com/rar/unrarsrc-3.7.8.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP):
- Download MD5 sum: b783f1932bc0c73902c6399f7c2c6f43
- Download size: 131 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 175 KB
- Estimated build time: Less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of UnRar

Install UnRar by running the following commands:

```
make -f makefile.unix
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 unrar /usr/bin
```

Contents

Installed Programs: unrar
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

unrar uncompresses a RAR archive.

PCI Utilities-2.2.3

Introduction to PCI Utilities

The PCI Utilities package is a set of programs for listing PCI devices, inspecting their status and setting their configuration registers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.kernel.org/pub/software/utils/pciutils/pciutils-2.2.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kernel.org/pub/software/utils/pciutils/pciutils-2.2.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 86cc20eaa0360587497a8105d33e57fc
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of PCI Utilities

Install PCI Utilities by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's/null ;/null 2>\&1 ;/' update-pciids.sh &&
make PREFIX=/usr
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Some packages require the PCI static library. To install the library and headers, issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m 755 -d /usr/include/pci &&
install -v -m 644 lib/libpci.a /usr/lib &&
install -v -m 644 lib/*.h /usr/include/pci
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's/null ;/null 2>\&1 ;/' update-pciids.sh: This command suppresses some unneeded screen output from the **update-pciids** command if you don't have either Lynx, Wget, or Curl installed by redirecting the stderr output of the embedded **which** command to `/dev/null`.

Configuring PCI Utilities

The `pci.ids` data file is constantly being updated. To get a current version of this file, run **update-pciids** as the `root` user. This program requires the which-2.19 script or program to find cURL-7.16.3, Wget-1.10.2 or Lynx-2.8.6rel.5 which are used to download the most current file, and then replace the existing file in `/usr/share`.

You may wish to add an entry to `root`'s (or any other user who has write privilege to `/usr/share`) crontab to automatically update the `pci.ids` file periodically.

Contents

Installed Programs: lspci, setpci and update-pciids
Installed Library: libpci.a
Installed Directory: /usr/include/pci

Short Descriptions

lspci is a utility for displaying information about all PCI buses in the system and all devices connected to them.

setpci is a utility for querying and configuring PCI devices.

update-pciids fetches the current version of the PCI ID list. Requires cURL-7.16.3, Wget-1.10.2 or Lynx-2.8.6rel.5.

`libpci.a` is the static library that allows applications to access the PCI subsystem.

usbutils-0.72

Introduction to usbutils

The usbutils package contains a utility used to display information about USB buses in the system and the devices connected to them.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/linux-usb/usbutils-0.72.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ee345fe605ffcfce843dae4aed81122b
- Download size: 166 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.6 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

usbutils Dependencies

Required

libusb-0.1.12

Installation of usbutils

Install usbutils by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's|DEST=|&/usr/share/|' update-usbids.sh &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 update-usbids.sh /usr/sbin/update-usbids
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '...' update-usbids.sh: This command is used to modify the download script so that it will replace the existing file in `/usr/share` instead of in the current directory.

Configuring usbutils

The `usb.ids` data file is constantly being updated. To get a current version of this file, run **update-usbids** as the `root` user. This program requires the which-2.19 script or program to find Wget-1.10.2 or Lynx-2.8.6rel.5 which are used to download the most current file, and replace the existing file in `/usr/share`.

You may wish to add an entry to `root`'s (or any other user who has write privilege to `/usr/share`) crontab to automatically update the `usb.ids` file periodically.

Contents

Installed Programs: lsusb and update-usbids
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

lsusb is a utility for displaying information about all USB buses in the system and all devices connected to them.

update-usbids downloads the current version of the USB ID list. Requires Wget-1.10.2 or Lynx-2.8.6rel.5.

pkg-config-0.22

Introduction to pkg-config

The pkg-config package contains a tool for passing the include path and/or library paths to build tools during the **configure** and **make** file execution.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://pkgconfig.freedesktop.org/releases/pkg-config-0.22.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/pkg-config-0.22.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: fd5c547e9d66ba49bc735ccb8c791f2a
- Download size: 1.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Installation of pkg-config

Install pkg-config by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. The “check-requires-private” test has been known to fail for undetermined reasons.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring pkg-config

The default setting for `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` is `/usr/lib/pkgconfig:/usr/share/pkgconfig` because of the prefix used to install pkg-config. You may add to `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` by exporting additional paths on your system where `.pc` files are installed. Note that `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` is only needed when compiling packages, not during run-time.

Contents

Installed Program: pkg-config
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

pkg-config returns meta information for the specified library or package.

cpio-2.9

Introduction to cpio

The cpio package contains tools for archiving.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/cpio/cpio-2.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/cpio/cpio-2.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e387abfdae3a0b9a8a5f762db653a96d
- Download size: 758 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 10 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of cpio

Install cpio by running the following commands:

```
./configure CPIO_MT_PROG=mt \
            --prefix=/usr \
            --bindir=/bin \
            --libexecdir=/tmp \
            --with-rmt=/usr/sbin/rmt &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and wish to create alternate forms of the documentation, issue the any or all of the following commands:

```
make -C doc pdf &&
make -C doc ps &&
texi2html -o doc/cpio.html doc/cpio.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/cpio.txt doc/cpio.texi
```

To test the results, issue **make check**

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you built any of the alternate forms of documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/cpio-2.9 &&
install -v -m644 doc/cpio.{pdf,ps,dvi,html,txt} \
                 /usr/share/doc/cpio-2.9
```

Command Explanations

`CPIO_MT_PROG=mt`: This parameter forces the building and installation of the **mt** program.

`--bindir=/bin`: This parameter installs **cpio** to `/bin` instead of `/usr/bin` as recommended by the FHS guidelines.

`--libexecdir=/tmp`: This parameter is used so that `/usr/libexec` is not created.

`--with-rmt=/usr/sbin/rmt`: This parameter inhibits building the **rmt** program as it is already installed by the Tar package in LFS.

Contents

Installed Programs: cpio and mt
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

cpio copies files to and from archives.

mt controls magnetic tape drive operations.

MC-4.6.1

Introduction to MC

MC (Midnight Commander) is a text-mode full-screen file manager and visual shell. It provides a clear, user-friendly, and somewhat protected interface to a Unix system while making many frequent file operations more efficient and preserving the full power of the command prompt.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.ibiblio.org/pub/Linux/utils/file/managers/mc/mc-4.6.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.uni-koeln.de/util/shell/mc-4.6.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 18b20db6e40480a53bac2870c56fc3c4
- Download size: 3.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 29 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/mc-4.6.1-bash32-1.patch*
- Recommended Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/mc-4.6.1-debian_fixes-1.patch*

Do I Need the Debian Patch?

Midnight Commander without the Debian patch is completely unusable in multibyte locales because it assumes that characters and bytes are the same thing. The issue manifests itself as massive screen content corruption similar to what is depicted in *this screenshot* (taken in the ru_RU.UTF-8 locale). For a general discussion of this type of issue, see the Breaks Multibyte Characters section of the Locale Related Issues page. The Debian patch mostly fixes this issue, and adds support for recoding remote FTP filenames. Debian also fixed 64-bit issues, rare segfaults in **mcedit**, and improved syntax highlighting.

If you do not use a multibyte locale and do not need any of the new features or fixes, the patch is still supposed to be harmless. However, the patch changes the dependencies and build instructions, and in the past it caused unacceptable regressions for non-UTF-8 locale users. Thus, failsafe instructions without the patch are left in the book just in case. Due to the size and unofficial nature of the patch, please do not report bugs in the patched MC to the original MC developers.

MC Dependencies

Required

GLib-1.2.10 (untested with Debian patch) or GLib-2.12.12

Optional

GPM-1.20.1, X Window System, Samba-3.0.30, S-Lang-2.1.3 (required when building with Debian patch), Zip-2.32, UnZip-5.52, and *GNOME Libraries-1.4*

Installation of MC

Fix incompatibility of MC-4.6.1 with Bash-3.2:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../mc-4.6.1-bash32-1.patch
```

If desired, apply Debian fixes:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../mc-4.6.1-debian_fixes-1.patch
```

Install MC by running the following commands:

```
CPPFLAGS="-DUTF8" ./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-charset &&
make
```

MC with Debian patches expects its documentation to be stored in UTF-8 encoding on disk, and automatically converts it to the locale encoding when displaying on the terminal. This is different from the expectations of the unpatched MC, so the documentation files have to be converted if (and only if) the Debian patch has been applied:

```
convert-mans ISO-8859-1 UTF-8 lib/mc.hint{,.es,.it,.nl} &&
convert-mans ISO-8859-2 UTF-8 lib/mc.hint{.cs,.hu,.pl} &&
convert-mans ISO-8859-5 UTF-8 lib/mc.hint.sr &&
convert-mans KOI8-R UTF-8 lib/mc.hint.ru &&
convert-mans KOI8-U UTF-8 lib/mc.hint.uk &&
convert-mans BIG5 UTF-8 lib/mc.hint.zh &&
convert-mans ISO-8859-1 UTF-8 doc/{es,it}/mc.hlp.* &&
convert-mans ISO-8859-2 UTF-8 doc/{hu,pl}/mc.hlp.* &&
convert-mans ISO-8859-5 UTF-8 doc/sr/mc.hlp.sr &&
convert-mans KOI8-R UTF-8 doc/ru/mc.hlp.ru
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod 1755 /usr/lib/mc/cons.saver
```

Command Explanations

`CPPFLAGS="-DUTF8"`: This parameter activates UTF-8 support in the Debian patch and has no effect without this patch.

`--enable-charset`: This option adds support to **mcedit** for editing files in encodings different from the one implied by the current locale. This feature works in non-UTF-8 locales only, even with the Debian patch.

`--with-screen=(slang|mcslang|ncurses)`: This parameter selects the screen library used by MC. NCurses support is currently buggy (MC does not handle mouse events in xterm correctly). UTF-8 support in the Debian patch is functional only when external S-Lang-2.1.3 is used as a screen library (this is the default).

`--with-codepagedir=DIR`: This parameter was useful only with SAMBA-2.x. New versions of SAMBA do not have codepage files.

chmod 1755 /usr/lib/mc/cons.saver: The **cons.saver** program has to be installed setuid root, because on LFS regular users have no access to `/dev/vcsa*` devices. This step is optional if MC is going to be started from X terminal emulators or **ssh** sessions only (thus rendering the **cons.saver** binary completely unneeded).

Configuring MC

Config Files

`~/.mc/*`

Configuration Information

The `~/.mc` directory and its contents are created when you start **mc** for the first time. Then you can edit the main `~/.mc/ini` configuration file manually or through the MC shell. Consult the mc(1) man page for details.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cons.saver, mc, mcedit, mcmfmt, and mcview
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/mc and /usr/lib/mc

Short Descriptions

cons.saver	is used internally by **mc** for saving and restoring the text behind the panels on Linux text console.
mc	is a visual shell.
mcedit	is an internal file editor.
mcmfmt	is used internally by **mcview** when viewing mailbox files.
mcview	is an internal file viewer.

Sysstat-7.0.4

Introduction to Sysstat

The Sysstat package contains utilities to monitor system performance and usage activity. Sysstat contains the **sar** utility, common to many commercial Unixes, and tools you can schedule via cron to collect and historize performance and activity data.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://perso.wanadoo.fr/sebastien.godard/sysstat-7.0.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ibiblio.org/pub/linux/system/status/sysstat-7.0.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 46a6af9c5486809c4f1fb4f8fcdf2684
- Download size: 124 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Sysstat Dependencies

Recommended

Fcron-3.0.3

Installation of Sysstat

Install Sysstat by running the following commands:

```
make config &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

make config: Runs the interactive configuration process. The first question prompts you for an "`Installation directory`". Reply with `/usr`, as this is equivalent to Autoconf's `--prefix=/usr` parameter to **configure**. For all other prompts, you may press **Enter** to accept the (very sane) defaults. When prompted for "`Number of daily data files to keep: [7]`", you may wish to keep a larger number of files.

Configuring Sysstat

Cron Information

To begin gathering Sysstat history information, you must add to, or create a privileged user's crontab. The default history data location is `/var/log/sa`. The user running Sysstat utilities via cron must have write access to this location.

Below is an example of what to install in the crontab. Adjust the parameters to suit your needs. Use **man sa1** and **man sa2** for information about the commands.

```
# 8am-7pm activity reports every 10 minutes during weekdays
0 8-18 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa1 600 6 &

# 7pm-8am activity reports every hour during weekdays
0 19-7 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa1 &

# Activity reports every hour on Saturday and Sunday
0 * * * 0,6 /usr/lib/sa/sa1 &

# Daily summary prepared at 19:05
5 19 * * * /usr/lib/sa/sa2 -A &
```

Ensure you submit the revised crontab to the cron daemon.

System Startup Information

At system startup, a LINUX RESTART message must be inserted in the daily data file to reinitialize the kernel counters. This can be automated by installing the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/sysstat` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package using the following command as the `root` user:

```
make install-sysstat
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	iostat, mpstat, sar, sa1, sa2, sadc and sadf
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/sa, /usr/share/doc/sysstat-7.0.4 and /var/log/sa

Short Descriptions

iostat	reports CPU statistics and input/output statistics for devices and partitions.
mpstat	reports individual or combined processor related statistics.
sar	collects, reports and saves system activity information.
sa1	collects and stores binary data in the system activity daily data file. It is a front end to `sadc` designed to be run from cron.
sa2	writes a summarized daily activity report. It is a front end to **sar** designed to be run from cron.
sadc	is the system activity data collector, used as a backend for **sar**.
sadf	is used for displaying the contents of data files created by the **sar** command. But unlike **sar**, **sadf** can write its data in many different formats.

Apache Ant-1.7.0

Introduction to Apache Ant

The Apache Ant package is a Java-based build tool. In theory, it is kind of like **make**, but without **make**'s wrinkles. Ant is different. Instead of a model where it is extended with shell-based commands, Ant is extended using Java classes. Instead of writing shell commands, the configuration files are XML-based, calling out a target tree where various tasks get executed. Each task is run by an object that implements a particular task interface.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/a/apache-ant-1.7.0-src.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 22b378e27ab300e4d73bf09d91c7e2a6
- Download size: 6.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 109 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Apache Ant Dependencies

Required

JDK-6 Update 5 and JUnit-4.3.1

Installation of Apache Ant

Note

You may need additional libraries to satisfy the build requirements of various packages installed using Apache Ant. Review the table at *http://ant.apache.org/manual/install.html#librarydependencies* for any prerequisite libraries you may need.

Install Apache Ant by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's|${dist.dir}/etc|/etc/ant|'        build.xml
sed -i 's|/etc/ant.conf|/etc/ant/ant.conf|' src/script/ant
```

The unit regression tests are performed in the build step below.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
./build.sh -Ddist.dir=/opt/ant-1.7.0 dist &&
ln -v -sf /etc/ant /opt/ant-1.7.0/etc &&
ln -v -sf ant-1.7.0 /opt/ant
```

Command Explanations

sed ...: These commands change the configuration directory to `/etc/ant` to conform with FHS guidelines.

./build.sh -Ddist.dir=/opt/ant-1.7.0 dist: This command does everything. It builds, tests, then installs the package into `/opt/ant-1.7.0`.

ln -v -sf /etc/ant /opt/ant-1.7.0/etc: The **sed** commands change the configuration directory to `/etc/ant` and this command creates a symlink from the configuration directory back to the installation directory as the package is expecting to find some files there.

ln -v -sf ant-1.7.0 /opt/ant: This command is optional, and creates a convenience symlink.

Configuring Apache Ant

Config Files

`/etc/ant/ant.conf`, `~/.ant/ant.conf`, and `~/.antrc`

Configuration Information

Some packages will require **ant** to be in the search path and the `$ANT_HOME` environment variable defined. Satisfy these requirements by adding the following lines to `/etc/profile` or to individual user's `~/.profile` or `~/.bashrc` files:

```
export PATH=$PATH:/opt/ant/bin
export ANT_HOME=/opt/ant
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	ant, antRun, antRun.pl, complete-ant-cmd.pl, runant.pl, and runant.py
Installed Libraries:	ant.jar, ant-*.jar, xercesImpl.jar, and xml-apis.jar
Installed Directories:	/etc/ant and /opt/ant-1.7.0

Short Descriptions

ant	is a Java based build tool used by many packages instead of the conventional **make** program.
antRun	is a support script used to start **ant** build scripts in a given directory.
antRun.pl	is a Perl script that provides similar functionality offered by the **antRun** script.
complete-ant-cmd.pl	is a Perl script that allows Bash to complete an **ant** command-line.
runant.pl	is a Perl wrapper script used to invoke **ant**.
runant.py	is a Python wrapper script used to invoke **ant**.
`ant-*.jar`	files are the Apache Ant Java class libraries.
`xercesImpl.jar`	is a Java class library used by Apache Ant to perform XML parsing.
`xml-apis.jar`	contains the DOM Java classes required by the Apache Ant XML formatter.

D-BUS-1.0.2

Introduction to D-BUS

D-BUS is a message bus system, a simple way for applications to talk to one another. D-BUS supplies both a system daemon (for events such as “new hardware device added” or “printer queue changed”) and a per-user-login-session daemon (for general IPC needs among user applications). Also, the message bus is built on top of a general one-to-one message passing framework, which can be used by any two applications to communicate directly (without going through the message bus daemon).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://dbus.freedesktop.org/releases/dbus/dbus-1.0.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/dbus-1.0.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 0552a9b54beb4a044951b7cdbc8fc855
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 39.5 MB (includes building and installing all docs)
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU (additional 0.7 SBU to run the test suite)

D-BUS Dependencies

Required

expat-2.0.1 or both pkg-config-0.22 and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

X Window System, Doxygen-1.5.2 (to generate the API documentation), and *xmlto* (to generate HTML documentation and manuals)

Kernel Configuration

Ensure the following option is enabled in the kernel configuration and recompile the kernel if necessary:

```
General Setup
  System V IPC
```

Installation of D-BUS

As the `root` user, create a system user and group to handle the system message bus activity:

```
groupadd -g 18 messagebus &&
useradd -c "D-BUS Message Daemon User" -d /dev/null \
        -u 18 -g messagebus -s /bin/false messagebus
```

This package's test suite cannot be run without passing additional parameters to **configure** and exposing additional functionality in the binaries. These interfaces are not intended to be used in a production build of D-BUS, so it will have to be built twice in this situation. If you would like to run the unit tests, issue the following commands:

```
./configure --enable-tests &&
make &&
make check &&
make distclean
```

Install D-BUS by running the following commands (you may wish to review the output from **./configure --help** first and add any desired parameters to the **configure** command shown below):

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var &&
make
```

The `--enable-doxygen-docs` parameter does not work properly. If you have Doxygen installed and you wish to build the API documentation, issue **doxygen**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.0.2 &&
install -v -m644 doc/{TODO,*.{dtd,xml,xsl,txt,c}} \
    /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.0.2
```

If you built the HTML documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 doc/*.html /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.0.2
```

If you built the API documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.0.2/api \
    /usr/share/man/man3dbus &&
install -v -m644 doc/api/html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.0.2/api &&
install -v -m644 doc/api/man/man3dbus/* \
    /usr/share/man/man3dbus
```

Command Explanations

`--localstatedir=/var`: This parameter causes the daemon PID file, system bus socket and machine uuid file to be created in the `/var` directory instead of the `/usr/var` directory.

Configuring dbus

Config Files

`/etc/dbus-1/session.conf`, `/etc/dbus-1/system.conf` and `/etc/dbus-1/system.d/*`

Configuration Information

The configuration files listed above should probably not be modified. If changes are required, you should create `/etc/dbus-1/session-local.conf` and/or `/etc/dbus-1/system-local.conf` and make any desired changes to these files.

If any packages install a D-Bus `.service` file outside of the standard `/usr/share/dbus-1/services` directory, that directory should be added to the local session configuration. For instance, `/usr/local/share/dbus-1/services` can be added by performing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/dbus-1/session-local.conf << "EOF"
<!DOCTYPE busconfig PUBLIC
 "-//freedesktop//DTD D-BUS Bus Configuration 1.0//EN"
 "http://www.freedesktop.org/standards/dbus/1.0/busconfig.dtd">
<busconfig>

  <!-- Search for .service files in /usr/local -->
  <servicedir>/usr/local/share/dbus-1/services</servicedir>

</busconfig>
EOF
```

Boot Script

To automatically start **dbus-daemon** when the system is rebooted, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/dbus` bootscript from the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-dbus
```

Note that this boot script only starts the system-wide D-BUS daemon. Each user requiring access to D-BUS services will also need to run a session daemon as well. There are many methods you can use to start a session daemon using the **dbus-launch** command. Review the **dbus-launch** man page for details about the available parameters and options. Here are some suggestions and examples:

- Add **dbus-launch** to the line in the `~/.xinitrc` file that starts your graphical desktop environment as shown in the section called “Configuring the Core GNOME Packages”.
- If you use **xdm** or some other display manager that calls the `~/.xsession` file, you can add **dbus-launch** to the line in your `~/.xsession` file that starts your graphical desktop environment. The syntax would be similar to the example in the `~/.xinitrc` file.
- If you use **gdm** or some other display manager that utilizes custom files to initiate sessions, use the example in the section called “Configuration Information” [836] of the GDM instructions to create a file containing **dbus-launch**.
- The examples shown previously use **dbus-launch** to specify a program to be run. This has the benefit (when also using the *`--exit-with-session`* parameter) of stopping the session daemon when the specified program is stopped. You can also start the session daemon in your system or personal startup scripts by adding the following lines:

```
# Start the D-BUS session daemon
eval `dbus-launch`
export DBUS_SESSION_BUS_ADDRESS
```

This method will not stop the session daemon when you exit your shell, therefore you should add the following line to your `~/.bash_logout` file:

```
# Kill the D-BUS session daemon
kill $DBUS_SESSION_BUS_PID
```

- A hint has been written that provides ways to start scripts using the KDM session manager of KDE. The concepts in this hint could possibly used with other session managers as well. The hint is located at *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/execute-session-scripts-using-kdm.txt*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	dbus-cleanup-sockets, dbus-daemon, dbus-launch, dbus-monitor, dbus-send, dbus-uuidgen
Installed Library:	libdbus-1.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/dbus-1, /usr/include/dbus-1.0, /usr/lib/dbus-1.0, /usr/share/dbus-1, /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.0.2, /usr/share/man/man3dbus, /var/lib/dbus and /var/run/dbus

Short Descriptions

dbus-cleanup-sockets	is used to clean up leftover sockets in a directory.
dbus-daemon	is the D-BUS message bus daemon.
dbus-launch	is used to start **dbus-daemon** from a shell script. It would normally be called from a user's login scripts.
dbus-monitor	is used to monitor messages going through a D-BUS message bus.
dbus-send	is used to send a message to a D-BUS message bus.
dbus-uuidgen	is used to generate or read a universally unique ID.
`libdbus-1.{so,a}`	contains the API functions used by the D-BUS message daemon. D-BUS is first a library that provides one-to-one communication between any two applications; **dbus-daemon** is an application that uses this library to implement a message bus daemon.

HAL-0.5.9.1

Introduction to HAL

HAL is a hardware abstraction layer, which is a piece of software that provides a view of the various hardware attached to a system. In addition to this, HAL keeps detailed metadata for each piece of hardware and provides hooks such that system and desktop-level software can react to changes in the hardware configuration in order to maintain system policy.

The most important goal of HAL is to provide plug-and-play facilities for UNIX-like desktops with focus on providing a rich and extensible description of device characteristics and features. One example of the functionality provided by HAL is when you plug in a USB storage device. HAL can automatically create a mount point in `/media` and mount the device.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://freedesktop.org/~david/dist/hal-0.5.9.1.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6a40f49f964e64358e53652038f3059f
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 24 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

Additional Package Download

Required Hardware Data

- Download (HTTP): *http://freedesktop.org/~david/dist/hal-info-20070618.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: c7005ccb1765d8359fd2348350770495
- Download size: 118 KB

HAL Dependencies

Required

D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74 and XML::Parser-2.34

Recommended

PCI Utilities-2.2.3 (with a current `pci.ids` file) and usbutils-0.72 (with a current `usb.ids` file)

Optional (to Build hal-device-manager)

Python-2.5.2

Optional (to Create Documentation)

libxml2-2.6.31 and *xmlto*

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8, libusb-0.1.12, *Parted**, *libsmbios*, *PolicyKit*, and intltool-0.35.5

* Use the following command after changing into the HAL source directory to modify the package **configure** script if you have Parted version 1.8.7 installed.

```
sed -i -e   's%, 1.8.6%&, 1.8.7%' \
       -e   's% or 1.8.6%/1.8.6 or 1.8.7%' \
       -e   's%6))%6) ||\
            (major == 1 \&\& minor == 8 \&\& micro == 7))%' \
    configure
```

Installation of HAL

You must create a dedicated user and group before installing the package. Though the default BLFS instructions run the HAL daemon as the `root` user, a configuration file is installed which has the dedicated user's name hard-coded in it. This causes a confusing message to be generated when starting the D-BUS daemon. Issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 19 haldaemon &&
useradd -c "HAL Daemon User" -d /dev/null -u 19 \
        -g haldaemon -s /bin/false haldaemon
```

Install HAL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib/hal \
            --localstatedir=/var &&
make
```

To test the results, issue **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Install the HAL hardware data with the following commands:

```
tar -xf ../hal-info-20070618.tar.gz &&
cd hal-info-20070618 &&
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Finally, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib/hal`: This parameter forces the installation of libexec files to `/usr/lib/hal` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

`--localstatedir=/var`: This parameter forces the creation of the `pid` file to `/var/run/hald` instead of `/usr/var/run/hald`.

`--enable-docbook-docs --docdir=/usr/share/doc/hal-0.5.9.1`: If libxml2-2.6.31 and *xmlto* are available, these parameters enable the HAL specification documentation to be built.

Run-Time Dependencies

A few more packages enable more functionality in HAL at run-time. These include *Eject*, *ConsoleKit*, *dmidecode*, *Device-mapper*, *Cryptsetup-LUKS*, and *pm-utils*.

The **hal-device-manager** program requires several additional Python modules to be available at runtime. These are D-Bus Python Bindings-0.82.0, PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk and gtk.libglade modules), and Gnome-Python-2.18.2 (including the gnome.ui module).

Configuring HAL

Config Files

`/etc/dbus-1/system.d/hal.conf`, `/etc/dbus-1/system.d/halusers.conf` and `/etc/hal/*`

Configuration Information

Allowing users to invoke HAL methods

The default setup for HAL is to allow only certain users to invoke methods such as Mount(). These are the `root` user and the user determined to be at the active console using *pam_console*. If you are not set up to use Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 and *pam_console*, create a group that is allowed to invoke HAL methods with the following commands:

```
groupadd -g 61 halusers &&
cat > /etc/dbus-1/system.d/halusers.conf << "EOF"
<!DOCTYPE busconfig PUBLIC
 "-//freedesktop//DTD D-BUS Bus Configuration 1.0//EN"
 "http://www.freedesktop.org/standards/dbus/1.0/busconfig.dtd">
<busconfig>

 <!-- Allow users in the halusers group invoke HAL methods -->
 <policy group="halusers">
  <allow send_interface="org.freedesktop.Hal.Device.SystemPowerManagement"/>
  <allow send_interface="org.freedesktop.Hal.Device.LaptopPanel"/>
  <allow send_interface="org.freedesktop.Hal.Device.Volume"/>
  <allow send_interface="org.freedesktop.Hal.Device.Volume.Crypto"/>
 </policy>

</busconfig>
EOF
```

Now add the users you would like to the `halusers` group to use HAL.

```
usermod -a -G halusers <username>
```

Note that these users still need to have appropriate permissions to access the devices that HAL will invoke its methods on.

With the above configuration in place, authorized users now have the ability to unmount disk partitions mounted at non-standard locations such as `/pub`. If you'd like to restrict this policy to only drives which are considered removable or hotpluggable, add the following configuration file as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/hal/fdi/policy/no-fixed-drives.fdi << "EOF"
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?> <!-- -*- SGML -*- -->

<!-- Don't allow HAL methods on disks that are not
     removable or hotpluggable -->

<deviceinfo version="0.2">
<device>
  <match key="@block.storage_device:storage.hotpluggable" bool="false">
    <match key="@block.storage_device:storage.removable" bool="false">
      <merge key="volume.ignore" type="bool">true</merge>
    </match>
  </match>
</device>
</deviceinfo>
EOF
```

Installing mount helpers

HAL only provides the methods such as Mount() to act on hardware. In order to take advantage of these, a HAL event handler such as gnome-volume-manager-2.17.0 or *Ivman* should be installed.

Changing default mount options

In some cases, it is necessary to specify some default mount options for filesystems. E.g., in non-English environments, the `iocharset` and `codepage` options are needed for filesystems of Windows origin in order to show national characters correctly. Also, due to a *bug* in the Linux kernel version in LFS (2.6.22.x), you may want to pass the `usefree` option to vfat filesystems in order to reduce the time needed to determine the amount of free space on the filesystem.

Google search results for “hal default mount options” are still full of recommendations to create `*.fdi` files mentioning either `volume.policy` or `storage.policy` keys. Such recommendations worked for HAL-0.4.x only and are invalid now. For HAL-0.5.9.1, mount options are expected to be handled as follows:

- An event handler from the desktop environment receives an event describing the newly-added storage device.
- If the storage device is not already mentioned in `/etc/fstab`, mount options are fetched from a database of user preferences, which is specific to the desktop environment, and passed back to HAL. This process can be influenced by the filesystem type and possibly other volume properties available from HAL.
- If the options are in the list of permitted ones, HAL mounts the volume.

The important point above is that the configuration procedure is desktop-specific. However, as of December, 2007, only GNOME allows the user to set default mount options on a per-filesystem basis, as described in the next paragraph. KDE allows the mount options to be set only on a per-volume basis, not per-filesystem, which is a *bug*, because,

as mentioned in the report, “for every new device (let's say your friend's USB stick) you have to first not mount it, then change options and then mount”. Xfce, if compiled with HAL support, *hard-codes* the mount options without any means to override them, which is even worse. In KDE and Xfce, if the built-in default mount options are not suitable, it is needed to mention every possible removable storage device in `/etc/fstab` with the correct options, thus mostly defeating the point of installing HAL.

In order to adjust the default mount options, GNOME users should change the `/system/storage/default_options/[fs_type]/mount_options` GConf key either using GConf Editor-2.18.0, or from the command line, as demonstrated in the following example:

```
gconftool-2 --type list --list-type=string \
    --set /system/storage/default_options/vfat/mount_options \
    "[shortname=mixed,uid=,usefree,iocharset=koi8-r,codepage=866]"
```

See more details in the gnome-mount(1) manual page.

Adding allowed mount options

The list of mount options permitted in the default HAL configuration resides in the `/usr/share/hal/fdi/policy/10osvendor/20-storage-methods.fdi` file. GNOME and KDE users may want to use options not in this list (in the above example, this applies to the `usefree` option). In this case, as `root` user, create a custom policy file that mentions unknown mount options:

```
cat > /etc/hal/fdi/policy/user-options.fdi << "EOF"
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?> <!-- -*- SGML -*- -->

<!--
This file is used to set custom options to the HAL policy settings.
The default policy settings are defined in files contained in the
/usr/share/hal/fdi/policy subdirectories. User defined customizations
should be in files contained in the /etc/hal/fdi/policy directory.
-->

<deviceinfo version="0.2">
<device>

<!-- this is to be able to mount media in drives we cannot poll,
     e.g. IDE Zip Drives and PC style floppy drives -->
<match key="storage.media_check_enabled" bool="false">
  <match key="storage.no_partitions_hint" bool="true">
    <append key="volume.mount.valid_options" type="strlist">usefree</append>
    <!-- Insert other options here -->
  </match>
</match>

<match key="volume.fsusage" string="filesystem">

  <!-- allow these mount options for vfat -->
  <match key="volume.fstype" string="vfat">
    <append key="volume.mount.valid_options" type="strlist">usefree</append>
    <!-- Insert other options here -->
  </match>
</match>

</device>
</deviceinfo>
EOF
```

Boot Script

To automatically start the **hald** daemon when the system is rebooted, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/haldaemon` bootscript from the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

Important

If the system-wide D-BUS daemon was running during the installation of HAL, ensure you stop and restart the D-BUS daemon before attempting to start the **hald** daemon.

```
make install-haldaemon
```

Contents

Installed Programs: hal-device, hal-device-manager, hal-disable-polling, hal-find-by-capability, hal-find-by-property, hal-get-property, hal-is-caller-locked-out, hal-lock, hal-set-property, hald and lshal

Installed Libraries: libhal.{so,a} and libhal-storage,{so,a}

Installed Directories: /etc/hal, /usr/include/hal, /usr/lib/hal, /usr/share/doc/hal-0.5.9.1, /usr/share/hal, /var/cache/hald, /var/lib/hal, and /var/run/hald

Short Descriptions

hal-device is used to create, remove or show a HAL device.

hal-device-manager shows a graphical representation of all the devices HAL is aware of. Here is a *screenshot* of **hal-device-manager** communicating with the HAL daemon and displaying a tree of device objects. The shown properties in the screenshot are for a device object representing a hard disk.

hal-disable-polling can be used to to disable and enable media detection on drives with removable storage.

hal-find-by-capability prints the Unique Device Identifiers for HAL device objects of a given capability.

hal-find-by-property prints the Unique Device Identifiers for HAL device objects where a given property assumes a given value.

hal-get-property retrieves a property from a device.

hal-set-property attempts to set property for a device. Note that, due to security considerations, it may not be possible to set a property.

hal-is-caller-locked-out determines if a specific caller is locked out of a specific D-Bus interface on a specific device.

hald is the HAL daemon program.

lshal shows all devices and their properties. If the --monitor option is given then the device list and all devices are monitored for changes.

`libhal.{so,a}` contains the API functions required by the HAL programs.

`libhal-storage.{so,a}` contains the API functions required by the HAL storage and volume utility programs.

Chapter 12. Programming

A base LFS system can be used as a development platform, however the base system only includes language support for C, C++ and Perl. This chapter provides instructions to build many popular programming environments to greatly expand your system's development capabilities.

DejaGnu-1.4.4

Introduction to DejaGnu

DejaGnu is a framework for running test suites on GNU tools. It is written in **expect**, which uses Tcl (Tool command language).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://freshmeat.net/redir/dejagnu/12564/url_tgz/dejagnu-1.4.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/dejagnu/dejagnu-1.4.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 053f18fd5d00873de365413cab17a666
- Download size: 1.08 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.5 MB
- Estimated build time: .04 SBU

DejaGnu Dependencies

Required (Run-time Only)

Expect-5.43.0

Optional

DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of DejaGnu

Install DejaGnu by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-doc
```

To test the installation, issue **make check** as an unprivileged user.

Contents

Installed Program:	runtest
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Scripts:	There are numerous Expect scripts installed in the `/usr/share/dejagnu` hierarchy.
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/dejagnu

Short Descriptions

runtest is the DejaGnu test driver program. It is used to control what tests to run, and variations on how to run them.

Doxygen-1.5.2

Introduction to Doxygen

The Doxygen package contains a documentation system for C++, C, Java, Objective-C, Corba IDL and to some extent PHP, C# and D. This is useful for generating HTML documentation and/or an off-line reference manual from a set of documented source files. There is also support for generating output in RTF, PostScript, hyperlinked PDF, compressed HTML, and Unix man pages. The documentation is extracted directly from the sources, which makes it much easier to keep the documentation consistent with the source code.

You can also configure Doxygen to extract the code structure from undocumented source files. This is very useful to quickly find your way in large source distributions. Used along with Graphviz, you can also visualize the relations between the various elements by means of include dependency graphs, inheritance diagrams, and collaboration diagrams, which are all generated automatically.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.stack.nl/pub/users/dimitri/doxygen-1.5.2.src.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.stack.nl/pub/users/dimitri/doxygen-1.5.2.src.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: f2782e5bd31a7d10b092500bf0d96ae2
- Download size: 3.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 56 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.7 SBU (includes building the GUI frontend)

Doxygen Dependencies

Optional

Qt-3.3.8b, Graphviz-2.12, Python-2.5.2, teTeX-3.0, ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 or AFPL Ghostscript-8.53

Installation of Doxygen

Install Doxygen by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix /usr \
            --docdir /usr/share/doc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you wish to generate and install the package documentation (note that man pages have already been installed), you must have Python, teTeX (for HTML docs) and Ghostscript (for PDF docs) installed, then issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
make install_docs
```

Command Explanations

`--with-doxywizard`: Use this parameter if Qt is installed and you wish to build the GUI front-end.

Configuring Doxygen

There is no real configuration necessary for the Doxygen package although three additional packages are required if you wish to use extended capabilities. If you need to use the language translation features, you must have Python-2.5.2 installed. If you require formulas to create PDF documentation, then you must have teTeX-3.0 installed. If you require formulas to convert PostScript files to bitmaps, then you must have AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 installed.

Contents

Installed Programs: doxygen, doxytag, and optionally, doxywizard
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/doxygen

Short Descriptions

doxygen is a command-line based utility used to generate template configuration files and then generate documentation from these templates. Use **doxygen --help** for an explanation of the command-line parameters.

doxytag is used to generate a tag file and/or a search index for a set of HTML files.

doxywizard is a GUI front-end for configuring and running **doxygen**.

Expect-5.43.0

Introduction to Expect

The Expect package contains tools for automating interactive applications such as **telnet**, **ftp**, **passwd**, **fsck**, **rlogin**, **tip**, etc. Expect is also useful for testing these same applications as well as easing all sorts of tasks that are prohibitively difficult with anything else.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://expect.nist.gov/old/expect-5.43.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 230400129630335b3060a42f66fec11d
- Download size: 525 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.07 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/expect-5.43.0-spawn-2.patch*

Expect Dependencies

Required

Tcl-8.4.18

Optional

Tk-8.4.18

Installation of Expect

Install Expect by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../expect-5.43.0-spawn-2.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --with-tcl=/usr/lib \
            --with-tclinclude=/usr/include \
            --enable-shared &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -sf ../libexpect5.43.a /usr/lib/expect5.43
```

Command Explanations

`-with-tcl=/usr/lib`: This parameter is required in some cases to link in the Tcl library.

`--enable-shared`: This option enables building the shared library.

ln -sf ../libexpect5.43.a /usr/lib/expect5.43: This command creates a required link to the static library.

Configuring Expect

Config Files

`$exp_library/expect.rc` and `~/.expect.rc`

Configuration Information

Reference the **expect** man page for information about utilizing the `expect.rc` configuration files. Additionally, many of the tools contained in the Expect package will use their own configuration files. Reference the respective man page, or examine the script directly for configuration file information.

Contents

Installed Programs:	autoexpect, autopasswd, cryptdir, decryptdir, dislocate, expect, ftp-rfc, kibitz, lpunlock, mkpasswd, passmass, rftp, rlogin-cwd, timed-read, timed-run, unbuffer, weather, and optionally (if Expect was linked against Tk), expectk, multixterm, tknewsbiff, tkpasswd, xkibitz, and xpstat
Installed Library:	libexpect5.43.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/lib/expect5.43

Short Descriptions

autoexpect	generates an Expect script from watching a session.
autopasswd	is a wrapper to make **passwd**(1) be non-interactive.
cryptdir	encrypts all files in a directory.
decryptdir	decrypts all files in a directory.
dislocate	allows processes to be disconnected and reconnected to a terminal.
expect	is a program that “talks” to other interactive programs according to a script.
ftp-rfc	retrieves an RFC (or the index) from UUNET.
kibitz	allows two (or more) people to interact with one shell (or any arbitrary program).
lpunlock	unhangs a printer which claims it is “waiting for lock”.
mkpasswd	generates passwords and can apply them automatically to users.
passmass	changes a password on multiple machines.
rftp	is much like **ftp** except it uses `~g` and `~p` instead of `mget` and `mput`.
rlogin-cwd	is **rlogin** except it uses the local current directory as the current working directory on the remote machine.
timed-read	reads a complete line from stdin and aborts after a given number of seconds.
timed-run	runs a program for a given amount of time.
unbuffer	disables the output buffering that occurs when program output is redirected.

weather	retrieves a weather report (courtesy University of Michigan) for a given city or geographical area.
expectk	is a combination of Expect with Tk and should run any **wish** or Expect script.
multixterm	creates multiple **xterm**s that can be driven together or separately.
tknewsbiff	pops up a window when there is unread news in your favorite newsgroups and removes the window after you've read the news.
tkpasswd	is a script to change passwords using **expectk**.
xkibitz	allows users in separate **xterm**s to share one shell (or any program that runs in an **xterm**).
xpstat	is a script that acts as a front-end for **xpilot**.
`libexpect5.43.{so,a}`	contains functions that allow Expect to be used as a Tcl extension or to be used directly from C or C++ (without Tcl).

GC-6.8

Introduction to GC

The GC package contains the Boehm-Demers-Weiser conservative garbage collector, which can be used as a garbage collecting replacement for the C malloc function or C++ new operator. It allows you to allocate memory basically as you normally would, without explicitly deallocating memory that is no longer useful. The collector automatically recycles memory when it determines that it can no longer be otherwise accessed. The collector is also used by a number of programming language implementations that either use C as intermediate code, want to facilitate easier interoperation with C libraries, or just prefer the simple collector interface. Alternatively, the garbage collector may be used as a leak detector for C or C++ programs, though that is not its primary goal.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.hpl.hp.com/personal/Hans_Boehm/gc/gc_source/gc6.8.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/gc6.8.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 418d38bd9c66398386a372ec0435250e
- Download size: 739 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of GC

Install GC by running the following commands:

```
sed -i "s|\$(datadir)/@PACKAGE@|&-6.8|" doc/Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
    --datadir=/usr/share/doc --enable-cplusplus &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 doc/gc.man /usr/share/man/man3/gc_malloc.3 &&
ln -v -s gc_malloc.3 /usr/share/man/man3/gc.3
```

Command Explanations

sed -i "s|\$(datadir)/@PACKAGE@|&-6.8|" ...: This command appends “-6.8” to the default documentation installation path of `/usr/share/doc/gc`.

`--datadir=/usr/share/doc`: This parameter changes the installation path of the documentation to `/usr/share/doc/gc` instead of `/usr/share/gc`.

`--enable-cplusplus`: This parameter forces the building and installation of the C++ library along with the standard C library.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libgc.{so,a} and libgccpp.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/gc and /usr/share/doc/gc-6.8

Short Descriptions

`libgc.{so,a}` contains a C interface to the conservative garbage collector, primarily designed to replace the C malloc function.

`libgccpp.{so,a}` contains a C++ interface to the conservative garbage collector.

GCC-4.1.2

Introduction to GCC

The GCC package contains GNU compilers. This package is useful for compiling programs written in C, C++, Fortran, Java, Objective C and Ada. Also included is GNU Treelang. Treelang is a sample language, useful only to help people understand how to implement a new language front end to GCC. It is not a useful language in itself other than as an example or basis for building a new language. Therefore only language developers are likely to have an interest in it.

Note

The Fortran compiler included with the GCC-4.x package now aims to be conformant with the Fortran 95 standard, not the Fortran 77 standard as all previous versions of GCC have been. Please note the following paragraph copied directly from the GCC-4.1.2 **gfortran** man page.

"Gfortran is not yet a fully conformant Fortran 95 compiler. It can generate code for most constructs and expressions, but work remains to be done. In particular, there are known deficiencies with ENTRY, NAMELIST, and sophisticated use of MODULES, POINTERS and DERIVED TYPES. For those whose Fortran codes conform to either the Fortran 77 standard or the GNU Fortran 77 language, we recommend to use **g77** from GCC 3.4.x"

Instructions to install the 3.4.6 version of the Fortran compiler can be found in GCC-3.3.6 and on the *BLFS Wiki*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/gcc-4.1.2/gcc-4.1.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/gcc-4.1.2/gcc-4.1.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a4a3eb15c96030906d8494959eeda23c
- Download size: 39.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.9 GB
- Estimated build time: 77 SBU (build, test and install all compilers)

GCC Dependencies

Recommended

DejaGnu-1.4.4

Optional (Required to Build the Fortran Compiler)

GMP-4.2.2 and *MPFR*

Note

If you plan to compile Ada, you will need to install GNAT temporarily to satisfy the circular dependency when you recompile GCC to include Ada. The download location shown below requires that you create an account on the AdaCore site before you can download the package. Nothing is required other than a valid email address.

Ensure you download the 2005 version of the GNAT compiler. The 2006 version will not work. The file name you need is: `gnat-gpl-2005-i686-gnu-linux-gnu-libc2.3-bin.tar.gz`.

GNAT GPL 2005 Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *https://libre.adacore.com/dynamic/download_page*
- Download MD5 sum: 659b7f57e00b73ecaa4863dabea5e0e2
- Download size: 44.6 MB

Installation of GNAT

Install GNAT by running the following command as the `root` user:

```
make ins-all prefix=/opt/gnat
```

The GNAT compiler can be invoked by executing the **gcc** binary installed in `/opt/gnat/bin`.

You may now remove the GNAT source directory:

```
cd .. &&
rm -rf gnat-gpl-2005-i686-gnu-linux-gnu-libc2.3-bin
```

Prepare to compile GCC by placing the GNAT version of **gcc** at the beginning of the `PATH` variable by using the following commands:

```
PATH_HOLD=$PATH &&
export PATH=/opt/gnat/bin:$PATH_HOLD
```

Installation of GCC

Install GCC by running the following commands:

Important

The installation process may overwrite your existing GCC **gcc** and **c++** compilers and libraries. It is highly recommended that you have the Tcl, Expect and DejaGnu packages installed before beginning the build so you can run the full suite of tests.

Do not continue with the **make install** command until you are confident the build was successful. You can compare your test results with those found at *http://gcc.gnu.org/ml/gcc-testresults/*. There's also an i686 platform test result produced by an LFS-SVN-20070304 system at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/gcc412_test.txt*. You may also want to refer to the information found in the GCC section of Chapter 6 in the LFS book (*../../../../lfs/view/6.3/chapter06/gcc.html*).

The instructions below perform a "**make bootstrap**" instead of just a plain "**make**" intentionally. Even though it is assumed that the current version of GCC is installed in LFS, because this installation includes the Ada compiler as an installed language, a bootstrap is required. The GNAT compiler must be used for stage1 of the bootstrap in order to build Ada. If the process didn't use a "bootstrap" you could end up having a **gcc** installed on the system that was produced by a foriegn compiler.

```
sed -i 's/install_to_$(INSTALL_DEST) //' libiberty/Makefile.in &&
sed -i 's@\./fixinc\.sh@-c true@' gcc/Makefile.in &&
sed -i 's/@have_mktemp_command@/yes/' gcc/gccbug.in &&
mkdir ../gcc-build &&
cd ../gcc-build &&
../gcc-4.1.2/configure \
    --prefix=/usr \
    --libexecdir=/usr/lib \
    --enable-shared \
    --enable-threads=posix \
    --enable-__cxa_atexit \
    --enable-clocale=gnu \
    --enable-languages=c,c++,ada,fortran,java,objc,treelang &&
make bootstrap &&
make -k check &&
../gcc-4.1.2/contrib/test_summary
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -v -sf ../usr/bin/cpp /lib &&
ln -v -sf gcc /usr/bin/cc &&
chown -v -R root:root \
    /usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.1.2/include &&
chown -v -R root:root \
    /usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.1.2/ada{lib,include}
```

The `libffi` interface header is installed in a location where other packages will not be able to find it. If you included Java as one of the installed languages, create a symbolic link in `/usr/include` to remedy this:

```
ln -v -sf `find /usr/lib/gcc -name ffitarget.h` /usr/include
```

As the `root` user, remove the GNAT installation:

```
rm -rf /opt/gnat
```

Now, as the unprivileged user, restore your old `PATH`:

```
export PATH=$PATH_HOLD &&
unset PATH_HOLD
```

Command Explanations

The three **sed** commands are the same ones used during the build of LFS. A fourth one in LFS is ommitted intentionally, due to the bootstrap build.

mkdir ../gcc-build; cd ../gcc-build: The GCC documentation recommends building the package in a dedicated build directory.

--enable-shared --enable-threads=posix --enable-__cxa_atexit: These parameters are required to build the C++ libraries to published standards.

--enable-clocale=gnu: This command is a failsafe for incomplete locale data.

--enable-languages=c,c++,ada,fortran,java,objc,treelang: This command identifies which languages to build. You may modify this command to remove undesired languages.

make -k check: This command runs the test suite without stopping if any errors are encountered.

../gcc-4.1.2/contrib/test_summary: This command will produce a summary of the test suite results. You can append **| grep -A7 Summ** to the command to produce an even more condensed version of the summary. You may also wish to redirect the output to a file for review and comparison later on.

ln -v -sf ../usr/bin/cpp /lib: This command creates a link to the C PreProcessor as some packages expect it to be installed in the `/lib` directory.

ln -v -sf gcc /usr/bin/cc: This link is created as some packages refer to the C compiler using an alternate name.

chown -v -R root:root /usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/...: If the package is built by a user other than root, the ownership of the installed `include` and `adalib` directories (and their contents) will be incorrect. These commands change the ownership to the `root` user and group . Omit the command changing the Ada directories if you did not include Ada as one of the installed languages.

Contents

Installed Programs:	addr2name.awk, fastjar, gcj, gcj-dbtool,gcjh, gfortran, gij, gjnih, gnat, gnatbind, gnatbl, gnatchop, gnatclean, gnatfind, gnatkr, gnatlink, gnatls, gnatmake, gnatname, gnatprep, gnatxref, gprmake, grepjar, grmic, grmiregistry, gtreelang, jcf-dump, jv-convert, jv-scan and architecture specific names for gcj and gcjh
Installed Libraries:	libffi.{so,a}, libgcj.{so,a}, libgfortran.{so,a}, libgfortranbegin.a, libgij.{so,a}, libobjc.{so,a} and numerous other run-time libraries and executables in /usr/lib/gcc
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/c++/4.1.2/{gcj,gnu,java,javax,org}, /usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.1.2/ada{include,lib}, /usr/lib/gcj-4.1.2, /usr/lib/security and /usr/share/java

Some program and library names and descriptions are not listed here, but can be found at *../../../../lfs/view/6.3/chapter06/gcc.html#contents-gcc* as they were initially installed during the building of LFS.

Short Descriptions

addr2name.awk	emulates some of the functionality of addr2line.
fastjar	is an archive tool for Java archives.
gcj	is an ahead-of-time compiler for the Java language.
gcj-dbtool	is a tool for creating and manipulating class file mapping databases.
gcjh	generates header files from Java class files.
gfortran	is the Fortran compiler invoked by **gcc**.
gij	is the GNU interpreter for Java bytecode.

gjnij	is used to generate JNI header files from class files. Running it is equivalent to running **gcjh -jni**.
gnat	is the Ada compiler invoked by **gcc**.
gnatbind	is used to bind compiled objects.
gnatbl	is the Ada linker.
gnatchop	is useful for renaming files to meet the standard Ada default file naming conventions.
gnatclean	is used to remove files associated with a GNAT project.
gnatfind	is the GNAT definition/use finder.
gnatkr	is used to determine the crunched name for a given file, when crunched to a specified maximum length.
gnatlink	is used to link programs and build an executable file.
gnatls	is the compiled unit browser.
gnatmake	is an automatic **make** facility.
gnatname	will list the files associated with a GNAT project.
gnatprep	is the GNAT external preprocessor.
gnatxref	is the GNAT cross-referencer.
gprmake	is a tool used to create `Makefile`s that support compilation by multiple languages.
grepjar	searches `jar` files for a pattern.
grmic	generates stubs for Remote Method Invocation.
grmiregistry	starts a remote object registry on the current host.
gtreelang	is largely a cut down version of C, designed to showcase the features of the GCC code generation back end. Only those features that are directly supported by the GCC code generation back end are implemented. Features are implemented in a manner which is easiest and clearest to implement. Not all or even most code generation back end features are implemented. The intention is to add features incrementally until most features of the GCC back end are implemented in Treelang.
jcf-dump	prints information about Java class files.
jv-convert	converts files from one encoding to another.
jv-scan	prints information about Java source files.

GCC-3.3.6

Introduction to GCC-3.3.6

There are several reasons why you may wish to install GCC-3.3.6. Some packages have not been updated so they can be successfully compiled by GCC-4.1.2 as version 4.x.x of GCC is much stricter in enforcing coding standards. Additionally, some pre-compiled packages may require the GCC-3.3.6 libraries at run-time. Another reason you may need to install GCC-3.3.6 is to use the **g77** Fortran 77 compiler provided by pre-4.x.x versions of GCC. GCC-4.x.x only includes **gfortran**, a Fortran 95 compatible compiler that is not yet ready to be used in a production environment.

If all you need is a working **{f,g}77** Fortran 77 compiler, you may wish to use the one provided by GCC-3.4.x. This is what the GCC developers recommend. Instructions for building the GCC-3.4.x Fortran compiler can be found on the *BLFS Wiki*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/gcc-3.3.6/gcc-3.3.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/gcc-3.3.6/gcc-3.3.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 6936616a967da5a0b46f1e7424a06414
- Download size: 24 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 433 MB (includes running the test suite)
- Estimated build time: 5.2 SBU (additional 11.2 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/gcc-3.3.6-no_fixincludes-1.patch*
- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/gcc-3.3.6-linkonce-1.patch*

GCC-3.3.6 Dependencies

Optional

DejaGnu-1.4.4 (required to run the full test suite)

Installation of GCC-3.3.6

Install GCC-3.3.6 by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-3.3.6-no_fixincludes-1.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-3.3.6-linkonce-1.patch &&
mkdir ../gcc-build &&
cd ../gcc-build &&
../gcc-3.3.6/configure --prefix=/opt/gcc-3.3.6 \
    --enable-shared --enable-languages=c,c++ --enable-threads=posix &&
make bootstrap
```

If desired, run the test suite using the following commands. The **test_summary** commands create log files which can be compared to known good results located at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/gcc336_test.txt*.

```
make -k check &&
../gcc-3.3.6/contrib/test_summary >test_summary.log 2>&1 &&
../gcc-3.3.6/contrib/test_summary | \
    grep -A7 Summ >test_summary_short.log 2>&1
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
mv -v /opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib/libstdc++.so.5* /usr/lib &&
ln -v -sf /usr/lib/libstdc++.so.5.0.7 /opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib &&
ln -v -sf libstdc++.so.5.0.7 /opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib/libstdc++.so.5 &&
chown -v -R root:root \
    /opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib/gcc-lib/i686-pc-linux-gnu/3.3.6/include
```

Command Explanations

mkdir ../gcc-build; cd ../gcc-build: The GCC development team recommends building in a separate directory.

`--enable-shared --enable-languages=c,c++ --enable-threads=posix`: Configures GCC to build the C and C++ compilers and enable the related C++ options. In addition to c and c++, you can add f77 for FORTRAN (called g77). Note that GCC-4 no longer provides a FORTRAN 77 compiler.

mv -v /opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib/libstdc++.so.5* /usr/lib: Moves the C++ library to the standard lib directory to avoid having to add **`/opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib`** to `/etc/ld.so.conf`.

Configuring GCC-3.3.6

Configuration information

If you only need the GCC-3.3.6 C++ library, you may delete `/opt/gcc-3.3.6`.

Whenever you need to use GCC-3.3.6 instead of your system installed compiler, add `/opt/gcc-3.3.6/bin` to the front of your `PATH` or (preferably) set the `CC` environment variable before compiling the concerned package.

If you use g77 programs, you also should move the libg2c.* libraries and symbolic links to `/usr/lib`. Using export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib or updating `/etc/ld.so.conf` to point to `/opt/gcc-3.3.6/lib` is not recommended as it may conflict with your normal libraries.

Contents

Installed Programs:	c++, cpp, g++, gcc, gccbug, gcov, and architecture specific names of these programs.
Installed Libraries:	libgcc_s.so, libiberty.a, libstdc++.{a,so}, libsupc++.a, and other support libraries and files.
Installed Directory:	/opt/gcc-3.3.6

Short Descriptions

The GCC-3.3.6 package contains the **gcc**-3.3.6 C and C++ compilers and the GCC-3.3.6 `libstdc++.so` library that is required by some commercial and pre-compiled packages.

Guile-1.8.2

Introduction to Guile

The Guile package contains the Project GNU's extension language library. Guile also contains a stand alone Scheme interpreter.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/guile/guile-1.8.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/guile/guile-1.8.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: a4b64a992deae0532f8015bcc6c40784
- Download size: 3.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 49 MB (additional 40 MB to install all the docs)
- Estimated build time: 1.2 SBU (includes building all documentation)

Guile Dependencies

Required

GMP-4.2.2

Optional

Emacs-22.1

Installation of Guile

Install Guile by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e '20,$ d' \
       -e 's|slib)|&)\n(load-from-path "slib/guile.init")|' \
    ice-9/slib.scm

./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and wish to build alternate formats of the documentation, issue the following commands:

```
for DIRNAME in goops r5rs ref tutorial
do
  make -k -C doc/$DIRNAME pdf ps html
done &&

makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/goops/goops.txt doc/goops/goops.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/r5rs/r5rs.txt doc/r5rs/r5rs.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/ref/guile.txt doc/ref/guile.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/tutorial/guile-tut.txt \
    doc/tutorial/guile-tut.texi &&

unset DIRNAME
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

find examples -name "Makefile*" -exec rm {} \; &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2 &&
cp -v -R examples   /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2
```

If you built the alternate formats of the documentation, install them using the following commands issued by the `root` user:

```
for DIRNAME in goops r5rs ref tutorial
do
  install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2/$DIRNAME/html
  install -v -m644 doc/$DIRNAME/*.{pdf,ps,dvi,txt} \
      /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2/$DIRNAME
  if [ -d doc/$DIRNAME/$DIRNAME.html ]; then
    install -v -m644 doc/$DIRNAME/$DIRNAME.html/* \
        /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2/$DIRNAME/html
  fi
done &&

install -v -m644 doc/goops/hierarchy.{eps,png} \
    /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2/goops &&
install -v -m644 doc/ref/guile.html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2/ref/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/tutorial/guile-tut.html/* \
    /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2/tutorial/html
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e '20,$ d' -e '...' ice-9/slib.scm: This command is used to modify the Guile SLIB initialization script. There are incompatibilities with newer versions of SLIB and this command modifes the script to use the installed SLIB script.

Contents

Installed Programs:	guile, guile-config, guile-snarf, and guile-tools
Installed Libraries:	libguile.{so,a}, libguile-srfi-srfi-*.{so,a} and /libguilereadline-v-17.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/guile, /usr/include/libguile, /usr/share/doc/guile-1.8.2 and /usr/share/guile

Short Descriptions

guile	is a stand-alone Scheme interpreter for Guile.
guile-config	is a Guile script which provides the information necessary to link your programs against the Guile library, in much the same way pkg-config-0.22 does.
guile-snarf	is a script to parse declarations in your C code for Scheme visible C functions, i Scheme objects to be used by C code, etc.

guile-tools is a wrapper program installed along with **guile** which knows where a particular module is installed and calls it passing its args to a program.

JDK-6 Update 5

Introduction to JDK

The JDK package contains Sun's Java development environment. This is useful for developing Java programs and provides the runtime environment necessary to run Java programs. It also includes a plug-in for browsers so that they can be Java aware.

Note

Sun has recently decided not to provide JRL sources for the latest update versions of the JDK. Sun is actively working on a GPL'd version of the JDK, titled *OpenJDK*. This new JDK will be licensed under the *GNU General Public License, version 2, with the Classpath Exception*. A stable OpenJDK was not available at the time of writing.

Package Information

- Download (jdk-6u5-linux-i586.bin): *http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index.jsp*
- Download MD5 sum: f7528500c17c09546566e05988beda86
- Download size (binary): 67 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 207 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

JDK Dependencies

Optional Runtime Dependencies

ALSA Library-1.0.13, CUPS-1.2.12, and GTK+-2.10.13

Installation of JDK

Tip

The **./jdk-6u5-linux-i586.bin** command below unpacks the distribution into a `jdk1.6.0_05` directory. You will be required to view, and then accept (by entering a **y** keypress), a license agreement before any files are unpacked. If you are scripting (automating) the build, you'll need to account for this. There is information about automating build commands in the Automated Building Procedures section of Chapter 2. Towards the end of this section, specific information for automating this type of installation is discussed.

Normally in BLFS, the files are unpacked into a subdirectory and the starting point for the installation procedures is that location. For this application only, start in the directory where all the downloaded files are located.

Install the JDK with the following commands:

```
chmod 755 jdk-6u5-linux-i586.bin &&
./jdk-6u5-linux-i586.bin
```

Note

The installation will end with a message "./jdk-6u5-linux-i586.bin: line 43: 20283 Aborted" as javaprefix is unset in the environment. This is by design as GTK+ may not be installed during the installation, however, the installation will still exit with a zero error value if scripting the build.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
cd jdk1.6.0_05 &&
install -v -m755 -d /opt/jdk-6u5 &&
mv -v * /opt/jdk-6u5 &&
chown -v -R root:root /opt/jdk-6u5 &&
ln -v -sf xawt/libmawt.so \
    /opt/jdk-6u5/jre/lib/i386/ &&
cd ..
```

Recent versions of libX11 break libmawt when used with the Xinerama extension. While still the `root` user, apply the following sed to work around this problem:

```
sed -i 's@XINERAMA@FAKEEXTN@g' \
    /opt/jdk-6u5/jre/lib/i386/xawt/libmawt.so
```

Command Explanations

ln -sf xawt/libmawt.so /opt/jdk-6u5/jre/lib/i386/: This fixes linking issues with other applications that expect to find the motif libraries with the other JDK libraries.

Configuring JDK

Configuration Information

As the `root` user, create a symlink to the installation directory:

```
ln -v -nsf jdk-6u5 /opt/jdk
```

The information below assumes your system is set up using the instructions found in “The Bash Shell Startup Files”. You may need to extract the relevant information below and incorporate it into your system's startup files if your system is set up differently.

Add the following `jdk.sh` shell startup file to the `/etc/profile.d` directory with the following commands as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/profile.d/jdk.sh << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/profile.d/jdk.sh

# Set JAVA_HOME directory
JAVA_HOME=/opt/jdk

# Adjust PATH
pathappend ${JAVA_HOME}/bin PATH

# Auto Java CLASSPATH
# Copy jar files to, or create symlinks in this directory
AUTO_CLASSPATH_DIR=/usr/lib/classpath
pathprepend . CLASSPATH
for dir in `find ${AUTO_CLASSPATH_DIR} -type d 2>/dev/null`; do
    pathappend $dir CLASSPATH
done

export JAVA_HOME CLASSPATH
unset AUTO_CLASSPATH_DIR
unset dir

# End /etc/profile.d/jdk.sh
EOF
```

The Java plugin is located in `$JAVA_HOME/jre/plugin/i?86/ns7/`. Make a symbolic link to the file in that directory from your browser(s) plugins directory.

Important

The plugin must be a symlink for it to work. If not, the browsers will crash when you attempt to load a Java application.

Contents

Installed Programs:	appletviewer, apt, extcheck, idlj, HtmlConverter, jar, jarsigner, java, javac, javadoc, javah, javap, java-rmi.cgi, javaws, jconsole, jdb, jhat, jinfo, jmap, jps, jrunscript, jsadebugd, jstack, jstat, jstatd, keytool, native2ascii, orbd, pack200, policytool, rmic, rmid, rmiregistry, schemagen, serialver, servertool, tnameserv, unpack200, wsgen, wsimport, and xjc
Installed Libraries:	$JAVA_HOME/lib/*, $JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/*, and libjavaplugin_oji.so
Installed Directory:	/opt/jdk-6u5

Short Descriptions

appletviewer	runs Java applets outside of the context of a browser.
apt	is an annotation processing tool.

extcheck	checks a specified jar file for title and version conflicts with any extensions installed in the JDK software.
HtmlConverter	adds Java auto download to html and asp pages.
idlj	generates Java bindings from a given IDL file.
jar	combines multiple files into a single jar archive.
jarsigner	signs jar files and verifies the signatures and integrity of a signed jar file.
java	launches a Java application by starting a Java runtime environment, loading a specified class and invoking its main method.
javac	reads class and interface definitions, written in the Java programming language, and compiles them into bytecode class files.
javadoc	parses the declarations and documentation comments in a set of Java source files and produces a corresponding set of HTML pages describing the classes, interfaces,constructors, methods, and fields.
javah	generates C header and source files that are needed to implement native methods.
javap	disassembles a Java class file.
java-rmi.cgi	is the Java RMI client.
javaws	launches Java application/applets hosted on a network.
jconsole	is a graphical console tool to monitor and manage both local and remote Java applications and virtual machines.
jdb	is a simple command-line debugger for Java classes.
jhat	parses a java heap dump file and allows viewing in a webbrowser.
jinfo	prints Java configuration information for a given Java process, core file, or a remote debug server.
jmap	prints shared object memory maps or heap memory details of a given process, core file, or a remote debug server.
jps	lists the instrumented JVMs on the target system.
jrunscript	is a command line script shell.
jsadebugd	attaches to a Java process or core file and acts as a debug server.
jstack	prints Java stack traces of Java threads for a given Java process, core file, or a remote debug server.
jstat	displays performance statistics for an instrumented JVM.
jstatd	is an RMI server application that monitors for the creation and termination of instrumented JVMs.
keytool	is a key and certificate management utility.
native2ascii	converts files that contain non-supported character encoding into files containing Latin-1 or Unicode-encoded characters.
orbd	is used to enable clients to transparently locate and invoke persistent objects on servers in the CORBA environment.
pack200	is a Java application that transforms a jar file into a compressed pack200 file using the Java gzip compressor.

policytool	creates and manages a policy file graphically.
rmic	generates stub and skeleton class files for remote objects from the names of compiled Java classes that contain remote object implementations.
rmid	starts the activation system daemon.
rmiregistry	creates and starts a remote object registry on the specified port on the current host.
schemagen	is a Java XML binding schema generator.
serialver	returns the serialVersionUID for one or more classes in a form suitable for copying into an evolving class.
servertool	provides an ease-of-use interface for application programmers to register, unregister, startup and shutdown a server.
tnameserv	starts the Java IDL name server.
unpack200	is a native implementation that transforms a packed file produced by pack200 into a jar file.
wsgen	generates JAX-WS portable artifacts used in JAX-WS web services.
wsimport	generates JAX-WS portable artifacts.
xjc	is a Java XML binding compiler.

JUnit-4.3.1

Introduction to JUnit

The JUnit package contains a simple, open source framework to write and run repeatable tests. It is an instance of the xUnit architecture for unit testing frameworks. JUnit features include assertions for testing expected results, test fixtures for sharing common test data, and test runners for running tests.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/junit/junit4.3.1.zip*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6c22e6733f4ba9d755a437375e3d476e
- Download size: 643 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.7 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

JUnit Dependencies

Required

UnZip-5.52

Installation of JUnit

Install JUnit by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/{,doc/}junit-4.3.1 &&
chown -R root:root . &&
cp -v -R junit* org  /usr/share/junit-4.3.1 &&
cp -v -R *.html *doc /usr/share/doc/junit-4.3.1
```

Add the `junit-4.3.1.jar` and `/usr/share/junit-4.3.1` directory to your system `CLASSPATH` environment variable:

```
export CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:\
/usr/share/junit-4.3.1/junit-4.3.1.jar:/usr/share/junit-4.3.1
```

To run the JUnit regression self-tests, you'll need to have JDK-6 Update 5 or *Jikes* installed and the `CLASSPATH` environment variable updated. Then, as an unprivileged user, issue:

```
java org.junit.runner.JUnitCore org.junit.tests.AllTests
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: junit-4.3.1.jar
Installed Directories: /usr/share/junit-4.3.1, /usr/share/doc/junit-4.3.1

Short Descriptions

`junit-4.3.1.jar` contains java classes to support the xUnit framework testing architecture.

Librep-0.17

Introduction to Librep

The librep package contains a Lisp system. This is useful for scripting or for applications that may use the Lisp interpreter as an extension language.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/librep/librep-0.17.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ad4ad851ff9f82a5d61024cd96bc2998
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 13.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.47 SBU

Librep Dependencies

Required

GDBM-1.8.3

Optional

GMP-4.2.2 and GCC-4.1.2 (build Java so that `libffi` is built)

Installation of Librep

Install librep by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib`: This parameter installs files to `/usr/lib/rep` instead of `/usr/libexec/rep`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	rep, rep-config, rep-remote, rep-xgettext, and repdoc
Installed Libraries:	librep.so and numerous modules installed in the /usr/lib/rep hierarchy
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/rep, /usr/share/emacs/site-lisp, and /usr/share/rep

Short Descriptions

rep	is the Lisp interpreter.
`librep.so`	contains the functions necessary for the Lisp interpreter.

NASM-0.98.39

Introduction to NASM

NASM (Netwide Assembler) is an 80x86 assembler designed for portability and modularity. It includes a disassembler as well.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/nasm/nasm-0.98.39.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 2032ad44c7359f7a9a166a40a633e772
- Download size: 543 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 17.3 MB (includes building and installing all docs)
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch to fix a buffer overrun vulnerability: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/nasm-0.98.39-security_fix-1.patch*

NASM Dependencies

Optional (for Building Documentation)

teTeX-3.0, and ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 or AFPL Ghostscript-8.53

Installation of NASM

Install NASM by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../nasm-0.98.39-security_fix-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make -C rdoff/doc &&
make -C rdoff/doc html
```

To build the base NASM documentation, ensure you have Ghostscript installed and issue:

```
make doc
```

To build the RDOFF Postscript documentation, ensure you have teTeX-3.0 installed and issue:

```
sed -i -e "s/dvips \$</& -o rdoff.ps/" rdoff/doc/Makefile &&
make -C rdoff/doc ps
```

To build the RDOFF PDF documentation, ensure you have Ghostscript installed and issue:

```
make -C rdoff/doc pdf
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install_rdf &&
install -v -m644 rdoff/doc/rdoff.info /usr/share/info &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/nasm/html &&
install -v -m644 rdoff/doc/v1-v2.txt /usr/share/doc/nasm &&
cp -v -R rdoff/doc/rdoff /usr/share/doc/nasm/html
```

If you built the Ghostscript generated documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
make install_doc &&
install -v -m644 rdoff/doc/rdoff.pdf /usr/share/doc/nasm
```

Lastly, if you built the RDOFF Postscript documentation, install it using the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 rdoff/doc/rdoff.ps /usr/share/doc/nasm
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	nasm, ndisasm, ldrdf, rdf2bin, rdf2com, rdf2ihx, rdfdump, rdflib, and rdx
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/nasm

Short Descriptions

nasm	is a portable 80x86 assembler.
ndisasm	is an 80x86 binary file disassembler.
ldrdf	is an RDOFF linker.
rdfdump	dumps the contents of an RDOFF file.
rdflib	is an RDOFF librarian.
rdx	is used to load and execute an RDOFF module.

PDL-2.4.2

Introduction to PDL

PDL (Perl Data Language) gives standard Perl the ability to compactly store and quickly manipulate the large N-dimensional data arrays common to scientific computing. PDL turns Perl into an array-oriented, numerical language similar to such commercial packages as IDL and MatLab. One can write simple Perl expressions to manipulate entire numerical arrays all at once.

PDL provides extensive numerical and semi-numerical functionality with support for two- and three-dimensional visualisation as well as a variety of I/O formats. The goal is to allow PDL to interact with a variety of external numerical packages, graphics and visualisation systems. Easy interfacing to such systems is one of the core design features of PDL.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/pdl/PDL-2.4.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/PDL-2.4.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: edd056a006eae8b46e8ef804b9774a93
- Download size: 2.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 74 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.56 SBU

PDL Dependencies

PDL is a collection of over 90 Perl modules. Some of these modules require additional libraries, packages and/or Perl modules for full functionality. Listed below are the modules which require additional software or configuration. If you don't need a particular module's functionality, you don't need to install its dependencies. The dependency tree for each module is listed downward, meaning you'll need to start at the bottom of a module's tree and work up. The dependencies are listed in the same order as they are in the `DEPENDENCIES` file, found in the package source tree.

This package (and many of the dependency packages) requires a Fortran compiler for full functionality of all the different modules. The **gfortran** compiler installed with the current BLFS version of GCC (4.1.2) will not work. If you want to compile the parts of this package that require a Fortran compiler, you'll need to install a GCC-3.x.x version of Fortran. The GCC developers recommend using Fortran from GCC-3.4.6. You can find specific instructions to install a GCC-3.4.6 compiler on the *BLFS Wiki*. Alternatively, if you have a need to install GCC-3.3.6, you can add the Fortran compiler to the list of compilers installed in those instructions. Don't forget to put the directory containing the **{g,f}77** commands at the beginning of your `PATH` environment variable before beginning the compilation.

PDL::NiceSlice

The PDL::NiceSlice module is used to enhance PDL's slice syntax. “Slicing” is a term used in the process of creating a cross-section, or slice, of a PDL object (piddle).

- *Filter-1.32*

Inline::Pdlpp

The Inline::Pdlpp module allows you to define fast PP code inline in your scripts.

- *Inline-0.44*

- *Parse-RecDescent-1.94*

Perldl

perldl is a simple shell (written in Perl) which allows interactive use of PDL.

- *Term-ReadLine-Gnu-1.15*

PDL::Graphics::TriD

The PDL::Graphics::TriD module implements a generic 3D plotting interface for PDL. Points, lines and surfaces (among other objects) are supported.

- OpenGL (X Window System)

PDL::Graphics::PGPLOT

The PDL::Graphics::PGPLOT module is a convenience interface to the PGPLOT commands, implemented using the object oriented PGPLOT plotting package in the PDL::Graphics::PGPLOT::Window module.

- *PGPLOT-2.19*
  - *ExtUtils-F77-1.15*
    - *a Fortran compiler*
  - *PGPLOT*
    - X Window System, LessTif-0.95.0, Tk-8.4.18, and *a Fortran compiler*

PDL::Graphics::PLPLOT

The PDL::Graphics::PLPLOT module is a simple interface to the PLplot plotting library.

- *PLplot*
  - pkg-config-0.22, X Window System, GTK+-1.2.10, FreeType-2.3.7, *GD*, *SVGAlib*, *GNOME Libraries-1.4*, JDK-6 Update 5, Tk-8.4.18, Python-2.5.2 (with *Numeric Python*), *a Fortran compiler*, *SWIG*, and *iTcl*

PDL::Graphics::IIS

The PDL::Graphics::IIS module provides an interface to any image display “device” which supports the “IIS protocol”.

- *SAOimage*
  - X Window System
- *X11 IRAF*
  - X Window System and Tk-8.4.18

PDL::Graphics::Karma

The PDL::Graphics::Karma module is an interface to Karma visualisation applications.

- *Karma*
  - X Window System

Note: You may need to modify the `WHERE_KARMA => undef` line in the source tree `perldl.conf` file to point to your installation of Karma

PDL::IO::Pic

The PDL::IO::Pic module implements I/O for a number of popular image formats by exploiting the **xxxtopnm** and **pnmtoxxx** converters from the Netpbm package and the **cjpeg** and **djpeg** converters. It also contains the routine wmpeg to write MPEG movies from piddles representing image stacks.

- *Netpbm*, libjpeg-6b and *mpeg_encode*

PDL::Slatec

The PDL::Slatec module serves the dual purpose of providing an interface to parts of the slatec library and showing how to interface PDL to an external library. The module provides routines to manipulate matrices, calculate FFTs, fit data using polynomials, and interpolate/integrate data using piecewise cubic Hermite interpolation.

- *ExtUtils-F77-1.15*
  - *a Fortran compiler*

PDL::GSL

The PDL::GSL module is an interface to the functions provided by the Gnu Scientific Library.

- *GSL*

PDL::FFTW

The PDL::FFTW module is a means to interface PDL with the FFTW library. It's similar to the standard FFT routine but it's usually faster and has support for real transforms. It works well for the types of piddles for which the library was compiled (otherwise it must do conversions).

- *FFTW-2.x*

PDL::IO::Browser

The PDL::IO::Browser module is a 2D cursor terminal data browser for piddles.

There is no additional software required to use the module. However, the default is to not install the module because some platforms don't provide a curses compatible library. To enable the module, issue the following command:

```
sed -i -e "s/WITH_IO_BROWSER => 0/WITH_IO_BROWSER => 1/" \
    perldl.conf
```

PDL::IO::NDF

The PDL::IO::NDF module adds the ability to read and write Starlink N-dimensional data files as N-dimensional piddles.

- *Astro-FITS-Header-2.8.1*
  - *Astro-FITS-CFITSIO-1.03*
    - *CFITSIO*
  - *NDF-1.45*
    - *Starlink-Config-1.00*
      - *Starlink IMG*

- *Starlink NDF* (requires the following Starlink modules installed in this order, some will already be installed if you installed Starlink GSD): *HTX*, *SAE*, *HLP*, *CNF*, *SLA*, *CHR*, *EMS*, *PSX*, *HDS*, *PCS*, *MER*, *PRM*, *PAR*, *ARY*, *AST*)
  - *a Fortran compiler*

- *GSD-1.13*
  - *Starlink-Config-1.00*
    - *Starlink GSD* (requires the following Starlink modules installed in this order: *HTX*, *SAE*, *CNF*, *CHR*, *EMS*, *PRM*)
      - *a Fortran compiler*

Installation of PDL

Install PDL (and all the dependency Perl modules) by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's/\(dirname);\)/\1\nuse blib;/' Demos/BAD*demo.pm.PL &&
perl Makefile.PL &&
make &&
make test
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '...' Demos/BAD*demo.pm.PL: This is necessary to fix a build issue caused by changes in ExtUtils::MakeMaker-6.30 which was introduction in Perl-5.8.8.

Configuring PDL

Config Files

`~/.perldlrc` and `local.perldlrc` in the current directory

Configuration Information

See *http://pdl.sourceforge.net/PDLdocs/perldl.html#the startup file ~/.perldlrc* for information about configuring **perldl** to suit your needs.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pdl, pdldoc, perldl, and pptemplate
Installed Modules:	90+ individual Perl modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/5.8.8/i686-linux/{,auto/}PDL

Short Descriptions

pdl	is a binary program called from PDL scripts which is used to interface **perldl**.
pdldoc	is a shell interface to PDL documentation.

perldl is a simple shell (written in Perl) for interactive use of PDL.

pptemplate is a script to generate `Makefile.PL` and PP file skeletons.

Perl Modules

Introduction to Perl Modules

The Perl module packages add useful objects to the Perl language. Modules utilized by packages throughout BLFS are listed here, along with their dependencies. Installation of the modules shown on this page should be accomplished by installing the listed dependencies (from the bottom and working up to the top) and then the desired module. Most references to Perl modules are in the form of Module, Module::SubName or Module::Sub::Name, though sometimes you'll see Module, Module-SubName or Module-Sub-Name. The references on this page that reflect an external URL are in the latter form, as these are the official package names.

- Download MD5 sums (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/perl-modules/*
- Download MD5 sums (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/perl-modules/*

Note

Some dependencies, such as the Test::Pod-1.26 module, are used by several of the listed dependencies of the main module and perhaps also the module being installed. Dependencies such as this are only listed once in the dependency chain for each main module (typically near the bottom-most dependency) to avoid redundancy and additional clutter in the instructions.

Archive::Zip-1.20

The Archive::Zip module allows a Perl program to create, manipulate, read, and write Zip archive files. The modules listed below are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Archive-Zip-1.20*
  - Compress::Zlib-2.005
  - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)

Compress::Zlib-2.005

The Compress::Zlib module provides a Perl interface to the Zlib compression library. Most of the functionality provided by Zlib is available in Compress::Zlib. The module can be split into two general areas of functionality, namely in-memory compression/decompression and read/write access to gzip files. This module and all the dependencies are installed using the standard build and installation instructions.

Note

The Compress::Raw::Zlib module requires the following **sed** after untarring the distribution tarball (before any other build commands) to use the system-installed copy of Zlib.

```
sed -i -e "s|BUILD_ZLIB\s*= True|BUILD_ZLIB = False|" \
       -e "s|INCLUDE\s*= ./zlib-src|INCLUDE    = /usr/include|" \
       -e "s|LIB\s*= ./zlib-src|LIB        = /usr/lib|" \
    config.in
```

- *Compress-Zlib-2.005* (uses the standard build and installation instructions)
  - *IO-Compress-Zlib-2.005*

- *Compress-Raw-Zlib-2.005*
  - *IO-Compress-Base-2.005*
- *IO-Compress-Bzip2-2.005* (used during the tests)
  - *Compress-Raw-Bzip2-2.005*
    - *IO-Compress-Base-2.005*

Date::Manip-5.54

Date::Manip is a set of routines designed to make any common date/time manipulation easy to do. Operations such as comparing two times, calculating a time a given amount of time from another, or parsing international times are all easily done. From the very beginning, the main focus of Date::Manip has been to be able to do ANY desired date/time operation easily.

- *Date-Manip-5.54* (uses the standard build and installation instructions)

Finance::Quote-1.13

Finance::Quote is used to get stock quotes from various Internet sources, including Yahoo! Finance, Fidelity Investments, and the Australian Stock Exchange. There are two methods of using this module – a functional interface that is depreciated, and an object-orientated method that provides greater flexibility and stability. With the exception of straight currency exchange rates, all information is returned as a two-dimensional hash (or a reference to such a hash, if called in a scalar context).

After you've installed the package, issue **perldoc Finance::Quote** for full information. Alternatively, you can issue **perldoc lib/Finance/Quote.pm** after unpacking the distribution tarball and changing into the top-level directory. The module and dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

Note

To run the regression test suite, you'll need a working Internet connection and then create a symbolic link to the `test` directory using the following command after unpacking the tarball and changing into the root directory of the source tree:

```
ln -s test t
```

Some tests will fail depending on certain conditions. See the `INSTALL` file for full details.

- *Finance-Quote-1.13*
  - HTML::TableExtract-2.10
  - libwww-perl-5.806

Finance::QuoteHist-1.11

The Finance::QuoteHist bundle is several modules designed to fetch historical stock quotes from the web. The module and dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Finance-QuoteHist-1.11*
  - HTML::TableExtract-2.10

- libwww-perl-5.806
- Date::Manip-5.54
- *Text-CSV-1.05*
- *Text-CSV_XS-0.52 (optional)*

HTML::Parser-3.56

The HTML::Parser distribution is a collection of modules that parse and extract information from HTML documents. The modules listed below are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *HTML-Parser-3.56*
  - *HTML-Tagset-3.10*
    - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)
  - libwww-perl-5.806 (run-time requirement for the included HTML::HeadParser module)

HTML::TableExtract-2.10

HTML::TableExtract is a module that simplifies the extraction of the content contained in tables within HTML documents, extracted either as text or encoded element trees. Tables of note may be specified using Headers, Depth, Count, Attributes, or some combination of the four. The module and dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *HTML-TableExtract-2.10*
  - *HTML-Element-Extended-1.17*
    - *HTML-Tree-3.23*
      - HTML::Parser-3.56
      - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)
  - Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08 (optionally used during the tests)

libwww-perl-5.806 (a.k.a. LWP)

The libwww-perl (LWP) collection is a set of Perl modules which provide a simple and consistent application programming interface to the World-Wide Web. The main focus of the library is to provide classes and functions that allow you to write WWW clients. The library also contains modules that are of more general use and even classes that help you implement simple HTTP servers. The LWP collection and all its Perl module dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *libwww-perl-5.806*
  - URI-1.35
  - HTML::Parser-3.56
  - Compress::Zlib-2.005
  - *Crypt-SSLeay-0.56* (optional, for HTTPS support)
    - OpenSSL-0.9.8g
    - A “testcover” `Makefile` target is created (which creates a **/usr/bin/testcover** script) if the *Extutils::MakeMaker::Coverage* module is installed.

Module::Build-0.2808

The Module::Build module is a system for building, testing, and installing Perl modules. It is meant to be an alternative to ExtUtils::MakeMaker. Developers may alter the behavior of the module through subclassing in a much more straightforward way than with MakeMaker. It also does not require a **make** command on your system. Most of the Module::Build code is pure-Perl and written in a very cross-platform way.

The Module::Build module (as well as any other Perl module that uses the Module::Build build system) uses modified build instructions. All the dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Module-Build-0.2808*
  - *ExtUtils-ParseXS-2.18*
    - *ExtUtils-CBuilder-0.19*
  - *Archive-Tar-1.32*
    - *IO-Zlib-1.09*
      - Compress::Zlib-2.005
    - Text::Diff-0.35
  - *Pod-Readme-0.09* (optionally used to create a `README` file when creating a new module distribution)
    - *Test-Portability-Files-0.05* (optionally used during the tests)
    - Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08 (optionally used during the tests)
    - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)
  - Module::Signature-0.55 (required to use the Module::Build “distsign” run-time method and optionally used during the tests)
  - YAML-0.65 (optional, provides additional features to Module::Build)

Module::Build Build and Installation Instructions

```
perl Build.PL &&
./Build &&
./Build test
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
./Build install
```

Module::Info-0.31

The Module::Info module is quite useful for tasks other than just support of other modules. It can be used from the command-line to tell you if a particular module is included in, or has been installed into your Perl installation. Additionally, Module::Info can tell you what version of a module is installed and what dependencies are required for it. You can even use Module::Info to gather dependencies of uninstalled modules. The Module::Info module and dependencies install using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Module-Info-0.31*
  - *version-0.74* (optionally used during the tests)
    - Module::Build-0.2808 (optional)
  - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)

Module::Signature-0.55

The Module::Signature module is used to check and create `SIGNATURE` files for CPAN distributions. After installing Module::Signature you can verify the content of a distribution tarball (if it includes a `SIGNATURE` file) by unpacking the tarball, changing into the newly created directory and issuing the command **cpansign -v**. It will check each file's integrity, as well as the signature's validity. Note that some of the dependencies appear to be circular, however, they are only run-time conflicts and you should be able to fully utilize them as long as everything is installed. Module::Signature and the dependency modules are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Module-Signature-0.55*
  - Text::Diff-0.35
  - *PAR-Dist-0.31*
    - Archive::Zip-1.20
    - libwww-perl-5.806
    - Module::Signature-0.55
  - *Digest-SHA-5.45*
    - Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08 (optionally used during the tests)
  - GnuPG-1.4.7

Net::DNS-0.57

Net::DNS is a DNS resolver implemented in Perl. It can be used to perform nearly any type of DNS query from a Perl script. The Net::DNS module and all its dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Net-DNS-0.57*
  - *Digest-HMAC-1.01*
    - *Digest-SHA1-2.11*
  - *Net-IP-1.24*
  - *IO-Socket-INET6-2.51* (required for IPv6 support)
    - *Socket6-0.19*
  - *Digest-BubbleBabble-0.01*
  - Test::Pod-1.26 (optional, only used during the test suite)

Pod::Coverage-0.18

The Pod::Coverage module is a Perl library used to check if the documentation of a module is comprehensive. This module can use the Module::Build modified build instructions, but is not required. All the dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Pod-Coverage-0.18*
  - *Devel-Symdump-2.07*
    - Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08 (optionally used during the tests, and is a circular dependency)
    - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)

- Module::Build-0.2808 (optional)

SGMLSpm-1.03ii

The SGMLSpm module is a Perl library used for parsing the output from James Clark's SGMLS and NSGMLS parsers. This module requires modified installation instructions, shown below.

- *SGMLSpm-1.03ii*

If your system's Perl version is different than 5.8.8, you'll need to modify the **sed** command below to reflect the version you have installed.

```
sed -i -e "s@/usr/local/bin@/usr/bin@" \
       -e "s@/usr/local/lib/perl5@/usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/5.8.8@" \
       -e "s@/usr/local/lib/www/docs@/usr/share/doc/perl5@" \
    Makefile
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/perl5 &&
make install_html &&
rm -v -f /usr/share/doc/perl5/SGMLSpm/sample.pl &&
install -v -m644 DOC/sample.pl /usr/share/doc/perl5/SGMLSpm
```

Test::Pod-1.26

The Test:Pod module is (most of the time, optionally) used by other modules during the build process to check the validity of POD (Plain Old Documentation) files. The Test::Pod module is typically included by module authors to automatically find and check all POD files in a module distribution. This module and all the dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Test-Pod-1.26*
  - *Pod-Simple-3.05*
    - *Pod-Escapes-1.04*
  - Test::Simple-0.70

Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08

The Test::Pod::Coverage module is used to check files in a distribution for POD coverage. It is normally used by developers to ensure their projects are adequately covered with POD and it is also used in the test suites of many module distributions. This module and all the dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Test-Pod-Coverage-1.08*
  - Test::Simple-0.70 or *Test-Builder-Tester-1.01*
  - Pod::Coverage-0.18

Test::Simple-0.70

The Test::Simple module contains utilities designed to assist developers in creating tests. A version of Test::Simple was installed during LFS with the Perl-5.8.8 installation, however, some of the sub-modules contained in Test::Simple have been updated (notably, the Test::More module) and these updated modules are now required by other modules.

This updated version of Test::Simple also now includes the Test:Builder:Tester module, required by many of the modules on this page. Note that installing this updated version of Test::Simple will overwrite some files from the original Perl installation, but there's really nothing to be alarmed about as these modules are only used by developers creating tests, or for running the test suites during additional module installations.

- *Test-Simple-0.70* (uses the standard build and installation instructions)
  - Module::Signature-0.55 (optionally used during the tests)
  - Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08 (optionally used during the tests, and is circular)
  - Pod::Coverage-0.18 (optionally used during the tests, and is circular)

Text::Diff-0.35

Text::Diff is used to perform diffs on files and record sets. It provides a basic set of services akin to the GNU **diff** utility. It is not anywhere near as feature complete as GNU **diff**, but it is better integrated with Perl and available on all platforms. Text::Diff is often faster than shelling out to a system's **diff** executable for small files, and generally slower on larger files. The modules listed below are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Text-Diff-0.35*
  - *Algorithm-Diff-1.1902*

Tk-804.027

The Tk module is a Perl interface to the Tk package. The goal of this release is Unicode support via Perl's and core-Tk's use of UTF-8. Tk-804.027 builds and loads into a threaded Perl but is NOT yet thread safe. The module is installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *Tk-804.027*
  - Tk-8.4.18 and libjpeg-6b

URI-1.35

The URI module implements the URI class. Objects of this class represent Uniform Resource Identifier references as specified in RFC 2396 and updated by RFC 2732 and can be used to access and manipulate the various components that make up these strings. The URI module and all its dependencies are installed using the standard build and installation instructions.

- *URI-1.35*
  - *Business-ISBN-1.84* (optional, only used during the test suite)
    - LWP::Simple is required for many of the tests. This is a circular dependency.
    - *Business-ISBN-Data-1.17*
      - *Test-Prereq-1.033* (you may need to set up your CPAN access parameters by issuing the command **perl -MCPAN -e shell** before running the test suite, else the tests may hang)
        - Module::Info-0.31
        - Module::Build-0.2808 (optional)
        - *Module-CoreList-2.12*
          - Test::Pod-1.26 (optionally used during the tests)
    - Test::Pod::Coverage-1.08 (optionally used during the tests)

XML::Parser-2.34

The XML::Parser module is a Perl extension interface to James Clark's XML parser, expat. The module is installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *XML-Parser-2.34*
  - expat-2.0.1
  - libwww-perl-5.806 (optionally used during the tests)

XML::Simple-2.18

The XML::Simple module is a Perl extension that provides an easy API to read and write XML (especially config files). The module and all dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

- *XML-Simple-2.18*
  - One of the following four modules must be installed:
    - *XML-SAX-0.16*
      - *XML-NamespaceSupport-1.09*
    - *XML-SAX-Expat-0.38*
    - *XML-LibXML-1.63*
    - XML::Parser-2.34
  - *Tie-IxHash-1.21*

YAML-0.65

The YAML modules implement a YAML Loader and Dumper based on the YAML 1.0 specification *http://www.yaml.org/spec/*. YAML is a generic data serialization language that is optimized for human readability. It can be used to express the data structures of most modern programming languages. The module and dependencies are installed using the standard Perl module build and installation instructions.

Note

The YAML, Test::Base and Spiffy modules will install UTF-8 encoded manual pages. To modify the manual pages so that non-UTF-8 encoded pages are installed, issue the following commands (before any other build commands):

```
For Spiffy:     sed -i 's,\xc3\xb6,o,' lib/Spiffy.pm

For Test::Base: sed -i 's,\xc3\xb6,o,' \
                  lib/Test/Base{,/Filter}.pm \
                  lib/Module/Install/TestBase.pm

For YAML:       sed -i 's,\xc3\xb6,o,' \
                  ysh \
                  lib{,/Test}/YAML.pm \
                  lib/YAML/{Types,Node,Error,Marshall,Tag,Base}.pm \
                  lib/YAML/{Loader,Dumper}{,/Base}.pm
```

- *YAML-0.65*
  - *Test-Base-0.54* (optionally used during the tests)
    - *Spiffy-0.30*
  - Text::Diff-0.35 (optionally used during the tests)
  - Test::Simple-0.70 (optionally used during the tests)

Standard Installation of Perl Modules

Install Perl modules by running the following commands:

```
perl Makefile.PL &&
make &&
make test
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Note

When reinstalling a Perl module, sometimes older versions of the module being reinstalled are in other directories specified in *`@INC`*. To delete all other versions of the module being reinstalled (not simply older ones) set the `UNINST` variable:

```
make install UNINST=1
```

(Alternate) Auto Installation of Perl Modules.

There is an alternate way of installing the modules using the **cpan** shell **install** command. The command automatically downloads the source from the CPAN archive, extracts it, runs the compilation, testing and installation commands mentioned above, and removes the build source tree. You may still need to install dependent library packages before running the automated installation method.

The first time you run **cpan**, you'll be prompted to enter some information regarding download locations and methods. This information is retained in files located in `~/.cpan`. Start the **cpan** shell by issuing '**cpan**' as the `root` user. Any module may now be installed from the *`cpan>`* prompt with the command:

```
install <Module::Name>
```

For additional commands and help, issue '**help**' from the *`cpan>`* prompt.

Alternatively, for scripted or non-interactive installations, use the following syntax as the `root` user to install one or more modules:

```
cpan -i <Module1::Name> <Module2::Name>
```

Review the `cpan.1` man page for additional parameters you can pass to **cpan** on the command line.

PHP-5.2.3

Introduction to PHP

PHP is the PHP Hypertext Preprocessor. Primarily used in dynamic web sites, it allows for programming code to be directly embedded into the HTML markup.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://us2.php.net/distributions/php-5.2.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.isu.edu.tw/pub/Unix/Web/PHP/distributions/php-5.2.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: eb50b751c8e1ced05bd012d5a0e4dec3
- Download size: 7.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 250 MB (includes installing all documentation)
- Estimated build time: 2.5 SBU (additional 2.7 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Pre-built documentation (optional): *http://www.php.net/download-docs.php*

PHP Dependencies

Required

Apache-2.2.8

Recommended

libxml2-2.6.31

Optional System Utilities and Libraries

libxslt-1.1.22, GMP-4.2.2, PCRE-7.6, Aspell-0.60.5, pkg-config-0.22, Recode-3.6, expat-2.0.1 (deprecated alternative to libxml2-2.6.31), *OSSP mm*, *Net-SNMP*, Pth-2.0.7, *re2c*, *XMLRPC-EPI*, *Dmalloc*, and an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command)

Optional Graphics Utilities and Libraries

libjpeg-6b, LibTIFF-3.8.2, libpng-1.2.29, libexif-0.6.16, FreeType-2.3.7, X Window System, *ClibPDF*, *GD*, *t1lib*, and *FDF Toolkit*

Optional Web Utilities

cURL-7.16.3, HTML Tidy-cvs_20070326, *mnoGoSearch*, *Hyperwave*, *Roxen WebServer*, *Caudium*, and *WDDX*

Optional Data Management Utilities and Libraries

OpenLDAP-2.3.39, GDBM-1.8.3, MySQL-5.0.41, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, unixODBC-2.2.12, *QDBM*, *cdb*, *SQLite*, *Mini SQL*, *Empress*, *Birdstep*, *DBMaker*, *Adabas*, *FrontBase*, and *Monetra*

PHP also provides support for many commercial database tools such as Oracle, SAP and ODBC Router.

Optional Security/Encryption Utilities and Libraries

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1, *libmcrypt*, and *mhash*

Installation of PHP

You can use PHP for server-side scripting, command-line scripting or client-side GUI applications. This book provides instructions for setting up PHP for server-side scripting as it is the most common form.

Note

PHP has many more **configure** options that will enable support for various things. You can use **./configure --help** to see a full list of the available options. Also, use of the *PHP web site* is highly recommended, as their online docs are very good. An example of a **configure** command that utilizes many of the most common dependencies can be found at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/php_configure.txt*.

If, for whatever reason, you don't have libxml2-2.6.31 installed, you need to add `--disable-libxml` to the **configure** command in the instructions below. Note that this will prevent the **pear** command from being built.

Install PHP by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's/const char \*errpfx,/const DB_ENV *dbenv, & const/' \
    ext/dba/dba_db4.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --with-apxs2 \
            --enable-force-cgi-redirect \
            --enable-discard-path \
            --with-config-file-path=/etc \
            --with-zlib \
            --enable-bcmath \
            --with-bz2 \
            --enable-calendar \
            --enable-dba \
            --enable-exif \
            --enable-ftp \
            --with-gettext \
            --enable-mbstring \
            --with-ncurses \
            --with-readline &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**. Some of the tests are known to fail.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 php.ini-recommended /etc/php.ini &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3 &&
install -v -m644 CODING_STANDARDS EXTENSIONS INSTALL NEWS \
                 README* TODO* UPGRADING php.gif \
    /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3 &&
ln -v -s /usr/lib/php/doc/Archive_Tar/docs/Archive_Tar.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3
```

The pre-built HTML documentation is packaged in two forms: a tarball containing many individual files, useful for quick loading into your browser, and one large individual file, which is useful for using the search utility of your browser. If you downloaded either, or both, of the documentation files, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install them (note these instructions assume English docs, modify the tarball names below if necessary).

For the “Single HTML” file:

```
install -v -m644 ../php_manual_en.html.gz \
    /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3 &&
gunzip -v /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3/php_manual_en.html.gz
```

For the “Many HTML files” tarball:

```
tar -xvf ../php_manual_en.tar.gz -C /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3 &&
chown -v -R root:root /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3/html
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '...' ext/dba/dba_db4.c: This command is used to fix an issue with the use of Berkeley DB >= 4.3.x.

`--with-apxs2`: This parameter builds the Apache HTTPD 2.0 module.

`--with-config-file-path=/etc`: This parameter makes PHP look for the `php.ini` configuration file in `/etc`.

`--with-zlib`: This parameter adds support for Zlib compression.

`--enable-bcmath`: Enables **bc** style precision math functions.

`--with-bz2`: Adds support for Bzip2 compression functions.

`--enable-calendar`: This parameter provides support for calendar conversion.

`--enable-dba`: This parameter enables support for database (dbm-style) abstraction layer functions.

`--enable-exif`: Enables functions to access metadata from images.

`--enable-ftp`: This parameter enables FTP functions.

`--with-gettext`: Enables functions that use Gettext text translation.

`--enable-mbstring`: This parameter enables multibyte string support.

`--with-ncurses`: Provides ncurses terminal independent cursor handling.

--with-readline: This parameter enables command line Readline support.

--disable-libxml: This parameter allows building PHP without libxml2 installed.

Configuring PHP

Config Files

`/etc/php.ini` and `/etc/pear.conf`

Configuration Information

The file used as the default `/etc/php.ini` configuration file is recommended by the PHP development team. This file modifies the default behavior of PHP. If no `/etc/php.ini` is used, all configuration settings fall to the defaults. You should review the comments in this file and ensure the changes are acceptable in your particular environment.

You may have noticed the following from the output of the **make install** command:

```
You may want to add: /usr/lib/php to your php.ini include_path
```

If desired, add the entry using the following command as the `root` user:

```
sed -i 's@php/includes"@&\ninclude_path = ".:/usr/lib/php"@' \
    /etc/php.ini
```

To enable PHP support in the Apache web server, a new LoadModule (which should be handled automatically by the **make install** command) and AddType directives must be added to the `httpd.conf` file:

```
LoadModule php5_module lib/apache/libphp5.so
AddType application/x-httpd-php .php
```

Additionally, it can be useful to add an entry for `index.php` to the DirectoryIndex directive of the `httpd.conf` file. Lastly, adding a line to setup the `.phps` extension to show highlighted PHP source may be desirable:

```
AddType application/x-httpd-php-source .phps
```

You'll need to restart the Apache web server after making any modifications to the `httpd.conf` file.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pear, peardev, pecl, php, php-config and phpize
Installed Library:	libphp5.so Apache module
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/php, /usr/lib/php and /usr/share/doc/php-5.2.3

Short Descriptions

php is a command line interface that enables you to parse and execute PHP code.

pear is the PHP Extension and Application Repository (PEAR) package manager.

Python-2.5.2

Introduction to Python

The Python package contains the Python development environment. This is useful for object-oriented programming, writing scripts, prototyping large programs or developing entire applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.python.org/ftp/python/2.5.2/Python-2.5.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/Python-2.5.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: afb5451049eda91fbde10bd5a4b7fadc
- Download size: 9.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 180 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.1 SBU (additional 2.7 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

Required Patch

- *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/Python-2.5.2-gdbm-1.patch*

Optional HTML Documentation

- *http://docs.python.org/ftp/python/doc/2.5/html-2.5.tar.bz2*

Python Dependencies

Optional

Pth-2.0.7

Optional (to create package-specific support modules)

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Tk-8.4.18, GDBM-1.8.3, and *SQLite 3*

Installation of Python

Install Python by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../Python-2.5.2-gdbm-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**. Note that if you have an existing Python installation which includes the PyXML module, the tests could produce a segmentation fault.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

There is no documentation installed using the instructions above. However, There are LaTeX sources included with the distribution. See the `Doc/README` file in the source distribution for instructions to format the LaTeX sources. Alternatively, you can download preformatted documentation from *http://docs.python.org/download.html*.

In order to use the **help ('name_string')** feature of the **python** interpreter with some statements and keywords, you must download (or create) the optional HTML documentation and install it. If you downloaded the HTML docs, issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/Python-2.5.2/html &&
tar --strip-components=1 \
    --no-same-owner \
    --no-same-permissions \
    -C /usr/share/doc/Python-2.5.2/html \
    -xvf ../html-2.5.tar.bz2
```

In order for **python** to find the installed documentation, you must add the following environment variable to individual user's or the system's profile:

```
export PYTHONDOCS=/usr/share/doc/Python-2.5.2/html
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	pydoc, python, python2.5, smtpd.py, and optionally if Tk is installed, idle
Installed Libraries:	libpython2.5.so and numerous modules installed in /usr/lib/python2.5/lib-dynload
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/python2.5, /usr/lib/python2.5, and /usr/share/doc/python-2.5.2

Short Descriptions

idle	is a wrapper script that opens a Python aware GUI editor.
pydoc	is the Python documentation tool.
python	is an interpreted, interactive, object-oriented programming language.
python2.5	is a version-specific name for the **python** program.
smtpd.py	is an SMTP proxy implemented in Python.

Python Modules

Introduction to Python Modules

The Python module packages add useful objects to the Python language. Modules utilized by packages throughout BLFS are listed here, along with their dependencies. Installation of the modules shown on this page is meant to follow from top to bottom to handle optional dependencies in each module.

- PyXML-0.8.4
- Pycairo-1.4.0
- PyGObject-2.12.3
- PyGTK-2.10.6
- PyORBit-2.14.3
- Gnome-Python-2.18.2
- Gnome-Python-Desktop-2.18.0

PyXML-0.8.4

The PyXML package contains a validating XML parser, an implementation of the SAX and DOM programming interfaces, an interface to the Expat parser, and a C helper module that can speed up `xmllib.py` by a factor of five. This is useful for validating, parsing and manipulating XML files using Python programs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/pyxml/PyXML-0.8.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/PyXML-0.8.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 1f7655050cebbb664db976405fdba209
- Download size: 734 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 14.6 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

PyXML Dependencies

Required

Python-2.5.2

Installation of PyXML

Install PyXML by running the following commands:

```
python setup.py build
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
python setup.py install &&
install -v -m644 doc/man/xmlproc_*.1 /usr/share/man/man1 &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/PyXML-0.8.4 &&
cp -v -R doc demo test /usr/share/doc/PyXML-0.8.4 &&
install -v -m644 README* /usr/share/doc/PyXML-0.8.4
```

To run the regression tests, the package must first be installed. Then, as an unprivileged user, issue the following commands:

```
cd test &&
python regrtest.py &&
cd ..
```

Command Explanations

python setup.py build: This command copies the `*.py` files to a staging area and compiles the C extensions.

python setup.py install: This command installs the package.

Contents

Installed Programs:	xmlproc_parse and xmlproc_val
Installed Libraries:	PyXML Python library modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/_xmlplus and /usr/share/doc/PyXML-0.8.4

Short Descriptions

xmlproc_parse	is a simple XML file parser using the xmlproc parser.
xmlproc_val	is a validating XML file parser using the xmlproc parser.

Pycairo-1.4.0

Pycairo provides Python bindings to Cairo.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://cairographics.org/releases/pycairo-1.4.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: e26e77919b606113f565d70036c1f504
- Download size: 468 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Pycairo Dependencies

Required

Python-2.5.2 and cairo-1.4.14

Installation of Pycairo

Install Pycairo by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

To run the regression tests, the package must first be installed. Then, as an unprivileged user, issue the following commands:

```
(cd test && python test.py)
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Pycairo Python library module
Installed Directories: /usr/include/pycairo and /usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/cairo

PyGObject-2.12.3

PyGObject provides Python bindings to the GObject class from GLib.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pygobject/2.12/pygobject-2.12.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pygobject/2.12/pygobject-2.12.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 009986021225b7ea6e0ba848707785af
- Download size: 331 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.2
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

PyGObject Dependencies

Required

Python-2.5.2 and GLib-2.12.12

Optional (to Build Documentation)

libxslt-1.1.22

Installation of PyGObject

Install PyGObject by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-docs`: This option disables the rebuilding of the html documentation if libxslt-1.1.22 is installed.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: PyGObject Python library module
Installed Directories: /usr/include/pygtk-2.0, /usr/share/pygobject and /usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/gtk-2.0

PyGTK-2.10.6

PyGTK lets you to easily create programs with a graphical user interface using the Python programming language.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pygtk/2.10/pygtk-2.10.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pygtk/2.10/pygtk-2.10.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f051e25adcbdc1ddcf736fadad3d66f2
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

PyGTK Dependencies

Required

PyGObject-2.12.3

Required (atk module)

ATK-1.18.0

Required (pango module)

Pango-1.16.4

Required (pangocairo module)

Pycairo-1.4.0 and Pango-1.16.4

Required (gtk and gtk.unixprint modules)

Pycairo-1.4.0 and GTK+-2.10.13

Required (gtk.libglade module)

Pycairo-1.4.0 and libglade-2.6.1

Optional

Numeric (version 24.2)

Optional (to Build Documentation)

libxslt-1.1.22

Installation of PyGTK

Install PyGTK by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

The tests must be run from an active X display. If this is so, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-docs`: This option enables rebuilding the html documentation if libxslt-1.1.22 is installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pygtk-codegen-2.0 and pygtk-demo
Installed Libraries:	PyGTK Python library modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/pygtk, /usr/share/pygtk and /usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/gtk-2.0

Short Descriptions

pygtk-codegen-2.0	is a wrapper script to run the PyGTK codegen module.
pygtk-demo	is a Python wrapper to run the PyGTK demo program.

PyORBit-2.14.3

This is a Python language binding for the ORBit2 CORBA implementation.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pyorbit/2.14/pyorbit-2.14.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pyorbit/2.14/pyorbit-2.14.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3c4d42ae1a7303fd85071a842617043f
- Download size: 0.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

PyORBit Dependencies

Required

Python-2.5.2 and ORBit2-2.14.7

Installation of PyORBit

Install PyORBit by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: PyORBit Python library module
Installed Directories: /usr/include/pyorbit-2

Gnome-Python-2.18.2

Gnome-Python provides Python modules for various GNOME libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-python/2.18/gnome-python-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-python/2.18/gnome-python-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3df58e4354526d4e0be8524c0bf6ddb8
- Download size: 0.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Gnome-Python Dependencies

Required

PyGTK-2.10.6 and libgnome-2.18.0

Required (gnome.ui module)

PyORBit-2.14.3 and libgnomeui-2.18.1

Required (gnome.canvas module)

libgnomecanvas-2.14.0

Required (gnomevfs module bonobo support)

PyORBit-2.14.3

Required (bonobo.ui module)

libbonoboui-2.18.0

Installation of Gnome-Python

Install Gnome-Python by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Gnome-Python library modules
Installed Directories: /usr/include/gnome-python-2.0

Gnome-Python-Desktop-2.18.0

Gnome-Python-Desktop provides additional Python modules for GNOME libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-python-desktop/2.18/gnome-python-desktop-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-python-desktop/2.18/gnome-python-desktop-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ce1b1c095a69c2656177570a2939fabb
- Download size: 0.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Gnome-Python-Desktop Dependencies

Required

Gnome-Python-2.18.2

Required (gnomeapplet module)

GNOME Panel-2.18.3

Required (gnomeprint module)

libgnomeprint-2.18.0

Required (gnomeprint.ui module)

libgnomeprintui-2.18.0

Required (gtksourceview module)

gtksourceview-1.8.5

Required (wnck module)

libwnck-2.18.3

Required (totem.plparser module)

Totem-2.18.2

Required (gtop module)

LibGTop-2.14.9

Required (nautilusburn module)

Nautilus CD Burner-2.18.2

Required (mediaprofiles module)

GNOME Media-2.18.0

Required (rsvg module)

librsvg-2.16.1

Required (metacity module)

Metacity-2.18.5

Required (gnomekeyring module)

gnome-keyring-0.8.1

Required (gnomedesktop module)

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3

Required (bugbuddy module)

bug-buddy-2.18.1

Installation of Gnome-Python-Desktop

Install Gnome-Python-Desktop by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-metacity`: This option enables building the metacity module if Metacity-2.18.5 is installed.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Gnome-Python-Desktop library modules
Installed Directories: None

Ruby-1.8.6-p111

Introduction to Ruby

The Ruby package contains the Ruby development environment. This is useful for object-oriented scripting.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.ruby-lang.org/pub/ruby/1.8/ruby-1.8.6-p111.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e1d38b7d4f1be55726d6927a3395ce3b
- Download size: 3.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 115 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.1 SBU

Ruby Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Tk-8.4.18, and GDBM-1.8.3

Installation of Ruby

Install Ruby by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-shared \
            --enable-pthread \
            --enable-install-doc &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-shared`: This parameter builds the `libruby` shared library.

`--enable-pthread`: This parameter links the threading library into the Ruby build.

Contents

Installed Programs:	ruby, irb, erb, rdoc, ri, and testrb
Installed Libraries:	libruby.so, libruby-static.a and numerous modules located in the `/usr/lib/ruby` hierarchy.
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/ruby and /usr/share/ri

Short Descriptions

ruby	is an interpreted scripting language for quick and easy object-oriented programming.

irb	is the interactive interface for Ruby.
erb	is Tiny eRuby. It interprets a Ruby code embedded text file.
ri	displays documentation from a database on Ruby classes, modules and methods.
`libruby.so`	contains the API functions required by Ruby.

Tcl-8.4.18

Introduction to Tcl

The Tcl package contains the Tool Command Language, a robust general-purpose scripting language.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tcl8.4.18-src.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/tcl8.4.18-src.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 7d8bc95036f797b1a2b62a5a382d2cc1
- Download size: 3.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 25 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU (additional 0.7 SBU to run the test suite)

Installation of Tcl

This package is also installed in LFS during the bootstrap phase. As it is not installed during Chapter 6 of LFS, installation instructions are included here in BLFS.

Install Tcl by running the following commands:

```
cd unix &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-threads \
            --mandir=/usr/share/man &&
make &&
sed -i \
    -e "s@^\(TCL_SRC_DIR='\).*@\1/usr/include'@" \
    -e "/TCL_B/s@='\(-L\)\?.*unix@='\1/usr/lib@" \
    -e "/SEARCH/s/=.*/=''/" \
    tclConfig.sh
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-private-headers &&
ln -v -sf tclsh8.4 /usr/bin/tclsh
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-threads`: This switch forces the package to build with thread support.

make install-private-headers: This command is used to install the Tcl library interface headers used by other packages if they link to the Tcl library.

ln -v -sf tclsh8.4 /usr/bin/tclsh: This command is used to create a compatibility symbolic link to the **tclsh8.4** file as many packages expect a file named **tclsh**.

sed -i -e ... tclConfig.sh: The Tcl package expects that its source tree is preserved so that packages depending on it for their compilation can utilize it. This **sed** removes the references to the build directory and replaces them with saner system-wide locations.

Contents

Installed Programs:	tclsh and tclsh8.4
Installed Libraries:	libtcl.so and libtclstub8.4.a
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/tcl8.4

Short Descriptions

tclsh	is a symlink to the **tclsh8.4** program.
tclsh8.4	is a simple shell containing the Tcl interpreter.
`libtcl.so`	contains the API functions required by Tcl.

Tk-8.4.18

Introduction to Tk

The Tk package contains a TCL GUI Toolkit.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tk8.4.18-src.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/tk8.4.18-src.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: bf52be013df31198b144d1ca72b094fb
- Download size: 3.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 23 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Tk Dependencies

Required

X Window System and Tcl-8.4.18

Installation of Tk

Install Tk by running the following commands:

```
cd unix &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-threads \
            --mandir=/usr/share/man &&
make &&
sed -i \
    -e "s@^\(TK_SRC_DIR='\).*@\1/usr/include'@" \
    -e "/TK_B/s@='\(-L\)\?.*unix@='\1/usr/lib@" \
    -e "/SEARCH/s/=.*/=''/" \
    tkConfig.sh
```

Running the tests is not recommended. Some tests may crash your X Server. To test the results anyway, issue: **make test**. Ensure you run it from an X Window display device with the GLX extensions loaded, else the tests will hang.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-private-headers &&
ln -v -sf wish8.4 /usr/bin/wish
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-threads`: This switch forces the package to build with thread support.

make install-private-headers: This command is used to install the Tk library interface headers used by other packages if they link to the Tk library.

ln -v -sf wish8.4 /usr/bin/wish: This command is used to create a compatibility symbolic link to the **wish8.4** file as many packages expect a file named **wish**.

sed -i -e ... tkConfig.sh: The Tk package expects that its source tree is preserved so that packages depending on it for their compilation can utilize it. This **sed** removes the references to the build directory and replaces them with saner system-wide locations.

Contents

Installed Programs:	wish and wish8.4
Installed Libraries:	libtk.so and libtkstub8.4.a
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/tk8.4

Short Descriptions

wish	is a symlink to the **wish8.4** program.
wish8.4	is a simple shell containing the Tk toolkit that creates a main window and then processes Tcl commands.
`libtk.so`	contains the API functions required by Tk.

Other Programming Tools

Introduction

This section is provided to show you some additional programming tools for which instructions have not yet been created in the book or for those that are not appropriate for the book. Note that these packages may not have been tested by the BLFS team, but their mention here is meant to be a convenient source of additional information.

Programming Frameworks, Languages and Compilers

A+

A+ is a powerful and efficient programming language. It is freely available under the GNU General Public License. It embodies a rich set of functions and operators, a modern graphical user interface with many widgets and automatic synchronization of widgets and variables, asynchronous execution of functions associated with variables and events, dynamic loading of user compiled subroutines, and many other features. Execution is by a rather efficient interpreter. A+ was created at Morgan Stanley. Primarily used in a computationally-intensive business environment, many critical applications written in A+ have withstood the demands of real world developers over many years. Written in an interpreted language, A+ applications tend to be portable.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.aplusdev.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.aplusdev.org/Download/index.html*

ABC

ABC is an interactive programming language and environment for personal computing, originally intended as a good replacement for BASIC. It was designed by first doing a task analysis of the programming task. ABC is easy to learn (an hour or so for someone who has already programmed), and yet easy to use. Originally intended as a language for beginners, it has evolved into a powerful tool for beginners and experts alike. Some features of the language include: a powerful collection of only five data types that easily combines strong typing, yet without declarations, no limitations (such as max int), apart from sheer exhaustion of memory refinements to support top-down programming, nesting by indentation and programs typically are one fourth or one fifth the size of the equivalent Pascal or C program.

- Project Home Page: *http://homepages.cwi.nl/~steven/abc/*
- Download Location: *http://homepages.cwi.nl/~steven/abc/implementations.html*

ALF

ALF is a language which combines functional and logic programming techniques. The foundation of ALF is Horn clause logic with equality which consists of predicates and Horn clauses for logic programming, and functions and equations for functional programming. The ALF system is an efficient implementation of the combination of resolution, narrowing, rewriting and rejection. Similarly to Prolog, ALF uses a backtracking strategy corresponding to a depth-first search in the derivation tree.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.informatik.uni-kiel.de/~mh/systems/ALF.html*
- Download Location: *http://www.informatik.uni-kiel.de/~mh/systems/ALF/*

ASM

ASM is a Java bytecode manipulation framework. It can be used to dynamically generate stub classes or other proxy classes, directly in binary form, or to dynamically modify classes at load time, i.e., just before they are loaded into the Java Virtual Machine. ASM offers similar functionalities as BCEL or SERP, but is much smaller (33KB instead of

350KB for BCEL and 150KB for SERP) and faster than these tools (the overhead of a load time class transformation is of the order of 60% with ASM, 700% or more with BCEL, and 1100% or more with SERP). Indeed ASM was designed to be used in a dynamic way (though it works statically as well) and was therefore designed and implemented to be as small and as fast as possible.

- Project Home Page: *http://asm.objectweb.org/*
- Download Location: *http://forge.objectweb.org/projects/asm/*

BCPL

BCPL is a simple typeless language that was designed in 1966 by Martin Richards and implemented for the first time at MIT in the Spring of 1967.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/users/mr/BCPL.html*
- Download Location: *http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/users/mr/BCPL/*

BETA

BETA is developed within the Scandinavian School of object-orientation, where the first object-oriented language, Simula, was developed. BETA is a modern language in the Simula tradition. The resulting language is smaller than Simula in spite of being considerably more expressive. BETA is a strongly typed language like Simula, Eiffel and C++, with most type checking being carried out at compile-time. It is well known that it is not possible to obtain all type checking at compile time without sacrificing the expressiveness of the language. BETA has optimum balance between compile-time type checking and run-time type checking.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.daimi.au.dk/~beta/*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.daimi.au.dk/pub/beta/*

<bigwig>

<bigwig> is a high-level programming language for developing interactive Web services. Programs are compiled into a conglomerate of lower-level technologies such as C code, HTTP, HTML, JavaScript, and SSL, all running on top of a runtime system based on an Apache Web server module. It is a descendant of the Mawl project but is a completely new design and implementation with vastly expanded ambitions. The <bigwig> language is really a collection of tiny domain-specific languages focusing on different aspects of interactive Web services. These contributing languages are held together by a C-like skeleton language. Thus, <bigwig> has the look and feel of C-programs but with special data and control structures.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.brics.dk/bigwig/*
- Download Location: *http://www.brics.dk/bigwig/download/*

Bigloo

Bigloo is a Scheme implementation devoted to one goal: enabling Scheme based programming style where C(++) is usually required. Bigloo attempts to make Scheme practical by offering features usually presented by traditional programming languages but not offered by Scheme and functional programming. Bigloo compiles Scheme modules and delivers small and fast stand-alone binary executables. It enables full connections between Scheme and C programs, between Scheme and Java programs, and between Scheme and C# programs.

- Project Home Page: *http://www-sop.inria.fr/mimosa/fp/Bigloo/*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp-sop.inria.fr/mimosa/fp/Bigloo/*

C--

C-- is a portable assembly language that can be generated by a front end and implemented by any of several code generators. It serves as an interface between high-level compilers and retargetable, optimizing code generators. Authors of front ends and code generators can cooperate easily.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cminusminus.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.cminusminus.org/code.html*

Caml

Caml is a general-purpose programming language, designed with program safety and reliability in mind. It is very expressive, yet easy to learn and use. Caml supports functional, imperative, and object-oriented programming styles. It has been developed and distributed by INRIA, France's national research institute for computer science, since 1985. The Objective Caml system is the main implementation of the Caml language. It features a powerful module system and a full-fledged object-oriented layer. It comes with a native-code compiler that supports numerous architectures, for high performance; a bytecode compiler, for increased portability; and an interactive loop, for experimentation and rapid development.

- Project Home Page: *http://caml.inria.fr/*
- Download Location: *http://caml.inria.fr/pub/distrib/*

Cayenne

Cayenne is a simple(?) functional language with a powerful type system. The basic types are functions, products, and sums. Functions and products use dependent types to gain additional power. There are very few building blocks in the language, but a lot of “syntactic sugar” to make it more readable. There is no separate module language in Cayenne since the dependent types allow the normal expression language to be used at the module level as well. The design of Cayenne has been heavily influenced by Haskell and constructive type theory and with some things borrowed from Java. The drawback of such a powerful type system is that the type checking becomes undecidable.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.chalmers.se/~augustss/cayenne/*
- Download Location: *http://www.cs.chalmers.se/~augustss/cayenne/get.html*

Ch

Ch is an embeddable C/C++ interpreter for cross-platform scripting, shell programming, 2D/3D plotting, numerical computing, and embedded scripting.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.softintegration.com/*
- Download Location: *http://www.softintegration.com/products/chstandard/download/*

Clean

Clean is a general purpose, state-of-the-art, pure and lazy functional programming language designed for making real-world applications. Clean is the only functional language in the world which offers uniqueness typing. This type system makes it possible in a pure functional language to incorporate destructive updates of arbitrary data structures (including arrays) and to make direct interfaces to the outside imperative world. The type system makes it possible to develop efficient applications.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.ru.nl/~clean/*
- Download Location: *http://www.cs.ru.nl/~clean/Download/download.html*

CORN

CORN is designed for modeling concurrency and advanced computation. It provides lazy evaluation between concurrently worked threads, with object-oriented and functional style of semantic. This language can be also used for parallel computation.

- Project Home Page: *http://corn.telefonia.pl/*
- Download Location: *http://corn.telefonia.pl/download/download.html*

Cyclone

Cyclone is a programming language based on C that is safe, meaning that it rules out programs that have buffer overflows, dangling pointers, format string attacks, and so on. High-level, type-safe languages, such as Java, Scheme, or ML also provide safety, but they don't give the same control over data representations and memory management that C does (witness the fact that the run-time systems for these languages are usually written in C.) Furthermore, porting legacy C code to these languages or interfacing with legacy C libraries is a difficult and error-prone process. The goal of Cyclone is to give programmers the same low-level control and performance of C without sacrificing safety, and to make it easy to port or interface with legacy C code.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.research.att.com/projects/cyclone/*
- Download Location: *http://www.eecs.harvard.edu/~greg/cyclone/software/*

D

D is a general purpose systems and applications programming language. It is a higher level language than C++, but retains the ability to write high performance code and interface directly with the operating system APIs and with hardware. D is well suited to writing medium to large scale million line programs with teams of developers. It is easy to learn, provides many capabilities to aid the programmer, and is well suited to aggressive compiler optimization technology. D is not a scripting language, nor an interpreted language. It doesn't come with a VM, a religion, or an overriding philosophy. It's a practical language for practical programmers who need to get the job done quickly, reliably, and leave behind maintainable, easy to understand code. D is the culmination of decades of experience implementing compilers for many diverse languages, and attempting to construct large projects using those languages. It draws inspiration from those other languages (most especially C++) and tempers it with experience and real world practicality.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.digitalmars.com/d/*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.digitalmars.com/*

DMDScript

DMDScript is Digital Mars' implementation of the ECMA 262 scripting language. Netscape's implementation is called JavaScript, Microsoft's implementation is called JScript. DMDScript is much faster than other implementations, which you can verify with the included benchmark.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.digitalmars.com/dscript/index.html*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.digitalmars.com/*

DotGNU Portable.NET

DotGNU Portable.NET goal is to build a suite of free software tools to build and execute .NET applications, including a C# compiler, assembler, disassembler, and runtime engine. While the initial target platform was GNU/Linux, it is also known to run under Windows, Solaris, NetBSD, FreeBSD, and MacOS X. The runtime engine has been tested on the x86, PowerPC, ARM, Sparc, PARISC, s390, Alpha, and IA-64 processors. DotGNU Portable.NET is part of the

DotGNU project, built in accordance with the requirements of the GNU Project. DotGNU Portable.NET is focused on compatibility with the ECMA specifications for CLI. There are other projects under the DotGNU meta-project to build other necessary pieces of infrastructure, and to explore non-CLI approaches to virtual machine implementation.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.southern-storm.com.au/portable_net.html*
- Download Location: *http://www.southern-storm.com.au/portable_net.html#download*

Dylan

Dylan is an advanced, object-oriented, dynamic language which supports rapid program development. When needed, programs can be optimized for more efficient execution by supplying more type information to the compiler. Nearly all entities in Dylan (including functions, classes, and basic data types such as integers) are first class objects. Additionally, Dylan supports multiple inheritance, polymorphism, multiple dispatch, keyword arguments, object introspection, macros, and many other advanced features... --Peter Hinely.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.gwydiondylan.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.gwydiondylan.org/downloading.phtml*

E

E is a secure distributed Java-based pure-object platform and p2p scripting language. It has two parts: ELib and the E Language. Elib provides the stuff that goes on between objects. As a pure-Java library, ELib provides for inter-process capability-secure distributed programming. Its cryptographic capability protocol enables mutually suspicious Java processes to cooperate safely, and its event-loop concurrency and promise pipelining enable high performance deadlock free distributed pure-object computing. The E Language can be used to express what happens within an object. It provides a convenient and familiar notation for the ELib computational model, so you can program in one model rather than two. Under the covers, this notation expands into Kernel-E, a minimalist lambda-language much like Scheme or Smalltalk. Objects written in the E language are only able to interact with other objects according to ELib's semantics, enabling object granularity intra-process security, including the ability to safely run untrusted mobile code (such as caplets).

- Project Home Page: *http://www.erights.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.erights.org/download/*

elastiC

elastiC is a portable high-level object-oriented interpreted language with a C like syntax. Its main characteristics are: open source, interpreted, has portable bytecode compilation, dynamic typing, automatic real very fast garbage collection, object oriented with meta-programming support (a la Smalltalk), functional programming support (Scheme-like closures with lexical scoping, and eval-like functionality), hierarchical namespaces, a rich set of useful built-in types (dynamic arrays, dictionaries, symbols, ...), extensibile with C (you can add functions, types, classes, methods, packages, ...), embeddable in C. elastiC has been strongly influenced by C, Smalltalk, Scheme and Python and tries to merge the best characteristics of all these languages, while still coherently maintaining its unique personality.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.elasticworld.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.elasticworld.org/download.html*

Erlang/OTP

Erlang/OTP is a development environment based on Erlang. Erlang is a programming language which has many features more commonly associated with an operating system than with a programming language: concurrent processes, scheduling, memory management, distribution, networking, etc. The initial open-source Erlang release

contains the implementation of Erlang, as well as a large part of Ericsson's middleware for building distributed high-availability systems. Erlang is characterized by the following features: robustness, soft real-time, hot code upgrades and incremental code loading.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.erlang.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.erlang.org/download.html*

Euphoria

Euphoria is a simple, flexible, and easy-to-learn programming language. It lets you quickly and easily develop programs for Windows, DOS, Linux and FreeBSD. Euphoria was first released in 1993. Since then Rapid Deployment Software has been steadily improving it with the help of a growing number of enthusiastic users. Although Euphoria provides subscript checking, uninitialized variable checking and numerous other run-time checks, it is extremely fast. People have used it to develop high-speed DOS games, Windows GUI programs, and Linux X Windows programs. It is also very useful for CGI (Web-based) programming.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.rapideuphoria.com/*
- Download Location: *http://www.rapideuphoria.com/v20.htm*

Felix

Felix is an advanced Algol like procedural programming language with a strong functional subsystem. It features ML style static typing, first class functions, pattern matching, garbage collection, polymorphism, and has built in support for high performance microthreading, regular expressions and context free parsing. The system provides a scripting harness so the language can be used like other scripting languages such as Python and Perl, but underneath it generates native code to obtain high performance. A key feature of the system is that it uses the C/C++ object model, and provides an advanced binding sublanguage to support integration with C/C++ at both the source and object levels, both for embedding C/C++ data types and functions into Felix, and for embedding Felix into exitsing C++ architectures. The Felix compiler is written in Objective Caml, and generates ISO C++ which should compile on any platform.

- Project Home Page: *http://felix.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://felix.sourceforge.net/current/www/download.html*

ferite

ferite is a scripting language and engine all in one manageable chunk. It is designed to be easily extended in terms of API, and to be used within other applications making them more configurable and useful to the end user. It has a syntax similar to a number of other languages but remains clean and its own language.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.ferite.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.ferite.org/download.html*

Forth

Forth is a stack-based, extensible language without type-checking. It is probably best known for its "reverse Polish" (postfix) arithmetic notation, familiar to users of Hewlett-Packard calculators. Forth is a real-time programming language originally developed to control telescopes. Forth has many unique features and applications: it can compile itself into a new compiler, reverse-polish coding, edit time error checking and compiling (similar to BASIC), extremely efficient thread based language, can be used to debug itself, extensible; thus can become what ever you need it to be. The links below lead to the website of the Forth Interest Group (FIG), a world-wide, non-profit organization for education in and the promotion of the Forth computer language. Another worthwhile website dedicated to the Forth community is *http://wiki.forthfreak.net/*.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.forth.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.forth.org/compilers.html*

GNU Smalltalk

GNU Smalltalk is a free implementation of the Smalltalk-80 language which runs on most versions on Unix and, in general, everywhere you can find a POSIX-compliance library. An uncommon feature of it is that it is well-versed to scripting tasks and headless processing. See *http://www.gnu.org/software/smalltalk/gst-manual/gst_1.html#SEC1* for a more detailed explanation of GNU Smalltalk.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.gnu.org/software/smalltalk/*
- Download Location: *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/smalltalk/*

Haskell

Haskell is a computer programming language. In particular, it is a polymorphicly typed, lazy, purely functional language, quite different from most other programming languages. The language is named for Haskell Brooks Curry, whose work in mathematical logic serves as a foundation for functional languages. Haskell is based on lambda calculus. There are many implementations of Haskell, among them:

- GHC: *http://www.haskell.org/ghc/*
- HBC: *http://www.cs.chalmers.se/~augustss/hbc/hbc.html*
- Helium: *http://www.cs.uu.nl/helium/*
- Hugs: *http://www.haskell.org/hugs/*
- nhc98: *http://www.haskell.org/nhc98/*

HLA (High Level Assembly)

The HLA language was developed as a tool to help teach assembly language programming and machine organization to University students at the University of California, Riverside. The basic idea was to teach students assembly language programming by leveraging their knowledge of high level languages like C/C++ and Pascal/Delphi. At the same time, HLA was designed to allow advanced assembly language programmers write more readable and more powerful assembly language code.

- Project Home Page: *http://webster.cs.ucr.edu/AsmTools/HLA/*
- Download Location: *http://webster.cs.ucr.edu/AsmTools/HLA/dnld.html*

Icon

Icon is a high-level, general-purpose programming language with a large repertoire of features for processing data structures and character strings. It is an imperative, procedural language with a syntax reminiscent of C and Pascal, but with semantics at a much higher level.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.arizona.edu/icon/*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.cs.arizona.edu/icon/*

Io

Io is a small, prototype-based programming language. The ideas in Io are mostly inspired by Smalltalk (all values are objects), Self (prototype-based), NewtonScript (differential inheritance), Act1 (actors and futures for concurrency), LISP (code is a runtime inspectable/modifiable tree) and Lua (small, embeddable).

- Project Home Page: *http://www.iolanguage.com/about/*
- Download Location: *http://www.iolanguage.com/downloads/*

J

J is a modern, high-level, general-purpose, high-performance programming language. It is portable and runs on Windows, Unix, Mac, and PocketPC handhelds, both as a GUI and in a console. True 64-bit J systems are available for XP64 or Linux64, on AMD64 or Intel EM64T platforms. J systems can be installed and distributed for free.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.jsoftware.com/*
- Download Location: *http://www.jsoftware.com/download/*

Jamaica

Jamaica, the JVM Macro Assembler, is an easy-to-learn and easy-to-use assembly language for JVM bytecode programming. It uses Java syntax to define a JVM class except for the method body that takes bytecode instructions, including Jamaica's built-in macros. In Jamaica, bytecode instructions use mnemonics and symbolic names for all variables, parameters, data fields, constants and labels.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.judoscript.com/jamaica.html*
- Download Location: *http://www.judoscript.com/download.html*

Joy

Joy is a purely functional programming language. Whereas all other functional programming languages are based on the application of functions to arguments, Joy is based on the composition of functions. All such functions take a stack as an argument and produce a stack as a value. Consequently much of Joy looks like ordinary postfix notation. However, in Joy a function can consume any number of parameters from the stack and leave any number of results on the stack. The concatenation of appropriate programs denotes the composition of the functions which the programs denote.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.latrobe.edu.au/philosophy/phimvt/joy.html*

Judo

Judo is a practical, functional scripting language. It is designed to cover the use cases of not only algorithmic/object-oriented/multi-threaded programming and Java scripting but also a number of major application domain tasks, such as scripting for JDBC, WSDL, ActiveX, OS, multiple file/data formats, etc. Despite its rich functionality, the base language is extremely simple, and domain support syntax is totally intuitive to domain experts, so that even though you have never programmed in Judo, you would have little trouble figuring out what the code does.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.judoscript.com/home.html*
- Download Location: *http://www.judoscript.com/download.html*

JWIG

JWIG is a Java-based high-level programming language for development of interactive Web services. It contains an advanced session model, a flexible mechanism for dynamic construction of XML documents, in particular XHTML, and a powerful API for simplifying use of the HTTP protocol and many other aspects of Web service programming. To support program development, JWIG provides a unique suite of highly specialized program analyses that at compile time verify for a given program that no runtime errors can occur while building documents or receiving form input, and that all documents being shown are valid according to the document type definition for XHTML 1.0. The main goal of the JWIG project is to simplify development of complex Web services, compared to alternatives, such as, Servlets, JSP, ASP, and PHP. JWIG is a descendant of the <bigwig> research language.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.brics.dk/JWIG/*
- Download Location: *http://www.brics.dk/JWIG/download.html*

Lava

Lava is a name unfortunately chosen for several unrelated software development languages/projects. So it doesn't appear as though BLFS has a preference for one over another, the project web sites are listed below, without descriptions of the capabilities or features for any of them.

- Project Home Page: *http://lavape.sourceforge.net/index.htm*
- Project Home Page: *http://javalab.cs.uni-bonn.de/research/darwin/#The%20Lava%20Language*
- Project Home Page: *http://www.md.chalmers.se/~koen/Lava/*
- Project Home Page: *http://members.tripod.com/mathias/IavaHomepage.html*

Lua

Lua is a powerful light-weight programming language designed for extending applications. It is also frequently used as a general-purpose, stand-alone language. It is free software. Lua combines simple procedural syntax with powerful data description constructs based on associative arrays and extensible semantics. It is dynamically typed, interpreted from bytecodes, and has automatic memory management with garbage collection, making it ideal for configuration, scripting, and rapid prototyping. A fundamental concept in the design of Lua is to provide meta-mechanisms for implementing features, instead of providing a host of features directly in the language. For example, although Lua is not a pure object-oriented language, it does provide meta-mechanisms for implementing classes and inheritance. Lua's meta-mechanisms bring an economy of concepts and keep the language small, while allowing the semantics to be extended in unconventional ways. Extensible semantics is a distinguishing feature of Lua. Lua is a language engine that you can embed into your application. This means that, besides syntax and semantics, it has an API that allows the application to exchange data with Lua programs and also to extend Lua with C functions. In this sense, it can be regarded as a language framework for building domain-specific languages. Lua is implemented as a small library of C functions, written in ANSI C, and compiles unmodified in all known platforms. The implementation goals are simplicity, efficiency, portability, and low embedding cost. The result is a fast language engine with small footprint, making it ideal in embedded systems too.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.lua.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.lua.org/download.html*

Mercury

Mercury is a new logic/functional programming language, which combines the clarity and expressiveness of declarative programming with advanced static analysis and error detection features. Its highly optimized execution algorithm delivers efficiency far in excess of existing logic programming systems, and close to conventional programming systems. Mercury addresses the problems of large-scale program development, allowing modularity, separate compilation, and numerous optimization/time trade-offs.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.mu.oz.au/research/mercury/*
- Download Location: *http://www.cs.mu.oz.au/research/mercury/download/release.html*

Mono

Mono provides the necessary software to develop and run .NET client and server applications on Linux, Solaris, Mac OS X, Windows, and Unix. Sponsored by Novell, the Mono open source project has an active and enthusiastic contributing community and is positioned to become the leading choice for development of Linux applications.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.mono-project.com/Main_Page*
- Download Location: *http://go-mono.com/sources/*

MPD

MPD is a variant of the SR programming language. SR has a Pascal-like syntax and uses guarded commands for control statements. MPD has a C-like syntax and C-like control statements. However, the main components of the two languages are the same: resources, globals, operations, procs, procedures, processes, and virtual machines. Moreover, MPD supports the same variety of concurrent programming mechanisms as SR: co statements, semaphores, call/send/forward invocations, and receive and input statements.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.arizona.edu/mpd/*
- Download Location: *http://www.cs.arizona.edu/mpd/download/*

Nemerle

Nemerle is a high-level statically-typed programming language for the .NET platform. It offers functional, object-oriented and imperative features. It has a simple C#-like syntax and a powerful meta-programming system. Features that come from the functional land are variants, pattern matching, type inference and parameter polymorphism (aka generics). The meta-programming system allows great compiler extensibility, embedding domain specific languages, partial evaluation and aspect-oriented programming.

- Project Home Page: *http://nemerle.org/Main_Page*
- Download Location: *http://nemerle.org/Download*

Octave

GNU Octave is a high-level language, primarily intended for numerical computations. It provides a convenient command line interface for solving linear and nonlinear problems numerically, and for performing other numerical experiments using a language that is mostly compatible with Matlab. It may also be used as a batch-oriented language. Octave has extensive tools for solving common numerical linear algebra problems, finding the roots of nonlinear equations, integrating ordinary functions, manipulating polynomials, and integrating ordinary differential and differential-algebraic equations. It is easily extensible and customizable via user-defined functions written in Octave's own language, or using dynamically loaded modules written in C++, C, Fortran, or other languages.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.octave.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.octave.org/download.html*

OO2C (Optimizing Oberon-2 Compiler)

OO2C is an Oberon-2 development platform. It consists of an optimizing compiler, a number of related tools, a set of standard library modules and a reference manual. Oberon-2 is a general-purpose programming language in the tradition of Pascal and Modula-2. Its most important features are block structure, modularity, separate compilation, static typing with strong type checking (also across module boundaries) and type extension with type-bound procedures. Type extension makes Oberon-2 an object-oriented language.

- Project Home Page: *http://ooc.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/ooc/*

Ordered Graph Data Language (OGDL)

OGDL is a structured textual format that represents information in the form of graphs, where the nodes are strings and the arcs or edges are spaces or indentation.

- Project Home Page: *http://ogdl.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/ogdl/*

Pike

Pike is a dynamic programming language with a syntax similar to Java and C. It is simple to learn, does not require long compilation passes and has powerful built-in data types allowing simple and really fast data manipulation. Pike is released under the GNU GPL, GNU LGPL and MPL.

- Project Home Page: *http://pike.ida.liu.se/*
- Download Location: *http://pike.ida.liu.se/download/pub/pike*

Pyrex

Pyrex is a language specially designed for writing Python extension modules. It's designed to bridge the gap between the nice, high-level, easy-to-use world of Python and the messy, low-level world of C. Pyrex lets you write code that mixes Python and C data types any way you want, and compiles it into a C extension for Python.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cosc.canterbury.ac.nz/~greg/python/Pyrex/*

Q

Q is a functional programming language based on term rewriting. Thus, a Q program or “script” is simply a collection of equations which are used to evaluate expressions in a symbolic fashion. The equations establish algebraic identities and are interpreted as rewriting rules in order to reduce expressions to “normal forms”.

- Project Home Page: *http://q-lang.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/q-lang/*

R

R is a language and environment for statistical computing and graphics. It is a GNU project similar to the S language and environment which was developed at Bell Laboratories (formerly AT&T, now Lucent Technologies) by John Chambers and colleagues. R can be considered as a different implementation of S. There are some important differences, but much code written for S runs unaltered under R. R provides a wide variety of statistical (linear and nonlinear modelling, classical statistical tests, time-series analysis, classification, clustering, ...) and graphical techniques, and is highly extensible. The S language is often the vehicle of choice for research in statistical methodology, and R provides an Open Source route to participation in that activity.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.r-project.org/*
- Download Location: *http://cran.r-project.org/mirrors.html*

Regina Rexx

Regina is a Rexx interpreter that has been ported to most Unix platforms (Linux, FreeBSD, Solaris, AIX, HP-UX, etc.) and also to OS/2, eCS, DOS, Win9x/Me/NT/2k/XP, Amiga, AROS, QNX4.x, QNX6.x BeOS, MacOS X, EPOC32, AtheOS, OpenVMS, SkyOS and OpenEdition. Rexx is a programming language that was designed to be easy to use for inexperienced programmers yet powerful enough for experienced users. It is also a language ideally suited as a macro language for other applications.

- Project Home Page: *http://regina-rexx.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/regina-rexx*

Serp

Serp is an open source framework for manipulating Java bytecode. The goal of the Serp bytecode framework is to tap the full power of bytecode modification while lowering its associated costs. The framework provides a set of high-level APIs for manipulating all aspects of bytecode, from large-scale structures like class member fields to the

individual instructions that comprise the code of methods. While in order to perform any advanced manipulation, some understanding of the class file format and especially of the JVM instruction set is necessary, the framework makes it as easy as possible to enter the world of bytecode development.

- Project Home Page: *http://serp.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://serp.sourceforge.net/files/*

Small Device C Compiler (SDCC)

SDCC is a Freeware, retargetable, optimizing ANSI-C compiler that targets the Intel 8051, Maxim 80DS390 and the Zilog Z80 based MCUs. Work is in progress on supporting the Motorola 68HC08 as well as Microchip PIC16 and PIC18 series. The entire source code for the compiler is distributed under GPL.

- Project Home Page: *http://sdcc.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://sdcc.sourceforge.net/snap.php#Source*

SmartEiffel (The GNU Eiffel Compiler)

SmartEiffel claims to be “the fastest and the slimmest multi-platform Eiffel compiler on Earth”. Eiffel is an object-oriented programming language which emphasizes the production of robust software. Its syntax is keyword-oriented in the ALGOL and Pascal tradition. Eiffel is strongly statically typed, with automatic memory management (typically implemented by garbage collection). Distinguishing characteristics of Eiffel include Design by contract (DbC), liberal use of inheritance including multiple inheritance, a type system handling both value and reference semantics, and generic classes. Eiffel has a unified type system—all types in Eiffel are classes, so it is possible to create subclasses of the basic classes such as INTEGER. Eiffel has operator overloading, including the ability to define new operators, but does not have method overloading.

- Project Home Page: *http://smarteiffel.loria.fr/*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.loria.fr/pub/loria/SmartEiffel/*

Squeak

Squeak is an open, highly-portable Smalltalk implementation whose virtual machine is written entirely in Smalltalk, making it easy to debug, analyze, and change. To achieve practical performance, a translator produces an equivalent C program whose performance is comparable to commercial Smalltalks. Other noteworthy aspects of Squeak include: real-time sound and music synthesis written entirely in Smalltalk, extensions of BitBlt to handle color of any depth and anti-aliased image rotation and scaling, network access support that allows simple construction of servers and other useful facilities, it runs bit-identical on many platforms (Windows, Mac, Unix, and others), a compact object format that typically requires only a single word of overhead per object and a simple yet efficient incremental garbage collector for 32-bit direct pointers efficient bulk-mutation of objects.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.squeak.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.squeak.org/Download/*

SR (Synchronizing Resources)

SR is a language for writing concurrent programs. The main language constructs are resources and operations. Resources encapsulate processes and variables they share; operations provide the primary mechanism for process interaction. SR provides a novel integration of the mechanisms for invoking and servicing operations. Consequently, all of local and remote procedure call, rendezvous, message passing, dynamic process creation, multicast, and semaphores are supported. SR also supports shared global variables and operations.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.arizona.edu/sr/index.html*

- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.cs.arizona.edu/sr/*

Standard ML

Standard ML is a safe, modular, strict, functional, polymorphic programming language with compile-time type checking and type inference, garbage collection, exception handling, immutable data types and updatable references, abstract data types, and parametric modules. It has efficient implementations and a formal definition with a proof of soundness. There are many implementations of Standard ML, among them:

- ML Kit: *http://www.it-c.dk/research/mlkit/*
- MLton: *http://mlton.org/*
- Moscow ML: *http://www.dina.kvl.dk/~sestoft/mosml.html*
- Poly/ML: *http://www.polyml.org/*
- Standard ML of New Jersey: *http://www.smlnj.org/*

Steel Bank Common Lisp (SBCL)

SBCL is an open source (free software) compiler and runtime system for ANSI Common Lisp. It provides an interactive environment including an integrated native compiler, a debugger, and many extensions. SBCL runs on a number of platforms.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.sbcl.org/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/sbcl/*

Tiny C Compiler (TCC)

Tiny C Compiler is a small C compiler that can be used to compile and execute C code everywhere, for example on rescue disks (about 100KB for x86 TCC executable, including C preprocessor, C compiler, assembler and linker). TCC is fast. It generates optimized x86 code, has no byte code overhead and compiles, assembles and links several times faster than GCC. TCC is versatile, any C dynamic library can be used directly. It is heading toward full ISOC99 compliance and can compile itself. The compiler is safe as it includes an optional memory and bound checker. Bound checked code can be mixed freely with standard code. TCC compiles and executes C source directly. No linking or assembly necessary. A full C preprocessor and GNU-like assembler is included. It is C script supported; just add "#!/usr/local/bin/tcc -run" on the first line of your C source, and execute it directly from the command line. With libtcc, you can use TCC as a backend for dynamic code generation.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.tinycc.org/*
- Download Location: *http://fabrice.bellard.free.fr/tcc/*

TinyCOBOL

TinyCOBOL is a COBOL compiler being developed by members of the free software community. The mission is to produce a COBOL compiler based on the COBOL 85 standards. TinyCOBOL is available for the Intel architecture (IA32) and compatible processors on the following platforms: BeOS, FreeBSD, Linux and MinGW on Windows.

- Project Home Page: *http://tinycobol.org/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/tiny-cobol/*

Yorick

Yorick is an interpreted programming language, designed for postprocessing or steering large scientific simulation codes. Smaller scientific simulations or calculations, such as the flow past an airfoil or the motion of a drumhead, can be written as standalone yorick programs. The language features a compact syntax for many common array operations,

so it processes large arrays of numbers very efficiently. Unlike most interpreters, which are several hundred times slower than compiled code for number crunching, Yorick can approach to within a factor of four or five of compiled speed for many common tasks. Superficially, Yorick code resembles C code, but Yorick variables are never explicitly declared and have a dynamic scoping similar to many Lisp dialects. The “unofficial” home page for Yorick can be found at *http://www.maumae.net/yorick*.

- Project Home Page: *ftp://ftp-icf.llnl.gov/pub/Yorick/doc/index.html*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp-icf.llnl.gov/pub/Yorick/doc/download.html*

ZPL

ZPL is an array programming language designed from first principles for fast execution on both sequential and parallel computers. It provides a convenient high-level programming medium for supercomputers and large-scale clusters with efficiency comparable to hand-coded message passing. It is the perfect alternative to using a sequential language like C or Fortran and a message passing library like MPI.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/zpl/home/index.html*
- Download Location: *http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/zpl/download/download.html*

Programming Libraries and Bindings

Boost

Boost provides free peer-reviewed portable C++ source libraries. The emphasis is on libraries which work well with the C++ Standard Library. The libraries are intended to be widely useful, and are in regular use by thousands of programmers across a broad spectrum of applications, platforms and programming environments.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.boost.org/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/boost/*

Byte Code Engineering Library (BCEL)

BECL is intended to give users a convenient possibility to analyze, create, and manipulate (binary) Java class files (those ending with `.class`). Classes are represented by objects which contain all the symbolic information of the given class: methods, fields and byte code instructions, in particular. Such objects can be read from an existing file, be transformed by a program (e.g., a class loader at run-time) and dumped to a file again. An even more interesting application is the creation of classes from scratch at run-time. The Byte Code Engineering Library may be also useful if you want to learn about the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) and the format of Java `.class` files. BCEL is already being used successfully in several projects such as compilers, optimizers, obsfuscators, code generators and analysis tools.

- Project Home Page: *http://jakarta.apache.org/bcel/index.html*
- Download Location: *http://jakarta.apache.org/site/downloads/downloads_bcel.cgi/*

Choco

Choco is a Java library for constraint satisfaction problems (CSP), constraint programming (CP) and explanation-based constraint solving (e-CP). It is built on a event-based propagation mechanism with backtrackable structures.

- Project Home Page: *http://choco.sourceforge.net/*

- Download Location: *http://choco.sourceforge.net/download.html*

FFTW (Fastest Fourier Transform in the West)

FFTW is a C subroutine library for computing the discrete Fourier transform (DFT) in one or more dimensions, of arbitrary input size, and of both real and complex data (as well as of even/odd data, i.e., the discrete cosine/sine transforms or DCT/DST).

- Project Home Page: *http://www.fftw.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.fftw.org/download.html*

GOB (GObject Builder)

GOB (GOB2 anyway) is a preprocessor for making GObjects with inline C code so that generated files are not edited. Syntax is inspired by Java and Yacc or Lex. The implementation is intentionally kept simple, and no C actual code parsing is done.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.5z.com/jirka/gob.html*
- Download Location: *http://ftp.5z.com/pub/gob/*

GTK+/GNOME Language Bindings (wrappers)

GTK+/GNOME language bindings allow GTK+ to be used from other programming languages, in the style of those languages.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.gtk.org/bindings.html*

gtkmm

gtkmm is the official C++ interface for the popular GUI library GTK+. Highlights include typesafe callbacks, widgets extensible via inheritance and a comprehensive set of widgets. You can create user interfaces either in code or with the Glade designer, using libglademm.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.gtkmm.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.gtkmm.org/download.shtml*

Java-GNOME

Java-GNOME is a set of Java bindings for the GNOME and GTK+ libraries that allow GNOME and GTK+ applications to be written in Java. The Java-GNOME API has been carefully designed to be easy to use, maintaining a good OO paradigm, yet still wrapping the entire functionality of the underlying libraries. Java-GNOME can be used with the Eclipse development environment and Glade user interface designer to create applications with ease.

- Project Home Page: *http://java-gnome.sourceforge.net/cgi-bin/bin/view*
- Download Location: *http://java-gnome.sourceforge.net/cgi-bin/bin/view/Main/GetJavaGnome#Source_Code*

gtk2-perl

gtk2-perl is the collective name for a set of perl bindings for GTK+ 2.x and various related libraries. These modules make it easy to write GTK and GNOME applications using a natural, perlish, object-oriented syntax.

- Project Home Page: *http://gtk2-perl.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/gtk2-perl*

PyGTK

PyGTK provides a convenient wrapper for the GTK library for use in Python programs, and takes care of many of the boring details such as managing memory and type casting. When combined with PyORBit and gnome-python, it can be used to write full featured GNOME applications.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.pygtk.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.pygtk.org/downloads.html*

KDE Language Bindings

KDE and most KDE applications are implemented using the C++ programming language, however there are number of bindings to other languages are available. These include scripting languages like Perl, Python and Ruby, and systems programming languages such as Java and C#.

- Project Home Page: *http://developer.kde.org/language-bindings/*

Numerical Python (Numpy)

Numerical Python adds a fast array facility to the Python language.

- Project Home Page: *http://numeric.scipy.org/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/numpy/*

Perl Scripts and Additional Modules

There are many Perl scripts and additional modules located on the Comprehensive Perl Archive Network (CPAN) web site. Here you will find “All Things Perl”.

- Project Home Page: *http://cpan.org/*

SWIG

SWIG is a software development tool that connects programs written in C and C++ with a variety of high-level programming languages. SWIG is used with different types of languages including common scripting languages such as Perl, Python, Tcl/Tk and Ruby. The list of supported languages also includes non-scripting languages such as C#, Common Lisp (Allegro CL), Java, Modula-3 and OCAML. Also several interpreted and compiled Scheme implementations (Chicken, Guile, MzScheme) are supported. SWIG is most commonly used to create high-level interpreted or compiled programming environments, user interfaces, and as a tool for testing and prototyping C/C++ software. SWIG can also export its parse tree in the form of XML and Lisp s-expressions.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.swig.org/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/swig/*

Integrated Development Environments

A-A-P

A-A-P makes it easy to locate, download, build and install software. It also supports browsing source code, developing programs, managing different versions and distribution of software and documentation. This means that A-A-P is useful both for users and for developers.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.a-a-p.org/index.html*

- Download Location: *http://www.a-a-p.org/download.html*

Anjuta

Anujuta is a versatile Integrated Development Environment (IDE) for C and C++ on GNU/Linux. It has been written for GTK/GNOME and features a number of advanced programming facilities. These include project management, application wizards, an on-board interactive debugger, and a powerful source editor with source browsing and syntax highlighting.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.anjuta.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.anjuta.org/downloads*

Eclipse

Eclipse is an open source community whose projects are focused on providing an extensible development platform and application frameworks for building software. Eclipse contains many projects, including an Integrated Development Environment (IDE) for Java.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.eclipse.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.eclipse.org/downloads/*

Mozart

The Mozart Programming System is an advanced development platform for intelligent, distributed applications. Mozart is based on the Oz language, which supports declarative programming, object-oriented programming, constraint programming, and concurrency as part of a coherent whole. For distribution, Mozart provides a true network transparent implementation with support for network awareness, openness, and fault tolerance. Security is upcoming. It is an ideal platform for both general-purpose distributed applications as well as for hard problems requiring sophisticated optimization and inferencing abilities.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.mozart-oz.org/*
- Download Location: *http://www.mozart-oz.org/download/view.cgi*

Other Development Tools

cachecc1

cachecc1 is a GCC cache. It can be compared with the well known ccache package. It has some unique features including the use of an LD_PRELOADed shared object to catch invocations to **cc1**, **cc1plus** and **as**, it transparently supports all build methods, it can cache GCC bootstraps and it can be combined with distcc to transparently distribute compilations.

- Project Home Page: *http://cachecc1.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/cachecc1*

ccache

ccache is a compiler cache. It acts as a caching pre-processor to C/C++ compilers, using the `-E` compiler switch and a hash to detect when a compilation can be satisfied from cache. This often results in 5 to 10 times faster speeds in common compilations.

- Project Home Page: *http://ccache.samba.org/*
- Download Location: *http://samba.org/ftp/ccache/*

DDD (GNU Data Display Debugger)

GNU DDD is a graphical front-end for command-line debuggers such as GDB, DBX, WDB, Ladebug, JDB, XDB, the Perl debugger, the Bash debugger, or the Python debugger. Besides “usual” front-end features such as viewing source texts, DDD has an interactive graphical data display, where data structures are displayed as graphs..

- Project Home Page: *http://www.gnu.org/software/ddd/*
- Download Location: *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/ddd/*

distcc

distcc is a program to distribute builds of C, C++, Objective C or Objective C++ code across several machines on a network. distcc should always generate the same results as a local build, is simple to install and use, and is usually much faster than a local compile. distcc does not require all machines to share a filesystem, have synchronized clocks, or to have the same libraries or header files installed. They can even have different processors or operating systems, if cross-compilers are installed.

- Project Home Page: *http://distcc.samba.org/*
- Download Location: *http://distcc.samba.org/download.html*

Exuberant Ctags

Exuberant Ctags generates an index (or tag) file of language objects found in source files that allows these items to be quickly and easily located by a text editor or other utility. A tag signifies a language object for which an index entry is available (or, alternatively, the index entry created for that object). Tag generation is supported for the following languages: Assembler, AWK, ASP, BETA, Bourne/Korn/Zsh Shell, C, C++, COBOL, Eiffel, Fortran, Java, Lisp, Lua, Make, Pascal, Perl, PHP, Python, REXX, Ruby, S-Lang, Scheme, Tcl, Vim, and YACC. A list of editors and tools utilizing tag files may be found at *http://ctags.sourceforge.net/tools.html*.

- Project Home Page: *http://ctags.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/ctags/*

GDB (GNU Debugger)

GDB is the GNU Project debugger. It allows you to see what is going on “inside” another program while it executes. It also allows you to see what another program was doing at the moment it crashed.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/*
- Download Location: *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gdb/*

gocache (GNU Object Cache)

ccache is a clone of ccache, with the goal of supporting compilers other than GCC and adding additional features. Embedded compilers will especially be in focus.

- Project Home Page: *http://sourceforge.net/projects/gocache/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/gocache/*

OProfile

OProfile is a system-wide profiler for Linux systems, capable of profiling all running code at low overhead. OProfile is released under the GNU GPL. It consists of a kernel driver and a daemon for collecting sample data, and several post-profiling tools for turning data into information. OProfile leverages the hardware performance counters of the

CPU to enable profiling of a wide variety of interesting statistics, which can also be used for basic time-spent profiling. All code is profiled: hardware and software interrupt handlers, kernel modules, the kernel, shared libraries, and applications. OProfile is currently in alpha status; however it has proven stable over a large number of differing configurations. It is being used on machines ranging from laptops to 16-way NUMA-Q boxes.

- Project Home Page: *http://oprofile.sourceforge.net/news/*
- Download Location: *http://oprofile.sourceforge.net/download/*

SCons

SCons is an Open Source software construction tool, i.e, a next-generation build tool. Think of SCons as an improved, cross-platform substitute for the classic **make** utility with integrated functionality similar to Autoconf/Automake and compiler caches such as **ccache**.

- Project Home Page: *http://scons.sourceforge.net/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/scons/*

strace

strace is a system call tracer, i.e., a debugging tool which prints out a trace of all the system calls made by another process or program.

- Project Home Page: *http://www.liacs.nl/~wichert/strace/*
- Download Location: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/strace/*

Valgrind

Valgrind is a collection of five tools: two memory error detectors, a thread error detector, a cache profiler and a heap profiler used for debugging and profiling Linux programs. Features include automatic detection of many memory management and threading bugs as well as detailed profiling to speed up and reduce memory use of your programs.

- Project Home Page: *http://valgrind.org/*
- Download Location: *http://valgrind.org/downloads/source_code.html*

Part IV. Basic Networking

Chapter 13. Connecting to a Network

The LFS book covers setting up networking by connecting to a LAN with a static IP address. There are other methods used to obtain an IP address and connect to a LAN and other networks (such as the Internet). The most popular methods (DHCP and PPP) are covered in this chapter.

DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. It is a protocol used by many sites to automatically provide information such as IP addresses, subnet masks and routing information to computers. If your network uses DHCP, you will need a DHCP client in order to connect to it.

PPP stands for Potint-to-Point Protocol. It is data link protocol commonly used for establishing an authenticated IP connections over a phone line with a modem, or over radio waves with a cellular phone. There is also a variant (PPPoE) that works over Ethernet and is used by cable providers to authenticate the Internet connections.

PPP-2.4.4

Introduction to PPP

The PPP package contains the **pppd** daemon and the **chat** program. This is used for connecting to other machines; often for connecting to the Internet via a dial-up or PPPoE connection to an ISP.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://samba.org/ftp/ppp/ppp-2.4.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/ppp-2.4.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 183800762e266132218b204dfb428d29
- Download size: 673 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

PPP Dependencies

Optional

libpcap-0.9.6 (needed to do PPP filtering), Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 (to authenticate incoming calls using PAM), and *Linux ATM* (to build the pppoatm.so plugin)

Installation of PPP

Note

PPP support (CONFIG_PPP), the asynchronous line discipline (CONFIG_PPP_ASYNC), the driver for your serial port device and/or the PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE) protocol driver (CONGIG_PPPOE) must be compiled into the kernel or loaded as kernel modules. Udev doesn't load the ppp_generic and pppoe modules automatically, they must be mentioned in the `/etc/sysconfig/modules` file.

Create (as `root`) the group for users who may run PPP:

```
groupadd -g 52 pppusers
```

Install PPP by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-etcppp &&
install -d /etc/ppp/peers &&
install -m755 scripts/{pon,poff,plog} /usr/bin &&
install -m644 scripts/pon.1 /usr/share/man/man1
```

Command Explanations

make install-etcppp: This command puts example configuration files in `/etc/ppp`.

install -d /etc/ppp/peers: This command creates a directory for PPP peer description files.

USE_PAM=y: Add this argument to the **make** command to compile in support for PAM, usually needed for authenticating inbound calls against a central database.

HAVE_INET6=y: Add this argument to the **make** command to compile in support for IPv6.

CBCP=y: Add this argument to the **make** command to compile in support for Microsoft proprietary Callback Control Protocol.

Configuring PPP

Config Files

`/etc/ppp/*`

Configuration Information

The PPP daemon requires some configuration. The main trick is scripting the connection. For dialup and GPRS connections, this can be done either using the **chat** program which comes with this package, or by using external tools such as *WvDial* or KPPP from kdenetwork-3.5.9. The text below explains how to set up dialup and GPRS and PPPoE connections using only tools provided with the PPP package. All configuration steps in this section are executed as `root` user.

Add the users who may run PPP to the `pppusers` group:

```
usermod -a -G pppusers <username>
```

Setting the passwords

Warning

Instructions in this section result in your password appearing on the screen in a visible clear-text form. Make sure that nobody else looks at the screen.

Passwords are stored in `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` and `/etc/ppp/chap-secrets` files, depending on the authentication method used by the ISP. If in doubt, place the password into both files. E.g., if the username given by the ISP is “jdoe”, the password is “guessit”, the ISP uses PAP and the user wants to name this account “dialup” in order to distinguish it from other PPP accounts, the following file has to be created:

```
touch /etc/ppp/pap-secrets
chmod 600 /etc/ppp/pap-secrets
cat >>/etc/ppp/pap-secrets <<"EOF"
# username      remotename    password        IP for the peer
jdoe            dialup        guessit         *
EOF
```

DNS Server Configuration

If you don't run your own caching DNS server, create a simple **ip-up** script (to be called by **pppd** automatically once the connection is brought up) that populates the `/etc/resolv.conf` file with nameservers specified by the ISP.

```
cat >/etc/ppp/ip-up <<"EOF"
#!/bin/sh
if [ "$USEPEERDNS" = "1" ] && [ -s /etc/ppp/resolv.conf ]
then
        install -m 644 /etc/ppp/resolv.conf /etc/resolv.conf
fi
EOF
chmod 755 /etc/ppp/ip-up
```

If you use a caching DNS server such as BIND-9.4.1-P1 or *Pdnsd*, the script above is wrong for you. In such case, write your own script that tells your caching nameserver to forward queries to upstream DNS servers specified in the $DNS1 and $DNS2 environment variables.

Dialup Modem Connection

Dialup connections are established with the help of a modem connected to a computer and the telephone line. The modem dials a telephone number of the ISP's modem, and they exchange data using the signal frequencies 300-4000 Hz. Typical data transfer rate is 40-50 kilobits per second, and the gateway ping time (latency) is up to 300-400 ms. In order to configure the dialup connection, it is required to know the telephone number of the ISP's modem pool, the username and the password.

In order to configure a dialup connection, two files have to be created: a chat script that automates the connection procedure (common for all dialup accounts), and a peer file that provides configuration information about a specific connection to **pppd**:

```
cat >/etc/ppp/dialup.chat <<"EOF"
ABORT BUSY ABORT 'NO CARRIER' ABORT VOICE ABORT 'NO DIALTONE'
ABORT 'NO DIAL TONE' ABORT 'NO ANSWER' ABORT DELAYED
ABORT ERROR ABORT BLACKLISTED

TIMEOUT 5
'' AT
# \T is the phone number, passed from /etc/ppp/peers/dialup
OK-+++\dATH0-OK ATD\T
TIMEOUT 75
CONNECT \d\c
EOF

cat >/etc/ppp/peers/dialup <<"EOF"
# Your username at the ISP
user "jdoe"
# What should be in the second column in /etc/ppp/*-secrets
remotename "dialup"
# Replace TTTTTTT with the ISP phone number
connect "/usr/sbin/chat -T TTTTTTT -f /etc/ppp/dialup.chat"

# Specify your modem serial port and speed below
/dev/ttyS0
115200

# The settings below usually don't need to be changed
updetach
noauth
hide-password
debug
lock
defaultroute
noipdefault
usepeerdns
EOF
```

The first three lines of the `/etc/ppp/dialup.chat` file abort the script when it receives an indication of an error from the modem. Then the timeout is set to 5 seconds and the script checks that the modem responds to the dummy AT command at all. If not, measures are taken to dewedge it (by interrupting the data transfer and going on hook). Then the telephone number is dialed, and the script waits for the answer for 75 seconds. The serial connection is considered established when the modem sends the string CONNECT.

GPRS and EDGE Connections

GPRS and EDGE connections are established with the help of a cellular phone connected to a computer via serial or USB cable, or using Bluetooth. The phone exchanges data packets with the nearest base station, which can be up to 35 kilometers away. The maximum possible data transfer rate is 170 kilobits per second for GPRS and 474 kilobits per second for EDGE, but many cellular operators impose lower limits, such as 64 kilobits per second. The gateway ping time is 900 ms for GPRS, which makes playing many online games impossible and causes connection to ICQ to be unreliable. In order to configure a GPRS or EDGE connection, it is required to know the access point name (APN) and, rarely, the username and the password. In most cases, billing is based on the telephone number, and the username/password pair is not needed, as assumed in the example below.

In order to configure a GPRS connection, two files have to be created: a chat script that automates the connection procedure (common for all GPRS accounts), and a peer file that provides configuration information about a specific connection to **pppd**:

```
cat >/etc/ppp/gprs.chat <<"EOF"
ABORT BUSY ABORT 'NO CARRIER' ABORT VOICE ABORT 'NO DIALTONE'
ABORT 'NO DIAL TONE' ABORT 'NO ANSWER' ABORT DELAYED
ABORT ERROR ABORT BLACKLISTED

TIMEOUT 5
'' AT
OK-+++\dATH0-OK ATZ
# \T is the APN, passed from /etc/ppp/peers/gprs
# This example stores the APN as profile #1 in the phone.
# The "telephone number", *99***<profile_number>#, is always the same.
# If you want to store this as profile #2, change 1 to 2 in the
# following two lines.
OK AT+CGDCONT=1,"IP","\T"
OK "ATD*99***1#"
CONNECT \d\c
EOF

cat >/etc/ppp/peers/gprs <<"EOF"
# Replace inet.example.com with the proper APN for your provider
connect "/usr/sbin/chat -T inet.example.com -f /etc/ppp/gprs.chat"

# Specify your cellphone serial port and speed below
# Note: you must manually send some vendor-specific AT commands
# to certain old cellular phones (such as Sony-Ericsson T200)
# in order to achieve connection speed more than 9600 bits ber second.
/dev/ttyS1
115200

# The settings below usually don't need to be changed
noccp
noauth
updetach
debug
lock
defaultroute
noipdefault
usepeerdns
EOF
```

PPPoE connections

PPPoE connections are established over Ethernet, typically between a computer and an ADSL router (usually installed in the same room) that forwards the packets down the telephone line using frequencies 25-2500 kHz, thus not interfering with voice calls. Although the router can, in theory, forward any Ethernet packet, PPP encapsulation is used for password-based authentication, so that the ISP can limit the bandwidth and charge money according to the chosen tariff. The maximum data transfer rate on ADSL is 24 megabits per second, and the gateway ping time is typically less than 10 ms. In order to configure a PPPoE connection, it is required to know the username, the password, and, sometimes, the service name and/or the access concentrator name.

In order to configure a PPPoE connection, only the peer file has to be created:

```
cat >/etc/ppp/peers/adsl <<"EOF"
plugin rp-pppoe.so
# Ethernet interface name
eth0
# Your username at the ISP
user "jdoe"
# What should be in the second column in /etc/ppp/*-secrets
remotename "adsl"
# If needed, specify the service and the access concentrator name
# rp_pppoe_service "internet"
# rp_pppoe_ac "ac1"

# The settings below usually don't need to be changed
noauth
hide-password
updetach
debug
defaultroute
noipdefault
usepeerdns
EOF
```

Establishing the connection manually

In order to establish a PPP connection described by the `/etc/ppp/peers/peername` file, run, as root or as a member of the `pppusers` group:

```
pon peername
```

In order to tear the connection down, run:

```
poff peername
```

Bringing up PPPoE connection at boot time

If your service provider does not charge by the minute, it is usually good to have a bootscript handle the connection for you. You can, of course, choose not to install the following script, and start your connection manually with the **pon** command, as described above. If you wish your PPPoE connection to be brought up at boot time, run:

```
make install-service-pppoe
```

The above command installs the pppoe service script and the /etc/ppp/peers/pppoe file with some settings that make sense for most PPPoE connections. The bootscript calls **pppd** with the the following options:

```
pppd call pppoe ${1} linkname ${1} ${PPP_OPTS}
```

Here "${1}" is the network interface name, "linkname ${1}" is added for creation of the /var/run/ppp-${1}.pid file with the **pppd** process ID (to be used when bringing the connection down), and the "${PPP_OPTS}" variable contains user-specified options such as "user" and "remotename".

Now create the config file for use with the pppoe service script:

```
install -v -d /etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0 &&
cat > /etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0/pppoe << "EOF"
ONBOOT="yes"
SERVICE="pppoe"
PPP_OPTS="user jdoe remotename adsl"
EOF
```

Note

Instead of specifying additional options in the $PPP_OPTS variable, you can also edit the /etc/ppp/peers/pppoe file, but then your configuration will be lost when upgrading BLFS bootscripts.

Contents

Installed Programs:	chat, pon, poff, plog, pppd, pppdump, pppoe-discovery and pppstats
Installed Libraries:	Several plugin modules installed in /usr/lib/pppd/2.4.4
Installed Directories:	/etc/ppp, /usr/include/pppd and /usr/lib/pppd

Short Descriptions

chat	defines a conversational exchange between the computer and the modem. Its primary purpose is to establish the connection between the Point-to-Point Protocol Daemon (PPPD) and the remote **pppd** process.
pon	is the script that establishes a PPP connection
poff	is the script that tears a PPP connection down.
plog	is a script that prints the tail of the PPP log.
pppd	is the Point to Point Protocol daemon.
pppdump	is used to convert PPP record files to a readable format.
pppstats	is used to print PPP statistics.

dhcpcd-3.0.19

Introduction to dhcpcd

dhcpcd is an implementation of the DHCP client specified in RFC2131. This is useful for connecting your computer to a network which uses DHCP to assign network addresses.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://download.berlios.de/dhcpcd/dhcpcd-3.0.19.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/gentoo/distfiles/dhcpcd-3.0.19.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 90d6df62d663bdea65d5905023377b39
- Download size: 32.5 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 0.3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of dhcpcd

Install dhcpcd by running the following commands:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring dhcpcd

Config Files

`/etc/dhcpcd.sh`

Configuration Information

To configure **dhcpcd**, you need to first install the network service script, `/etc/sysconfig/network-devices/services/dhcpcd` included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package (as user `root`):

```
make install-service-dhcpcd
```

Whenever **dhcpcd** configures or shuts down a network interface, it executes the script `/etc/dhcpcd.sh`. This script can be customized to perform additional actions for the network interface. See the man page of **dhcpcd** for more details. An example file is shipped in the tarball which can be used to send the interface details to syslog.

Finally, as the `root` user create the `/etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0/dhcpcd` configuration file using the following commands. Adjust appropriately for additional interfaces:

```
install -v -d /etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0 &&
cat > /etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0/dhcpcd << "EOF"
ONBOOT="yes"
SERVICE="dhcpcd"
DHCP_START="<insert appropriate start options here>"
DHCP_STOP="-k <insert additional stop options here>"

# Set PRINTIP="yes" to have the script print
# the DHCP assigned IP address
PRINTIP="no"

# Set PRINTALL="yes" to print the DHCP assigned values for
# IP, SM, DG, and 1st NS. This requires PRINTIP="yes".
PRINTALL="no"
EOF
```

For more information on the appropriate `DHCP_START` and `DHCP_STOP` values, examine the man page for **dhcpcd**.

Note

The default behavior of **dhcpcd** is to overwrite (after making backup copies) `/etc/resolv.conf`, `/etc/yp.conf` and `/etc/ntp.conf` with new files containing information from the DHCP server. If this is undesirable, review the **dhcpcd** man page for switches to add to the `DHCP_START` value.

Contents

Installed Program:	dhcpcd
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	None

Short Descriptions

dhcpcd is an implementation of the DHCP client specified in RFC2131 (when -r option is not specified) and RFC1541 (when -r option is specified).

DHCP-3.0.6 Client Configuration

The DHCP package comes with both a client (**dhclient**) and a server program for using DHCP. If you want to install this package, the instructions can be found at DHCP-3.0.6. Note that if you only want to use the client, you do *not* need to run the server and so do not need the startup script and links provided for the server daemon. You only need to run the DHCP server if you're providing this service to a network, and it's likely that you'll know if that's the case; if it isn't, don't run the server! Once you have installed the package, return here for information on how to configure the client (**dhclient**).

Configuring DHCP Client

To configure **dhclient**, you need to first install the network service script, `/etc/sysconfig/network-devices/services/dhclient` included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package (as `root`):

```
make install-service-dhclient
```

Next, create the `/etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0/dhclient` configuration file with the following commands as the `root` user. Adjust as necessary for additional interfaces:

```
install -v -d /etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0 &&
cat > /etc/sysconfig/network-devices/ifconfig.eth0/dhclient << "EOF"
ONBOOT="yes"
SERVICE="dhclient"
DHCP_START="-q <add additional start parameters here>"
DHCP_STOP="-q -r <add additional stop parameters here>"

# Set PRINTIP="yes" to have the script print
# the DHCP assigned IP address
PRINTIP="no"

# Set PRINTALL="yes" to print the DHCP assigned values for
# IP, SM, DG, and 1st NS. This requires PRINTIP="yes".
PRINTALL="no"
EOF
```

For more information on the appropriate `DHCP_START` and `DHCP_STOP` values, examine the man page for **dhclient**.

Finally, you should create the `/etc/dhclient.conf` file using the following commands as the `root` user:

Note

You'll need to add a second interface definition to the file if you have more than one interface.

```
cat > /etc/dhclient.conf << "EOF"
# dhclient.conf

interface "eth0"{
prepend domain-name-servers 127.0.0.1;
request subnet-mask, broadcast-address, time-offset, routers,
        domain-name, domain-name-servers, host-name;
require subnet-mask, domain-name-servers;
}
# end dhclient.conf
EOF
```

Chapter 14. Networking Libraries

These applications are support libraries for other applications in the book. It is unlikely that you would just install these libraries, you will generally find that you will be referred to this chapter to satisfy a dependency of other applications.

cURL-7.16.3

Introduction to cURL

The cURL package contains **curl** and its support library. This is useful for transferring files with URL syntax. This ability to both download and redirect files can be incorporated into other programs to support functions like streaming media.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://curl.haxx.se/download/curl-7.16.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://gd.tuwien.ac.at/utils/archivers/curl/curl-7.16.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ed55dfa8946ad53f245fae5db3a9d0ca
- Download size: 1.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 33 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU (additional 0.9 SBU to run the test suite)

cURL Dependencies

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, OpenSSL-0.9.8g or GnuTLS-1.6.3, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, libidn-0.6.14, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1, *krb4*, *SPNEGO*, and *c-ares*

Optional for Running the Test Suite

Stunnel-4.21 (for the HTTPS and FTPS tests)

Installation of cURL

Install cURL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that if you have Stunnel and TCP Wrapper installed and you wish to perform the HTTPS tests, you'll need to have an unrestrictive `/etc/hosts.deny` file.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
find docs -name "Makefile*" -o -name "*.1" -o -name "*.3" | xargs rm &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/curl-7.16.3 &&
cp -v -R docs/* /usr/share/doc/curl-7.16.3
```

Command Explanations

`--with-gssapi`: This parameter adds Kerberos 5 support to `libcurl`.

find docs -name "Makefile*" -o -name "*.1" -o -name "*.3" | xargs rm: This command removes man files from the source tree that have already been installed by the **make install** command.

Contents

Installed Programs: curl and curl-config
Installed Library: libcurl.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/curl, /usr/share/curl and /usr/share/doc/curl-7.16.3

Short Descriptions

curl is a client that can get documents from or send documents to any of the following protocols: HTTP, HTTPS (needs OpenSSL-0.9.8g), FTP, GOPHER, DICT, TELNET, LDAP (needs OpenLDAP-2.3.39 at run time) or FILE.

curl-config prints information about the last compile, like libraries linked to and prefix setting.

`libcurl.{so,a}` provides the API functions required by **curl** and other programs.

GNet-2.0.7

Introduction to GNet

The GNet package contains a simple network library. This is useful for supporting TCP sockets, UDP and IP multicast, asynchronous DNS lookup, and more.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gnetlibrary.org/src/gnet-2.0.7.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 3a7a40411775688fe4c42141ab007048
- Download size: 595 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

GNet Dependencies

Required

GLib-1.2.10 or GLib-2.12.12

Installation of GNet

Install GNet by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libgnet-2.0.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/gnet-2.0, /usr/lib/gnet-2.0 and /usr/share/doc/libgnet2.0-dev or /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gnet

Short Descriptions

`libgnet-2.0.{so,a}`	is a simple network library written in C. It is object-oriented and built upon GLib. It is intended to be easy to use and port.

libsoup-2.2.100

Introduction to libsoup

The libsoup package contains an HTTP library implementation in C. This is useful for accessing HTTP servers in a completely asynchronous mode.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libsoup/2.2/libsoup-2.2.100.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libsoup/2.2/libsoup-2.2.100.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 936e29d705aab0483b9a5b8860f68c13
- Download size: 508 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

libsoup Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12 and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8, Apache-2.2.8 (required to run the test suite), PHP-5.2.3 compiled with *XMLRPC-EPI* support (only used for the XMLRPC regression tests), and GnuTLS-1.6.3

Installation of libsoup

Install libsoup by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libsoup-2.2.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libsoup-2.2 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libsoup

Short Descriptions

`libsoup-2.2.{so,a}` provides functions for asynchronous HTTP connections.

libpcap-0.9.6

Introduction to libpcap

libpcap provides functions for user-level packet capture, used in low-level network monitoring.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/libpcap-0.9.6.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libpcap-0.9.6.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 2e1b5e983654c1d5991450e3e0e525ca
- Download size: 438 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

libpcap Dependencies

Optional

Software distribution for the *DAG* and *Septel* range of passive network monitoring cards.

Installation of libpcap

Install libpcap by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libpcap-0.9.6 &&
install -v -m644 doc/* /usr/share/doc/libpcap-0.9.6
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libpcap.a
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/libpcap-0.9.6

Short Descriptions

`libpcap.a` is a library used for user-level packet capture.

Chapter 15. Text Web Browsers

People who are new to Unix-based systems tend to ask the question "Why on earth would I want a text-mode browser? I'm going to compile X and use Konqueror/Mozilla/Whatever!". Those who have been around systems for a while know that when (not if) you manage to mess up your graphical browser install and you need to look up some information on the web, a console based browser will save you. Also, there are quite a few people who prefer to use one of these browsers as their principle method of browsing; either to avoid the clutter and bandwidth which accompanies images or because they may use a text-to-speech synthesizer which can read the page to them (of use for instance to partially sighted or blind users). In this chapter you will find installation instructions for three console web browsers:

Links-2.1pre33

Introduction to Links

Links is a text and graphics mode WWW browser. It includes support for rendering tables and frames, features background downloads, can display colors and has many other features.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://links.twibright.com/download/links-2.1pre33.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/links-2.1pre33.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 8c4bc1ebbf4962d290df8218bfc21413
- Download size: 4.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 25 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Recommended patch: *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/links-2.1pre33-utf8.diff.bz2*

Do I Need the Patch?

In text mode, unpatched Links cannot be configured to use UTF-8 or other multibyte encodings for the terminal input/output. This limitation renders Links useless as a text-based browser in multibyte locales. See general discussion of this type of issue in the Needed Encoding Not a Valid Option section on the Locale Related Issues page.

The patch adds the “UTF-8 I/O” configuration option. With this option enabled, Links first renders the page using an 8-bit character set configured by the user, and then converts from this character set to UTF-8. The opposite conversion is applied to user input. This approach works if there is an 8-bit character set that contains all the characters that the user considers to be important. Such character set does not exist, e.g., for Chinese hieroglyphs, or when it is required to display both Cyrillic and Greek characters.

Do I Have to Enable Graphics Support?

In graphical mode, Links displays text correctly even in UTF-8 locales, if all characters exist in the built-in font used by Links. This font contains Basic Latin, Latin-1 Supplement (without superscripts and vulgar fractions), Latin Extended-A, Latin Extended-B (partially), Greek, Cyrillic and Hebrew characters. Form submission in non-ISO-8859-1 locales is handled correctly when running in X11-based graphical mode. Input handlers for other graphics drivers (fb, directfb, svgalib) either misinterpret non-ASCII characters, or don't allow them at all.

The patch has no effect on Links behavior in graphical mode.

Links Dependencies

Recommended

GPM-1.20.1 (if mouse support is desired) and OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

Support for graphical mode requires at least one of GPM-1.20.1 (to be used with a framebuffer-based console), *SVGAlib*, *DirectFB*, and X Window System

For decoding various image formats Links can utilize libpng-1.2.29, libjpeg-6b, and LibTIFF-3.8.2

Installation of Links

If desired, apply the patch:

```
bzcat ../links-2.1pre33-utf8.diff.bz2 | patch -p1 &&
cd intl &&
./gen-intl && ./synclang &&
cd ..
```

Install Links by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/links-2.1pre33 &&
install -v -m644 doc/links_cal/* KEYS BRAILLE_HOWTO \
    /usr/share/doc/links-2.1pre33
```

Command Explanations

./gen-intl && ./synclang: These commands regenerate the language table.

`--enable-graphics`: This switch enables support for graphics mode.

Configuring Links

Config Files

`~/.links/*`

Configuration Information

Links stores its configuration in per-user files in the `~/.links` directory. These files are created automatically when **links** is run for the first time.

For the correct display of non-ASCII characters, Links has to be configured through the menu (accessible by pressing the ESC key), as follows:

- If running Links in the text mode in a UTF-8 based locale, go to the “Setup > Terminal options” menu item and check the “UTF-8 I/O” box.
- If running Links in the text mode, go to the “Setup > Character set” menu item and select the character set that matches your locale or, if you use UTF-8 based locale, the character set that contains all characters that you want Links to be able to display.
- Optionally, go to the “Setup > Language” menu and select the user interface language.
- Finally, select the “Setup > Save options” menu item.

Contents

Installed Program: links
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/share/doc/links-2.1pre33

Short Descriptions

links is a text and graphics mode WWW browser.

Lynx-2.8.6rel.5

Introduction to Lynx

Lynx is a text based web browser.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://lynx.isc.org/current/lynx2.8.6rel.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://lynx.isc.org/current/lynx2.8.6rel.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: bd44c57d28fd3e4c9db1cd492d403600
- Download size: 2.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 26 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

Lynx Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g or GnuTLS-1.6.3 (experimental), Zip-2.32, UnZip-5.52, an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command), and *sharutils* (for a **uudecode** program)

Installation of Lynx

Install Lynx by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/lynx \
            --datadir=/usr/share/doc/lynx-2.8.6rel.5 \
            --with-zlib \
            --with-bzlib \
            --with-screen=ncursesw \
            --enable-locale-charset &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install-full &&
chgrp -v -R root /usr/share/doc/lynx-2.8.6rel.5/lynx_doc
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/lynx`: This parameter is used so that the configuration files are located in `/etc/lynx` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--datadir=/usr/share/doc/lynx-2.8.6rel.5`: This parameter is used so that the documentation files are installed into `/usr/share/doc/lynx-2.8.6rel.5` instead of `/usr/share/lynx_{doc,help}`.

`--with-zlib`: This enables support for linking `libz` into Lynx.

`--with-bzlib`: This enables support for linking `libbz2` into Lynx.

--with-screen=ncursesw: This switch enables the use of advanced wide-character support present in the system NCurses library. This is needed for proper display of characters and line wrapping in multibyte locales.

--enable-locale-charset: This switch allows Lynx to deduce the proper character encoding for terminal output from the current locale. A configuration step is still needed (see below), but unlike the situation without this switch, the configuration step becomes the same for all users (without the switch one must specify the display character set explicitly). This is important for environments such as a LiveCD, where the amount of system-specific configuration steps has to be reduced to the minimum.

--enable-nls: This switch allows Lynx to print translated messages (such as questions about cookies and SSL certificates).

--with-ssl: This enables support for linking SSL into Lynx.

--with-gnutls: This enables experimental support for linking GnuTLS into Lynx.

make install-full: In addition to the standard installation, this target installs the documentation and help files.

chgrp -v -R root /usr/share/doc/lynx-2.8.6rel.5/lynx_doc: This command corrects the improper group ownership of installed documentation files.

Configuring Lynx

Config Files

/etc/lynx/lynx.cfg

Configuration Information

The proper way to get the display character set is to examine the current locale. However, Lynx does not do this by default. Change this setting:

```
sed -i 's/#\(LOCALE_CHARSET\):FALSE/\1:TRUE/' /etc/lynx/lynx.cfg
```

The built-in editor in Lynx Breaks Multibyte Characters. This issue manifests itself in multibyte locales, e.g., as the Backspace key not erasing non-ASCII characters properly, and as incorrect data being sent to the network when one edits the contents of text areas. The only solution to this problem is to configure Lynx to use an external editor (bound to the “Ctrl+X e” key combination by default):

```
sed -i 's/#\(DEFAULT_EDITOR\):/\1:vi/' /etc/lynx/lynx.cfg
```

Lynx handles the following values of the DEFAULT_EDITOR option specially by adding cursor-positioning arguments: “emacs”, “jed”, “jmacs”, “joe”, “jove”, “jpico”, “jstar”, “pico”, “rjoe”, “vi” (but not “vim”: in order to position the cursor in Vim-7.1, set this option to “vi”).

By default, Lynx doesn't save cookies between sessions. Change this setting:

```
sed -i 's/#\(PERSISTENT_COOKIES\):FALSE/\1:TRUE/' /etc/lynx/lynx.cfg
```

Many other system-wide settings such as proxies can also be set in the /etc/lynx/lynx.cfg file.

Contents

Installed Program:	lynx
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/lynx and /usr/share/doc/lynx-2.8.6rel.5

Short Descriptions

lynx is a general purpose, text-based, distributed information browser for the World Wide Web.

W3m-0.5.2

Introduction to W3m

w3m is primarily a pager but it can also be used as a text-mode WWW browser.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/w3m/w3m-0.5.2.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ba06992d3207666ed1bf2dcf7c72bf58
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 20 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

W3m Dependencies

Required

GC-6.8

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, GPM-1.20.1, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Imlib2-1.4.0, GTK+-2.10.13, *Imlib* (not recommended: obsolete, abandoned upstream, *buggy*, and gives no additional functionality as compared to other image loading libraries), *GDK Pixbuf-0.22*, Compface-1.5.2, *nkf*, a Mail User Agent and an External Browser

Installation of W3m

Install w3m by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib \
            --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/keymap.default /etc/w3m/keymap &&
install -v -m644    doc/menu.default /etc/w3m/menu &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/w3m-0.5.2 &&
install -v -m644    doc/{HISTORY,READ*,keymap.*,menu.*,*.html} \
                    /usr/share/doc/w3m-0.5.2
```

Configuring W3m

Config Files

`/etc/w3m/*` and `~/.w3m/*`

Contents

Installed Programs: w3m and w3mman
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/lib/w3m, /usr/share/w3m and usr/share/doc/w3m-0.5.2

Short Descriptions

w3m is a text based web browser and pager.

w3mman is an interface to the on-line reference manuals in **w3m**.

Chapter 16. Basic Networking Programs

These applications are generally client applications used to access the appropriate server across the building or across the world. Tcpwrappers and portmap are support programs for daemons that you may have running on your machine.

CVS-1.11.22

Introduction to CVS

CVS is the Concurrent Versions System. This is a version control system useful for projects using a central repository to hold files and then track all changes made to those files. These instructions install the client used to manipulate the repository, creation of a repository is covered at Running a CVS Server.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/non-gnu/cvs/source/stable/1.11.22/cvs-1.11.22.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/non-gnu/cvs/source/stable/1.11.22/cvs-1.11.22.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f24043a640509aff1aa28871dd345762
- Download size: 2.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 32.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU (additional ~20 SBU to run the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Recommended patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/cvs-1.11.22-zlib-1.patch*

CVS Dependencies

Optional

GDBM-1.8.3, Tcsh-6.15.00, OpenSSH-4.7p1, *krb4*, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1 (for the GSSAPI libraries), AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4, and an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command)

CVS will invoke a default text editor to create a commit message if the *`-m "Commit message"`* parameter was not used when changes are committed to a respository. CVS looks for the following text editors, in the order shown below, during configuration to determine the default. This default can always be overridden by the `CVSEDITOR` or `EDITOR` environment variables and can be specified directly by passing the `--with-editor=<desired text editor>` parameter to the **configure** script.

- Vim-7.1
- Emacs-22.1
- nano-2.0.7
- Pine-4.64 (for Pico)

Installation of CVS

By default CVS is statically linked against the Zlib library included in its source tree. This makes it exposed to possible security vulnerabilities in that library. If you want to modify CVS to use the system shared Zlib library, apply the following patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../cvs-1.11.22-zlib-1.patch
```

Install CVS by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have teTeX-3.0 installed and wish to create DVI, Postscript, HTML or text docs from the documentation source files, issue the following command:

```
make -C doc html txt dvi ps
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This will take quite a while. If you don't have **rsh** configured for access to the host you are building on (or you didn't pass the `--with-rsh=` parameter to the **configure** script, some tests may fail. If you passed the `--with-rsh=ssh` parameter to enable **ssh** as the default remote shell program, you'll need to issue the following command so that the tests will complete without any failures:

```
sed -e 's/rsh};/ssh};/' \
    -e 's/g=rw,o=r$/g=r,o=r/' \
    -i src/sanity.sh
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22 &&
install -v -m644 FAQ README /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.pdf /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22
```

If you created any additional documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 doc/*.{ps,dvi,txt} /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22 &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22/html/cvs{,client} &&
install -v -m644 doc/cvs.html/* \
                 /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22/html/cvs &&
install -v -m644 doc/cvsclient.html/* \
                 /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22/html/cvsclient
```

Configuring CVS

Config Files

`~/.cvsrc`, `~/.cvswrappers`, and `~/.cvspass`.

Configuration Information

`~/.cvsrc` is the main CVS configuration file. This file is used by users to specify defaults for different **cvs** commands. For example, to make all **cvs diff** commands run with `-u`, a user would add `diff -u` to their `.cvsrc` file.

`~/.cvswrappers` specifies wrappers to be used in addition to those specified in the `CVSROOT/cvswrappers` file in the repository.

`~/.cvspass` contains passwords used to complete logins to servers.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cvs, cvsbug, and rcs2log
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/cvs and /usr/share/doc/cvs-1.11.22

Short Descriptions

cvs is the main program file for the concurrent versions system.

cvsbug is used to send problem reports about CVS to a central support site.

rcs2log is a symlink to the contributed RCS to Change Log generator.

Inetutils-1.5

Introduction to Inetutils

The Inetutils package contains network clients and servers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/gnu/gnusrc/inetutils/inetutils-1.5.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/inetutils/inetutils-1.5.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: aeacd11d19bf25c89d4eff38346bdfb9
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 14 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Inetutils Dependencies

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, TCP Wrapper-7.6, *krb4*, and Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6

Installation of Inetutils

Install Inetutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/sbin \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --disable-logger \
            --disable-syslogd &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
mv -v /usr/bin/ping{,6} /bin
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-logger`: This switch prevents Inetutils installing a **logger** program, which is installed in the LFS book.

`--disable-syslogd`: This switch prevents Inetutils installing a system log daemon, which is installed in the LFS book.

`--disable-whois`: This switch will prevent Inetutils installing an outdated **whois** client. Add this option if you plan on installing Whois-4.7.26.

`--disable-ifconfig`: This switch will prevent Inetutils installing an **ifconfig** command. Use this parameter if you have Net-Tools installed and wish to keep its version of **ifconfig**.

`--with-wrap`: This switch makes Inetutils compile against tcp-wrappers. Add this option if you want to utilize tcp-wrappers.

`--with-pam`: This switch makes Inetutils link against Linux-PAM libraries. Add this option if you want to utilize PAM.

`--disable-servers`: Some of the servers included with Inetutils are insecure in nature and in some cases better alternatives exist. You can choose this switch to enable only the servers you need, avoiding the installation of unneeded servers.

Contents

A list of the installed programs not included here, along with their short descriptions can be found at *../../../../lfs/view/6.3/chapter06/inetutils.html#contents-inetutils*.

Installed Programs: ftpd, ifconfig, inetd, ping6, rexecd, rlogind, rshd, talkd, telnetd, tftpd, uucpd and whois
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

ftpd is a DARPA Internet File Transfer Protocol Server.

inetd is an Internet super-server. Note that the xinetd-2.3.14 package provides a much better server that does the same thing.

rexecd is a remote execution server.

rlogind is a remote login server.

rshd is a remote shell server.

talkd is a remote user communication server.

telnetd is a DARPA TELNET protocol server.

tftpd is an Internet Trivial File Transfer Protocol server.

uucpd is a server for supporting UUCP connections over networks.

whois is a client for the whois directory service. Note that the Whois-4.7.26 package provides a much better client.

NcFTP-3.2.1

Introduction to NcFTP

The NcFTP package contains a powerful and flexible interface to the Internet standard File Transfer Protocol. It is intended to replace or supplement the stock **ftp** program.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/infosys/clients/ftp/ncftp/ncftp-3.2.1-src.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.ncftp.com/ncftp/ncftp-3.2.1-src.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d82cdfe0d5448172c03b434607414fb8
- Download size: 409 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Installation of NcFTP

There are two ways to build NcFTP. The first (and optimal) way builds most of the functionality as a shared library and then builds and installs the program linked against this library. The second method simply links all of the functionality into the binary statically. This doesn't make the dynamic library available for linking by other applications. You need to choose which method best suits you. Note that the second method does *not* create an entirely statically linked binary; only the `libncftp` parts are statically linked in, in this case. Be aware that building and using the shared library is covered by the Clarified Artistic License; however, developing applications that utilize the shared library is subject to a different license.

To install NcFTP using the first (and optimal) method, run the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make -C libncftp shared &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make -C libncftp soinstall &&
make install
```

To install NcFTP using the second method (with the `libncftp` functionality linked in statically) run the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

make -C ... && make -C ...: These commands make and install the dynamic library `libncftp` which is then used to link against when compiling the main program.

Configuring NcFTP

Config Files

`/etc/ncftp.*` and `~/.ncftp/*`; especially `/etc/ncftp.prefs_v3` and `~/.ncftp/prefs_v3`

Configuration Information

Most NcFTP configuration is done while in the program, and the configuration files are dealt with automatically. One exception to this is `~/.ncftp/prefs_v3`. There are various options to alter in there, including:

```
yes-i-know-about-NcFTPd=yes
```

This disables the splash screen advertising the NcFTPd server.

There are other options in the `prefs_v3` file. Most of these are self-explanatory. Global defaults can be set in `/etc/ncftp.prefs_v3`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	ncftp, ncftpbatch, ncftpbookmarks, ncftpget, ncftpls, ncftpput, and ncftpspooler
Installed Library:	libncftp.so
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

ncftp	is a browser program for File Transfer Protocol.
ncftpbatch	is an individual batch FTP job processor.
ncftpbookmarks	is the NcFTP Bookmark Editor (NCurses-based).
ncftpget	is an internet file transfer program for scripts used to retrieve files.
ncftpls	is an internet file transfer program for scripts used to list files.
ncftpput	is an internet file transfer program for scripts used to transfer files.
ncftpspooler	is a global batch FTP job processor daemon.

Net-tools-1.60

Introduction to Net-tools

The Net-tools package is a collection of programs for controlling the network subsystem of the Linux kernel.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.tazenda.demon.co.uk/phil/net-tools/net-tools-1.60.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.ibiblio.org/pub/Linux/distributions/rootlinux/rootlinux/ports/base/net-tools/net-tools-1.60.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 888774accab40217dde927e21979c165
- Download size: 194 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/net-tools-1.60-gcc34-3.patch*
- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/net-tools-1.60-kernel_headers-2.patch*
- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/net-tools-1.60-mii_ioctl-1.patch*

Installation of Net-tools

Note

The Net-tools package installs a **hostname** program which will overwrite the existing program installed by Coreutils during a base LFS installation. If, for whatever reason, you need to reinstall the Coreutils package after installing Net-tools, you should apply the `coreutils-6.9-suppress_hostname-1.patch` patch (after the other patches) if you wish to preserve the Net-tools **hostname** program.

The instructions below automate the configuration process by piping **yes** to the **make config** command. If you wish to run the interactive configuration process (by changing the instruction to just **make config**), but you are not sure how to answer all the questions, then just accept the defaults. This will be just fine in the majority of cases. What you're asked here is a bunch of questions about which network protocols you've enabled in your kernel. The default answers will enable the tools from this package to work with the most common protocols: TCP, PPP, and several others. You still need to actually enable these protocols in the kernel—what you do here is merely tell the package to include support for those protocols in its programs, but it's up to the kernel to make the protocols available.

Install Net-tools by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../net-tools-1.60-gcc34-3.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../net-tools-1.60-kernel_headers-2.patch &&
patch -Np1 -i ../net-tools-1.60-mii_ioctl-1.patch &&
yes "" | make config &&
sed -i -e 's|HAVE_IP_TOOLS 0|HAVE_IP_TOOLS 1|g' \
       -e 's|HAVE_MII 0|HAVE_MII 1|g' config.h &&
sed -i -e 's|# HAVE_IP_TOOLS=0|HAVE_IP_TOOLS=1|g' \
       -e 's|# HAVE_MII=0|HAVE_MII=1|g' config.make &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make update
```

Command Explanations

yes "" | make config: Piping **yes** to **make config** skips the interactive configuration and accepts the defaults.

sed -i -e ...: These two **sed**s change the configuration files to force building the **ipmaddr**, **iptunnel** and **mii-tool** programs.

Contents

Installed Programs:	arp, dnsdomainname, domainname, hostname, ifconfig, ipmaddr, iptunnel, mii-tool, nameif, netstat, nisdomainname, plipconfig, rarp, route, slattach, and ypdomainname
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

arp	is used to manipulate the kernel's ARP cache, usually to add or delete an entry, or to dump the entire cache.
dnsdomainname	reports the system's DNS domain name.
domainname	reports or sets the system's NIS/YP domain name.
hostname	reports or sets the name of the current host system.
ifconfig	is the main utility for configuring network interfaces.
ipmaddr	adds, deletes and shows an interface's multicast addresses.
iptunnel	adds, changes, deletes and shows an interface's tunnels.
mii-tool	checks or sets the status of a network interface's Media Independent Interface (MII) unit.
nameif	names network interfaces based on MAC addresses.
netstat	is used to report network connections, routing tables, and interface statistics.
nisdomainname	does the same as **domainname**.
plipconfig	is used to fine tune the PLIP device parameters, to improve its performance.
rarp	is used to manipulate the kernel's RARP table.
route	is used to manipulate the IP routing table.
slattach	attaches a network interface to a serial line. This allows you to use normal terminal lines for point-to-point links to other computers.
ypdomainname	does the same as **domainname**.

NFS Utilities-1.1.2 Client

The NFS Utilities package provides NFS server functionality as well as client software such as **mount.nfs** or **umount.nfs**. If you want to install it, the instructions can be found in Chapter 19 – NFS Utilities-1.1.2. Note that if you only want to use the client, you do *not* need to run the server and so do not need the startup script and links. In accordance with good practice, only run the server if you actually need it (and if you don't know whether you need it or not, it's likely that you don't!).

NTP-4.2.4p0

Introduction to NTP

The NTP package contains a client and server to keep the time synchronized between various computers over a network. This package is the official reference implementation of the NTP protocol.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.eecis.udel.edu/~ntp/ntp_spool/ntp4/ntp-4.2/ntp-4.2.4p0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6f381e3764eac481bed9cf7e4d508952
- Download size: 3.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 27.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

NTP Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Installation of NTP

Install NTP by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --with-binsubdir=sbin &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/ntp-4.2.4p0 &&
cp -v -R html/* /usr/share/doc/ntp-4.2.4p0/
```

Command Explanations

`--with-binsubdir=sbin`: This parameter places the administrative programs in `/usr/sbin`.

Configuring NTP

Config Files

`/etc/ntp.conf`

Configuration Information

The following configuration file defines various NTP servers with open access from different continents. It also creates a drift file where **ntpd** stores the frequency offset and a pid file to store the **ntpd** process ID. Since the documentation included with the package is sparse, visit the NTP website at *http://www.ntp.org/* and *http://www.pool.ntp.org/* for more information.

```
cat > /etc/ntp.conf << "EOF"
# Africa
server tock.nml.csir.co.za

# Asia
server 0.asia.pool.ntp.org

# Australia
server 0.oceania.pool.ntp.org

# Europe
server 0.europe.pool.ntp.org

# North America
server 0.north-america.pool.ntp.org

# South America
server 2.south-america.pool.ntp.org

driftfile /var/cache/ntp.drift
pidfile   /var/run/ntpd.pid
EOF
```

Synchronizing the Time

There are two options. Option one is to run **ntpd** continuously and allow it to synchronize the time in a gradual manner. The other option is to run **ntpd** periodically (using cron) and update the time each time **ntpd** is scheduled.

If you choose Option one, then install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/ntp` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-ntp
```

If you prefer to run **ntpd** periodically, add the following command to `root`'s `crontab`:

```
ntpd -q
```

Execute the following command if you would like to set the hardware clock to the current system time at shutdown and reboot:

```
ln -v -sf ../init.d/setclock /etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K46setclock &&
ln -v -sf ../init.d/setclock /etc/rc.d/rc6.d/K46setclock
```

The other way around is already set up by LFS.

Contents

Installed Programs: ntp-keygen, ntp-wait, ntpd, ntpdate, ntpdc, ntpq, ntptime, ntptrace, sntp and tickadj
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/ntp-4.2.4p0

Short Descriptions

ntp-keygen generates cryptographic data files used by the NTPv4 authentication and identification schemes.

ntp-wait is useful at boot time, to delay the boot sequence until **ntpd** has set the time.

ntpd is a NTP daemon that runs in the background and keeps the date and time synchronized based on response from configured NTP servers. It also functions as a NTP server.

ntpdate is a client program that sets the date and time based on the response from an NTP server. This command is deprecated.

ntpdc is used to query the NTP daemon about its current state and to request changes in that state.

ntpq is an utility program used to monitor **ntpd** operations and determine performance.

ntptime reads and displays time-related kernel variables.

ntptrace traces a chain of NTP servers back to the primary source.

sntp is a Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) client.

tickadj reads, and optionally modifies, several timekeeping-related variables in older kernels that do not have support for precision timekeeping.

OpenSSH-4.7p1 Client

The **ssh** client is a secure replacement for **telnet**. If you want to install it, the instructions can be found in Chapter 21 – OpenSSH-4.7p1. Note that if you only want to use the client, you do *not* need to run the server and so do not need the startup script and links. In accordance with good practice, only run the server if you actually need it (and if you don't know whether you need it or not, it's likely that you don't!).

Portmap-6.0

Introduction to Portmap

The portmap package is a more secure replacement for the original SUN portmap package. Portmap is used to forward RPC requests to RPC daemons such as NFS and NIS.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://neil.brown.name/portmap/portmap-6.0.tgz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ac108ab68bf0f34477f8317791aaf1ff
- Download size: 21 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 268 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.01 SBU

Portmap Dependencies

Required

TCP Wrapper-7.6

Installation of Portmap

Portmap runs as a daemon with a uid of 1. This uid is only configurable at compile time and is used as default. To set up a user to match this uid, as the `root` user, issue:

```
useradd -u 1 -g 1 -d /dev/null -s /bin/false bin
```

Install portmap with the following commands:

```
make
```

If you want the portmap daemon to use a uid/gid other than the defaults, pass DAEMON_UID=x and DAEMON_GID=y as shown below:

make DAEMON_UID=x DAEMON_GID=y

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Note

The above installation places executable **portmap** in `/sbin`. You may choose to move the file to `/usr/sbin`. If you do, remember to modify the bootscript also.

Configuring Portmap

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/portmap` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-portmap
```

Contents

Installed Programs: pmap_dump, pmap_set, and portmap
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

pmap_dump saves the port mapping table to an ASCII file.

pmap_set restores the port mapping table from an ASCII file.

portmap is an RPC port mapper.

Rsync-3.0.2 Client

rsync is a utility for fast incremental file transfers. If you want to install it, the instructions can be found in Chapter 24 – rsync-3.0.2. Note that if you only want to use the client, you do *not* need to run the server and so do not need the startup script and links. In accordance with good practice, only run the server if you actually need it (and if you don't know whether you need it or not, it's likely that you don't!).

Samba-3.0.30 Client

The Samba client utilities are used to transfer files to and from, mount SMB shares located on or use printers attached to Windows and other SMB servers. If you want to install these utilities, the instructions can be found in Chapter 21 – Samba-3.0.30. After performing the basic installation, configure the utilities using the configuration section titled “Scenario 1: Minimal Standalone Client-Only Installation”.

Note that if you only want to use these client utilities, you do *not* need to run the server daemons and so do not need the startup script and links. In accordance with good practice, only run the server daemons if you actually need them. You'll find an explanation of the services provided by the server daemons in the Samba-3.0.30 instructions.

Subversion-1.4.4

Introduction to Subversion

Subversion is a version control system that is designed to be a compelling replacement for CVS in the open source community. It extends and enhances CVS' feature set, while maintaining a similar interface for those already familiar with CVS. These instructions install the client and server software used to manipulate a Subversion repository. Creation of a repository is covered at Running a Subversion Server.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://subversion.tigris.org/downloads/subversion-1.4.4.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: d4aa5aeb09acb3307841022d279ab895
- Download size: 4.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 109 MB (additional 74 MB to install all bindings and 405 MB to run all test suites)
- Estimated build time: 1.5 SBU (add 1.7 SBU for bindings and 2.2 SBU to run test suites)

Subversion Dependencies

Required

Apache-2.2.8 (for the APR only) or *Apache Portable Runtime* or *Subversion dependencies* (see the `INSTALL` file for information on how to utilize this package)

If you require the Berkeley DB back-end hooks in Subversion to build or support BDB based repositories, you must have Berkeley DB linked into the APR-util library. There is information in the Apache-2.2.8 instructions that shows the required parameters to pass to the **configure** script when building any of the APR-util packages.

Optional

Python-2.5.2 (required to run the test suite), Apache-2.2.8 (if you have Apache Portable Runtime installed), *neon**, and *serf*

* The **configure** script will warn that the installed neon version is not supported if the version is greater than 0.26.2. You can circumvent this warning by passing `--disable-neon-version-check` to the **configure** command. Note that this may or may not work, depending on the version of neon you have installed, but neon-0.26.3 is known to work.

Optional to Build the Java Bindings

JDK-6 Update 5 or *Dante* or *Jikes*, and JUnit-4.3.1 (to test the Java bindings)

Optional to Build the SWIG Bindings

*SWIG***, Python-2.5.2, and Ruby-1.8.6-p111

** The **configure** script will issue warnings if the installed version of SWIG is greater than 1.3.29, but will attempt to use it anyway if you build the SWIG bindings. Versions of SWIG up to 1.3.31 are known to work.

Installation of Subversion

Install Subversion by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's/@SVN_APR_INCLUDES@/& @CPPFLAGS@/' \
    subversion/bindings/swig/perl/native/Makefile.PL.in

./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have Doxygen-1.5.2 installed and you wish to build the API documentation, issue: **doxygen doc/doxygen.conf**.

If you passed the `--enable-javahl` parameter to **configure** and wish to build the Java bindings, issue the following command:

```
make javahl
```

If you have the necessary dependencies installed and you wish to build the Perl, Python and/or Ruby bindings, issue any or all of the following commands:

```
make swig-pl &&
make swig-py &&
make swig-rb
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

To test the results of the Java bindings build, issue **make check-javahl**. Note you must have the JUnit testing framework installed.

To test the results of any or all of the SWIG bindings, you can use the following commands:

```
make check-swig-pl &&
make check-swig-py &&
make check-swig-rb
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/subversion-1.4.4 &&
cp -v -R doc/* /usr/share/doc/subversion-1.4.4
```

If you built the Java bindings, issue the following command as the `root` user to install them:

```
make install-javahl
```

If you built any of the SWIG bindings, issue any or all of the following commands as the `root` user to install them:

```
make install-swig-pl &&

make install-swig-py &&
echo /usr/lib/svn-python \
    > /usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/subversion.pth &&

make install-swig-rb
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '...' .../Makefile.PL.in: This command is used to fix a problem with compiling the Perl bindings. It can be ommitted if you're not building the bindings.

`--with-neon=<prefix>`: This option should be used if you wish to use a system-installed version of neon.

`--with-apr=<prefix> --with-apr-util=<prefix>`: These options should be used if you wish to use the system-installed version of the APR. Ensure you identify the correct installation prefix.

`--with-apxs=/usr/sbin/apxs`: This option should be used to identify the system-installed version of the **apxs** command installed during the Apache HTTPD installation as **apxs** might not be in an unprivileged user's `PATH` and won't be properly discovered.

`--with-installbuilddir=/usr/lib/apr-0`: This parameter is used (and only has an effect if you used the Subversion dependencies package) to force the installation of some APR-related support programs to `/usr/lib/apr-0` instead of `/usr/build`.

Configuring Subversion

Config Files

`~/.subversion/config` and `/etc/subversion/config`

Configuration Information

`/etc/subversion/config` is the Subversion system-wide configuration file. This file is used to specify defaults for different **svn** commands.

`~/.subversion/config` is the user's personal configuration file. It is used to override the system-wide defaults set in `/etc/subversion/config`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	svn, svnadmin, svndumpfilter, svnlook, svnserve, svnsync and svnversion
Installed Libraries:	libsvn*.{so,a} and optionally, a Java library, the mod_dav_svn.so, and mod_authz_svn.so Apache HTTP DSO modules and various Perl, Python and Ruby modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/subversion-1, /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/5.8.8/i686-linux/auto/SVN (optional), /usr/lib/perl5/site_perl/5.8.8/i686-linux/SVN (optional), /usr/lib/ruby/site_ruby/x.x/i686-linux/svn, /usr/lib/svn-javahl (optional), /usr/lib/svn-python (optional) and /usr/share/doc/subversion-1.4.4

Short Descriptions

svn	is a command-line client program used to access Subversion repositories.
svnadmin	is a tool for creating, tweaking or repairing a Subversion repository.
svndumpfilter	is a program for filtering Subversion repository dumpfile format streams.
svnlook	is a tool for inspecting a Subversion repository.
svnserve	is a custom standalone server program, able to run as a daemon process or invoked by SSH.
svnversion	is used to report the version number and state of a working Subversion repository copy.

neon-config	is a script which provides information about an installed copy of the neon library.
`libsvn_*.{so,a}`	are the support libraries used by the Subversion programs.
`libneon.{so,a}`	is used as a high-level interface to common HTTP and WebDAV methods.
`mod_authz_svn.so`	is a plug-in module for the Apache HTTP server, used to authenticate users to a Subversion repository over the Internet or an intranet.
`mod_dav_svn.so`	is a plug-in module for the Apache HTTP server, used to make a Subversion repository available to others over the Internet or an intranet.

TCP Wrapper-7.6

Introduction to TCP Wrapper

The TCP Wrapper package provides daemon wrapper programs that report the name of the client requesting network services and the requested service.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://files.ichilton.co.uk/nfs/tcp_wrappers_7.6.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.porcupine.org/pub/security/tcp_wrappers_7.6.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: e6fa25f71226d090f34de3f6b122fb5a
- Download size: 97 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.09 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch (Fixes some build issues and adds building a shared library): *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/tcp_wrappers-7.6-shared_lib_plus_plus-1.patch*

Installation of TCP Wrapper

Install TCP Wrapper with the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../tcp_wrappers-7.6-shared_lib_plus_plus-1.patch &&
sed -i -e "s,^extern char \*malloc();,/* & */," scaffold.c &&
make REAL_DAEMON_DIR=/usr/sbin STYLE=-DPROCESS_OPTIONS linux
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e ... scaffold.c: This command removes an obsolete C declaration which causes the build to fail if using GCC >= 3.4.x.

Configuring TCP Wrapper

Config Files

`/etc/hosts.allow` and `/etc/hosts.deny`

File protections: the wrapper, all files used by the wrapper, and all directories in the path leading to those files, should be accessible but not writable for unprivileged users (mode 755 or mode 555). Do not install the wrapper set-uid.

As the `root` user, perform the following edits on the `/etc/inetd.conf` configuration file:

```
finger stream tcp nowait nobody /usr/sbin/in.fingerd in.fingerd
```

becomes:

```
finger stream tcp nowait nobody /usr/sbin/tcpd in.fingerd
```

Note

The **finger** server is used as an example here.

Similar changes must be made if xinetd is used, with the emphasis being on calling **/usr/sbin/tcpd** instead of calling the service daemon directly, and passing the name of the service daemon to **tcpd**.

Contents

Installed Programs: tcpd, tcpdchk, tcpdmatch, try-from, and safe_finger
Installed Library: libwrap.{so,a}
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

tcpd is the main access control daemon for all Internet services, which **inetd** or **xinetd** will run instead of running the requested service daemon.

tcpdchk is a tool to examine a **tcpd** wrapper configuration and report problems with it.

tcpdmatch is used to predict how the TCP wrapper would handle a specific request for a service.

try-from can be called via a remote shell command to find out if the host name and address are properly recognized.

safe_finger is a wrapper for the **finger** utility, to provide automatic reverse name lookups.

`libwrap.{so,a}` contains the API functions required by the TCP Wrapper programs as well as other programs to become “TCP Wrapper-aware”.

Wget-1.10.2

Introduction to Wget

The Wget package contains a utility useful for non-interactive downloading of files from the Web.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/wget/wget-1.10.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/wget/wget-1.10.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 795fefbb7099f93e2d346b026785c4b8
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Wget Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g and *Dante*

Installation of Wget

Install Wget by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This relocates the configuration file from `/usr/etc` to `/etc`.

Configuring Wget

Config Files

`/etc/wgetrc` and `~/.wgetrc`

There are no changes required to these files.

Contents

Installed Program:	wget
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

wget retrieves files from the Web using the HTTP, HTTPS and FTP protocols. It is designed to be non-interactive, for background or unattended operations.

Wireless Tools-28

Introduction to Wireless Tools

The Wireless Extension (WE) is a generic API in the Linux kernel allowing a driver to expose configuration and statistics specific to common Wireless LANs to user space. A single set of tools can support all the variations of Wireless LANs, regardless of their type as long as the driver supports Wireless Extensions. WE parameters may also be changed on the fly without restarting the driver (or Linux).

The Wireless Tools (WT) package is a set of tools allowing manipulation of the Wireless Extensions. They use a textual interface to support the full Wireless Extension.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.hpl.hp.com/personal/Jean_Tourrilhes/Linux/wireless_tools.28.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 599c94497f9c9073c7b052d3dcb7cd16
- Download size: 249 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.7 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Kernel Configuration

To use Wireless Tools, the kernel must have the appropriate drivers and other support available. The appropriate bus must also be available. For many laptops, the PCMCIA bus (CONFIG_PCCARD) needs to be built. In some cases, this bus support will also need to be built for embedded wireless cards. The appropriate bridge support also needs to be built. For many modern laptops, the CardBus host bridge (CONFIG_YENTA) will be needed.

In addition to the bus, the actual driver for the specific wireless card must also be available. There are many wireless cards and they don't all work with Linux. The first place to look for card support is the kernel. The drivers are located in Device Drivers # Network Device Support # Wireless LAN (non-hamradio). There are also external drivers available for some very common cards. For more information, look at the user notes.

After the correct drivers are loaded, the interface will appear in `/proc/net/wireless`.

Installation of Wireless Tools

To install Wireless Tools, use the following commands:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	ifrename, iwconfig, iwevent, iwgetid, iwlist, iwpriv, and iwspy
Installed Library:	libiw.so
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

ifrename renames network interfaces based on various static criteria.

iwconfig configures a wireless network interface.

iwevent displays wireless events generated by drivers and setting changes.

iwgetid reports ESSID, NWID or AP/Cell Address of wireless networks.

iwlist gets detailed wireless information from a wireless interface.

iwpriv configures optional (private) parameters of a wireless network interface.

iwspy gets wireless statistics from specific node.

`libiw.so` contains functions required by the wireless programs and provides an API for other programs.

Other Networking Programs

NCPFS contains client and administration tools for use with Novell networks. See the User Notes for details.

Chapter 17. Basic Networking Utilities

This chapter contains some tools that come in handy when the network needs investigating.

Traceroute-1.4a12

Introduction to Traceroute

The Traceroute package contains a program which is used to display the network route that packets take to reach a specified host. This is a standard network troubleshooting tool. If you find yourself unable to connect to another system, traceroute can help pinpoint the problem.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/platform/sun/packages/solaris/freeware/SOURCES/traceroute-1.4a12.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.ee.lbl.gov/traceroute-1.4a12.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 964d599ef696efccdeebe7721cd4828d
- Download size: 74 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 540 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.01 SBU

Installation of Traceroute

Install Traceroute by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e 's/-o bin/-o root/' Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-man
```

Command Explanations

sed 's/-o bin/-o root/' Makefile.in: Adjusts the `Makefile` so that the program is installed with user `root` owning the files instead of user `bin` (which doesn't exist on a default LFS system).

make install: Installs **traceroute** with SUID set to `root` in the `/usr/sbin` directory. This makes it possible for all users to execute **traceroute**. For absolute security, turn off the SUID bit in **traceroute**'s file permissions with the command:

```
chmod -v 0755 /usr/sbin/traceroute
```

The risk is that if a security problem such as a buffer overflow was ever found in the Traceroute code, a regular user on your system could gain `root` access if the program is SUID `root`. Of course, removing the SUID permission also makes it impossible for users other than `root` to utilize **traceroute**, so decide what's right for your individual situation.

The goal of BLFS is to be completely FHS compliant, so if you do leave the **traceroute** binary SUID `root`, then you should move `traceroute` to `/usr/bin` with the following command:

```
mv -v /usr/sbin/traceroute /usr/bin
```

This ensures that the binary is in the path for non-root users.

Contents

Installed Program: traceroute
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

traceroute does basically what it says: it traces the route your packets take from the host you are working on to another host on a network, showing all the intermediate hops (gateways) along the way.

Nmap-4.20

Introduction to Nmap

Nmap is a utility for network exploration and security auditing. It supports ping scanning, port scanning and TCP/IP fingerprinting.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/n/nmap-4.20.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/nmap-4.20.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ea50419f99472200c4184a304e3831ea
- Download size: 2.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Nmap Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, PCRE-7.6, libpcap-0.9.6, GTK+-2.10.13 (for building the graphical front-end), and *libdnet*

Installation of Nmap

Install Nmap by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: nmap and optionally, nmapfe and xnmap
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/nmap

Short Descriptions

nmap is a utility for network exploration and security auditing. It supports ping scanning, port scanning and TCP/IP fingerprinting.

nmapfe is the graphical front end to **nmap**.

xnmap is a symbolic link to **nmapfe**.

Whois-4.7.26

Introduction to Whois

Whois is a client-side application which queries the whois directory service for information pertaining to a particular domain name.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/w/whois_4.7.26.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f069304ae912ff4fdec59f33de405076
- Download size: 67 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Whois

Install Whois by running the following commands:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite (that works).

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make prefix=/usr install
```

Contents

Installed Program: whois
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

whois is a client-side application which queries the whois directory service for information pertaining to a particular domain name.

BIND Utilities-9.4.1-P1

Introduction to BIND Utilities

BIND Utilities is not a separate package, it is a collection of the client side programs that are included with BIND-9.4.1-P1. The BIND package includes the client side programs **nslookup**, **dig** and **host**. If you install BIND server, these programs will be installed automatically. This section is for those users who don't need the complete BIND server, but need these client side applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/infosys/servers/isc/bind9/9.4.1-P1/bind-9.4.1-P1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.isc.org/isc/bind9/9.4.1-P1/bind-9.4.1-P1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 44e0514e6105ddaa235394045d9aeb0c
- Download size: 6.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 63 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

BIND Utilities Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Installation of BIND Utilities

Install BIND Utilities by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make -C lib/dns &&
make -C lib/isc &&
make -C lib/bind9 &&
make -C lib/isccfg &&
make -C lib/lwres &&
make -C bin/dig
```

This portion of the package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make -C bin/dig install
```

Command Explanations

make -C lib/...: These commands build the libraries that are needed for the client programs.

make -C bin/dig: This command builds the client programs.

Contents

Installed Programs:	dig, host, and nslookup
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

See the program descriptions in the BIND-9.4.1-P1 section.

Wireshark-0.99.6

Introduction to Wireshark

The Wireshark package contains a network protocol analyzer, also known as a “sniffer”. This is useful for analyzing data captured “off the wire” from a live network connection, or data read from a capture file. Wireshark provides both a graphical and TTY-mode front-end for examining captured network packets from over 500 protocols, as well as the capability to read capture files from many other popular network analyzers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.wireshark.org/download/src/all-versions/wireshark-0.99.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/w/wireshark-0.99.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e57a8c8b364c38df3da97e2ee9f0d0bc
- Download size: 11.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 449 MB
- Estimated build time: 6.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Additional Documentation: *http://www.wireshark.org/docs/*

From this page you can download many different docs in a variety of formats.

Wireshark dependencies

Required

GLib-1.2.10 or GLib-2.12.12 (to build the TTY-mode front-end only)

Note that if you don't have Gtk+ installed, you will need to pass `--disable-wireshark` to the **configure** command.

Recommended

libpcap-0.9.6 (required to capture data)

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, GTK+-1.2.10 or GTK+-2.10.13 (to build the GUI front-end), OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, Python-2.5.2, PCRE-7.6, GnuTLS-1.6.3, *Net-SNMP*, *adns*, and *Lua*

Kernel Configuration

The kernel must have the Packet protocol enabled for Wireshark to capture live packets from the network. Enable the Packet protocol by choosing “Y” in the “Networking” – “Packet socket” configuration parameter. Alternatively, build the `af_packet.ko` module by choosing “M” in this parameter.

Installation of Wireshark

Install Wireshark by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --enable-threads &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/wireshark-0.99.6 &&
install -v -m644    FAQ README{,.linux} doc/README.* doc/*.{pod,txt} \
                    /usr/share/doc/wireshark-0.99.6 &&
pushd /usr/share/doc/wireshark-0.99.6 &&
for FILENAME in ../../wireshark/*.html; do \
    ln -s -v $FILENAME .
done &&
popd &&

install -v -m644 -D wireshark.desktop \
                    /usr/share/applications/wireshark.desktop &&
install -v -m644 -D image/wsicon48.png \
                    /usr/share/pixmaps/wireshark.png &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/pixmaps/wireshark &&
install -v -m644 image/*.{png,ico,xpm,bmp} \
                 /usr/share/pixmaps/wireshark
```

If you downloaded any of the documentation files from the page listed in the 'Additional Downloads', install them by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 <Downloaded_Files> /usr/share/doc/wireshark-0.99.6
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-threads`: This parameter enables the use of threads in **wireshark**.

`--with-ssl`: This parameter is required if you are linking Kerberos libraries into the build so that the OpenSSL `libcrypto` library is found.

Configuring Wireshark

Config Files

`/etc/wireshark.conf` and `~/.wireshark/*`

Configuration Information

Though the default configuration parameters are very sane, reference the configuration section of the *Wireshark User's Guide* for configuration information. Most of Wireshark's configuration can be accomplished using the menu options of the **wireshark** graphical interface.

Note

If you want to look at packets, make sure you don't filter them out with iptables-1.3.8. If you want to exclude certain classes of packets, it is more efficient to do it with iptables than it is with Wireshark.

Contents

Installed Programs: capinfos, dftest, dumpcap, editcap, idl2wrs, mergecap, randpkt, text2pcap, tshark and wireshark
Installed Libraries: libwireshark.so, libwiretap.so and numerous dissector plugin modules
Installed Directories: /usr/lib/wireshark, /usr/share/doc/wireshark-0.99.6, /usr/share/pixmaps/wireshark and /usr/share/wireshark

Short Descriptions

capinfos reads a saved capture file and returns any or all of several statistics about that file. It is able to detect and read any capture supported by the Wireshark package.

dftest is a display-filter-compiler test program.

dumpcap is a network traffic dump tool. It lets you capture packet data from a live network and write the packets to a file.

editcap edits and/or translates the format of capture files. It knows how to read libpcap capture files, including those of **tcpdump**, Wireshark and other tools that write captures in that format.

idl2wrs takes a user specified CORBA IDL file and generates “C” source code that can be used to create an Wireshark plugin.

mergecap combines multiple saved capture files into a single output file.

randpkt creates random-packet capture files.

text2pcap reads in an ASCII hex dump and writes the data described into a libpcap-style capture file.

tshark is a TTY-mode network protocol analyzer. It lets you capture packet data from a live network or read packets from a previously saved capture file.

wireshark is a GUI network protocol analyzer. It lets you interactively browse packet data from a live network or from a previously saved capture file.

`libwireshark.so` contains functions used by the Wireshark programs to perform filtering and packet capturing.

`libwiretap.so` is a library being developed as a future replacement for `libpcap`, the current standard Unix library for packet capturing. For more information, see the `README` file in the source `wiretap` directory.

Chapter 18. Mail/News Clients

Mail Clients help you retrieve (Fetchmail), sort (Procmail), read and compose responses (Heirloom mailx, Mutt, Pine, Kmail, Balsa, Evolution, SeaMonkey) to email.

News clients also help you retrieve, sort, read and compose responses, but these messages travel through USENET (a worldwide bulletin board system) using the Network News Transfer Protocol (NNTP).

Heirloom mailx-12.2

Introduction to Heirloom mailx

The Heirloom mailx package (formerly known as the Nail package) contains **mailx**, a command-line Mail User Agent derived from Berkeley Mail which is intended to provide the functionality of the POSIX **mailx** command with additional support for MIME messages, IMAP (including caching), POP3, SMTP, S/MIME, message threading/sorting, scoring, and filtering. Heirloom mailx is especially useful for writing scripts and batch processing.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/heirloom/mailx-12.2.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: c13c24db8fb5f5d10b7ad148647f9909
- Download size: 269 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Heirloom mailx Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g or NSS-3.11.7, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 (for IMAP GSSAPI authentication), and an MTA

Installation of Heirloom mailx

Install Heirloom mailx by running the following commands.

```
make SENDMAIL=/usr/sbin/sendmail
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make PREFIX=/usr UCBINSTALL=/usr/bin/install install &&
ln -v -sf mailx /usr/bin/mail &&
ln -v -sf mailx /usr/bin/nail &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/mailx-12.2 &&
install -v -m644 README mailx.1.html /usr/share/doc/mailx-12.2
```

Command Explanations

make SENDMAIL=/usr/sbin/sendmail: This changes the default MTA path of **/usr/lib/sendmail**.

make PREFIX=/usr UCBINSTALL=/usr/bin/install install: This changes the default installation path of `/usr/local` and the default **install** command path of `/usr/ucb`.

Configuring Heirloom mailx

Config Files

`/etc/nail.rc`, `~/.mailrc` and `~/.nailrc`

Contents

Installed Programs: mail, mailx and nail
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

mailx is a command-line mail user agent compatible with the **mailx** command found on commercial Unix versions.

mail is a symbolic link to **mailx**.

nail is a symbolic link to **mailx**.

Procmail-3.22

Introduction to Procmail

The Procmail package contains an autonomous mail processor. This is useful for filtering and sorting incoming mail.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.procmail.org/procmail-3.22.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.procmail.net/pub/procmail/procmail-3.22.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 1678ea99b973eb77eda4ecf6acae53f1
- Download size: 226 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.08 SBU

Installation of Procmail

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install Procmail by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
make LOCKINGTEST=/tmp install &&
make install-suid
```

Command Explanations

make LOCKINGTEST=/tmp install: This prevents **make** from asking you where to test file-locking patterns.

make install-suid: Modifies permissions of the installed files.

Configuring Procmail

Config Files

`/etc/procmailrc` and `~/.procmailrc`

Configuration Information

Recipes have to be written and placed in your `~/.procmailrc` for execution. The procmailex man page is the starting place to learn how to write recipes. For additional information, see also *http://pm-doc.sourceforge.net/pm-tips.html*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	formail, lockfile, mailstat and procmail
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

formail	is a filter that can be used to format mail into mailbox format.
lockfile	is a utility that can lock a file for single use interactively or in a script.

mailstat prints a summary report of mail that has been filtered by **procmail** since the last time **mailstat** was ran.

procmail is an autonomous mail processor. It performs all the functions of an MDA (Mail Delivery Agent).

Fetchmail-6.3.8

Introduction to Fetchmail

The Fetchmail package contains a mail retrieval program. It retrieves mail from remote mail servers and forwards it to the local (client) machine's delivery system, so it can then be read by normal mail user agents.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://download2.berlios.de/fetchmail/fetchmail-6.3.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/fetchmail-6.3.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 66b97500b0a1e3c0916b3b5314f597f5
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/fetchmail-6.3.8-security_fixes-1.patch*

Fetchmail Dependencies

Required

OpenSSL-0.9.8g and a local MDA (Procmail-3.22)

Optional

Python-2.5.2 and Tk-8.4.18

Installation of Fetchmail

Install Fetchmail by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../fetchmail-6.3.8-security_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-ssl --enable-fallback=procmail &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-ssl`: This enables SSL support, so that you can handle connections to secure POP3 and IMAP servers.

`--enable-fallback=procmail`: This tells Fetchmail to hand incoming mail to Procmail for delivery, if the port 25 mail server is not present or not responding.

Configuring Fetchmail

Config Files

`~/.fetchmailrc`

Configuration Information

```
cat > ~/.fetchmailrc << "EOF"
set logfile /var/log/fetchmail.log
set no bouncemail
set postmaster root

poll SERVERNAME :
    user <username> pass <password>;
    mda "/usr/bin/procmail -f %F -d %T";
EOF

chmod -v 0600 ~/.fetchmailrc
```

This is an example configuration that should suffice for most people. You can add as many users and servers as you need using the same syntax.

man fetchmail: Look for the section near the bottom named *CONFIGURATION EXAMPLES*. It gives some quick examples. There are countless other config options once you get used to it.

Contents

Installed Program:	fetchmail and fetchmailconf
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

fetchmail	when executed as a user, this will source `~/.fetchmailrc` and download the appropriate mail.
fetchmailconf	it will assist you in setting up and editing a `~/.fetchmailrc` configuration file, by using a Tk GUI interface. It requires Python and it must have the Tkinker module available.

Mutt-1.5.17

Introduction to Mutt

The Mutt package contains a Mail User Agent. This is useful for reading, writing, replying to, saving, and deleting your email.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/mutt/mutt-1.5.17.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.mutt.org/mutt/devel/mutt-1.5.17.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 49387458be0cb52b85ae0d73af699aae
- Download size: 3.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 25.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Mutt Dependencies

Optional

GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8, OpenSSL-0.9.8g or GnuTLS-1.6.3, an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command), Aspell-0.60.5, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, S-Lang-2.1.3, libidn-0.6.14, GDBM-1.8.3 or *QDBM*, and *GDB*

Optional (To Regenerate HTML Documentation)

libxslt-1.1.22 and either Lynx-2.8.6rel.5, w3m or *ELinks*

Optional (To Generate PDF Manual)

JadeTeX-3.13 and DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets-1.79

Installation of Mutt

Note

This version of Mutt is a development release. The BLFS staff has determined that it provides a stable program and fixes two issues in the current stable version of Mutt: a segmentation fault that occurs under certain conditions and a compilation problem when building with GCC-4.1.2. To find the current stable release, please refer to the *Mutt home page*.

Caution

If you choose to link Mutt against GnuTLS-1.6.3, you won't have SSL client certificate support. Specifically the `ssl_client_cert` configuration variable is recognized as invalid. That means you will lose the ability to use **mutt** via SMTP over TLS or in the case when a client certification is required for authentication on an IMAP server. For these reasons it is recommended to link Mutt against OpenSSL-0.9.8g if you want SSL/TLS support.

Mutt requires a group named `mail`. You can add this group, if it does not exist, with this command:

```
groupadd -g 34 mail
```

If you did not install an MTA, such as Postfix-2.5.1 or Sendmail-8.14.1, you need to modify the ownership of `/var/mail` with this command:

```
chgrp -v mail /var/mail
```

Install Mutt by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --with-docdir=/usr/share/doc/mutt-1.5.17 \
    --enable-pop --enable-imap \
    --enable-hcache --without-qdbm \
    --without-gdbm --with-bdb &&
make
```

If you have the necessary dependencies installed and would like to rebuild the HTML documentation, issue the following commands:

```
make -C doc clean &&
make -C doc
```

To generate the PDF manual with JadeTeX-3.13, run the following command:

```
make -C doc manual.pdf
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you generated the PDF manual, install it and the source TeX file by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 doc/manual.{pdf,tex} \
    /usr/share/doc/mutt-1.5.17
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-pop`: This switch enables POP3 support.

`--enable-imap`: This switch enables IMAP support.

`--enable-hcache`: This switch enables header caching.

`--without-qdbm`: This switch disables QDBM as the header cache backend.

`--without-gdbm`: This switch disables GDBM as the header cache backend.

`--with-bdb`: This switch enables Berkeley DB as the header cache backend.

`--enable-smtp`: This switch enables SMTP relay support.

`--with-ssl`: This parameter adds SSL/TLS support from OpenSSL-0.9.8g in POP3/IMAP/SMTP if they are enabled.

`--with-sasl`: This parameter adds authentication support from Cyrus SASL-2.1.22 in POP3/IMAP/SMTP if they are enabled. Depending on the server configuration, this may not be needed for POP3 or IMAP. However, it is needed for SMTP authentication.

Configuring Mutt

Config Files

`/etc/Muttrc`, `~/.muttrc`, `/etc/mime.types`, `~/.mime.types`

Configuration Information

No changes in these files are necessary to begin using Mutt. When you are ready to make changes, the man page for `muttrc` is a good starting place.

In order to utilize GnuPG, use the following command:

```
cat /usr/share/doc/mutt-1.5.17/samples/gpg.rc >> ~/.muttrc
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	flea, mutt, mutt_dotlock, muttbug, pgpewrap, pgpring, and smime_keys
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/mutt-1.5.17

Short Descriptions

flea	is a bug submitter for Mutt.
mutt	is a Mail User Agent (MUA) which enables you to read, write and delete your email.
mutt_dotlock	implements the mail spool file lock.
muttbug	is a script that executes **flea**.
pgpewrap	prepares a command line for the GnuPG-1.4.7 utilities.
pgpring	is a key ring dumper for *PGP*. It is not needed for GnuPG-1.4.7.
smime_keys	manages a keystore for S/MIME certificates.

Pine-4.64

Introduction to Pine

The Pine package contains the Pine Mail User Agent and several server daemons for various mail protocols, in addition to some nice file and directory editing/browsing programs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirror.sit.wisc.edu/pub/net/mail/pine/pine4.64.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.cac.washington.edu/pine/pine4.64.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 39ca07b3d305b4cd0d6aaf4585123275
- Download size: 3.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 64 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Recommended Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/pine-4.64-utf8-1.patch*

Pine Dependencies

Required

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

OpenLDAP-2.3.39 and MIT Kerberos V5-1.6

Installation of Pine

Install Pine by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../pine-4.64-utf8-1.patch &&
sed -i "s@/usr/local/lib/pine@/etc/pine@g" \
    $(grep -lr /usr/local/lib/pine *) &&
./build DEBUG=-O MAILSPOOL=/var/mail \
    SSLDIR=/usr SSLCERTS=/etc/ssl/certs slx
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 doc/*.1 /usr/share/man/man1 &&
install -v -p -m644 doc/tech-notes/*.html /usr/share/doc/pine4.64 &&
install -v -m755 \
bin/{pine,imapd,ipop2d,ipop3d,mailutil,mtest,pico,pilot,rpdump,rpload} \
    /usr/bin
```

Command Explanations

patch -Np1 -i ../pine-4.64-utf8-1.patch: This patch enables Pine UTF-8 and charset conversion.

sed -i "s@/usr/ ... /lib/pine *): This **sed** will make Pine use `/etc` for configuration files. It also alters the documentation to reflect that.

The build procedure for Pine is somewhat unusual, in that options usually passed as **./configure** options or housed in `$CFLAGS` must all be passed on the command line to the **./build** script.

./build slx: Pine offers quite a few target platforms, slx specifies Linux using `-lcrypt` to get the crypt function. See the `doc/pine-ports` file for more information and other authentication options.

DEBUG=-O: This flag compiles an optimized version of **pine** and **pico** that produces no debug files.

MAILSPOOL=/var/mail: Location of mail spool files, `/var/mail`.

SSLDIR=/usr SSLCERTS=/etc/ssl/certs: Location of OpenSSL files.

Configuring Pine

Config Files

`~/.pinerc`

Configuration Information

The **pine** executable needs no global configuration to use. Users set Pine options in `~/.pinerc` using an internal configuration menu.

Contents

Installed Programs:	imapd, ipop2d, ipop3d, mtest, pico, pilot, pine, rpdump, and rpload
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/pine4.64

Short Descriptions

imapd	is the IMAP server daemon.
ipop2d	is an IMAP to POP2 conversion server.
ipop3d	is an IMAP to POP3 conversion server.
metest	is a minimal IMAP mail user agent, used for debugging.
pico	is a stand-alone editor, similar to the Pine internal message composer.
pilot	is a file and directory navigator and browser.
pine	is the Pine mail user agent.
rpdump	is used to copy data from remote Pine configuration files or address books into a local file.
rpload	is the Pine remote data utility, used to convert local Pine configuration files or address books into remote configurations or address books.

TIN-1.8.3

Introduction to TIN

TIN is a threaded NNTP and spool based console-mode UseNet newsreader. It supports threading, scoring, different charsets, and many other useful things. It has also support for different languages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/infosys/newsreaders/tin/v1.8/tin-1.8.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.tin.org/pub/news/clients/tin/v1.8/tin-1.8.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e6ed45205020665c097556822b0d575b
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 12.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

TIN Dependencies

Optional

PCRE-7.6, libidn-0.6.14, an MTA that provides the **sendmail** command or Heirloom mailx-12.2, GnuPG-1.4.7, Aspell-0.60.5, *INN*, *UUDeview*, *Socks*, *Metamail*, and *Dmalloc* or *dbmalloc*

Installation of TIN

Install TIN by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-screen=ncursesw \
    --enable-nntp-only --disable-printing &&
make build
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install_sysdefs &&
rm -vf doc/*.? &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/tin-1.8.3 &&
install -v -m644 doc/* /usr/share/doc/tin-1.8.3
```

Command Explanations

`--with-screen=ncursesw`: This switch forces the use of wide-character functions from the ncursesw library (for UTF-8 and Asian languages support).

`--enable-nntp-only`: Reading news from a local spool is disabled with this switch. Don't use this if you have installed INN and want to use its spool.

`--disable-printing`: This switch disables printing since TIN cannot send non-ASCII text to the printer correctly. Remove this switch if you can tolerate this limitation.

--with-editor: This switch sets the default editor used by TIN. The default is **vi**.

Configuring TIN

Config Files

`/etc/tin/tinrc`, `~/.tin/tinrc`, `~/.newsrc`, `/etc/tin/tin.defaults`, `/etc/tin/mime.types`, `/etc/tin/keymap` and `/etc/mailcap`

Configuration Information

Set some global defaults for TIN by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/tin/tinrc << "EOF"
use_mouse=ON
getart_limit=100
translit=ON
EOF
```

Now, as an unprivileged user, subscribe to some newsgroups, specify the news server, and run **tin**:

```
cat >> ~/.newsrc << "EOF"
gmane.linux.lfs.devel:
gmane.linux.lfs.beyond.devel:
EOF
export NNTPSERVER=news.gmane.org
tin -Q
```

For printing, TIN executes the **lpr** command. This can be provided by CUPS-1.2.12 or LPRng-3.8.28.

If you do not have the **metamail** program, TIN will use an internal parser for multipart MIME articles. Alternatively, you can use Mutt for MIME parsing through the **metamutt** shell script. This requires both the Mutt-1.5.17 and Procmail-3.22 programs. To use **metamutt**, set `metamail_prog=metamutt` in **tin**.

Contents

Installed Programs:	tin, rtin, tinews.pl, metamutt, opt-case.pl, w2r.pl, and url_handler.sh
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/etc/tin

Short Descriptions

tin	is a UseNet news reader.
rtin	is a symbolic link to **tin**.
tinews.pl	posts and signs an article via NNTP.
metamutt	is a replacement of **metamail** using Mutt.
opt-case.pl	optimizes case insensitive regexp filters for tin.
w2r.pl	converts tin wildmat filters to tin regexp filters.
url_handler.sh	calls a web browser for viewing hyperlinks.

Other Mail and News Programs

Pan-0.14.2 is a GTK2 based newsreader program.

knode is a Qt based newsreader program from kdepim-3.5.9.

kmail is a Qt based mail client from kdepim-3.5.9.

Balsa-2.3.22 is a GTK2 based mail client.

SeaMonkey-1.1.9 includes both a mail client and newsreader in its installation.

Thunderbird-2.0.0.12 is a mail/news client based on the Mozilla code base.

Evolution-2.10.3 includes a GTK2 based mail client.

Part V. Servers

Chapter 19. Major Servers

Major servers are the programs that provide content or services to users or other programs.

Apache-2.2.8

Introduction to Apache

The Apache package contains an open-source HTTP server. It is useful for creating local intranet web sites or running huge web serving operations.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://archive.apache.org/dist/httpd/httpd-2.2.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://apache.mirrors.pair.com/httpd/httpd-2.2.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 76d2598a4797163d07cd50e5304aa7cd
- Download size: 4.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 83 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/httpd-2.2.8-config-1.patch*

Apache Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, PCRE-7.6, *APR*, *APR-util*, and *distcache*

Optional (Only if Using the Bundled APR-util)

pkg-config-0.22, expat-2.0.1, GDBM-1.8.3, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, and *SQLite*

Though you can install APR and APR-util as separate components, it is recommended to use the bundled versions that come with the Apache HTTPD tarball.

Installation of Apache

For security reasons, running the server as an unprivileged user and group is strongly encouraged. Create the following group and user using the following commands (as `root`):

```
groupadd -g 25 apache &&
useradd -c "Apache Server" -d /dev/null -g apache \
        -s /bin/false -u 25 apache
```

Note

The above command directs the Apache user's home directory to `/dev/null`. This may not work for some add-ons such as *ViewVC*, a browser interface for CVS and Subversion version control repositories. See the User Notes for details for specific applications.

The following patch modifies the layout of destination directories and among them, the build directory at `/usr/lib/apache/build`. This will allow the modules added to Apache to be configured without errors. Apply the patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../httpd-2.2.8-config-1.patch
```

Note

You may wish to review the output from **./configure --help** and include whatever parameters are necessary to the **configure** command below to build the modules required for your installation. There are as many as 62 additional parameters you can add to the **configure** command to build additional modules. Some of the extra parameters which aren't described or mentioned in the *--help* information are listed in the "Command Explanations" section below.

If you are using the bundled version of APR-util and you are going to install Subversion with Berkeley DB back-end support, ensure you use the parameters shown in the "Command Explanations" section below.

Build and install Apache by running the following commands:

```
./configure --enable-layout=FHS --enable-mods-shared=all &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the root user:

```
make install &&
chown -v root:root /usr/lib/apache/httpd.exp \
    /usr/sbin/{apxs,apachectl,dbmmanage,envvars{,-std}} \
    /usr/share/man/man1/{dbmmanage,ht{dbm,digest,passwd}}.1 \
    /usr/share/man/man8/{ab,apachectl,apxs,htcacheclean,httpd}.8 \
    /usr/share/man/man8/{logresolve,rotatelogs,suexec}.8 &&
chown -v -R apache:apache /srv/www
```

Command Explanations

--enable-mods-shared=all: The modules should be compiled and used as Dynamic Shared Objects (DSOs) so they can be included and excluded from the server using the run-time configuration directives.

--enable-ssl: Use this parameter to create the mod_ssl module and enable SSL support. This parameter is mentioned as one of many parameters which can be passed to the **configure** command to create additional DSO modules.

--with-pcre: Add this parameter to use the system installed version of the PCRE library.

--with-z: Add this parameter to use the system installed version of the Zlib library.

--with-ldap: This parameter is required if you passed the --enable-authnz-ldap or --enable-ldap options to **configure** and enabled the OpenLDAP modules.

--with-dbm=db45 --with-berkeley-db: Use these parameters if you require Berkeley DB support in the bundled version of APR-util (required for Berkeley DB back-end support in Subversion).

chown root:root ...: This command changes the ownership of some installed files, the result of building the package as a user other than root.

chown -R apache:apache /srv/www: By default, the installation process installs files (documentation, error messages, default icons, etc.) with the ownership of the user that extracted the files from the tar file. If you want to change the ownership to another user, you should do so at this point. The only requirement is that the document directories need to be accessible by the **httpd** process with (r-x) permissions and files need to be readable (r--) by the apache user.

Configuring Apache

Config Files

`/etc/apache/*`

Configuration Information

The main configuration file is named `/etc/apache/httpd.conf`. Modify it so that the HTTP server runs as the dedicated user and group:

```
sed -i -e "s/User daemon/User apache/" \
       -e "s/Group daemon/Group apache/" \
    /etc/apache/httpd.conf
```

See *http://httpd.apache.org/docs-2.2/configuring.html* for detailed instructions on customizing your Apache HTTP server configuration file.

There's a problem with the ISAPI DSO module caused from compiling with GCC-4.1.2. If you included the parameter to build the module, comment out the module's load command in the configuration file with the following command:

```
sed -i "s/^LoadModule isapi_module/# &/" \
    /etc/apache/httpd.conf
```

Boot Script

If you want the Apache server to start automatically when the system is booted, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/apache` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-apache
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	ab, apachectl, apr-config, apu-config, apxs, checkgid, dbmmanage, htdbm, htdigest, htpasswd, httpd, instdso.sh, logresolve, and rotatelogs
Installed Libraries:	libapr-1.{so,a}, libaprutil-1.{so,a}, and /usr/lib/apache/*.so
Installed Directories:	/etc/apache, /srv/www, /usr/include/apache, /usr/lib/apache, and /var/log/apache

Short Descriptions

ab	is a tool for benchmarking your Apache HTTP server.
apachectl	is a front end to the Apache HTTP server which is designed to help the administrator control the functioning of the Apache httpd daemon.
apxs	is a tool for building and installing extension modules for the Apache HTTP server.
dbmanage	is used to create and update the DBM format files used to store usernames and passwords for basic authentication of HTTP users.
htdigest	is used to create and update the flat-files used to store usernames, realms and passwords for digest authentication of HTTP users.
htpasswd	is used to create and update the flat-files used to store usernames and passwords for basic authentication of HTTP users.

httpd is the Apache HTTP server program.

instdso.sh is a script which installs Apache DSO modules.

logresolve is a post-processing program to resolve IP-addresses in Apache's access log files.

rotatelogs is a simple program for use in conjunction with Apache's piped log file feature.

BIND-9.4.1-P1

Introduction to BIND

The BIND package provides a DNS server and client utilities. If you are only interested in the utilities, refer to the BIND Utilities-9.4.1-P1.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/infosys/servers/isc/bind9/9.4.1-P1/bind-9.4.1-P1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.isc.org/isc/bind9/9.4.1-P1/bind-9.4.1-P1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 44e0514e6105ddaa235394045d9aeb0c
- Download size: 6.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 98 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.9 SBU (additional 11 minutes, processor independent, to run the complete test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Optional patch (if net-tools is not installed): *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/bind-9.4.1-P1-use_iproute2-1.patch*

BIND Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional (to run the test suite)

Net-DNS-0.57 and Net-tools-1.60 (you may omit net-tools by using the optional patch to utilize iproute2)

Optional (to rebuild documentation)

teTeX-3.0 and libxslt-1.1.22

Installation of BIND

If you have chosen not to install net-tools, apply the iproute2 patch with the following command:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bind-9.4.1-P1-use_iproute2-1.patch
```

Install BIND by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --mandir=/usr/share/man \
            --enable-threads \
            --with-libtool &&
sed -i "s@198.32.64.12@199.7.83.42@" \
    lib/dns/rootns.c &&
make
```

Issue the following commands to run the complete suite of tests. First, as the `root` user, set up some test interfaces:

```
bin/tests/system/ifconfig.sh up
```

Now run the test suite as an unprivileged user:

```
make check 2>&1 | tee check.log
```

Again as `root`, clean up the test interfaces:

```
bin/tests/system/ifconfig.sh down
```

Issue the following command to check that all 148 tests ran successfully:

```
grep "R:PASS" check.log | wc -l
```

Finally, install the package as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod 755 /usr/lib/lib{bind9,isc{,cc,cfg},lwres,dns}.so.*.?.? &&

cd doc &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/bind-9.4.1-P1/{arm,draft,misc,rfc} &&
install -v -m644 arm/*.html \
    /usr/share/doc/bind-9.4.1-P1/arm &&
install -v -m644 draft/*.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/bind-9.4.1-P1/draft &&
install -v -m644 rfc/* \
    /usr/share/doc/bind-9.4.1-P1/rfc &&
install -v -m644 \
    misc/{dnssec,ipv6,migrat*,options,rfc-compliance,roadmap,sdb} \
    /usr/share/doc/bind-9.4.1-P1/misc
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This parameter forces BIND to look for configuration files in `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--enable-threads`: This parameter enables multi-threading capability.

`--with-libtool`: This parameter forces the building of dynamic libraries and links the installed binaries to these libraries.

sed -i "s@198.32.64.12@199.7.83.42@" lib/dns/rootns.c: Use updated address for L.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.

chmod 755 /usr/lib/{lib{bind9,isc{,cc,cfg},lwres,dns}.so.*.?.?}: Enable the execute bit to prevent a warning when using **ldd** to check library dependencies.

cd doc; install ...: These commands install additional package documentation. Omit any or all of these commands if desired.

Configuring BIND

Config files

`named.conf`, `root.hints`, `127.0.0`, `rndc.conf` and `resolv.conf`

Configuration Information

BIND will be configured to run in a **chroot** jail as an unprivileged user (`named`). This configuration is more secure in that a DNS compromise can only affect a few files in the `named` user's `HOME` directory.

Create the unprivileged user and group named:

```
groupadd -g 20 named &&
useradd -c "BIND Owner" -g named -s /bin/false -u 20 named &&
install -d -m770 -o named -g named /srv/named
```

Set up some files, directories and devices needed by BIND:

```
cd /srv/named &&
mkdir -p dev etc/namedb/slave var/run &&
mknod /srv/named/dev/null c 1 3 &&
mknod /srv/named/dev/random c 1 8 &&
chmod 666 /srv/named/dev/{null,random} &&
mkdir /srv/named/etc/namedb/pz &&
cp /etc/localtime /srv/named/etc
```

Then, generate a key for use in the named.conf and rdnc.conf files using the **rndc-confgen** command:

```
rndc-confgen -r /dev/urandom -b 512 | \
    grep -m 1 "secret" | cut -d '"' -f 2
```

Create the named.conf file from which **named** will read the location of zone files, root name servers and secure DNS keys:

```
cat > /srv/named/etc/named.conf << "EOF"
 options {
     directory "/etc/namedb";
    pid-file "/var/run/named.pid";
    statistics-file "/var/run/named.stats";

 };
 controls {
     inet 127.0.0.1 allow { localhost; } keys { rndc_key; };
 };
 key "rndc_key" {
     algorithm hmac-md5;
     secret "<Insert secret from rndc-confgen's output here>";
 };
 zone "." {
     type hint;
     file "root.hints";
 };
 zone "0.0.127.in-addr.arpa" {
     type master;
     file "pz/127.0.0";
 };

// Bind 9 now logs by default through syslog (except debug).
// These are the default logging rules.
```

```
logging {
     category default { default_syslog; default_debug; };
     category unmatched { null; };

  channel default_syslog {
      syslog daemon;                        // send to syslog's daemon
                                            // facility
      severity info;                        // only send priority info
                                            // and higher
  };

  channel default_debug {
      file "named.run";                     // write to named.run in
                                            // the working directory
                                            // Note: stderr is used instead
                                            // of "named.run"
                                            // if the server is started
                                            // with the '-f' option.
      severity dynamic;                     // log at the server's
                                            // current debug level
  };

  channel default_stderr {
      stderr;                               // writes to stderr
      severity info;                        // only send priority info
                                            // and higher
  };

  channel null {
     null;                                  // toss anything sent to
                                            // this channel
  };
};

EOF
```

Create the `rndc.conf` file with the following commands:

```
cat > /etc/rndc.conf << "EOF"
key rndc_key {
algorithm "hmac-md5";
    secret
    "<Insert secret from rndc-confgen's output here>";
    };
options {
    default-server localhost;
    default-key    rndc_key;
};
EOF
```

The `rndc.conf` file contains information for controlling **named** operations with the **rndc** utility.

Create a zone file with the following contents:

```
cat > /srv/named/etc/namedb/pz/127.0.0 << "EOF"
$TTL 3D
@      IN      SOA     ns.local.domain. hostmaster.local.domain. (
                        1       ; Serial
                        8H      ; Refresh
                        2H      ; Retry
                        4W      ; Expire
                        1D)     ; Minimum TTL
                NS      ns.local.domain.
1               PTR     localhost.
EOF
```

Create the `root.hints` file with the following commands:

Note

Caution must be used to ensure there are no leading spaces in this file.

```
cat > /srv/named/etc/namedb/root.hints << "EOF"
.                       6D  IN      NS      A.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      B.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      C.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      D.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      E.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      F.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      G.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      H.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      I.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      J.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      K.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      L.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
.                       6D  IN      NS      M.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.
A.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       198.41.0.4
B.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.228.79.201
C.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.33.4.12
D.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       128.8.10.90
E.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.203.230.10
F.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.5.5.241
G.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.112.36.4
H.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       128.63.2.53
I.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.36.148.17
J.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       192.58.128.30
K.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       193.0.14.129
L.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       199.7.83.42
M.ROOT-SERVERS.NET.     6D  IN      A       202.12.27.33
EOF
```

The `root.hints` file is a list of root name servers. This file must be updated periodically with the **dig** utility. A current copy of root.hints can be obtained from *ftp://rs.internic.net/domain/named.root*. Consult the *BIND 9 Administrator Reference Manual* for details.

Create or modify `resolv.conf` to use the new name server with the following commands:

Note

Replace <*yourdomain.com*> with your own valid domain name.

```
cp /etc/resolv.conf /etc/resolv.conf.bak &&
cat > /etc/resolv.conf << "EOF"
search <yourdomain.com>
nameserver 127.0.0.1
EOF
```

Set permissions on the **chroot** jail with the following command:

```
chown -R named.named /srv/named
```

Boot Script

To start the DNS server at boot, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/bind` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-bind
```

Now start BIND with the new boot script:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/bind start
```

Testing BIND

Test out the new BIND 9 installation. First query the local host address with **dig**:

```
dig -x 127.0.0.1
```

Now try an external name lookup, taking note of the speed difference in repeated lookups due to the caching. Run the **dig** command twice on the same address:

```
dig www.linuxfromscratch.org &&
dig www.linuxfromscratch.org
```

You can see almost instantaneous results with the named caching lookups. Consult the BIND Administrator Reference Manual located at `doc/arm/Bv9ARM.html` in the package source tree, for further configuration options.

Contents

Installed Programs:	dig, dnssec-keygen, dnssec-signzone, host, isc-config.sh, lwresd, named, named-checkconf, named-checkzone, nslookup, nsupdate, rndc, and rndc-confgen
Installed Libraries:	libbind9.{so,a}, libdns.{so,a}, libisc.{so,a}, libisccc.{so,a}, libisccfg.{so,a}, and liblwres.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/srv/named, /usr/include/bind9, /usr/include/dns, /usr/include/dst, /usr/include/isc, /usr/include/isccc, /usr/include/isccfg, /usr/include/lwres, and /usr/share/doc/bind-9.4.1-P1

Short Descriptions

dig	interrogates DNS servers.
dnssec-keygen	is a key generator for secure DNS.
dnssec-signzone	generates signed versions of zone files.
host	is a utility for DNS lookups.
lwresd	is a caching-only name server for local process use.
named	is the name server daemon.
named-checkconf	checks the syntax of `named.conf` files.
named-checkzone	checks zone file validity.

nslookup is a program used to query Internet domain nameservers.

nsupdate is used to submit DNS update requests.

rndc controls the operation of BIND.

rndc-confgen generates `rndc.conf` files.

NFS Utilities-1.1.2

Introduction to NFS Utilities

The NFS Utilities package contains the userspace server and client tools necessary to use the kernel's NFS abilities. NFS is a protocol that allows sharing file systems over the network.

Package information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/nfs/nfs-utils-1.1.2.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 76ee9274c2b867839427eba91b327f03
- Download size: 778 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

NFS Utilities Dependencies

Required

portmap-6.0 (Runtime dependency)

Optional

TCP Wrapper-7.6

Optional for NFSv4 Support

pkg-config-0.22, *libevent*, and *libnsfidmap*

Optional for GSS (RPC Security) Support

pkg-config-0.22, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1 or *libgssapi*, and *librpcsecgss*

Optional for SPKM-3 Support

SPKM-3

Kernel Configuration

Enable the following options in the kernel configuration and recompile the kernel if necessary:

```
File systems:
  Network File Systems:
    NFS File System Support: M or Y
    NFS Server Support: M or Y
```

Select the appropriate sub-options that appear when the above options are selected.

Installation of NFS Utilities

Before you compile the program, ensure that the `nobody` user and `nogroup` group have been created. You can add them by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 99 nogroup &&
useradd -c "Unprivileged Nobody" -d /dev/null -g nogroup \
    -s /bin/false -u 99 nobody
```

Note

The classic uid and gid values are 65534 which is also -2 when interpreted as a signed 16-bit number. These values impact other files on some filesystems that do not have support for sparse files. The `nobody` and `nogroup` values are relatively arbitrary. The impact on a server is nil if the `exports` file is configured correctly. If it is misconfigured, an **ls -l** or **ps** listing will show a uid or gid number of 65534 instead of a name. The client uses `nobody` only as the user running **rpc.statd**.

Install NFS Utilities by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --disable-nfsv4 \
            --disable-gss &&
make
```

If your `/usr` directory is NFS mounted, you should install the executables in `/sbin` by passing an additional parameter `--sbindir=/sbin` to the above **./configure** command.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-nfsv4`: Disables support for NFS version 4.

`--disable-gss`: Disables support for RPCSEC GSS (RPC Security).

Configuring NFS Utilities

Server Configuration

`/etc/exports` contains the exported directories on NFS servers. Refer to the `exports.5` manual page for the syntax of this file. Also refer to the "NFS HowTo" available at *http://nfs.sourceforge.net/nfs-howto/* for information on how to configure the servers and clients in a secure manner. For example, for sharing the `/home` directory over the local network, the following line may be added:

```
/home <192.168.0.0/255.255.255.0>(rw,subtree_check,anonuid=99,anongid=99)
```

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/nfs-server` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package to start the server at boot.

```
make install-nfs-server
```

Now create the /etc/sysconfig/nfs-server configuration file:

```
cat > /etc/sysconfig/nfs-server << "EOF"
PORT="2049"
PROCESSES="8"
QUOTAS="no"
KILLDELAY="10"
EOF
```

tcpwrappers Configuration

If you have TCP Wrapper-7.6 installed and there is a restrictive /etc/hosts.deny file, ensure you have an entry in the /etc/hosts.allow file for access from the portmap daemon. See the man page in section 5 for hosts_access for details on creating appropriate rules.

Client Configuration

/etc/fstab contains the directories that are to be mounted on the client. Alternately the partitions can be mounted by using the **mount** command with the proper options. To mount the /home and /usr partitions, add the following to the /etc/fstab:

```
<server-name>:/home  /home nfs   rw,_netdev,rsize=8192,wsize=8192 0 0
<server-name>:/usr   /usr  nfs   ro,_netdev,rsize=8192           0 0
```

Boot Script

Install the /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfs-client init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package to start the client services at boot.

```
make install-nfs-client
```

To automatically mount nfs filesystems, clients will also need to install the netfs bootscript as described in Configuring for Network Filesystems.

Contents

Installed Programs:	exportfs, mount.nfs, mount.nfs4, nfsstat, rpc.mountd, rpc.nfsd, rpc.statd, rpcdebug, showmount, sm-notify, start-statd and umount.nfs as well as umount.nfs4
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/var/lib/nfs

Short Descriptions

exportfs	maintains a list of NFS exported file systems.
mount.nfs	Used to mount a network share using NFS
mount.nfs4	Used to mount a network share using NFSv4
nfsstat	prints NFS statistics.
rpc.mountd	implements the NFS mount protocol on an NFS server.
rpc.nfsd	implements the user level part of the NFS service on the server.

rpc.statd	is used by the NFS file locking service. Run on both sides, client as well as server, when you want file locking enabled.
rpcdebug	sets or clears the kernel's NFS client and server debug flags.
showmount	displays mount information for an NFS server.
sm-notify	is used to send Network Status Monitor reboot messages.
start-statd	is a script called by nfsmount when mounting a filesystem with locking enabled, if statd does not appear to be running. It can be customised with whatever flags are appropriate for the site.
umount.nfs	Used to unmount a network share using NFS
umount.nfs4	Used to unmount a network share using NFSv4

OpenSSH-4.7p1

Introduction to OpenSSH

The OpenSSH package contains **ssh** clients and the **sshd** daemon. This is useful for encrypting authentication and subsequent traffic over a network.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://sunsite.ualberta.ca/pub/OpenBSD/OpenSSH/portable/openssh-4.7p1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.openbsd.org/pub/OpenBSD/OpenSSH/portable/openssh-4.7p1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 50a800fd2c6def9e9a53068837e87b91
- Download size: 968 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 16.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU (additional 1.2 SBU to run the test suite)

OpenSSH Dependencies

Required

OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, TCP Wrapper-7.6, X Window System, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1, Net-tools-1.60, Sysstat-7.0.4, *libedit* (provides a command-line history feature to **sftp**), *OpenSC*, and *libsectok*

Installation of OpenSSH

OpenSSH runs as two processes when connecting to other computers. The first process is a privileged process and controls the issuance of privileges as necessary. The second process communicates with the network. Additional installation steps are necessary to set up the proper environment, which are performed by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m700 -d /var/lib/sshd &&
chown -v root:sys /var/lib/sshd &&
groupadd -g 50 sshd &&
useradd -c 'sshd PrivSep' -d /var/lib/sshd -g sshd \
    -s /bin/false -u 50 sshd
```

OpenSSH is very sensitive to changes in the linked OpenSSL libraries. If you recompile OpenSSL, OpenSSH may fail to startup. An alternative is to link against the static OpenSSL library. To link against the static library, execute the following command:

```
sed -i 's@-lcrypto@/usr/lib/libcrypto.a -ldl@' configure
```

Install OpenSSH by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's@ -ldes@@' configure &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc/ssh --datadir=/usr/share/sshd \
    --libexecdir=/usr/lib/openssh --with-md5-passwords \
    --with-privsep-path=/var/lib/sshd \
    --with-xauth=/usr/bin/xauth &&
make
```

If you linked tcp_wrappers into the build using the `--with-tcp-wrappers` parameter, ensure you add 127.0.0.1 to the sshd line in `/etc/hosts.allow` if you have a restrictive `/etc/hosts.deny` file, or the test suite will fail. Additionally, the testsuite requires an installed copy of **scp** to complete the mulitplexing tests. To run the test suite, issue the following commnds as the `root` user:

```
if test -f /usr/bin/scp
then
    mv /usr/bin/scp /usr/bin/scp-bak
fi &&
cp scp /usr/bin/scp &&
make tests 2>&1 | tee check.log
grep "FATAL" check.log
```

If the above command produces no 'FATAL' errors, then proceed with the installation, again as the `root` user:

```
rm /usr/bin/scp &&
if test -f /usr/bin/scp-bak
then
    rm /usr/bin/scp-bak
fi &&
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/openssh-4.7p1 &&
install -v -m644 INSTALL LICENCE OVERVIEW README* WARNING.RNG \
    /usr/share/doc/openssh-4.7p1
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's@ -ldes@@' configure: This command fixes a build crash if you used the `--with-kerberos5` parameter and you built the Heimdal package in accordance with the BLFS instructions. The command is harmless in all other instances.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/ssh`: This prevents the configuration files from being installed in `/usr/etc`.

`--datadir=/usr/share/sshd`: This switch puts the Ssh.bin file (used for SmartCard authentication) in `/usr/share/sshd`.

`--with-md5-passwords`: This is required with the default configuration of Shadow password suite in LFS.

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib/openssh`: This parameter changes the installation path of some programs to `/usr/lib/openssh` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

`--with-pam`: This parameter enables Linux-PAM support in the build.

`--with-xauth=/usr/bin/xauth`: Set the default location for the **xauth** binary for X authentication. Change the location if **xauth** will be installed to a different path. This can also be controlled from `sshd_config` with the XAuthLocation keyword. You can omit this switch if Xorg is already installed.

Configuring OpenSSH

Config Files

`~/.ssh/*`, `/etc/ssh/ssh_config`, and `/etc/ssh/sshd_config`

There are no required changes to any of these files. However, you may wish to view the `/etc/ssh/` files and make any changes appropriate for the security of your system. One recommended change is that you disable `root` login via **ssh**. Execute the following command as the `root` user to disable `root` login via **ssh**:

```
echo "PermitRootLogin no" >> /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

If you added LinuxPAM support, then you will need to add a configuration file for sshd. Issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
sed 's@d/login@d/sshd@g' /etc/pam.d/login > /etc/pam.d/sshd &&
chmod 644 /etc/pam.d/sshd
```

Additional configuration information can be found in the man pages for **sshd**, **ssh** and **ssh-agent**.

Boot Script

To start the SSH server at system boot, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/sshd` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-sshd
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	scp, sftp, sftp-server, slogin, ssh, sshd, ssh-add, ssh-agent, ssh-keygen, ssh-keyscan, and ssh-keysign
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/ssh, /var/lib/sshd and /usr/share/doc/openssh-4.7p1

Short Descriptions

scp	is a file copy program that acts like **rcp** except it uses an encrypted protocol.
sftp	is an FTP-like program that works over SSH1 and SSH2 protocols.
sftp-server	is an SFTP server subsystem. This program is not normally called directly by the user.
slogin	is a symlink to **ssh**.
ssh	is an **rlogin**/**rsh**-like client program except it uses an encrypted protocol.
sshd	is a daemon that listens for **ssh** login requests.
ssh-add	is a tool which adds keys to the **ssh-agent**.
ssh-agent	is an authentication agent that can store private keys.
ssh-keygen	is a key generation tool.
ssh-keyscan	is a utility for gathering public host keys from a number of hosts.
ssh-keysign	is used by **ssh** to access the local host keys and generate the digital signature required during hostbased authentication with SSH protocol version 2. This program is not normally called directly by the user.

ProFTPD-1.3.0

Introduction to ProFTPD

The ProFTPD package contains a secure and highly configurable FTP daemon. This is useful for serving large file archives over a network.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.proftpd.org/distrib/source/proftpd-1.3.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: fae47d01b52e035eb6b7190e74c17722
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 12.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

ProFTPD Dependencies

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0

Installation of ProFTPD

For security reasons, you should install ProFTPD using an unprivileged user and group. As the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 46 proftpd &&
useradd -c proftpd -d /srv/ftp -g proftpd \
        -s /usr/bin/proftpdshell -u 46 proftpd &&
install -v -d -m775 -o proftpd -g proftpd /srv/ftp &&
ln -v -s /bin/false /usr/bin/proftpdshell &&
echo /usr/bin/proftpdshell >> /etc/shells
```

Install ProFTPD as an unprivileged user by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --localstatedir=/var/run &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

install -v -d -m775 -o proftpd -g proftpd /srv/ftp: Create the home directory for ProFTPD.

ln -v -s /bin/false /usr/bin/proftpdshell: Set the default shell as a link to an invalid shell.

echo /usr/bin/proftpdshell >> /etc/shells: Fake a valid shell for compatibility purposes.

Note

The above two commands can be omitted if the following directive is placed in the configuration file:

```
RequireValidShell off
```

By default, proftpd will require that users logging in have valid shells. The RequireValidShell directive turns off this requirement. This is only recommended if you are setting up your FTP server exclusively for anonymous downloads.

--sysconfdir=/etc: This prevents the configuration files from going to `/usr/etc`.

--localstatedir=/var/run: This uses `/var/run` instead of `/usr/var` for lock files.

Configuring ProFTPD

Config Files

`/etc/proftpd.conf`

Configuration Information

This is a simple, download-only sample configuration. See the ProFTPD documentation in `/usr/share/doc/proftpd` and consult the website at *http://www.proftpd.org/* for example configurations.

```
cat > /etc/proftpd.conf << "EOF"
# This is a basic ProFTPD configuration file
# It establishes a single server and a single anonymous login.

ServerName                      "ProFTPD Default Installation"
ServerType                      standalone
DefaultServer                   on

# Port 21 is the standard FTP port.
Port                            21
# Umask 022 is a good standard umask to prevent new dirs and files
# from being group and world writable.
Umask                           022

# To prevent DoS attacks, set the maximum number of child processes
# to 30.  If you need to allow more than 30 concurrent connections
# at once, simply increase this value.  Note that this ONLY works
# in standalone mode, in inetd mode you should use an inetd server
# that allows you to limit maximum number of processes per service
# (such as xinetd)
MaxInstances                    30

# Set the user and group that the server normally runs at.
User                            proftpd
Group                           proftpd
```

```
# Normally, files should be overwritable.
<Directory /*>
  AllowOverwrite                on
</Directory>

# A basic anonymous configuration, no upload directories.
<Anonymous ~proftpd>
  User                          proftpd
  Group                         proftpd
  # Clients should be able to login with "anonymous" as well as "proftpd"
  UserAlias                     anonymous proftpd

  # Limit the maximum number of anonymous logins
  MaxClients                    10

  # 'welcome.msg' should be displayed at login, and '.message' displayed
  # in each newly chdired directory.
  DisplayLogin                  welcome.msg
  DisplayFirstChdir             .message

  # Limit WRITE everywhere in the anonymous chroot
  <Limit WRITE>
    DenyAll
  </Limit>
</Anonymous>
EOF
```

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/proftpd` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-proftpd
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	ftpcount, ftpdctl, ftptop, ftpwho, ftpshut, proftpd
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/var/run/proftpd

Short Descriptions

proftpd	is the FTP daemon.
ftpcount	shows the current number of connections.
ftpshut	shuts down all proftpd servers at a given time.
ftptop	displays running status on connections.
ftpwho	shows current process information for each session.

Samba-3.0.30

Introduction to Samba

The Samba package provides file and print services to SMB/CIFS clients and Windows networking to Linux clients. Samba can also be configured as a Windows NT 4.0 Domain Controller replacement (with caveats working with NT PDC's and BDC's), a file/print server acting as a member of a Windows NT 4.0 or Active Directory domain and a NetBIOS (rfc1001/1002) nameserver (which amongst other things provides LAN browsing support).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://us1.samba.org/samba/ftp/stable/samba-3.0.30.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://us5.samba.org/pub/samba-ftp/samba-3.0.30.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: d647ec1f34414fa8691f74536dcccfb5
- Download size: 20 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 238 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.3 SBU (additional 1.0 SBU to run the test suite)

Samba Dependencies

Optional

popt-1.10.4, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, CUPS-1.2.12, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, Gamin-0.1.9, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, Python-2.5.2 (to build Samba API bindings for the Python installation), *libacl* (requires *libattr*), and *Valgrind* (optionally used by the test suite)

Installation of Samba

Note

If you wish to run the test suite after the binaries are built, you must add the `--enable-socket-wrapper` parameter to the **configure** script below. You may want to run **configure** with the `--help` parameter first. There may be other parameters needed to take advantage of optional dependencies.

Install Samba by running the following commands:

```
cd source &&

./configure \
    --prefix=/usr \
    --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --localstatedir=/var \
    --with-piddir=/var/run \
    --with-pammodulesdir=/lib/security \
    --with-fhs \
    --with-smbmount &&
make
```

You must become the `root` user to run the test framework. To run the tests, issue: **make test**. If you have Linux-PAM installed and built the PAM library modules, you can perform a dlopen test by issuing: **make test_pam_modules**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
mv -v /usr/lib/samba/libsmbclient.so /usr/lib &&
ln -v -sf ../libsmbclient.so /usr/lib/samba &&
ln -v -sf libsmbclient.so /usr/lib/libsmbclient.so.0 &&

chmod -v 644 /usr/include/lib{smbclient,msrpc}.h &&

install -v -m755 nsswitch/libnss_win{s,bind}.so /lib &&
ln -v -sf libnss_winbind.so /lib/libnss_winbind.so.2 &&
ln -v -sf libnss_wins.so /lib/libnss_wins.so.2 &&

install -v -m644 ../examples/smb.conf.default /etc/samba &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/samba-3.0.30 &&
install -v -m644 ../docs/*.pdf /usr/share/doc/samba-3.0.30 &&
ln -v -s ../../samba/swat  /usr/share/doc/samba-3.0.30
```

If you passed the `--with-python` option to the **configure** script, issue the following command as the `root` user to install the Python extensions:

```
make python_install
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: Sets the configuration file directory to avoid the default of `/usr/etc`.

`--localstatedir=/var`: Sets the variable data directory to avoid the default of `/usr/var`.

`--with-fhs`: Assigns all other file paths in a manner compliant with the Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS).

`--with-smbmount`: Orders the creation of an extra binary for use by the **mount** command so that mounting remote SMB (Windows) shares becomes no more complex than mounting remote NFS shares.

`--with-pam`: Use this parameter to link Linux-PAM into the build. This also builds the `pam_winbind.so` and `pam_smbpass.so` PAM modules. You can find instructions on how to configure and use the `pam_winbind.so`module by running **man winbindd**.

mv -v /usr/lib/samba/libsmbclient.so ...; ln -v -sf ../libsmbclient.so ...: The `libsmbclient.so` library is needed by other packages. This command moves it to a location where other packages can find it.

install -v -m755 nsswitch/libnss_win{s,bind}.so /lib: The nss libraries are not installed by default. If you intend to use winbindd for domain auth, and/or WINS name resolution, you need these libraries.

ln -v -sf libnss_winbind.so /lib/libnss_winbind.so.2 and **ln -v -sf libnss_wins.so /lib/libnss_wins.so.2**: These symlinks are required by glibc to use the NSS libraries.

install -v -m644 ../examples/smb.conf.default /etc/samba: This copies a default `smb.conf` file into `/etc/samba`. This sample configuration will not work until you copy it to `/etc/samba/smb.conf` and make the appropriate changes for your installation. See the configuration section for minimum values which must be set.

Configuring Samba

Config Files

/etc/samba/smb.conf

Mounting Shares by Unprivileged Users

If it is desired for unprivileged users to directly mount (and unmount) SMB and CIFS shares, the **smbmnt**, **smbumount**, **mount.cifs** and **umount.cifs** commands must be setuid `root`. Note that users can only mount SMB/CIFS shares on a mount point owned by that user (requires write access also). If desired, change these programs to setuid `root` by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
chmod -v 4755 /usr/bin/smb{mnt,umount} \
              /usr/sbin/{,u}mount.cifs
```

Printing to SMB Clients

If you use CUPS for print services, and you wish to print to a printer attached to an SMB client, you need to create an SMB backend device. To create the device, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
ln -v -sf /usr/bin/smbspool /usr/lib/cups/backend/smb
```

Configuration Information

Due to the complexity and the many various uses for Samba, complete configuration for all the package's capabilities is well beyond the scope of the BLFS book. This section provides instructions to configure the `/etc/samba/smb.conf` file for two common scenarios. The complete contents of `/etc/samba/smb.conf` will depend on the purpose of Samba installation.

Note

You may find it easier to copy the configuration parameters shown below into an empty `/etc/samba/smb.conf` file instead of copying and editing the default file as mentioned in the "Command Explanations" section. How you create/edit the `/etc/samba/smb.conf` file will be left up to you. Do ensure the file is only writeable by the `root` user (mode 644).

Scenario 1: Minimal Standalone Client-Only Installation

Choose this variant if you only want to transfer files using **smbclient**, mount Windows shares and print to Windows printers, and don't want to share your files and printers to Windows machines.

A `/etc/samba/smb.conf` file with the following three parameters is sufficient:

```
[global]
    workgroup = MYGROUP
    dos charset = cp850
    unix charset = ISO-8859-1
```

The values in this example specify that the computer belongs to a Windows workgroup named "*MYGROUP*", uses the "*cp850*" character set on the wire when talking to MS-DOS and MS Windows 9x, and that the filenames are stored in the "*ISO-8859-1*" encoding on the disk. Adjust these values appropriately for your installation. The "unix charset" value must be the same as the output of **locale charmap** when executed with the `LANG` variable set to your preferred locale, otherwise the **ls** command may not display correct filenames of downloaded files.

There is no need to run any Samba servers in this scenario, thus you don't need to install the provided bootscripts.

Scenario 2: Standalone File/Print Server

Choose this variant if you want to share your files and printers to Windows machines in your workgroup in addition to the capabilities described in Scenario 1.

In this case, the `/etc/samba/smb.conf.default` file may be a good template to start from. Also add “dos charset” and “unix charset” parameters to the “[global]” section as described in Scenario 1 in order to prevent filename corruption.

The following configuration file creates a separate share for each user's home directory and also makes all printers available to Windows machines:

```
[global]
    workgroup = MYGROUP
    dos charset = cp850
    unix charset = ISO-8859-1

[homes]
    comment = Home Directories
    browseable = no
    writable = yes

[printers]
    comment = All Printers
    path = /var/spool/samba
    browseable = no
    guest ok = no
    printable = yes
```

Other parameters you may wish to customize in the “[global]” section include:

```
    server string =
    security =
    hosts allow =
    load printers =
    log file =
    max log size =
    socket options =
    local master =
```

Reference the comments in the `/etc/samba/smb.conf.default` file for information regarding these parameters.

Since the **smbd** and **nmbd** daemons are needed in this case, install the `samba` bootscript. Be sure to run **smbpasswd** (with the `-a` option to add users) to enable and set passwords for all accounts that need Samba access, or use the SWAT web interface (see below) to do the same. Using the default Samba passdb backend, any user you attempt to add will also be required to exist in the `/etc/passwd` file.

Advanced Requirements

More complex scenarios involving domain control or membership are possible if the right flags are passed to the ./configure script when the package is built. Such setups are advanced topics and cannot be adequately covered in BLFS. Many complete books have been written on these topics alone. It should be noted, however, that a Samba BDC cannot be used as a fallback for a Windows PDC, and conversely, a Windows BDC cannot be used as a fallback for a Samba PDC. Also in some domain membership scenarios, the **winbindd** daemon and the corresponding bootscript are needed.

There is quite a bit of documentation available which covers many of these advanced configurations. Point your web browser to the links below to view some of the documentation included with the Samba package:

- Using Samba, 2nd Edition; a popular book published by O'Reilly *file:///usr/share/samba/swat/using_samba/toc.html*
- The Official Samba HOWTO and Reference Guide *file:///usr/share/samba/swat/help/Samba-HOWTO-Collection/index.html*
- Samba-3 by Example *file:///usr/share/samba/swat/help/Samba-Guide/index.html*
- The Samba-3 man Pages *file:///usr/share/samba/swat/help/samba.7.html*

Configuring SWAT

The built in SWAT (Samba Web Administration Tool) utility can be used for basic configuration of the Samba installation, but because it may be inconvenient, undesirable or perhaps even impossible to gain access to the console, BLFS recommends setting up access to SWAT using Stunnel. Without Stunnel, the `root` password is transmitted in clear text over the wire, and is considered an unacceptable security risk. After considering the security implications of using SWAT without Stunnel, and you still wish to implement SWAT without it, instructions are provided at this end of this section.

Setting up SWAT using Stunnel

First install, or ensure you have already installed, the Stunnel-4.21 package.

Next you must add entries to `/etc/services` and modify the **inetd**/**xinetd** configuration.

Add swat and swat_tunnel entries to `/etc/services` with the following commands issued as the `root` user:

```
echo "swat            904/tcp" >> /etc/services &&
echo "swat_tunnel     905/tcp" >> /etc/services
```

If **inetd** is used, the following command will add the swat_tunnel entry to `/etc/inetd.conf` (as user `root`):

```
echo "swat_tunnel stream tcp nowait.400 root /usr/sbin/swat swat" \
    >> /etc/inetd.conf
```

Issue a **killall -HUP inetd** to reread the changed `inetd.conf` file.

If you use **xinetd**, the following command will create the Samba file as `/etc/xinetd.d/swat_tunnel` (you may need to modify or remove the “only_from” line to include the desired host[s]):

```
cat >> /etc/xinetd.d/swat_tunnel << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/swat_tunnel

service swat_tunnel
{
    port            = 905
    socket_type     = stream
    wait            = no
    only_from       = 127.0.0.1
    user            = root
    server          = /usr/sbin/swat
    log_on_failure  += USERID
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/swat_tunnel
EOF
```

Issue a **killall -HUP xinetd** to read the new `/etc/xinetd.d/swat_tunnel` file.

Next, you must add an entry for the swat service to the `/etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf` file (as user `root`):

```
cat >> /etc/stunnel/stunnel.conf << "EOF"
[swat]
accept  = 904
connect = 905
TIMEOUTclose = 1

EOF
```

Restart the **stunnel** daemon using the following command as the `root` user:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/stunnel restart
```

SWAT can be launched by pointing your web browser to `https://<CA_DN_field>:904`. Substitute the hostname listed in the DN field of the CA certificate used with Stunnel for *<CA_DN_field>*.

Setting up SWAT without Stunnel

Warning

BLFS does not recommend using these procedures because of the security risk involved. However, in a home network environment and disclosure of the `root` password is an acceptable risk, the following instructions are provided for your convenience.

Add a swat entry to `/etc/services` with the following command issued as the `root` user:

```
echo "swat            904/tcp" >> /etc/services
```

If **inetd** is used, the following command issued as the `root` user will add a swat entry to the `/etc/inetd.conf` file:

```
echo "swat stream tcp nowait.400 root /usr/sbin/swat swat" \
    >> /etc/inetd.conf
```

Issue a **killall -HUP inetd** to reread the changed `inetd.conf` file.

If **xinetd** is used, the following command issued as the `root` user will create an `/etc/xinetd.d/swat` file:

```
cat >> /etc/xinetd.d/swat << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/swat

service swat
{
    port            = 904
    socket_type     = stream
    wait            = no
    only_from       = 127.0.0.1
    user            = root
    server          = /usr/sbin/swat
    log_on_failure  += USERID
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/swat
EOF
```

Issue a **killall -HUP xinetd** to read the new `/etc/xinetd.d/swat` file.

SWAT can be launched by pointing your web browser to http://localhost:904.

Note

If you linked Linux-PAM into the Samba build, you'll need to create an `/etc/pam.d/samba` file.

Boot Script

For your convenience, boot scripts have been provided for Samba. There are two included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package. The first, `samba`, will start the **smbd** and **nmbd** daemons needed to provide SMB/CIFS services. The second script, `winbind`, starts the **winbindd** daemon, used for providing Windows domain services to Linux clients.

The default Samba installation uses the `nobody` user for guest access to the server. This can be overridden by setting the `guest account =` parameter in the `/etc/samba/smb.conf` file. If you utilize the `guest account =` parameter, ensure this user exists in the `/etc/passwd` file. To use the default user, issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 99 nogroup &&
useradd -c "Unprivileged Nobody" -d /dev/null -g nogroup \
    -s /bin/false -u 99 nobody
```

Install the `samba` script with the following command issued as the `root` user:

```
make install-samba
```

If you also need the `winbind` script:

```
make install-winbind
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	eventlogadm, findsmb, mount.cifs, mount.smbfs, net, nmbd, nmblookup, ntlm_auth, pdbedit, profiles, rpcclient, smbcacls, smbclient, smbcontrol, smbcquotas, smbd, smbget, smbmnt, smbmount, smbpasswd, smbspool, smbstatus, smbtar, smbtree, smbumount, swat, tdbbackup, tdbdump, tdbtool, testparm, unmount.cifs, wbinfo and winbindd
Installed Libraries:	libnss_winbind.so, libnss_wins.so, libsmbclient.so, libmsrpc.so, the pam_winbind.so and pam_smbpass.so PAM libraries, and assorted character set, filesystem and support modules.
Installed Directories:	/etc/samba, /usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/samba, /usr/lib/samba, /usr/share/doc/samba-3.0.30, /usr/share/samba, /var/lib/samba and /var/log/samba

Short Descriptions

eventlogadm	is used to write records to eventlogs from STDIN, add the specified source and DLL eventlog registry entries and display the active eventlog names (from `smb.conf`).
findsmb	lists information about machines that respond to SMB name queries on a subnet.
mount.cifs	mounts a Linux CIFS filesystem. It is usually invoked indirectly by the **mount** command when using the `-t cifs` option.
mount.smbfs	is a symlink to **smbmount** which provides **/bin/mount** with a way to mount remote Windows (or Samba) fileshares.
net	is a tool for administration of Samba and remote CIFS servers, similar to the **net** utility for DOS/Windows.
nmbd	is the Samba NetBIOS name server.
nmblookup	is used to query NetBIOS names and map them to IP addresses.
ntlm_auth	is a tool to allow external access to Winbind's NTLM authentication function.
pdbedit	is a tool used to manage the SAM database.
profiles	is a utility that reports and changes SIDs in Windows registry files. It currently only supports Windows NT.
rpcclient	is used to execute MS-RPC client side functions.
smbcacls	is used to manipulate Windows NT access control lists.
smbclient	is a SMB/CIFS access utility, similar to FTP.
smbcontrol	is used to control running **smbd**, **nmbd** and **winbindd** daemons.
smbcquotas	is used to manipulate Windows NT quotas on SMB file shares.
smbd	is the main Samba daemon which provides SMB/CIFS services to clients.

smbget is a simple utility with **wget**-like semantics, that can download files from SMB servers. You can specify the files you would like to download on the command-line.

smbmnt is a helper application used by the **smbmount** program to do the actual mounting of SMB shares. It can be installed setuid `root` if you want unprivileged users to be able to mount their SMB shares.

smbmount is usually invoked as **mount.smbfs** by the **mount** command when using the `-t smbfs` option, mounts a Linux SMB filesystem.

smbpasswd changes a user's Samba password.

smbspool sends a print job to an SMB printer.

smbstatus reports current Samba connections.

smbtar is a shell script used for backing up SMB/CIFS shares directly to Linux tape drives or a file.

smbtree is a text-based SMB network browser.

smbumount is used by unprivileged users to unmount SMB filesystems, provided that it is setuid root.

swat is the Samba Web Administration Tool.

tdbbackup is a tool for backing up or validating the integrity of Samba `.tdb` files.

tdbdump is a tool used to print the contents of a Samba `.tdb` file.

tdbtool is a tool which allows simple database manipulation from the command line.

testparm checks an `smb.conf` file for proper syntax.

umount.cifs is used by normal, non-`root` users, to **unmount** their own Common Internet File System (CIFS) mounts.

wbinfo queries a running **winbindd** daemon.

winbindd resolves names from Windows NT servers.

vsftpd-2.0.5

Introduction to vsftpd

The vsftpd package contains a very secure and very small FTP daemon. This is useful for serving files over a network.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://vsftpd.beasts.org/users/cevans/vsftpd-2.0.5.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 146062e8b2f93af43ff6c2c770feea94
- Download size: 152 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

vsftpd Dependencies

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, TCP Wrapper-7.6, and *libcap*

Installation of vsftpd

For security reasons, running vsftpd as an unprivileged user and group is encouraged. Also, a user should be created to map anonymous users. As the `root` user, create the needed directories, users, and groups with the following commands:

```
install -v -d -m 0755 /var/ftp/empty &&
install -v -d -m 0755 /home/ftp &&
groupadd -g 47 vsftpd &&
useradd -d /dev/null -c "vsftpd User" -g vsftpd -s /bin/false \
        -u 47 vsftpd &&
groupadd -g 45 ftp &&
useradd -c anonymous_user -d /home/ftp -g ftp -s /bin/false -u 45 ftp
```

Build vsftpd as an unprivileged user using the following command:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Once again, become the `root` user and install vsftpd with the following commands:

```
install -v -m 755 vsftpd /usr/sbin/vsftpd &&
install -v -m 644 vsftpd.8 /usr/share/man/man8 &&
install -v -m 644 vsftpd.conf.5 /usr/share/man/man5 &&
install -v -m 644 vsftpd.conf /etc
```

Command Explanations

install -v -d ...: This creates the directory that anonymous users will use (`/home/ftp`) and the directory the daemon will chroot into (`/var/ftp/empty`).

Note

`/home/ftp` should not be owned by the user `vsftpd`, or the user `ftp`.

echo "#define VSF_BUILD_TCPWRAPPERS" >>builddefs.h: Use this prior to **make** to add support for tcpwrappers.

echo "#define VSF_BUILD_SSL" >>builddefs.h: Use this prior to **make** to add support for SSL.

install -v -m ...: The `Makefile` uses non-standard installation paths. These commands install the files in `/usr` and `/etc`.

Configuring vsftpd

Config Files

`/etc/vsftpd.conf`

Configuration Information

vsftpd comes with a basic anonymous-only configuration file that was copied to `/etc` above. While still as `root`, this file should be modified because it is now recommended to run **vsftpd** in standalone mode as opposed to **inetd**/**xinetd** mode. Also, you should specify the privilege separation user created above. Finally, you should specify the **chroot** directory. **man vsftpd.conf** will give you all the details.

```
cat >> /etc/vsftpd.conf << "EOF"
background=YES
listen=YES
nopriv_user=vsftpd
secure_chroot_dir=/var/ftp/empty
EOF
```

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/vsftpd` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-vsftpd
```

Contents

Installed Program: vsftpd
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /var/ftp, /var/ftp/empty, /home/ftp

Short Descriptions

vsftpd is the FTP daemon.

xinetd-2.3.14

Introduction to xinetd

xinetd is the eXtended InterNET services daemon, a secure replacement for **inetd**.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.xinetd.org/xinetd-2.3.14.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/xinetd-2.3.14.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 567382d7972613090215c6c54f9b82d9
- Download size: 301 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.4 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

xinetd Dependencies

Optional

TCP Wrapper-7.6 and *Avahi*

Installation of xinetd

Install xinetd by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-loadavg &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring xinetd

Config Files

`/etc/xinetd.conf` and `/etc/xinetd.d/*`

Configuration Information

Ensure the path to all daemons is `/usr/sbin`, rather than the default path of `/usr/etc`, and install the xinetd configuration files by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/xinetd.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd
# Configuration file for xinetd
#

defaults
{
      instances       = 60
      log_type        = SYSLOG daemon
      log_on_success  = HOST PID USERID
      log_on_failure  = HOST USERID
      cps             = 25 30
}

# All service files are stored in the /etc/xinetd.d directory
#
includedir /etc/xinetd.d
# End /etc/xinetd
EOF
```

All of the following files have the statement, "disable = yes". To activate any of the services, this statement will need to be changed to "disable = no".

Note

The following files are listed to demonstrate classic xinetd applications. In many cases, these applications are not needed. In some cases, the applications are considered security risks. For example, **telnet**, **rlogin**, **rexec**, and **rsh** transmit unencrypted usernames and passwords over the network and can be easily replaced with a more secure alternative: **ssh**.

```
install -v -d -m755 /etc/xinetd.d &&
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/login << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/login

service login
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = stream
   protocol       = tcp
   wait           = no
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.rlogind
   log_type       = SYSLOG local4 info
}
```

```
# End /etc/xinetd.d/login
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/shell << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/shell

service shell
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = stream
   wait           = no
   user           = root
   instances      = UNLIMITED
   flags          = IDONLY
   log_on_success += USERID
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.rshd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/shell
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/exec << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/exec

service exec
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = stream
   wait           = no
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.rexecd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/exec
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/comsat << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/comsat

service comsat
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = dgram
   wait           = yes
   user           = nobody
   group          = tty
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.comsat
}
```

```
# End /etc/xinetd.d/comsat
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/talk << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/talk

service talk
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = dgram
   wait           = yes
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.talkd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/talk
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/ntalk << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/ntalk

service ntalk
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = dgram
   wait           = yes
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.ntalkd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/ntalk
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/telnet << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/telnet

service telnet
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = stream
   wait           = no
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.telnetd
   bind           = 127.0.0.1
   log_on_failure += USERID
}

service telnet
{
   disable        = yes
```

```
   socket_type    = stream
   wait           = no
   user           = root
#  server         = /usr/sbin/in.telnetd
   bind           = 192.231.139.175
   redirect       = 128.138.202.20 23
   log_on_failure += USERID
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/telnet
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/ftp << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/ftp

service ftp
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = stream
   wait           = no
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.ftpd
   server_args    = -l
   instances      = 4
   log_on_success += DURATION USERID
   log_on_failure += USERID
   access_times   = 2:00-8:59 12:00-23:59
   nice           = 10
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/ftp
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/tftp << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/tftp

service tftp
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = dgram
   wait           = yes
   user           = root
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.tftpd
   server_args    = -s /tftpboot
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/tftp
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/finger << "EOF" &&
```

```
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/finger

service finger
{
   disable        = yes
   socket_type    = stream
   wait           = no
   user           = nobody
   server         = /usr/sbin/in.fingerd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/finger
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/systat << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/systat

service systat
{
   disable           = yes
   socket_type       = stream
   wait              = no
   user              = nobody
   server            = /usr/bin/ps
   server_args       = -auwwx
   only_from         = 128.138.209.0
   log_on_success    = HOST
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/systat
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/netstat << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/netstat

service netstat
{
   disable           = yes
   socket_type       = stream
   wait              = no
   user              = nobody
   server            = /usr/ucb/netstat
   server_args       = -f inet
   only_from         = 128.138.209.0
   log_on_success    = HOST
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/netstat
EOF
```

```
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/echo << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/echo

service echo
{
   disable     = yes
   type        = INTERNAL
   id          = echo-stream
   socket_type = stream
   protocol    = tcp
   user        = root
   wait        = no
}

service echo
{
   disable     = yes
   type        = INTERNAL
   id          = echo-dgram
   socket_type = dgram
   protocol    = udp
   user        = root
   wait        = yes
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/echo
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/chargen << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/chargen

service chargen
{
   disable        = yes
   type           = INTERNAL
   id             = chargen-stream
   socket_type    = stream
   protocol       = tcp
   user           = root
   wait           = no
}

service chargen
{
   disable        = yes
   type           = INTERNAL
   id             = chargen-dgram
   socket_type    = dgram
```

```
   protocol       = udp
   user           = root
   wait           = yes
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/chargen
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/daytime << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/daytime

service daytime
{
   disable        = yes
   type           = INTERNAL
   id             = daytime-stream
   socket_type    = stream
   protocol       = tcp
   user           = root
   wait           = no
}

service daytime
{
   disable        = yes
   type           = INTERNAL
   id             = daytime-dgram
   socket_type    = dgram
   protocol       = udp
   user           = root
   wait           = yes
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/daytime
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/time << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/time

service time
{
   disable        = yes
   type           = INTERNAL
   id             = time-stream
   socket_type    = stream
   protocol       = tcp
   user           = root
   wait           = no
}
```

```
service time
{
   disable        = yes
   type           = INTERNAL
   id             = time-dgram
   socket_type    = dgram
   protocol       = udp
   user           = root
   wait           = yes
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/time
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/rstatd << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/rstatd

service rstatd
{
   disable     = yes
   type        = RPC
   flags       = INTERCEPT
   rpc_version = 2-4
   socket_type = dgram
   protocol    = udp
   server      = /usr/sbin/rpc.rstatd
   wait        = yes
   user        = root
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/rstatd
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/rquotad << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/rquotad

service rquotad
{
   disable     = yes
   type        = RPC
   rpc_version = 1
   socket_type = dgram
   protocol    = udp
   wait        = yes
   user        = root
   server      = /usr/sbin/rpc.rstatd
}
```

```
# End /etc/xinetd.d/rquotad
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/rusersd << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/rusersd

service rusersd
{
   disable     = yes
   type        = RPC
   rpc_version = 1-2
   socket_type = dgram
   protocol    = udp
   wait        = yes
   user        = root
   server      = /usr/sbin/rpc.rusersd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/rusersd
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/sprayd << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/sprayd

service sprayd
{
   disable      = yes
   type         = RPC
   rpc_version  = 1
   socket_type  = dgram
   protocol     = udp
   wait         = yes
   user         = root
   server       = /usr/sbin/rpc.sprayd
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/sprayd
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/walld << "EOF" &&
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/walld

service walld
{
   disable      = yes
   type         = RPC
   rpc_version  = 1
   socket_type  = dgram
   protocol     = udp
```

```
   wait         = yes
   user         = nobody
   group        = tty
   server       = /usr/sbin/rpc.rwalld
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/walld
EOF
cat > /etc/xinetd.d/irc << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/irc

service irc
{
   disable      = yes
   socket_type  = stream
   wait         = no
   user         = root
   flags        = SENSOR
   type         = INTERNAL
   bind         = 192.168.1.30
   deny_time    = 60
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/irc
EOF
```

The format of the `/etc/xinetd.conf` is documented in the `xinetd.conf.5` man page. Further information can be found at *http://www.xinetd.org*.

Boot Script

As the `root` user, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/xinetd` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-xinetd
```

As the `root` user, use the new boot script to start **xinetd**:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/xinetd start
```

Checking the `/var/log/daemon.log` file should prove quite entertaining. This file may contain entries similar to the following:

```
Aug 22 21:40:21 dps10 xinetd[2696]: Server /usr/sbin/in.rlogind is not
executable [line=29]
Aug 22 21:40:21 dps10 xinetd[2696]: Error parsing attribute server -
DISABLING SERVICE [line=29]
Aug 22 21:40:21 dps10 xinetd[2696]: Server /usr/sbin/in.rshd is not
executable [line=42]
```

These errors are because most of the servers **xinetd** is trying to control are not installed yet.

Contents

Installed Programs: itox, xconv.pl, and xinetd
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /etc/xinetd.d/

Short Descriptions

itox is a utility used for converting `inetd.conf` files to `xinetd.conf` format.

xconv.pl is a Perl script used for converting `inetd.conf` files to `xinetd.conf` format, similar to **itox**.

xinetd is the Internet services daemon.

Chapter 20. Mail Server Software

MTAs are the programs which transport mail from one machine to the other. The traditional MTA is Sendmail, however there are several other choices.

As well as SMTP servers there is a POP server (qpopper) and an IMAP server (Courier-IMAP).

Exim-4.67

Introduction to Exim

The Exim package contains a Mail Transport Agent written by the University of Cambridge, released under the GNU Public License.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.exim.org/ftp/exim4/exim-4.67.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.exim.org/pub/exim/exim4/exim-4.67.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 9ee83186d9ac99e5ff297112aa6fddf0
- Download size: 1.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Additional formats of the documentation (text-based docs are shipped with the sources) can be downloaded by following the links shown at *http://exim.org/docs.html*.

Exim Dependencies

Required

Berkeley DB-4.5.20 (built in LFS) or GDBM-1.8.3 or *TDB*

Optional

X Window System, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, OpenSSL-0.9.8g or GnuTLS-1.6.3, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, MySQL-5.0.41, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, *SQLite*, TCP Wrapper-7.6, and Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0

Installation of Exim

Before building Exim, as the `root` user you should create the group and user `exim` which will run the **exim** daemon:

```
groupadd -g 31 exim &&
useradd -d /dev/null -c "Exim Daemon" -g exim -s /bin/false -u 31 exim
```

Install Exim with the following commands:

```
sed -e 's,^BIN_DIR.*$,BIN_DIRECTORY=/usr/sbin,' \
    -e 's,^CONF.*$,CONFIGURE_FILE=/etc/exim.conf,' \
    -e 's,^EXIM_USER.*$,EXIM_USER=exim,' \
    -e 's,^EXIM_MONITOR,#EXIM_MONITOR,' src/EDITME > Local/Makefile &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 doc/exim.8 /usr/share/man/man8 &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/exim-4.67 &&
install -v -m644 doc/* /usr/share/doc/exim-4.67 &&
ln -sv exim /usr/sbin/sendmail
```

Command Explanations

sed -e ... > Local/Makefile: Most of Exim's configuration options are compiled in using the directives in `Local/Makefile` which is created from the `src/EDITME` file. This command specifies the minimum set of options. Descriptions for the options are listed below.

`BIN_DIRECTORY=/usr/sbin`: This installs all of Exim's binaries and scripts in `/usr/sbin`.

`CONFIGURE_FILE=/etc/exim.conf`: This installs Exim's main configuration file in `/etc`.

`EXIM_USER=exim`: This tells Exim that after the daemon no longer needs `root` privileges, the process hands off the daemon to the `exim` user.

`#EXIM_MONITOR`: This defers building the Exim monitor program, as it requires X Window System support, by commenting out the *`EXIM_MONITOR`* line in the `Makefile`. If you wish to build the monitor program, omit this **sed** command and issue the following command before building the package (modify `Local/eximon.conf`, if necessary): **cp exim_monitor/EDITME Local/eximon.conf**.

ln -sv exim /usr/sbin/sendmail: Creates a link to **sendmail** for applications which need it. Exim will accept most Sendmail command-line options.

Adding Additional Functionality

To utilize some or all of the dependency packages, you'll need to modify `Local/Makefile` to include the appropriate directives and parameters to link additional libraries before you build Exim. `Local/Makefile` is heavily commented with instructions on how to do this. Listed below is additional information to help you link these dependency packages or add additional functionality.

If you wish to build and install the `.info` documentation, refer to *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch04.html#SECTinsinfdoc*.

If you wish to build in Exim's interfaces for calling virus and spam scanning software directly from access control lists, uncomment the `WITH_CONTENT_SCAN=yes` parameter and review the information found at *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch41.html*.

To use a backend database other than Berkeley DB, see the instructions at *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch04.html#SECTdb*.

For SSL functionality, see the instructions at *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch04.html#SECTinctlsssl* and *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch39.html*.

For tcpwrappers functionality, see the instructions at *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch04.html#SECID27*.

For information about adding authentication mechanisms to the build, see chapters 33-37 of *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/index.html*.

For information about linking Linux-PAM, refer to the instructions *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch11.html#SECTexpcond*.

For information about linking database engine libraries used for Exim name lookups, see the instructions at *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch09.html*.

If you wish to add Readline support to Exim when invoked in "test expansion" (`-be`) mode, see the information in the `-be` section of *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch05.html#id2525974*.

You may wish to modify the default configuration and send log files to syslog instead of the default `/var/spool/exim/log` directory. See the information at *http://exim.org/exim-html-4.67/doc/html/spec_html/ch49.html*.

Configuring Exim

Config Files

`/etc/exim.conf` and `/etc/aliases`

Configuration Information

A default (nothing but comments) `/etc/aliases` file is installed during the package installation if this file did not exist on your system. Create the necessary aliases and start the Exim daemon using the following commands:

```
cat >> /etc/aliases << "EOF"
postmaster: root
MAILER-DAEMON: root
EOF
exim -v -bi &&
/usr/sbin/exim -bd -q15m
```

Note

To protect an existing `/etc/aliases` file, the command above appends these aliases to it. This file should be checked and duplicate aliases removed, if present.

The **/usr/sbin/exim -bd -q15m** command starts the Exim daemon with a 15 minute interval in processing the mail queue. Adjust this parameter to suit your desires.

Boot Script

To automate the running of **exim** at startup, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/exim` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-exim
```

The bootscript also starts the Exim daemon and dispatches a queue runner process every 15 minutes. Modify the `-q<time interval>` parameter in `/etc/rc.d/init.d/exim`, if necessary for your installation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	exicyclog, exigrep, exim, exim-4.43-2, exim_checkaccess, exim_dbmbuild, exim_dumpdb, exim_fixdb, exim_lock, exim_tidydb, eximstats, exinext, exipick, exiqgrep, exiqsumm, exiwhat, and optionally, eximon, and eximon.bin
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/exim-4.67 and /var/spool/exim

Short Descriptions

exicyclog	cycles Exim log files.
exigrep	searches Exim log files.
exim	is a symlink to the **exim-4.43-2** MTA daemon.
exim-4.43-2	is the Exim mail transport agent daemon.
exim_checkaccess	states whether a given recipient address from a given host is acceptable or not.
exim_dbmbuild	creates and rebuilds Exim databases.
exim_dumpdb	writes the contents of Exim databases to the standard output.
exim_fixdb	modifies data in Exim databases.
exim_lock	locks a mailbox file.
exim_tidydb	removes old records from Exim databases.
eximstats	generates mail statistics from Exim log files.
exinext	queries remote host retry times.
exipick	selects messages based on various criteria.
exiqgrep	is a utility for selective queue listing.
exiqsumm	produces a summary of the messages in the mail queue.
exiwhat	queries running Exim processes.
eximon	is a start-up shell script for **eximon.bin** used to set the required environment variables before running the program.
eximon.bin	is a monitor program which displays current information in an X window, and also contains a menu interface to Exim's command line administration options.

Postfix-2.5.1

Introduction to Postfix

The Postfix package contains a Mail Transport Agent (MTA). This is useful for sending email to other users of your host machine. It can also be configured to be a central mail server for your domain, a mail relay agent or simply a mail delivery agent to your local Internet Service Provider (ISP).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://postfix.energybeam.com/source/official/postfix-2.5.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.porcupine.org/mirrors/postfix-release/official/postfix-2.5.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 95a559c509081fdd07d78eafd4f4c3b4
- Download size: 3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 97 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Postfix Dependencies

Optional

PCRE-7.6, MySQL-5.0.41, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, and *cdb* or *TinyCDB*

Installation of Postfix

Configuring the Build

The Postfix source tree does not contain a `configure` script, rather the makefile in the top-level directory contains a `makefiles` target that regenerates all the other makefiles in the build tree. If you wish to use additional software such as a database back-end for virtual users, or TLS/SSL authentication, you will need to regenerate the makefiles using one or more of the appropriate `CCARGS` and `AUXLIBS` settings listed below.

Here is an example that combines the TLS and Cyrus-SASL arguments:

```
make makefiles \
CCARGS='-DUSE_TLS -DUSE_SASL_AUTH -DUSE_CYRUS_SASL \
    -DDEF_DAEMON_DIR=\"/usr/lib/postfix\" \
    -DDEF_MANPAGE_DIR=\"/usr/share/man\" \
    -DDEF_HTML_DIR=\"/usr/share/doc/postfix-2.5.1/html\" \
    -DDEF_README_DIR=\"/usr/share/doc/postfix-2.5.1/README\" \
    -I/usr/include/openssl -I/usr/include/sasl' \
    AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lssl -lcrypto -lsasl2'
```

Perl compatible regular expressions

To use PCRE with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DHAS_PCRE -I/usr/include'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lpcre'
```

Cyrus-SASL

To use Cyrus-SASL with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DUSE_SASL_AUTH -DUSE_CYRUS_SASL -I/usr/include/sasl'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lsasl2'
```

Berkely DB

To use Berkely DB with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DHAS_DB -I/usr/include'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -ldb'
```

OpenLDAP

To use OpenLDAP with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DHAS_LDAP -I/usr/include'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lldap -llber'
```

MySQL

To use MySQL with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DHAS_MYSQL -I/usr/include/mysql'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lmysqlclient -lz -lm'
```

PostgreSQL

To use PostgreSQL with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DHAS_PGSQL -I/usr/include/postgresql'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lpq -lz -lm'
```

CDB/TinyCDB

To use CDB or TinyCDB with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DHAS_CDB'
AUXLIBS='</path/to/CDB>/libcdb.a'
```

StartTLS Authentication

To use OpenSSL with Postfix, use the following arguments:

```
CCARGS='-DUSE_TLS -I/usr/include/openssl/'
AUXLIBS='-L/usr/lib -lssl -lcrypto'
```

Installing Postfix

Before you compile the program, you need to create users and groups that will be expected to be in place during the installation. Add the users and groups with the following commands issued by the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 32 postfix &&
groupadd -g 33 postdrop &&
useradd -c "Postfix Daemon User" -d /dev/null -g postfix \
    -s /bin/false -u 32 postfix &&
chown -v postfix:postfix /var/mail
```

Install Postfix by running the following commands:

```
make makefiles \
CCARGS='-DDEF_DAEMON_DIR=\"/usr/lib/postfix\" \
    -DDEF_MANPAGE_DIR=\"/usr/share/man\" \
    -DDEF_HTML_DIR=\"/usr/share/doc/postfix-2.5.1/html\" \
    -DDEF_README_DIR=\"/usr/share/doc/postfix-2.5.1/README\" \
    <additional args>' \
    <AUXLIBS='additional args'> &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
sh postfix-install -non-interactive
```

Command Explanations

make makefiles: This command rebuilds the makefiles throughout the source tree to use the options contained in the CCARGS and AUXLIBS variables.

sh postfix-install -non-interactive: This keeps the install script from asking any questions, thereby accepting default destination directories in all but the few cases mentioned in the 'make makefiles' command.

Configuring Postfix

Config Files

`/etc/aliases`, `/etc/postfix/main.cf`, and `/etc/postfix/master.cf`

Configuration Information

```
cat >> /etc/aliases << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/aliases

MAILER-DAEMON:    postmaster
postmaster:       root

root:             LOGIN
# End /etc/aliases
EOF
```

Note

To protect an existing `/etc/aliases` file, the above command appends these aliases to it if it exists. This file should be checked and duplicate aliases removed, if present.

The `/etc/aliases` file that was just created or appended, the `main.cf` and the `master.cf` must be personalized for your system. The `aliases` file needs your non-root login identity so mail addressed to `root` can be forwarded to you at the user level. The `main.cf` file needs your fully qualified hostname. All of these edits can be done with **sed** commands entered into the console with appropriate substitutions of your non-root login name for *<user>* and your fully qualified hostname for *<localhost.localdomain>*. You will find the `main.cf` file is self documenting, so load it into your editor to make the changes you need for your situation.

```
sed -i "s/LOGIN/<user>/" /etc/aliases &&
sed -i "s/#myhostname = host.domain.tld/myhostname = \
  <localhost.localdomain>/" /etc/postfix/main.cf &&
/usr/bin/newaliases
```

If you have an existing configuration, you can run the **postfix** utility to add any necessary definitions to your existing files. As the `root` user:

```
/usr/sbin/postfix upgrade-configuration
```

Before starting Postfix, you should check that your configuration and file permissions will work properly. Run the following commands as the `root` user to check and start your Postfix server:

```
/usr/sbin/postfix check &&
/usr/sbin/postfix start
```

Boot Script

To automate the running of Postfix at startup, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/postfix` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-postfix
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	anvil, bounce, cleanup, discard, error, flush, lmtp, local, mailq, master, newaliases, nqmgr, oqmgr, pickup, pipe, postalias, postcat, postconf, postdrop, postfix, postkick, postlock, postlog, postmap, postqueue, postsuper, proxymap, qmgr, qmqpd, sendmail, showq, smtp, smtpd, spawn, tlsmgr, trivial-rewrite, verify, and virtual
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/postfix, /usr/lib/postfix and /usr/share/doc/postfix-2.5.1

Short Descriptions

anvil	Provides connection and rate request limiting.
bounce	A daemon that maintains per-message log files with non-delivery status information.
cleanup	A daemon that processes inbound mail, inserts it into the incoming mail queue, and informs the queue manager of its arrival.

discard Processes delivery requests from the queue manager that cannot be delivered to the recipient.

error A daemon that processes non-delivery requests from the queue manager.

flush A daemon that maintains a record of deferred mail by destination.

lmtp A daemon that processes message delivery requests from the queue manager.

local A daemon that processes delivery requests from the queue manager to deliver mail to local recipients.

mailq A symlink to `sendmail`.

master The resident process that runs Postfix daemons on demand.

newaliases A symlink to `sendmail`.

nqmgr A daemon that awaits the arrival of incoming mail and arranges for its delivery.

oqmgr The old style queue manager. This will be removed soon.

pickup A daemon that waits for hints that new mail has been dropped into the maildrop directory, and feeds it into the cleanup daemon.

pipe A daemon that processes requests from the queue manager to deliver messages to external commands.

postalias Creates or queries one or more Postfix alias databases, or updates an existing one.

postcat Prints the contents of the named files in human readable format.

postconf Displays or changes the value of Postfix configuration parameters.

postdrop Creates a file in the maildrop directory and copies it's standard input to the file.

postfix Controls the operation of the Postfix mail system.

postkick Sends requests to the specified service over a local transport channel.

postlock Locks a mail folder for exclusive use, and executes commands passed to it.

postlog A Postfix-compatible logging interface for use in, for example, shell scripts.

postmap Creates or queries one or more Postfix lookup tables, or updates an existing one.

postqueue The Postfix user interface for queue management.

postsuper The Postfix user interface for superuser queue management.

proxymap Provides read-only table lookup services to other Postfix processes.

qmgr A daemon that awaits the arrival of incoming mail and arranges for its delivery.

qmqpd A daemon that receives one message per connection, and pipes it through the cleanup daemon, and places it into the incoming queue.

scache Maintains a connection cache used for sharing a connection multiple times.

sendmail The Postfix to Sendmail compatibility interface.

showq A daemon that reports the Postfix mail queue status.

smtp Looks up a list of mail exchanger addresses for the destination host, sorts the list by preference, and connects to each listed address until it finds a server that responds.

smtpd Accepts network connection requests and performs zero or more SMTP transactions per connection.

spawn Listens on a port as specified in the Postfix `master.cf` file and spawns an external command whenever a connection is established.

tlsmgr Maintains the TLS session cache and acts as the PRNG manager.

trivial-rewrite A daemon that rewrites addresses to standard form.

verify Maintains a record of what recipient addresses are known to be deliverable or undeliverable.

virtual Delivers mail to virtual user's mail directories.

Qpopper-4.0.9

Introduction to Qpopper

The Qpopper package contains a POP3 mail server.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.qualcomm.com/eudora/servers/unix/popper/qpopper4.0.9.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: de2cd15f95cfd00d0d080fd16287acad
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Qpopper Dependencies

Required

An MTA

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, GDBM-1.8.3, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, and MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1

Installation of Qpopper

Install Qpopper with the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-standalone &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -D -m644 GUIDE.pdf /usr/share/doc/qpopper-4.0.9/GUIDE.pdf
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-standalone`: This option gives the flexibility to run Qpopper in standalone mode.

Configuring Qpopper

Configuration Information

Update the Syslog configuration file and force the **syslogd** daemon to reread the new file so that Qpopper events are logged:

```
echo "local0.notice;local0.debug /var/log/POP.log" >> \
    /etc/syslog.conf &&
killall -HUP syslogd
```

If you want Qpopper to start automatically when the system is booted, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/qpopper` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-qpopper
```

This startup procedure uses a configuration file. The details of the configuration file can be found in the documentation file `GUIDE.pdf`.

```
cat > /etc/mail/qpopper.conf << "EOF"
# Qpopper configuration file

set debug = false

set spool-dir = /var/spool/mail/
set temp-dir  = /var/spool/mail/

set downcase-user = true
set trim-domain = true

set statistics = true

# End /etc/shells
EOF
```

If you use **inetd**, the following command will add the Qpopper entry to `/etc/inetd.conf`:

```
echo "pop3 stream tcp nowait root /usr/sbin/popper popper" >> \
    /etc/inetd.conf &&
killall inetd || inetd
```

Issue a **killall -HUP inetd** to reread the changed `inetd.conf` file.

If you use **xinetd**, the following command will create the Qpopper file as `/etc/xinetd.d/pop3`:

```
cat >> /etc/xinetd.d/pop3 << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/pop3

service pop3
{
    port            = 110
    socket_type     = stream
    protocol        = tcp
    wait            = no
    user            = root
    server          = /usr/sbin/popper
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/pop3
EOF
```

Issue a **killall -HUP xinetd** to reread the changed `xinetd.conf` file.

Contents

Installed Program: popper
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

popper is the POP3 server daemon.

Sendmail-8.14.1

Introduction to Sendmail

The Sendmail package contains a Mail Transport Agent (MTA).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.sendmail.org/ftp/sendmail.8.14.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.sendmail.org/pub/sendmail/sendmail.8.14.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 462bc9e00fdbef3a71b046b967c9a157
- Download size: 2.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Sendmail Dependencies

Required

Procmail-3.22

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, TCP Wrapper-7.6, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, *nph*, and AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 (for creating PDF documentation)

Installation of Sendmail

Before building Sendmail, create the required user, group and directory with the following commands issued as the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 26 smmsp &&
useradd -c "Sendmail Daemon" -g smmsp -d /dev/null \
        -s /bin/false -u 26 smmsp &&
chmod -v 1777 /var/mail &&
install -v -m700 -d /var/spool/mqueue
```

Note: See the source tree `sendmail/README` file for information on linking optional packages into the build. Use the example below, which adds support for tcpwrappers, SASL, StartTLS (OpenSSL) and OpenLDAP, as a starting point. Of course, modify it to suit your particular needs.

```
cat >> devtools/Site/site.config.m4 << "EOF"
APPENDDEF(`confENVDEF',`-DSTARTTLS -DTCPWRAPPERS -DSASL -DLDAPMAP')
APPENDDEF(`confLIBS', `-lssl -lcrypto -lwrap -lsasl2 -lldap -llber')
APPENDDEF(`confINCDIRS', `-I/usr/include/sasl')
EOF
```

Install Sendmail with the following commands:

```
cat >> devtools/Site/site.config.m4 << "EOF"
define(`confMANGRP',`root')
define(`confMANOWN',`root')
define(`confSBINGRP',`root')
define(`confUBINGRP',`root')
define(`confUBINOWN',`root')
EOF
cd sendmail &&
sh Build &&
cd ../cf/cf &&
cp generic-linux.mc sendmail.mc &&
sh Build sendmail.cf
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /etc/mail &&
sh Build install-cf &&

cd ../.. &&
sh Build install &&

install -v -m644 cf/cf/{submit,sendmail}.mc /etc/mail &&
cp -v -R cf/* /etc/mail &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1/{cf,sendmail} &&
install -v -m644 \
        CACerts FAQ KNOWNBUGS LICENSE PGPKEYS README RELEASE_NOTES \
        /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1 &&
install -v -m644 sendmail/{README,SECURITY,TRACEFLAGS,TUNING} \
        /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1/sendmail &&
install -v -m644 cf/README /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1/cf &&

for manpage in sendmail editmap mailstats makemap praliases smrsh
do
    install -v -m444 $manpage/$manpage.8 /usr/share/man/man8
done &&
install -v -m444 sendmail/aliases.5    /usr/share/man/man5 &&
install -v -m444 sendmail/mailq.1      /usr/share/man/man1 &&
install -v -m444 sendmail/newaliases.1 /usr/share/man/man1 &&
install -v -m444 vacation/vacation.1   /usr/share/man/man1
```

Install the Sendmail Installation and Operations Guide with the following commands:

```
cd doc/op &&
sed -i 's/groff/GROFF_NO_SGR=1 groff/' Makefile &&
make op.txt op.pdf
```

Now, as the root user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1 &&
install -v -m644 op.ps op.txt op.pdf /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1 &&
cd ../..
```

Note: remove op.pdf from the **make** and **install** commands if you don't have Ghostscript installed.

Command Explanations

cat > devtools/Site/site.config.m4 << "EOF": This creates a configuration file changing some of the default settings.

sh Build; sh Build sendmail.cf; sh Build install-cf; sh Build install: Sendmail uses an m4 based build script to create the various Makefiles. These commands build and install the package.

for manpage in...;do...;done; install ...: The man pages are installed already formatted and **man** displays them somewhat garbled. These commands replace the formatted pages with pages **man** can display properly.

Configuring Sendmail

Config Files

/etc/mail/*

Configuration Information

Create the /etc/mail/local-host-names and /etc/mail/aliases files using the following commands as the root user:

```
echo $(hostname) > /etc/mail/local-host-names
cat > /etc/mail/aliases << "EOF"
postmaster: root
MAILER-DAEMON: root

EOF
newaliases -v
```

Sendmail's primary configuration file, /etc/mail/sendmail.cf, is complex and not meant to be directly edited. The recommended method for changing it is to modify /etc/mail/sendmail.mc and various m4 files, then run the **m4** macro processor from within /etc/mail as follows:

```
m4 m4/cf.m4 sendmail.mc > sendmail.cf
```

A full explanation of the files to modify, and the available parameters can be found in /etc/mail/README.

Boot Script

To automate the running of Sendmail at startup, install the /etc/rc.d/init.d/sendmail init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-sendmail
```

Note

The -qNm option to **sendmail**, where N is number of minutes, controls how often Sendmail will process the mail queue. A default of 5 minutes is used in the init script. Individual workstation users may want to set this as low as 1 minute, large installations handling more mail may want to set it higher.

Contents

Installed Programs:	editmap, hoststat, mailstats, mailq, makemap, newaliases, praliases, purgestat, sendmail, smrsh, and vacation
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/mail, /usr/share/doc/sendmail-8.14.1, /var/spool/mqueue, and /var/spool/clientmqueue

Short Descriptions

editmap	queries and edits Sendmail map files.
hoststat	prints Sendmail's persistent host status.
mailstats	displays Sendmail statistics.
mailq	prints a summary of outbound mail messages waiting for delivery.
makemap	creates Sendmail map files.
newaliases	rebuilds `/etc/mail/aliases.db` from the contents of `/etc/mail/aliases`.
praliases	displays current Sendmail aliases.
purgestat	causes Sendmail to clear (purge) all its host-status information.
sendmail	is the Sendmail mail transport agent.
smrsh	is a restricted shell for Sendmail.
vacation	is an email auto responder.

Chapter 21. Databases

This chapter includes databases that range from single-user read/write to industrial database servers with transaction support. Generally, you will be sent here to satisfy dependencies to other applications although building a SQL server on a base LFS system is entirely possible.

Berkeley DB-4.5.20

Introduction to Berkeley DB

The Berkeley DB package contains programs and utilities used by many other applications for database related functions. This package is also installed during LFS and may already exist on your system. It is listed here in BLFS as well because you may need to reinstall it if you need the additional language bindings or the RPC server. If you do reinstall Berkeley DB, ensure you use the 4.5.20 version used in the LFS book.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://download-east.oracle.com/berkeley-db/db-4.5.20.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/db-4.5.20.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: b0f1c777708cb8e9d37fb47e7ed3312d
- Download size: 9.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 94 MB (additional 100 MB to run parallel standard test suite)
- Estimated build time: 1.7 SBU (builds all bindings, add an additional 145 SBU to run parallel standard test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/berkeley-db/db/update/4.5.20/patch.4.5.20.1*
- Required patch: *http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/berkeley-db/db/update/4.5.20/patch.4.5.20.2*

Berkeley DB Dependencies

Optional

Tcl-8.4.18, JDK-6 Update 5, and *sharutils* (for the **uudecode** command)

Testing Berkeley DB

You may want to skip ahead to the section called “Installation of Berkeley DB”. The test suite can take up to 150 SBUs and has a few bugs causing a report of “Regression tests failed”. However, running the test suite is a very exhaustive test of your hardware, perhaps pushing your machine harder (especially disk I/O) than it will ever see during production use. Note that you must have Tcl installed to run the test suite.

Build for the Berkeley DB test by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np0 -i ../patch.4.5.20.1 &&
patch -Np0 -i ../patch.4.5.20.2 &&
cd build_unix &&
../dist/configure --prefix=/usr \
                  --enable-test \
                  --enable-tcl  \
                  --with-tcl=/usr/lib &&
make
```

To test the results, start **tclsh**:

```
tclsh
```

From the **tclsh** prompt (%), run:

```
source ../test/test.tcl
run_parallel 5 run_std
exit
```

Clean up the source tree with the following command:

```
make realclean &&
cd ..
```

Installation of Berkeley DB

The installation commands below are identical to the commands used in the LFS book. If you installed Berkeley DB in LFS, and you don't add anything to the **configure** script, you'll end up with exactly what you already have. The additional parameters you can use are listed in the Command Explanations section below.

Note

If you plan on installing Berkeley DB with Java support, you should check the system for certain versions of JDK-6 Update 5 and GMime-2.2.10. Specifically, if JDK-6 Update X and the **uudecode** program from the GMime program is on the system, the build will fail (unless you run the modified **./configure** command shown below). You can run two commands (**javac -version** and **uudecode --version**) to determine what versions are installed. You can also download and run a shell script from *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/jdk-uudecode-check.sh* that will alert you to a non-working condition. If the identified programs exist on the system, you must modify the **./configure** command as shown below.

```
uudecode="no" ../dist/configure --(use the parameters shown below)
```

Install Berkeley DB by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np0 -i ../patch.4.5.20.1 &&
patch -Np0 -i ../patch.4.5.20.2 &&
cd build_unix &&
../dist/configure --prefix=/usr \
                  --enable-compat185 \
                  --enable-cxx &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make docdir=/usr/share/doc/db-4.5.20 install &&
chown -v -R root:root \
      /usr/bin/berkeley_db_svc \
      /usr/bin/db_* \
      /usr/include/db{,_185,_cxx}.h \
      /usr/lib/libdb{{,_cxx}.a,{,_cxx,_java,_tcl}-4.5.{so,a,la}} \
      /usr/share/doc/db-4.5.20
```

Command Explanations

cd build_unix && ../dist/configure --prefix=/usr...: This replaces the normal **./configure** command, as Berkeley DB comes with various build directories for different platforms.

--enable-compat185: This switch enables building the DB-1.85 compatibility API.

--enable-cxx: This switch enables building C++ API libraries.

--enable-tcl --with-tcl=/usr/lib: Enables Tcl support in DB and creates the `libdb_tcl` libraries.

--enable-java: Enables Java support in DB and creates the `libdb_java` libraries.

--enable-rpc: Enables building the Berkeley DB RPC server.

make docdir=/usr/share/doc/db-4.5.20 install: This installs the documentation in the standard location instead of `/usr/docs`.

chown -v -R root:root ...:This command changes the ownership of various installed files from the uid:gid of the builder to root:root.

Contents

Only the program and libraries not installed in LFS are listed here, the others can be found at *../../../../lfs/view/6.3/chapter06/db.html#contents-db* as they were initially installed during the building of LFS.

Installed Program:	berkeley_db_svc
Installed Libraries:	libdb_java.{so,a}, libdb_tcl.{so,a} and db.jar
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/db-4.5.20

Short Descriptions

berkeley_db_svc	is the Berkeley DB RPC server.

MySQL-5.0.41

Introduction to MySQL

MySQL is a widely used and fast SQL database server. It is a client/server implementation that consists of a server daemon and many different client programs and libraries.

There may be a more recent release available from the MySQL home page. You can check *http://dev.mysql.com/* and probably use the existing BLFS instructions. Note that versions other than the one shown in the download URLs have not been tested in a BLFS environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/m/mysql-5.0.41.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/m/mysql-5.0.41.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: b45cd6c89e35dfc1cdbe1a1f782aefbf
- Download size: 24 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 405 MB (additional 65 MB to run the test suite)
- Estimated build time: 6.0 SBU (Test suite is an additional 52 minutes, only partially CPU dependent)

MySQL Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g and TCP Wrapper-7.6

Installation of MySQL

For security reasons, running the server as an unprivileged user and group is strongly encouraged:

```
groupadd -g 40 mysql &&
useradd -c "MySQL Server" -d /dev/null -g mysql -s /bin/false \
        -u 40 mysql
```

Build and install MySQL by running the following commands:

```
C_EXTRA_FLAGS=-fno-strict-aliasing \
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --libexecdir=/usr/sbin \
            --localstatedir=/srv/mysql \
            --enable-thread-safe-client \
            --enable-assembler \
            --enable-local-infile \
            --with-unix-socket-path=/var/run/mysql/mysql.sock \
            --without-debug \
            --without-bench \
            --without-readline \
            --with-berkeley-db \
            --with-extra-charsets=all &&
make testdir=/tmp/mysql
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**. Note that if you have a restrictive `/etc/hosts.deny` file, you will need to add an appropriate entry to the `/etc/hosts.allow` file for the **mysqld** daemon, else many of the tests will fail.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make testdir=/tmp/mysql install &&
rm -rf /tmp/mysql &&
cd /usr/lib &&
ln -v -sf mysql/libmysqlclient{,_r}.so* .
```


Tip

The only documentation shipped in the source tarball are `mysql.info` and `manual.chm` (Microsoft Help format) files. You can download various formats of the MySQL Reference Manual from *http://dev.mysql.com/doc/*.

Command Explanations

`C_EXTRA_FLAGS=-fno-strict-aliasing`: This environment variable adjusts the compiler optimization to avoid failures in the testsuite and other operations.

`--libexecdir=/usr/sbin`: This switch installs the **mysqld** daemon and the **mysqlmanager** program in an appropriate location.

`--localstatedir=/srv/mysql`: This switch forces MySQL to use `/srv/mysql` for database files and other variable data.

`--enable-thread-safe-client`: This switch compiles a thread-safe MySQL client library.

`--enable-assembler`: This switch allows using assembler versions of some string functions.

`--enable-local-infile`: This switch enables the “LOAD DATA INFILE” SQL statement.

`--with-unix-socket-path=/var/run/mysql`: This switch puts the unix-domain socket into the `/var/run/mysql` directory instead of the default `/tmp`.

`--without-bench`: This switch skips building the benchmark suite.

`--without-readline`: This switch forces the build to use the system copy of readline instead of the bundled copy.

`--with-berkeley-db`: This switch enables using Berkeley DB tables as a back end.

`--with-extra-charsets=all`: This switch enables international character sets within the suite.

make testdir=...: This installs the test suite in `/tmp/mysql`. The test suite is not required, nor does it function properly on an installed version of MySQL, so it is removed in the next step.

ln -v -sf mysql/libmysqlclient{,_r}.so* .: This command makes the MySQL shared libraries available to other packages at run-time.

`--with-openssl`: This switch adds OpenSSL support to MySQL.

`--with-libwrap`: This switch adds tcpwrappers support to MySQL.

Configuring MySQL

Config Files

`/etc/my.cnf` and `~/.my.cnf`

Configuration Information

There are several default configuration files available in `/usr/share/mysql` which you can use. Create `/etc/my.cnf` using the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 /usr/share/mysql/my-medium.cnf /etc/my.cnf
```

You can now install a database and change the ownership to the unprivileged user and group (perform as the `root` user):

```
mysql_install_db --user=mysql &&
chgrp -v mysql /srv/mysql{,/test,/mysql}
```

Further configuration requires that the MySQL server is running. Start the server using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -o mysql -g mysql -d /var/run/mysql &&
mysqld_safe --user=mysql 2>&1 >/dev/null &
```

A default installation does not set up a password for the administrator, so use the following command as the `root` user to set one. Replace *<new-password>* with your own.

```
mysqladmin -u root password <new-password>
```

Configuration of the server is now finished. Shut the server down using the following command as the `root` user:

```
mysqladmin -p shutdown
```

Boot Script

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/mysql` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package as the `root` user to start the MySQL server during system boot-up.

```
make install-mysql
```

Contents

Installed Programs: comp_err, innochecksum, msql2mysql, my_print_defaults, myisam_ftdump, myisamchk, myisamlog, myisampack, mysql, mysql_client_test, mysql_config, mysql_convert_table_format, mysql_create_system_tables, mysql_explain_log, mysql_find_rows, mysql_fix_extensions, mysql_fix_privilege_tables, mysql_install_db, mysql_secure_installation, mysql_setpermission, mysql_tableinfo, mysql_tzinfo_to_sql, mysql_waitpid, mysql_zap, mysqlaccess, mysqladmin, mysqlbinlog, mysqlbug, mysqlcheck, mysqld, mysqld_multi, mysqld_safe, mysqldump, mysqldumpslow, mysqlhotcopy, mysqlimport, mysqlmanager, mysqlshow, mysqltest, mysqltestmanager, mysqltestmanager-pwgen, mysqltestmanagerc, perror, replace, resolve_stack_dump, and resolveip

Installed Libraries: libdbug.a, libheap.a, libmyisam.a, libmyisammrg.a, libmysqlclient.{so,a}, libmysqlclient_r.{so,a}, libmystrings.a, libmysys.a, and libvio.a

Installed Directories: /srv/mysql, /usr/include/mysql, /usr/lib/mysql, /usr/share/mysql, and /var/run/mysql

Short Descriptions

Descriptions of all the programs and libraries would be several pages long. Instead, consult the `mysql.info` documentation or the on-line reference manual at *http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.0/en/index.html*.

The Perl DBI modules must be installed for some of the MySQL support programs to function properly.

PostgreSQL-8.2.4

Introduction to PostgreSQL

PostgreSQL is an advanced object-relational database management system (ORDBMS), derived from the Berkeley Postgres database management system.

There may be a more recent release available from the PostgreSQL home page. You can check *http://www.postgresql.org/* and probably use the existing BLFS instructions. Note that versions other than the one shown in the download URLs have not been tested in a BLFS environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/p/postgresql-8.2.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/p/postgresql-8.2.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: af7ec100a33c41bfb8d87b5e0ec2f44a
- Download size: 12.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 165 MB (additional 118 MB to run the testsuite)
- Estimated build time: 1.4 SBU

PostgreSQL Dependencies

Optional

Python-2.5.2, Tcl-8.4.18, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, *krb4*, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 or Heimdal-1.1, and *Bonjour*

Optional (To Regenerate Documentation)

DocBook SGML DTD-4.5, DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets-1.79, OpenJade-1.3.2, and SGMLSpm-1.03ii

Installation of PostgreSQL

Install PostgreSQL with the following commands:

```
sed -i "s|dsssl-stylesheets|& \\\\\n        sgml/docbook/&-1.79|" \
    configure &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-thread-safety &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chown -v root:root /usr/share/doc/postgresql/html/* &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/postgresql/{FAQ/html,TODO.detail} &&
install -v -m644 doc/TODO /usr/share/doc/postgresql &&
install -v -m644 doc/FAQ* /usr/share/doc/postgresql/FAQ &&
install -v -m644 doc/src/FAQ/* /usr/share/doc/postgresql/FAQ/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/TODO.detail/* \
    /usr/share/doc/postgresql/TODO.detail
```

Note

If you are upgrading an existing system and are going to install the new files over the old ones, then you should back up your data, shut down the old server and follow the instructions in *the official PostgreSQL documentation*.

Initialize a database cluster with the following commands issued by the `root` user:

```
install -v -m700 -d /srv/pgsql/data &&
groupadd -g 41 postgres &&
useradd -c "PostgreSQL Server" -g postgres -d /srv/pgsql/data \
        -u 41 postgres &&
chown -v postgres /srv/pgsql/data &&
su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/initdb -D /srv/pgsql/data'
```

As the `root` user, start the database server with the following command:

```
su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/postmaster -D /srv/pgsql/data > \
    /srv/pgsql/data/logfile 2>&1 &'
```

Still as user `root`, create a database and verify the installation:

```
su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/createdb test' &&
echo "create table t1 ( name varchar(20), state_province varchar(20) );" \
    | (su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/psql test ') &&
echo "insert into t1 values ('Billy', 'NewYork');" \
    | (su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/psql test ') &&
echo "insert into t1 values ('Evanidus', 'Quebec');" \
    | (su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/psql test ') &&
echo "insert into t1 values ('Jesse', 'Ontario');" \
    | (su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/psql test ') &&
echo "select * from t1;" | (su - postgres -c '/usr/bin/psql test')
```

Command Explanations

sed -i "s|dsssl-stylesheets|...": This command puts an extra line in the **configure** script so that the BLFS installed version of the DSSSL stylesheets are discovered.

`--enable-thread-safety`: This switch makes the client libraries thread-safe by allowing concurrent threads in `libpq` and ECPG programs to safely control their private connection handles.

chown -R root:root /usr/share/doc/postgresql/html/*: This command corrects the improper ownership of documentation files.

groupadd ...; **useradd ...**: These commands add an unprivileged user and group to run the database server.

createdb test; create table t1; insert into t1 values...; select * from t1: Create a database, add a table to it, insert some rows into the table and select them to verify that the installation is working properly.

Configuring PostgreSQL

Config Files

`$PGDATA/pg_ident.con`, `$PGDATA/pg_hba.conf` and `$PGDATA/postgresql.conf`

The PGDATA environment variable is used to distinguish database clusters from one another by setting it to the value of the directory which contains the cluster desired. The three configuration files exist in every PGDATA/ directory. Details on the format of the files and the options that can be set in each can be found in *file:///usr/share/doc/postgresql/html/index.html*.

Boot Script

Install the /etc/rc.d/init.d/postgresql init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-postgresql
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	clusterdb, createdb, createlang, createuser, dropdb, droplang, dropuser, ecpg, initdb, ipcclean, pg_config, pg_controldata, pg_ctl, pg_dump, pg_dumpall, pg_resetxlog, pg_restore, pltcl_delmod, pltcl_listmod, pltcl_loadmod, postgres, postmaster, psql, reindexdb, and vacuumdb
Installed Libraries:	libecpg.{so,a}, libecpg_compat.{so,a}, libpgport.a, libpgtypes.{so,a}, libpq.{so,a}, and various charset modules.
Installed Directories:	/srv/pgsql, /usr/include/libpq, /usr/include/postgresql, /usr/lib/postgresql, /usr/share/doc/postgresql, and /usr/share/postgresql

Short Descriptions

clusterdb	is a utility for reclustering tables in a PostgreSQL database.
createdb	creates a new PostgreSQL database.
createlang	defines a new PostgreSQL procedural language.
createuser	defines a new PostgreSQL user account.
dropdb	removes a PostgreSQL database.
droplang	removes a PostgreSQL procedural language.
dropuser	removes a PostgreSQL user account.
ecpg	is the embedded SQL preprocessor.
initdb	creates a new database cluster.
ipcclean	removes shared memory and semaphores left over by an aborted database server.
pg_config	retrieves PostgreSQL version information.
pg_controldata	returns information initialized during **initdb**, such as the catalog version and server locale.
pg_ctl	controls stopping and starting the database server.
pg_dump	dumps database data and metadata into scripts which are used to recreate the database.
pg_dumpall	recursively calls **pg_dump** for each database in a cluster.
pg_resetxlog	clears the write-ahead log and optionally resets some fields in the pg_control file.
pg_restore	creates databases from dump files created by **pg_dump**.
pltcl_delmod	is a support script used to delete a module from a PL/Tcl table. The command requires the *Pgtcl* package to be installed also.

pltcl_listmod	is a support script used to list the modules in a PL/Tcl table. The command requires the *Pgtcl* package to be installed also.
pltcl_loadmod	is a support script used to load a module into a PL/Tcl table. The command requires the *Pgtcl* package to be installed also.
postgres	is a single user database server, generally used for debugging.
postmaster	is a multi-user database daemon.
psql	is a console based database shell.
reindexdb	is a utility for rebuilding indexes in a database.
vacuumdb	compacts databases and generates statistics for the query analyzer.

Chapter 22. Other Server Software

Here you will find many ways to share your machine with the rest of the world or your local network. Before installing any packages in this chapter, you need to be sure you understand what the package does and how to set it up correctly. It might also be helpful to learn about the consequences of an improper setup so that you can analyze the risks.

DHCP-3.0.6

Introduction to DHCP

The DHCP package contains both the client and server programs for DHCP. **dhclient** (the client) is useful for connecting your computer to a network which uses DHCP to assign network addresses. **dhcpd** (the server) is useful for assigning network addresses on your private network.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/infosys/servers/isc/dhcp/dhcp-3.0.6.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.isc.org/isc/dhcp/dhcp-3.0.6.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 724bad21ad8b638abadd5fcc07df1a0f
- Download size: 876 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/dhcp-3.0.6-client_dns-1.patch*
- Optional Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/dhcp-3.0.6-iproute2-1.patch*

DHCP Dependencies

Required

Net-tools-1.60 (you may omit net-tools by using the optional patch to utilize iproute2.

Kernel Configuration

You must have Packet Socket support (Device Drivers # Networking Support # Networking Options # Packet Socket) compiled into the kernel.

Installation of DHCP

First fix a problem with always regenerating /etc/resolv.conf whether the DNS server has changed or not.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../dhcp-3.0.6-client_dns-1.patch
```

If you chose not to install net-tools, apply the iproute2 patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../dhcp-3.0.6-iproute2-1.patch
```

Install DHCP by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make LIBDIR=/usr/lib INCDIR=/usr/include install
```

Command Explanations

LIBDIR=/usr/lib INCDIR=/usr/include: This command installs the library and include files in `/usr` instead of `/usr/local`.

Configuring DHCP

Config Files

`/etc/dhclient.conf` and `/etc/dhcpd.conf`

Configuration Information

Information on configuring the DHCP client can be found in Chapter 13, Connecting to a Network.

Note that you only need the DHCP server if you want to issue LAN addresses over your network. The DHCP client doesn't need this script to be used. Also note that this script is coded for the **eth1** interface, which may need to be modified for your hardware configuration.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/dhcp` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-dhcp
```

The lease file must exist on startup. The following command will satisfy that requirement:

```
touch /var/state/dhcp/dhcpd.leases
```

The following commands will create a base configuration file for a DHCP server. There are several options that you may want to add (information that is passed back to the DHCP client) and those are covered in the man pages for `dhcp.conf`.

```
cat > /etc/dhcpd.conf << "EOF"
default-lease-time 72000;
max-lease-time 144000;
ddns-update-style ad-hoc;

subnet <192.168.5.0> netmask <255.255.255.0> {
  range <192.168.5.10> <192.168.5.240>;
  option broadcast-address <192.168.5.255>;
  option routers <192.168.5.1>;
}
EOF
```

All addresses should be changed to meet your circumstance.

Contents

Installed Programs:	dhcpd, dhcrelay, dhclient, dhclient-script, and omshell
Installed Libraries:	bdhcpctl.a, libomapi.a
Installed Directories:	/var/state/dhcp, /usr/include/omapip, and /usr/include/isi-dhcp

Short Descriptions

dhclient is the implementation of the DHCP client.

dhcpd implements Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and Internet Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) requests for network addresses.

dhcrelay provides a means to accept DHCP and BOOTP requests on a subnet without a DHCP server and relay them to a DHCP server on another subnet.

omshell provides an interactive way to connect to, query, and possibly change, the ISC DHCP Server's state via OMAPI, the Object Management API.

Leafnode-1.11.5

Introduction to Leafnode

Leafnode is an NNTP server designed for small sites to provide a local USENET spool.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/leafnode/leafnode-1.11.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gwdg.de/pub/linux/mirrors/sunsite/system/news/transport/leafnode-1.11.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 88552c5cc91cb27146c8906b2d33289d
- Download size: 428 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Leafnode Dependencies

Required

PCRE-7.6 and TCP Wrapper-7.6

Recommended

xinetd-2.3.14 and Fcron-3.0.3

Installation of Leafnode

As the `root` user, create the group and user `news`, if not present:

```
groupadd -g 36 news &&
useradd -c "Leafnode News Server" -d /var/spool/news -g news \
        -u 36 news
```

Install Leafnode by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
    --localstatedir=/var --sysconfdir=/etc/leafnode \
    --with-lockfile=/var/lock/leafnode/fetchnews.lck &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--localstatedir=/var`: Change the default spool directory of `/usr/var`.

--sysconfdir=/etc/leafnode: Leafnode reads its configuration data from a file called `config` which will be created in `/etc/leafnode` to avoid any potential conflict with other packages.

make update: Run this command if you are upgrading from a very old version of Leafnode.

Configuring Leafnode

Config Files

`/etc/leafnode/config`, `/etc/nntpserver`, `/etc/sysconfig/createfiles` `/etc/inetd.conf` or `/etc/xinetd.conf` or `/etc/xinetd.d/nntp`

Configuration Information

The `/etc/leafnode/config` file must be edited to reflect the name of the upstream NNTP provider. Copy the example configuration file to `/etc/leafnode/config` and save the original for reference:

```
cp /etc/leafnode/config.example /etc/leafnode/config
```

Change the

```
server =
```

entry to reflect your news provider.

The `/etc/nntpserver` file must contain 127.0.0.1 to prevent news clients from reading news from the upstream feed. Create this file using the following command:

```
cat > /etc/nntpserver << "EOF"
127.0.0.1

EOF
```

The **/etc/rc.d/init.d/cleanfs** script, part of the LFS bootscript package, will remove the `/var/lock/leafnode` directory during the system boot sequence. Install the following line in the `/etc/sysconfig/createfiles` file to re-create the directory:

```
/var/lock/leafnode   dir   2775   news   news
```

Leafnode may be configured to use **inetd** by adding an entry to the `/etc/inetd.conf` file with the following command:

```
echo "nntp stream tcp nowait news /usr/sbin/tcpd /usr/sbin/leafnode" \
>> /etc/inetd.conf
```

Issue a **killall -HUP inetd** to reread the changed `inetd.conf` file.

If you use **xinetd**, the following command will create the Leafnode file as `/etc/xinetd.d/nntp`:

```
cat >> /etc/xinetd.d/nntp << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/nntp

        service nntp
        {
           flags           = NAMEINARGS NOLIBWRAP
           socket_type     = stream
           protocol        = tcp
           wait            = no
           user            = news
           server          = /usr/sbin/tcpd
           server_args     = /usr/sbin/leafnode
           instances       = 7
           per_source      = 3
        }

# End /etc/xinetd.d/nntp
EOF
```

Issue a **killall -HUP xinetd** to reread the changed `xinetd.conf` file.

Add entries to the `root` or `news` user's crontab to run the **fetchnews** and **texpire** commands at the desired time intervals.

Contents

Installed Programs:	applyfilter, checkgroups, fetchnews, leafnode, leafnode-version, newsq, and texpire
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/leafnode, /var/lock/leafnode, and /var/spool/news

Short Descriptions

applyfilter	filters newsgroup articles according to regular expressions.
checkgroups	inserts newsgroup titles into the newsgroup database.
fetchnews	sends posted articles to and retrieves new articles from an upstream news server.
leafnode	is an NNTP server daemon.
leafnode-version	prints the Leafnode version.
newsq	shows articles waiting to be sent upstream.
texpire	expires old articles and unread groups.

OpenLDAP-2.3.39

Introduction to OpenLDAP

The OpenLDAP package provides an open source implementation of the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/infosys/network/OpenLDAP/openldap-stable/openldap-stable-20071118.tgz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.openldap.org/pub/OpenLDAP/openldap-stable/openldap-stable-20071118.tgz*
- Download MD5 sum: e3fec2953c948f6990ccdc3af7bf7f18
- Download size: 3.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 94 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.2 SBU and approximately 30 minutes to run the tests (processor independent)

Note

The OpenLDAP stable releases are packaged without version numbers in the tarball names. You can see the relationship between the version number and name of the tarball at *http://www.openldap.org/software/download/*.

OpenLDAP Dependencies

Required

Berkeley DB-4.5.20 is recommended (built in LFS) or GDBM-1.8.3

Recommended

Cyrus SASL-2.1.22 and OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

TCP Wrapper-7.6, unixODBC-2.2.12, GMP-4.2.2, *OpenSLP*, Pth-2.0.7, and one of MySQL-5.0.41, *Oracle*, or PostgreSQL-8.2.4

Installation of OpenLDAP

Install OpenLDAP by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/sbin \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/srv/ldap \
            --disable-debug \
            --enable-dynamic \
            --enable-crypt \
            --enable-modules \
            --enable-rlookups \
            --enable-backends \
            --enable-overlays \
            --disable-sql &&
make depend &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**. If you've enabled tcp_wrappers, ensure you add 127.0.0.1 to the *slapd* line in the `/etc/hosts.allow` file if you have a restrictive `/etc/hosts.deny` file.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

for LINK in lber ldap ldap_r; do
    chmod -v 0755 /usr/lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/lib${LINK}.so)
done &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/openldap-2.3.39/{drafts,guide,rfc} &&
install -v -m644 doc/drafts/* /usr/share/doc/openldap-2.3.39/drafts &&
install -v -m644 doc/rfc/*    /usr/share/doc/openldap-2.3.39/rfc &&
cp -v -R doc/guide/*          /usr/share/doc/openldap-2.3.39/guide
```

Command Explanations

--libexecdir=/usr/sbin: Installs the **slapd** and **slurpd** daemon programs in `/usr/sbin` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

--sysconfdir=/etc: Sets the configuration file directory to avoid the default of `/usr/etc`.

--localstatedir=/srv/ldap: Sets the directory to use for the LDAP directory database, replication logs and run-time variable data.

--disable-debug: Disable debugging code.

--enable-dynamic: This forces the OpenLDAP libraries to be dynamically linked to the executable programs.

--enable-crypt: Enables crypt(3) passwords.

--enable-modules: Enables dynamic module support.

--enable-rlookups: This parameter enables reverse lookups of client hostnames.

--enable-backends: This parameter enables all available backends.

--enable-overlays: This parameter enables all available overlays.

--disable-sql: This parameter explicity disables the sql backend. Omit this switch if a SQL server is installed.

--disable-bdb --disable-hdb --with-ldbm-api=gdbm: Pass these parameters to the **configure** command if you wish to use GDBM instead of Berkeley DB as the primary backend database.

chmod -v 0755 ...: This command adds the executable bit to the shared libraries.

Note

You can run **./configure --help** to see if there are other parameters you can pass to the **configure** command to enable other options or dependency packages.

Configuring OpenLDAP

Config Files

/etc/openldap/*

Configuration Information

Configuring the **slapd** and **slurpd** servers can be complex. Securing the LDAP directory, especially if you are storing non-public data such as password databases, can also be a challenging task. You'll need to modify the /etc/openldap/slapd.conf and /etc/openldap/ldap.conf files to set up OpenLDAP for your particular needs.

Resources to assist you with topics such as choosing a directory configuration, backend and database definitions, access control settings, running as a user other than root and setting a **chroot** environment include:

- The **slapd** man page
- The slapd.conf man page
- The *OpenLDAP 2.3 Administrator's Guide* (also installed locally in /usr/share/doc/openldap-2.3.39/guide/admin)
- Documents located at *http://www.openldap.org/pub/*

Utilizing GDBM

To utilize GDBM as the database backend, the “database” entry in /etc/openldap/slapd.conf must be changed from “bdb” to “ldbm”. You can use both by creating an additional database section in /etc/openldap/slapd.conf.

Mozilla Address Directory

By default, LDAPv2 support is disabled in the slapd.conf file. Once the database is properly set up and Mozilla is configured to use the directory, you must add allow bind_v2 to the slapd.conf file.

Boot Script

To automate the startup of the LDAP server at system bootup, install the /etc/rc.d/init.d/openldap init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package using the following command:

```
make install-openldap1
```

Note: The init script you just installed only starts the **slapd** daemon. If you wish to also start the **slurpd** daemon at system startup, install a modified version of the script using this command:

```
make install-openldap2
```

Note

The init script starts the daemons without any parameters. You'll need to modify the script to include the parameters needed for your specific configuration. See the **slapd** and **slurpd** man pages for parameter information.

Testing the Configuration

Start the LDAP server using the init script:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/openldap start
```

Verify access to the LDAP server with the following command:

```
ldapsearch -x -b '' -s base '(objectclass=*)' namingContexts
```

The expected result is:

```
# extended LDIF
#
# LDAPv3
# base <> with scope base
# filter: (objectclass=*)
# requesting: namingContexts
#

#
dn:
namingContexts: dc=my-domain,dc=com

# search result
search: 2
result: 0 Success

# numResponses: 2
# numEntries: 1
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	ldapadd, ldapcompare, ldapdelete, ldapmodify, ldapmodrdn, ldappasswd, ldapsearch, ldapwhoami, slapadd, slapcat, slapd, slapdn, slapindex, slappasswd, slaptest, and slurpd
Installed Libraries:	liblber.{so,a}, libldap.{so,a}, and libldap_r.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/openldap, /srv/ldap, and /usr/share/openldap

Short Descriptions

ldapadd	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and adds entries.

ldapcompare	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and performs a compare using specified parameters.
ldapdelete	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and deletes one or more entries.
ldapmodify	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and modifies entries.
ldapmodrdn	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and modifies the RDN of entries.
ldappasswd	is a tool to set the password of an LDAP user.
ldapsearch	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and performs a search using specified parameters.
ldapwhoami	opens a connection to an LDAP server, binds and displays whoami information.
slapadd	is used to add entries specified in LDAP Directory Interchange Format (LDIF) to an LDAP database.
slapcat	is used to generate an LDAP LDIF output based upon the contents of a slapd database.
slapd	is the stand-alone LDAP server.
slapdn	checks a list of string-represented DNs based on schema syntax.
slapindex	is used to regenerate slapd indices based upon the current contents of a database.
slappasswd	is an OpenLDAP password utility.
slaptest	checks the sanity of the `slapd.conf` file.
slurpd	is the stand-alone LDAP replication server.
`liblber.{so,a}`	is a set of lightweight Basic Encoding Rules routines. These routines are used by the LDAP library routines to encode and decode LDAP protocol elements using the (slightly simplified) Basic Encoding Rules defined by LDAP. They are not normally used directly by an LDAP application program except in the handling of controls and extended operations.
`libldap.{so,a}`	supports the LDAP programs and provide functionality for other programs interacting with LDAP.
`libldap_r.{so,a}`	contains the functions required by the LDAP programs to produce the results from LDAP requests.

rsync-3.0.2

Introduction to rsync

The rsync package contains the **rsync** utility. This is useful for synchronizing large file archives over a network.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/r/rsync-3.0.2.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: fd4c5d77d8cb7bb86ab209076fa214d9
- Download size: 765 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 35 MB (includes installing all documentation)
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

rsync Dependencies

Optional

popt-1.10.4, *libattr*, and *libacl*

Installation of rsync

For security reasons, running the rsync server as an unprivileged user and group is encouraged. If you intend to run **rsync** as a daemon, create the `rsyncd` user and group with the following commands issued by the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 48 rsyncd &&
useradd -c "rsyncd Daemon" -d /home/rsync -g rsyncd \
    -s /bin/false -u 48 rsyncd
```

Install rsync by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have Doxygen-1.5.2 installed and wish to build HTML API documentation, issue **doxygen**.

If you have DocBook-utils-0.6.14 installed and wish to build the user documentation, issue any or all of the following commands:

```
pushd doc &&
docbook2pdf             rsync.sgml &&
docbook2ps              rsync.sgml &&
docbook2dvi             rsync.sgml &&
docbook2txt             rsync.sgml &&
docbook2html --nochunks rsync.sgml &&
popd
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you built the documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d          /usr/share/doc/rsync-3.0.2/api &&
install -v -m644 dox/html/*  /usr/share/doc/rsync-3.0.2/api &&
install -v -m644 doc/rsync.* /usr/share/doc/rsync-3.0.2
```

Configuring rsync

Config Files

`/etc/rsyncd.conf`

Configuration Information

For client access to remote files, you may need to install the OpenSSH-4.7p1 package to connect to the remote server.

This is a simple download-only configuration to set up running **rsync** as a server. See the rsyncd.conf(5) man-page for additional options (i.e., user authentication).

```
cat > /etc/rsyncd.conf << "EOF"
# This is a basic rsync configuration file
# It exports a single module without user authentication.

motd file = /home/rsync/welcome.msg
use chroot = yes

[localhost]
    path = /home/rsync
    comment = Default rsync module
    read only = yes
    list = yes
    uid = rsyncd
    gid = rsyncd

EOF
```

You can find additional configuration information and general documentation about **rsync** at *http://rsync.samba.org/documentation.html*.

Boot Script

Note that you only want to start the rsync server if you want to provide an rsync archive on your local machine. You don't need this script to run the rsync client.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/rsyncd` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-rsyncd
```

Contents

Installed Program: rsync
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: Optionally, /usr/share/doc/rsync-3.0.2

Short Descriptions

rsync is a replacement for **rcp** (and **scp**) that has many more features. It uses the “rsync algorithm” which provides a very fast method of syncing remote files. It does this by sending just the differences in the files across the link, without requiring that both sets of files are present at one end of the link beforehand.

Running a CVS Server

Running a CVS Server

This section will describe how to set up, administer and secure a CVS server.

CVS Server Dependencies

Required

CVS-1.11.22 and OpenSSH-4.7p1

Setting up a CVS Server.

A CVS server will be set up using OpenSSH as the remote access method. Other access methods, including :pserver: and :server: will not be used for write access to the CVS repository. The :pserver: method sends clear text passwords over the network and the :server: method is not supported in all CVS ports. Instructions for anonymous, read only CVS access using :pserver: can be found at the end of this section.

Configuration of the CVS server consists of four steps:

1. Create a Repository.

Create a new CVS repository with the following commands:

```
mkdir /srv/cvsroot &&
chmod 1777 /srv/cvsroot &&
export CVSROOT=/srv/cvsroot &&
cvs init
```

2. Import Source Code Into the Repository.

Import a source module into the repository with the following commands, issued from a user account on the same machine as the CVS repository:

```
cd <sourcedir> &&
cvs import -m "<repository test>" <cvstest> <vendortag> <releasetag>
```

3. Verify Local Repository Access.

Test access to the CVS repository from the same user account with the following command:

```
cvs co cvstest
```

4. Verify Remote Repository Access.

Test access to the CVS repository from a remote machine using a user account that has **ssh** access to the CVS server with the following commands:

Note

Replace *<servername>* with the IP address or host name of the CVS repository machine. You will be prompted for the user's shell account password before CVS checkout can continue.

```
export CVS_RSH=/usr/bin/ssh &&
cvs -d:ext:<servername>:/srv/cvsroot co cvstest
```

Configuring CVS for Anonymous Read Only Access.

CVS can be set up to allow anonymous read only access using the :pserver: method by logging on as `root` and executing the following commands:

```
(grep anonymous /etc/passwd || useradd anonymous -s /bin/false -u 98) &&
echo anonymous: > /srv/cvsroot/CVSROOT/passwd &&
echo anonymous > /srv/cvsroot/CVSROOT/readers
```

If you use **inetd**, the following command will add the CVS entry to `/etc/inetd.conf`:

```
echo "2401  stream  tcp  nowait  root  /usr/bin/cvs cvs -f \
    --allow-root=/srv/cvsroot pserver" >> /etc/inetd.conf
```

Issue a **killall -HUP inetd** to reread the changed `inetd.conf` file.

If you use **xinetd**, the following command will create the CVS file as `/etc/xinetd.d/cvspserver`:

```
cat >> /etc/xinetd.d/cvspserver << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/cvspserver

     service cvspserver
     {
          port        = 2401
          socket_type = stream
          protocol    = tcp
          wait        = no
          user        = root
          passenv     = PATH
          server      = /usr/bin/cvs
          server_args = -f --allow-root=/srv/cvsroot pserver
     }

# End /etc/xinetd.d/cvspserver
EOF
```

Issue a **/etc/rc.d/init.d/xinetd reload** to reread the changed `xinetd.conf` file.

Testing anonymous access to the new repository requires an account on another machine that can reach the CVS server via network. No account on the CVS repository is needed. To test anonymous access to the CVS repository, log in to another machine as an unprivileged user and execute the following command:

```
cvs -d:pserver:anonymous@<servername>:/srv/cvsroot co cvstest
```

Note

Replace *<servername>* with the IP address or hostname of the CVS server.

Command Explanations

mkdir /srv/cvsroot: Create the CVS repository directory.

chmod 1777 /srv/cvsroot: Set sticky bit permissions for `CVSROOT`.

export CVSROOT=/srv/cvsroot: Specify new `CVSROOT` for all **cvs** commands.

cvs init: Initialize the new CVS repository.

cvs import -m "repository test" cvstest vendortag releasetag: All source code modules must be imported into the CVS repository before use, with the **cvs import** command. The `-m` flags specifies an initial descriptive entry for the new module. The `cvstest` parameter is the name used for the module in all subsequent **cvs** commands. The `vendortag` and `releasetag` parameters are used to further identify each CVS module and are mandatory whether used or not.

(grep anonymous /etc/passwd || useradd anonymous -s /bin/false -u 98): Check for an existing `anonymous` user and create one if not found.

echo anonymous: > **/srv/cvsroot/CVSROOT/passwd**: Add the `anonymous` user to the CVS passwd file, which is unused for anything else in this configuration.

echo anonymous > **/srv/cvsroot/CVSROOT/readers**: Add the `anonymous` user to the CVS readers file, a list of users who have read only access to the repository.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/srv/cvsroot

Running a Subversion Server

Running a Subversion Server

This section will describe how to set up, administer and secure a Subversion server.

Subversion Server Dependencies

Required

Subversion-1.4.4 and OpenSSH-4.7p1

Setting up a Subversion Server.

The following instructions will install a Subversion server, which will be set up to use OpenSSH as the secure remote access method, with **svnserve** available for anonymous access.

Configuration of the Subversion server consists of the following steps:

1. Setup Users, Groups, and Permissions

You'll need to be user `root` for the initial portion of configuration. Create the `svn` user and group with the following commands:

```
groupadd -g 56 svn &&
useradd -c "SVN Owner" -d /home/svn -m -g svn -s /bin/false -u 56 svn
```

If you plan to have multiple repositories, you should have a group dedicated to each repository for ease of administration. Create the `svntest` group for the test repository and add the `svn` user to that group with the following commands:

```
groupadd -g 57 svntest &&
usermod -G svntest -a svn
```

Additionally you should set **umask 002** while working with a repository so that all new files will be writable by owner and group. This is made mandatory by creating a wrapper script for **svn** and **svnserve**:

```
mv /usr/bin/svn /usr/bin/svn.orig &&
mv /usr/bin/svnserve /usr/bin/svnserve.orig &&
cat >> /usr/bin/svn << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
umask 002
/usr/bin/svn.orig "$@"
EOF
cat >> /usr/bin/svnserve << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
umask 002
/usr/bin/svnserve.orig "$@"
EOF
chmod 0755 /usr/bin/svn{,serve}
```

Note

If you use Apache for working with the repository over HTTP, even for anonymous access, you should wrap **/usr/sbin/httpd** in a similar script.

2. Create a Subversion repository.

With subversion-1.1.0 and greater, a new type of repository data-store is available, FSFS. There is a tradeoff for speed with the new backend, however, the repository can now be placed on a network mount, and any corruption does not require an admin to recover the repository. For more information and comparison between FSFS and BDB, see *http://svnbook.red-bean.com/svnbook-1.1/ch05.html#svn-ch-5-sect-1.2.A*.

Create a new Subversion repository with the following commands:

```
install -v -m 0755 -d /srv &&
install -v -m 0755 -o svn -g svn -d /srv/svn/repositories &&
svnadmin create --fs-type fsfs /srv/svn/repositories/svntest
```

Now that the repository is created, it should be populated with with something useful. You'll need to have a predefined directory layout set up exactly as you want your repository to look. For example, here is a sample BLFS layout setup with a root of `svntest/`. You'll need to setup a directory tree similar to the following:

```
          svntest/            # The name of the repository
             trunk/           # Contains the existing source tree
                BOOK/
                bootscripts/
                edguide/
                patches/
                scripts/
             branches/        # Needed for additional branches
             tags/            # Needed for tagging release points
```

Once you've created your directory layout as shown above, you are ready to do the initial import:

```
svn import -m "Initial import." \
    </path/to/source/tree> \
    file:///srv/svn/repositories/svntest
```

Now change owner and group information on the repository, and add an unprivileged user to the `svn` and `svntest` groups:

```
chown -R svn:svntest /srv/svn/repositories/svntest &&
chmod -R g+w /srv/svn/repositories/svntest &&
chmod g+s /srv/svn/repositories/svntest/db &&
usermod -G svn,svntest -a <username>
```

`svntest` is the group assigned to the svntest repository. As mentioned earlier, this eases administration of multiple repositories when using OpenSSH for authentication. Going forward, you'll need to add your unprivileged user, and any additional users that you wish to have write access to the repository, to the `svn` and `svntest` groups.

In addition, you'll notice that the new repository's `db` directory is set-groupID. If the reasoning is not immediately obvious, when using any external authentication method (such as **ssh**), the sticky bit is set so that all new files will be owned by the user, but group of `svntest`. Anyone in the `svntest` group can create files, but still give the entire group write access to those files. This avoids locking out other users from the repository.

Now, return to an unprivileged user account, and take a look at the new repository using **svnlook**:

```
svnlook tree /srv/svn/repositories/svntest/
```

Note

You may need to log out and back in again to refresh your group memberships. '**su *<username>***' should work as well.

3. Configure the Server

As mentioned previously, these instructions will configure the server to use only **ssh** for write access to the repository and to provide anonymous access using **svnserve**. There are several other ways to provide access to the repository. These additional configurations are best explained at *http://svnbook.red-bean.com/*.

Access configuration needs to be done for each repository. Create the `svnserve.conf` file for the svntest repository using the following commands:

```
cp /srv/svn/repositories/svntest/conf/svnserve.conf \
    /srv/svn/repositories/svntest/conf/svnserve.conf.default &&
cat > /srv/svn/repositories/svntest/conf/svnserve.conf << "EOF"
[general]
anon-access = read
auth-access = write
EOF
```

There is not a lot to the configuration file at all. You'll notice that only the general section is required. Take a look at the `svnserve.conf.default` file for information on using **svnserve**'s built-in authentication method.

4. Starting the Server

There are a couple of ways to start **svnserve**. The most common way is to start it as an **inetd** or **xinetd** process. Alternately, you can use a bootscript to start the service at startup.

Note

If you do not wish to provide anonymous access to your svn repositories or use **svnserve**'s built-in authentication, you do not need to run **svnserve**.

If you use **inetd**, add a line to `/etc/inetd.conf` using the following commands:

```
cat >> /etc/inetd.conf << "EOF"
svn stream tcp nowait svn /usr/bin/svnserve svnserve -i
EOF
```

If you use **xinetd**, the following command will create the Subversion server file as `/etc/xinetd.d/svn`:

```
cat >> /etc/xinetd.d/svn << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/xinetd.d/svn

service svn
{
        port                    = 3690
        socket_type             = stream
        protocol                = tcp
        wait                    = no
        user                    = svn
        server                  = /usr/bin/svnserve
        server_args             = -i -r /srv/svn/repositories
}

# End /etc/xinetd.d/svn
EOF
```

Finally, if you wish to simply start the server at startup, install the svn bootscript included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-svn
```

Part VI. X + Window Managers

Chapter 23. X Window System Environment

This chapter contains instructions to build and configure a graphical user environment.

Xorg-7.2 introduces a completely autotooled build system which means that the packages build and install using the conventional **configure**, **make** and **make install** commands, but it requires installing more than 100 different packages. Most large commercial distributions have decided to use the Xorg package.

Introduction to Xorg-7.2

Xorg is a freely redistributable, open-source implementation of the X Window System. This system provides a client/server interface between display hardware (the mouse, keyboard, and video displays) and the desktop environment, while also providing both the windowing infrastructure and a standardized application interface (API).

Xorg Download and Installation Instructions

Xorg-7.0.0 introduced a completely auto-tooled, modular build system. With the new modular build system, it is no longer possible to download the entire package in a single file. In fact, there may be as many as 293 files that need to be fetched from the download location. To assist with such a large task, installing Wget-1.10.2 is strongly recommended for downloading the needed files. A complete wget file list is provided for each section that includes multiple packages.

Given the number of packages available, deciding which packages you need to install for your particular setup may seem a bit overwhelming at first. Take a look at *this page* and *this thread* to get an idea of what you will need. If you are unsure, you should install all packages at the cost of extra disk space. To see which packages have changed between releases of Xorg, see the upstream *update* and *deprecated* directories.

Note

Even if you intend to download only the necessary packages, you should download the wget file lists. The list of files are ordered by dependency, and the package versions listed in the files are known to work well with each other. Further, the wget file lists contain comments for specific packages that are deprecated or are not recommended to install. Newer packages are likely intended for the next release of Xorg and have already proved to be incompatible with current versions of software installed in BLFS. The installed size of Xorg can be reduced considerably by installing only the packages that you will need and use, however, the BLFS book cannot account for all dependencies and build options for the individual Xorg packages. The instructions assume that all packages have been built. A *wiki* page containing dependency information is under development. You are encouraged to add to these pages if you discover additional information that may be helpful to other users who selectively install individual packages.

Additionally, because of the large number of repetitive commands, you are encouraged to partially automate the build. The commands below (or similar) can be entered at the command line to compile each group of packages (proto, utils, libs, apps, drivers). The wiki links on each group's page contain specific commands to compile the entire group of packages, based on the content of the wget files.

```
bash -e #exit on all errors
section=proto
version=7.2
mkdir $section
cd $section

# download and check packages
grep -v '^#' ../${section}-${version}.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/${section}/
md5sum -c ../${section}-${version}.md5

# build packages
for package in $(grep -v '^#' ../${section}-${version}.wget)
do
  packagedir=$(echo $package | sed 's/.tar.bz2//')
  tar -xf $package
  cd $packagedir
  ./configure $XORG_CONFIG
  make
  make install
  cd ..
  rm -rf $packagedir
  rm -f $package
done 2>&1 | tee -a ../xorg-${section}-compile.log #log the entire loop
```

The above shell will exit immediately on error. If it runs to completion, you should manually exit the shell before continuing on to the next set of instructions.

Setting up the Xorg Build Environment

First, you'll need to create a working directory:

```
mkdir xc &&
cd xc
```

As with previous releases of the X Window System, it may be desirable to install Xorg into an alternate prefix. This is no longer common practice among Linux distributions. The common installation prefix for Xorg on Linux is `/usr`. There is no standard alternate prefix, nor is there any exception in the current revision of the Filesystem Hierarchy Standard for Release 7 of the X Window System. Alan Coopersmith of Sun Microsystems, has recently stated "At Sun, we were using `/usr/X11` and plan to stick with it." Only the `/opt/*` prefix or the `/usr` prefix adhere to the current FHS guidelines.

Choose your installation prefix, and set the `XORG_PREFIX` variable with the following command:

```
export XORG_PREFIX="<PREFIX>"
```

Throughout these instructions, you will use the following **configure** switches for all of the packages. Create the XORG_CONFIG variable to use for this parameter substitution:

```
export XORG_CONFIG="--prefix=$XORG_PREFIX --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --mandir=$XORG_PREFIX/share/man --localstatedir=/var"
```

Note

Make sure that you also add these variables to your personal or system-wide profile as they are used throughout this book. See The Bash Shell Startup Files for more information.

If you've decided to use an alternate prefix, be sure to add $XORG_PREFIX/bin to your PATH environment variable and $XORG_PREFIX/lib/pkgconfig to your PKG_CONFIG_PATH variable. For detailed instructions, see The Bash Shell Startup Files. You should also add $XORG_PREFIX/lib to the /etc/ld.so.conf file and $XORG_PREFIX/share/man as a MANDATORY_MANPATH in /etc/man_db.conf.

Packages in Xorg store their configuration files in $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11 by default. This is strictly against FHS guidelines. To simplify installation, create the proper installation directories in /etc/X11 and create symlinks in $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11 to satisfy the installation. Execute the following commands as the root user:

```
install -v -m755 -d \
    /etc/X11/{app-defaults,fs,twm,xdm,xinit,xkb,xsm} &&

install -v -m755 -d $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11 &&

for link in \
    /etc/X11/{app-defaults,fs,twm,xdm,xinit,xkb,xsm}
do
    ln -sv $link $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11
done
```

Xorg Protocol Headers

Introduction to Xorg Protocol Headers

The Xorg protocol headers provide the header files required to build the system, and to allow other applications to build against the installed X Window system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/proto/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/proto/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/proto-7.2.md5*
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.0 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required download list: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/proto-7.2.wget*

Downloading Xorg Protocol Headers

To download the needed files using wget, use the following commands:

```
mkdir proto &&
cd proto &&
grep -v '^#' ../proto-7.2.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/proto/ &&
md5sum -c ../proto-7.2.md5
```

Installation of Xorg Protocol Headers

Install the Xorg protocol headers by running the following commands for each package to be installed.

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG
```

These packages do not provide test suites.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$XORG_PREFIX`/: include/X11, include/GL, and lib/pkgconfig

Xorg Utilities

Introduction to Xorg Utilities

The Xorg utility packages provide needed utilities, not for the Xorg installation itself, but for other applications that make use of legacy X11R6 installation methods.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/util/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/util/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/util-7.2.md5*
- Download size: 664 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required download list: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/util-7.2.wget*

Xorg Utilities Dependencies

Required

pkg-config-0.22 and Xorg Protocol Headers

Downloading Xorg Utilities

To download the needed files using wget, use the following commands:

```
mkdir util &&
cd util &&
grep -v '^#' ../util-7.2.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/util/ &&
md5sum -c ../util-7.2.md5
```

Installation of Xorg Utilities

Install the Xorg utilities by running the following commands for each package:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

These packages do not provide test suites.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: ccmakedep, cleanlinks, gccmakedep, imake, lndir, makedepend, makeg, mergelib, mkdirhier, mkhtmlindex, revpath, xmkmf
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$XORG_PREFIX`/: bin, lib/X11/config, share/aclocal, and share/man

Short Descriptions

ccmakedep creates dependencies in makefiles using a C compiler.
cleanlinks removes dangling symbolic links and empty directories.
gccmakedep creates dependencies in makefiles using **gcc -M**.
imake is a C preprocessor interface to the make utility.
lndir creates a shadow directory of symbolic links to another directory tree.
makedepend creates dependencies in makefiles.
makeg makes a debuggable executable.
mergelib merges one library into another.
mkdirhier makes a directory hierarchy.
mkhtmlindex generates index files for HTML man pages.
revpath generates a relative path that can be used to undo a changedirectory.
xmkmf creates a Makefile from an Imakefile.

libXau-1.0.3

Introduction to libXau

The libXau package contains a library implementing the X11 Authorization Protocol. This is useful for restricting client access to the display.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/lib/libXau-1.0.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/lib/libXau-1.0.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 75a9f2b85cd1617b5ca98c9095323853
- Download size: 224 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.0 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

libXau Dependencies

Required

Xorg Protocol Headers

Installation of libXau

Install libXau by running the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libXau.{so,a}
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

`libXau.{so,a}` is the library of X authority database routines.

libXdmcp-1.0.2

Introduction to libXdmcp

The libXdmcp package contains a library implementing the X Display Manager Control Protocol. This is useful for allowing clients to interact with the X Display Manager.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/lib/libXdmcp-1.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/lib/libXdmcp-1.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 10facf2bc7cbd5e5c1a698b8a210a582
- Download size: 216 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libXdmcp Dependencies

Required

Xorg Protocol Headers

Installation of libXdmcp

Install libXdmcp by running the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libXdmcp.{so,a}
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

`libXdmcp.{so,a}` is the X Display Manager Control Protocol library.

xcb-proto-1.0

Introduction to xcb-proto

The xcb-proto package provides the XML-XCB protocol descriptions that libxcb uses to generate the majority of its code and API.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xcb.freedesktop.org/dist/xcb-proto-1.0.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: d31407eaae7e52d100645217767a41aa
- Download size: 69.4 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 788 KB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

xcb-proto Dependencies

Optional (required to run the tests)

libxml2-2.6.31

Installation of xcb-proto

Install xcb-proto by running the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -dv -m755 ${XORG_PREFIX}/share/doc/xcb-proto-1.0 &&
install -v -m644 doc/* ${XORG_PREFIX}/share/doc/xcb-proto-1.0
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: `$XORG_PREFIX`/share/xcb

libxcb-1.0

Introduction to libxcb

The libxcb package provides an interface to the X Window System protocol, which replaces the current Xlib interface. Xlib can also use XCB as a transport layer, allowing software to make requests and receive responses with both.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xcb.freedesktop.org/dist/libxcb-1.0.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 0eb951fd0fa9542dbe4fc3530b81a3b6
- Download size: 410 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 15.0 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch to workaround X11 locking bugs in other applications: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libxcb-1.0-sloppy_lock-1.patch*

libxcb Dependencies

Required

libXau-1.0.3, libXdmcp-1.0.2, libpthread-stubs-0.1, xcb-proto-1.0, and libxslt-1.1.22

Optional

Doxygen-1.5.2 (to generate API documentation) and *Check* (to run tests)

Installation of libxcb

Install libxcb by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../libxcb-1.0-sloppy_lock-1.patch &&
./configure $XORG_CONFIG --docdir='${datadir}'/doc/libxcb-1.0 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--docdir='${datadir}'/doc/libxcb-1.0`: This parameter ensures the libxcb documentation is installed to a versioned directory.

`--without-doxygen`: This switch can be used to disable the API documentation if Doxygen-1.5.2 is installed.

Configuring libxcb

Configuration Information

The libxcb developers have decided to be strict in asserting locking bugs in X11 applications. This is different than the behavior of libX11 when used on its own, and it will cause some applications to crash when they previously did not. When an application has these types of bugs, it will crash with the following assertion:

```
xcb_xlib_lock: Assertion `!c->xlib.lock' failed.
```

The patch applied above to libxcb adds an environment variable, `LIBXCB_ALLOW_SLOPPY_LOCK`, to be set which will allow the locking bugs to not crash the application. It is a workaround that is known to be needed in a few cases. If it is found that these bugs affect an application in use, add the following to your system or personal profile:

```
export LIBXCB_ALLOW_SLOPPY_LOCK=1
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libxcb.{so,a} and libxcb-*.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	$XORG_PREFIX/include/xcb and $XORG_PREFIX/share/doc/libxcb-1.0

Short Descriptions

`libxcb.{so,a}` is an interface to the X Window System protocol.

Xorg Libraries

Introduction to Xorg Libraries

The Xorg libraries provide library routines that are used within all X Window applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/lib/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/lib/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/lib-7.2.md5*
- Download size: 11.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 186 MB
- Estimated build time: 6.6 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required download list: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/lib-7.2.wget*
- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libX11-1.1.2-badargs-1.patch*
- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libXfont-1.2.8-pcf_parser-1.patch*

Xorg Libraries Dependencies

Required

Ed-0.8, Fontconfig-2.4.2, pkg-config-0.22, Xorg Protocol Headers, and libXdmcp-1.0.2

Optional

libxcb-1.0

Downloading Xorg Libraries

To download the needed files using wget, use the following commands:

```
mkdir lib &&
cd lib &&
grep -v '^#' ../lib-7.2.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/lib/ &&
md5sum -c ../lib-7.2.md5
```

Installation of Xorg Libraries

Install the libraries by running the following commands for each package:

```
case $(basename "$PWD") in
libX11-1.1.2 )
    patch -Np1 -i ../../libX11-1.1.2-badargs-1.patch &&
    sed -i 's/_XGet/XGet/' modules/im/ximcp/imDefLkup.c
    ;;
libXfont-1.2.8 )
    patch -Np1 -i ../../libXfont-1.2.8-pcf_parser-1.patch &&
    sed -i 's/(ft_isdigit/(isdigit/' src/FreeType/fttools.c
    ;;
esac &&
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

These packages do not provide test suites.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ldconfig
```

Command Explanations

`--without-xcb`: By default, libX11 will use libxcb-1.0 for its transport layer. This parameter is necessary in the **./configure** command if libxcb-1.0 is not installed.

patch -Np1 -i ../libX11-1.1.2-badargs-1.patch: This patch fixes an error with argument ordering in one of the functions in libX11.

sed -i 's/_XGet/XGet/' modules/im/ximcp/imDefLkup.c: This command fixes a locking bug in libX11.

patch -Np1 -i ../libXfont-1.2.8-pcf_parser-1.patch: This patch fixes a *security vulnerability* in the PCF font parser in libXfont.

sed -i 's/(ft_isdigit/(isdigit/' src/FreeType/fttools.c: In newer versions of Freetype2, the ft_isdigit macro has been removed. This command replaces it with the compatible isdigit macro.

Configuration of Xorg Libraries

If you've chosen to install Xorg into `/usr`, then no further configuration is necessary and you can skip the rest of this section. If you've opted for an alternate prefix, you should create two symlinks to satisfy the expected environment of several packages. Execute the following commands as the root user:

```
ln -sv $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11 /usr/lib/X11 &&
ln -sv $XORG_PREFIX/include/X11 /usr/include/X11
```

Contents

Installed Programs: cxpm, makestrs, sxpm, xft-config

Installed Libraries: libAppleWM.{so,a}, libdmx.{so,a}, libfontenc.{so,a}, libFS.{so,a}, libICE.{so,a}, liboldX.{so,a}, libSM.{so,a}, libWindowsWM.{so,a}, libX11.{so,a}, libXaw6.{so,a}, libXaw7.{so,a}, libXaw8.{so,a}, libXaw.{so,a}, libXcomposite.{so,a}, libXcursor.{so,a}, libXdamage.{so,a}, libXevie.{so,a}, libXext.{so,a}, libXfixes.{so,a}, libXfontcache.{so,a}, libXfont.{so,a}, libXft.{so,a}, libXinerama.{so,a}, libXi.{so,a}, libxkbfile.{so,a}, libxkbui.{so,a}, libXmu.{so,a}, libXmuu.{so,a}, libXpm.{so,a}, libXprintAppUtil.{so,a}, libXprintUtil.{so,a}, libXp.{so,a}, libXrandr.{so,a}, libXrender.{so,a}, libXRes.{so,a}, libXss.{so,a}, libXTrap.{so,a}, libXt.{so,a}, libXtst.{so,a}, libXvMC.{so,a}, libXvMCW.{so,a}, libXv.{so,a}, libXxf86dga.{so,a}, libXxf86misc.{so,a}, and libXxf86vm.{so,a}

Short Descriptions

cxpm checks the format of an XPM file.

makestrs makes string table C source and header(s).

sxpm shows an XPM file and/or converts XPM 1 or 2 files to XPM 3.

xft-config reports Xft version, compiler, linker, and/or installation directory information.

`libAppleWM.{so,a}` is the Apple rootless window management extension.

`libdmx.{so,a}` is the X Window System DMX (Distributed Multihead X) extension library.

`libfontenc.{so,a}` is the X11 font encoding library.

`libFS.{so,a}` is the library interface to the X Font Server.

`libICE.{so,a}` is the X Inter Client Exchange Library.

`liboldX.{so,a}` is the interface library to X10 routines.

`libSM.{so,a}` is the X Session Management Library.

`libWindowsWM.{so,a}` is the WindowsWM Library based on AppleWM.

`libX11.{so,a}` is the Xlib Library.

`libXaw6.{so,a}` is the X Athena Widgets Library, version 6.

`libXaw7.{so,a}` is the X Athena Widgets Library, version 7.

`libXaw8.{so,a}` is the X Athena Widgets Library, version 8.

`libXaw.{so,a}` are symbolic links to the current X Athena Widgets Library, version 8.

`libXcomposite.{so,a}` is the X Composite Library.

`libXcursor.{so,a}` is the X Cursor management library.

`libXdamage.{so,a}` is the X Damage Library.

`libXevie.{so,a}` is the X Event Interception Extension (XEvIE) Library.

`libXext.{so,a}` is the Misc X Extension Library.

`libXfixes.{so,a}` a library to provide augmented versions of core protocol requests.

`libXfontcache.{so,a}` is the X-TrueType font cache extension client library.

`libXfont.{so,a}` is the X font library.

`libXft.{so,a}`	is the X FreeType interface library.
`libXinerama.{so,a}`	is the Xinerama Library.
`libXi.{so,a}`	is the X Input Extension Library.
`libxkbfile.{so,a}`	is the xkbfile Library.
`libxkbui.{so,a}`	is the xkbui Library.
`libXmu.{so,a}`	is the X interface library for miscellaneous utilities not part of the Xlib standard.
`libXmuu.{so,a}`	is the Mini Xmu Library.
`libXpm.{so,a}`	is the X Pixmap Library.
`libXprintAppUtil.{so,a}`	is the XprintAppUtil Library.
`libXprintUtil.{so,a}`	is the XprintUtil Library.
`libXp.{so,a}`	is the X Print Client Library.
`libXrandr.{so,a}`	is the X Resize, Rotate and Reflection extension library.
`libXrender.{so,a}`	is the X Render Library.
`libXRes.{so,a}`	is the X-Resource extension client library.
`libXss.{so,a}`	is the X11 Screen Saver extension client library.
`libXTrap.{so,a}`	is the X Trap Library.
`libXt.{so,a}`	is the X Toolkit Library.
`libXtst.{so,a}`	is the Xtst Library.
`libXvMC.{so,a}`	is the X-Video Motion Compensation Library.
`libXvMCW.{so,a}`	is the XvMC Wrapper including the Nonstandard VLD extension.
`libXv.{so,a}`	is the X Window System video extension library.
`libXxf86dga.{so,a}`	is the client library for the XFree86-DGA extension.
`libXxf86misc.{so,a}`	is the client library for the XFree86-Misc X extension.
`libXxf86vm.{so,a}`	is the client library for the XFree86-VidMode X extension.

Xbitmaps-1.0.1

Introduction to Xbitmaps

Xbitmaps provides static graphics needed by Xorg applications to draw screen elements.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/data/xbitmaps-1.0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/data/xbitmaps-1.0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b28a9840cde3c38d7c09716372fea257
- Download size: 54 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.7 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Xbitmaps Dependencies

Required

Xorg Utilities

Installation of Xbitmaps

First, configure the Xbitmaps package by running the following command:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now install as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: `$XORG_PREFIX`/include/X11/bitmaps

Xorg Applications

Introduction to Xorg Applications

The Xorg applications provide the expected applications available in previous X Window implementations.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/app/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/app/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/app-7.2.md5*
- Download size: 9.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 30.7 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.9 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required download list: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/app-7.2.wget*

Xorg Applications Dependencies

Required

xbitmaps-1.0.1, libpng-1.2.29, and Xorg Libraries

Recommended

MesaLib-6.5.2

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 (only used by XDM)

Downloading Xorg Applications

To download the needed files using wget, use the following commands:

```
mkdir app &&
cd app &&
grep -v '^#' ../app-7.2.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/app/ &&
md5sum -c ../app-7.2.md5
```

Installation of Xorg Applications

Install the applications by running the following commands for each package:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

These packages do not provide test suites.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: appres, atobm, bdftopcf, beforelight, bitmap, bmtoa, dga, editres, fontname.sh, fontprop.sh, fonttosfnt, fslsfonts, fstobdf, iceauth, ico, listres, mkcfm, mkfontdir, mkfontscale, oclock, rstart, rstartd, sessreg, setxkbmap, showfont, showrgb, smproxy, startx, twm, viewres, x11perf, x11perfcomp, xauth, xauth_switch_to_sun-des-1, xbiff, xcalc, xclipboard, xclock, xcmsdb, xconsole, xcursorgen, xcutsel, xdbedizzy, xditview, xdm, xdmshell, xdpr, xdpyinfo, xdriinfo, xedit, xev, xeyes, xfd, xfontsel, xfs, xfsinfo, xgamma, xgc, xhost, xinit, xkbbell, xkbcomp, xkbevd, xkbprint, xkbvleds, xkbwatch, xkill, xload, xlogo, xlsatoms, xlsclients, xlsfonts, xmag, xman, xmessage, xmh, xmodmap, xmore, xon, xphelloworld, xplsprinters, xpr, xprehashprinterlist, xprop, xpsimplehelloworld, xpxthelloworld, xrandr, xrdb, xrefresh, xset, xsetmode, xsetpointer, xsetroot, xsm, xstdcmap, xtrapchar, xtrapin, xtrapinfo, xtrapout, xtrapproto, xtrapreset, xtrapstats, xvidtune, xvinfo, xwd, xwininfo, and xwud

Short Descriptions

appres lists the X application resource database.

atobm is a bitmap converter utility for the X Window System.

bdftopcf converts an X font from Bitmap Distribution Format to Portable Compiled Format.

beforelight is a screensaver.

bitmap is a bitmap editor utility for the X Window System.

bmtoa is a bitmap converter utility for the X Window System.

dga is a test program for the XFree86-DGA extension.

editres is a dynamic resource editor for X Toolkit applications.

fontname.sh is a script used to generate the FONT properties.

fontprop.sh is a script used to generate the various XLFD font properties given an XLFD-style font name.

fonttosfnt wraps a bitmap font in a sfnt (TrueType) wrapper.

fslsfonts lists fonts served by X font server.

fstobdf generates a BDF font from X font server.

iceauth is the ICE authority file utility.

ico animates an icosahedron or other polyhedron.

listres lists resources in widgets.

mkcfm creates summaries of font metric files in CID font directories.

mkfontdir creates an index of X font files in a directory.

mkfontscale creates an index of scalable font files for X.

oclock is a round X clock.

rstart	is a sample implementation of a Remote Start client.
rstartd	is a sample implementation of a Remote Start rsh helper.
sessreg	manages utmp/wtmp entries for non-init clients.
setxkbmap	sets the keyboard using the X Keyboard Extension.
showfont	is a font dumper for X font server.
showrgb	uncompiles an rgb color-name database.
smproxy	is the Session Manager Proxy.
startx	initializes an X session.
twm	is the Tab Window Manager for the X Window System.
viewres	is a graphical class browser for Xt.
x11perf	is an X11 server performance test program.
x11perfcomp	is an X11 server performance comparison program.
xauth	is the X authority file utility.
xauth_switch_to_sun-des-1	switches the current Xserver's authentification to SUN-DES-1.
xbiff	is a mailbox flag for X.
xcalc	is a scientific calculator for X.
xclipboard	is an X clipboard client.
xclock	is an analog/digital clock for X.
xcmsdb	is the Device Color Characterization utility for the X Color Management System.
xconsole	monitors system console messages with X.
xcursorgen	creates an X cursor file from a collection of PNG images.
xcutsel	interchanges between cut buffer and selection.
xdbedizzy	is a demo of DBE creating a double buffered spinning scene.
xditview	displays ditroff output.
xdm	is the X Display Manager with support for XDMCP and a host chooser.
xdmshell	is a simple program for running xdm from login.
xdpr	dumps an X window directly to a printer.
xdpyinfo	is a display information utility for X.
xdriinfo	queries configuration information of DRI drivers.
xedit	is a simple text editor for X.
xev	prints contents of X events.
xeyes	is a a follow the mouse X demo.
xfd	displays all the characters in an X font.
xfontsel	provides point and click selection of X11 font names.
xfs	is the X font server.

xfsinfo	is the X font server information utility.
xgamma	alters a monitor's gamma correction through the X server.
xgc	is an X graphics demo.
xhost	is a server access control program for X.
xinit	is the X Window System initializer.
xkbbell	is an XKB utility program that raises a bell event.
xkbcomp	compiles an XKB keyboard description.
xkbevd	is the XKB event daemon.
xkbprint	prints an XKB keyboard description.
xkbvleds	shows the XKB status of keyboard LEDs.
xkbwatch	monitors modifier keys and LEDs.
xkill	kills a client by its X resource.
xload	is a system load average display for X.
xlogo	is the X Window System logo.
xlsatoms	lists interned atoms defined on the server.
xlsclients	lists client applications running on a display.
xlsfonts	is a server font list displayer for X.
xmag	magnifies parts of the screen.
xman	is a manual page display program for the X Window System.
xmessage	displays a message or query in a window.
xmh	sends and reads mail with an X interface to MH.
xmodmap	is a utility for modifying keymaps and pointer button mappings in X.
xmore	is a plain text display program for the X Window System.
xon	starts an X program on a remote machine.
xphelloworld	sends a test page to an Xprint printer.
xplsprinters	shows a list of Xprint printers and their attributes.
xpr	prints an X window dump.
xprehashprinterlist	recomputes the list of available printers.
xprop	is a property displayer for X.
xpsimplehelloworld	is a "Hello World"-like Xprint sample utility based on plain X11 rendering calls.
xpxthelloworld	is a "Hello World"-like Xprint sample utility based on the Xt toolkit.
xrandr	is a primitive command line interface to RandR extension.
xrdb	is the X server resource database utility.
xrefresh	refreshes all or part of an X screen.
xset	is the user preference utility for X.

xsetmode	sets the mode for an X Input device.
xsetpointer	sets an X Input device as the main pointer.
xsetroot	is the root window parameter setting utility for X.
xsm	is the X Session Manager.
xstdcmap	is the X standard colormap utility.
xtrapchar	parses ANSI character sequences to synthesize input events to X Window servers using the XTrap server extension.
xtrapin	tests the input transport to the XTrap server extension.
xtrapinfo	displays general XTrap configuration information.
xtrapout	tests the output transport from the XTrap extension to the XTrap client library.
xtrapproto	tests the XTrap protocol between a client and server.
xtrapreset	queries the XTrap extension.
xtrapstats	configures XTrap to collect usage statistics on all core input events and requests.
xvidtune	is the video mode tuner for Xorg.
xvinfo	prints out X-Video extension adaptor information.
xwd	dumps an image of an X window.
xwininfo	is a window information utility for X.
xwud	is an image displayer for X.

xcursor-themes-1.0.1

Introduction to xcursor-themes

The xcursor-themes package contains the redglass and whiteglass animated cursor themes.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/data/xcursor-themes-1.0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/lib/xcursor-themes-1.0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 014bad415e64c49994679cdb71a97e37
- Download size: 2.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 19.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

xcursor-themes Dependencies

Required

Xorg Applications

Installation of xcursor-themes

Install xcursor-themes by running the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: None
Installed Directories: $XORG_PREFIX/icons

Xorg Fonts

Introduction to Xorg Fonts

The Xorg font packages provide needed fonts to the Xorg applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/font/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/font/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/font-7.2.md5*
- Download size: 13.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 100 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.0 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required download list: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/font-7.2.wget*

Required

Xorg Applications and xcursor-themes-1.0.1

Downloading Xorg Fonts

To download the needed files using wget, use the following commands:

```
mkdir font &&
cd font &&
grep -v '^#' ../font-7.2.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/font/ &&
md5sum -c ../font-7.2.md5
```

Installation of Xorg Fonts

Run the following commands for each package:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG &&
make
```

These packages do not provide test suites.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

When all of the fonts have been installed, the system must be configured so that Fontconfig can find the TrueType fonts since they are outside of the default search path of `/usr/share/fonts`. Make symlinks to the Xorg TrueType font directories by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/fonts &&
ln -svn $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11/fonts/OTF /usr/share/fonts/X11-OTF &&
ln -svn $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11/fonts/TTF /usr/share/fonts/X11-TTF
```

Contents

Installed Programs: bdftruncate and ucs2any
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: $XORG_PREFIX/fonts and /usr/share/fonts/X11-{TTF,OTF}

Short Descriptions

bdftruncate generates a truncated BDF font from an ISO 10646-1-encoded BDF font.

ucs2any generates BDF fonts containing subsets of ISO 10646-1 codepoints.

XKeyboardConfig-1.2

Introduction to XKeyboardConfig

The XKeyboardConfig package contains the keyboard configuration database for the X Window System.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xlibs.freedesktop.org/xkbdesc/xkeyboard-config-1.2.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 667c582a54d5715d24110c20e8c4be38
- Download size: 573 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

XKeyboardConfig Dependencies

Required

Xorg Applications and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of XKeyboardConfig

Install XKeyboardConfig by running the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG --with-xkb-rules-symlink=xorg &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -dv -m755 $XORG_PREFIX/share/doc/xkeyboard-config-1.2 &&
install -v -m644 docs/{README,HOWTO}* \
    $XORG_PREFIX/share/doc/xkeyboard-config-1.2
```

Command Explanations

`--with-xkb-rules-symlink=xorg`: By default, the XKB rules installed are named "base". This creates symlinks named "xorg" to those rules, which is the default name used by Xorg.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	`$XORG_PREFIX`/share/X11/xkb, `$XORG_PREFIX`/share/doc/xkeyboard-config-1.2

Luit-1.0.2

Introduction to Luit

Luit provides a filter for displaying and converting UTF-8 characters in text console windows.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/app/luit-1.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/app/luit-1.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: aacda46598ce3af8ca16e2a8132db1b2
- Download size: 97 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Luit Dependencies

Required

Xorg Fonts

Installation of Luit

Install luit with the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG \
    --with-localealiasfile=$XORG_PREFIX/share/X11/locale/locale.alias &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-localealiasfile=$XORG_PREFIX/share/X11/locale/locale.alias`: The default location luit expects the `locale.alias` file is different than the location libX11 installs it to.

Contents

Installed Program: luit
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Description

luit provides locale and ISO 2022 support for Unicode terminals.

Xorg-Server-1.2.0

Introduction to Xorg-Server

The Xorg Server is the core of the X Window system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/xserver/xorg-server-1.2.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/xserver/xorg-server-1.2.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ea291c89e68832d570d9d5e007218bd6
- Download size: 5.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 425 MB
- Estimated build time: 4.9 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/xorg-server-1.2.0-security-1.patch*

Xorg Server Dependencies

Required

Xorg Fonts and xkeyboard-config-1.2

Optional

MesaLib-6.5.2

Installation of Xorg Server

Note

If you intend to build with Mesa, you must have the Mesa source directory available when building the Xorg-server.

Multiple *security vulnerabilities* have been identified in the xorg-server package. Apply a patch to fix these vulnerabilities with the following command:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../xorg-server-1.2.0-security-1.patch
```

Install the server by running the following commands:

```
./configure $XORG_CONFIG \
    --with-mesa-source=</absolute/path/to>/Mesa-6.5.2 \
    --with-module-dir=$XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11/modules \
    --with-dri-driver-path=$XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11/modules/dri \
    --with-xkb-output=/var/lib/xkb \
    --enable-install-setuid &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-mesa-source=...`: This switch directs the build system to the location of the Mesa source directory. This must be an absolute path. If you wish to build without Mesa, omit this switch.

`--with-module-dir=...`: This parameter sets the destination for the installed modules.

`--with-dri-driver-path=...`: This is the location of the Mesa DRI drivers.

`--enable-install-setuid`: The Xorg binary must run as the root user. This switch ensures that the binary is installed setuid when **make** is run by an unprivileged user.

`--disable-glx`: Disable building of the GLX extension. This parameter is required if building without Mesa.

`--disable-dri`: Disable building of the DRI extension. This parameter is required if building without Mesa.

`--disable-xprint`: Disable building of the Xprint extension and server. This parameter is required if building without Mesa.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cvt, dmxaddinput, dmxaddscreen, dmxreconfig, dmxresize, dmxrminput, dmxrmscreen, dmxtodmx, dmxwininfo, getconfig, getconfig.pl, gtf, inb, inl, inw, ioport, outb, outl, outw, pcitweak, scanpci, vdltodmx, X, Xdmx, xdmx, xdmxconfig, Xnest, Xorg, xorgcfg, xorgconfig and Xvfb
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/var/lib/xkb and the following subdirectories of `$XORG_PREFIX`/: include/xorg, include/X11/pixmaps, lib/X11/{getconfig,modules} and lib/xserver

Short Descriptions

cvt	calculates VESA CVT mode lines.
dmxaddinput	adds an input device to an Xdmx server.
dmxaddscreen	adds a screen to an Xdmx server.
dmxreconfig	refreshes the screen attributes in an Xdmx server.
dmxresize	resizes an Xdmx desktop.
dmxrminput	removes an input device from an Xdmx server.
dmxrmscreen	removes a screen from an Xdmx server.
dmxtodmx	is a dmx configuration file parser and printer.
dmxwininfo	queries a window's attributes on an Xdmx server.
getconfig	a wrapper script around getconfig.pl.
getconfig.pl	gets configuration information for the Xorg server.
gtf	calculates VESA GTF mode lines.
inb	is a symbolic link to ioport.

inl	is a symbolic link to ioport.
inw	is a symbolic link to ioport.
ioport	sets input and output ports for the X server.
outb	is a symbolic link to ioport.
outl	is a symbolic link to ioport.
outw	is a symbolic link to ioport.
pcitweak	reads or writes the PCI config space.
scanpci	scans and probes the PCI buses.
vdltodmx	is a VDL format dmx configuration file parser and printer.
X	is a symbolic link to Xorg.
Xdmx	is the Distributed Multi-head X server.
xdmx	prints information about the Xdmx server.
xdmxconfig	is a graphical configuration tool for Xdmx configuration files.
Xnest	is a nested X server.
Xorg	is the X11R7 X Server.
xorgcfg	is a graphical configuration tool for Xorg.
xorgconfig	generates an xorg.conf file.
Xvfb	is the virtual framebuffer X server for X Version 11.

Xorg Drivers

Introduction to Xorg Drivers

The Xorg drivers provide the means for the xserver to take advantage of installed hardware.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/driver/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.x.org/pub/individual/driver/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/driver-7.2.md5*
- Download size: 16.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 60.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 6.9 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required download list: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/xorg/driver-7.2.wget*

Xorg Drivers Dependencies

Required

Xorg-Server-1.2.0

Optional

MesaLib-6.5.2

Downloading Xorg Drivers

To download the needed files using wget, use the following commands:

```
mkdir driver &&
cd driver &&
grep -v '^#' ../driver-7.2.wget | wget -i- -c \
    -B http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/driver/ &&
md5sum -c ../driver-7.2.md5
```

Installation of Xorg Drivers

Warning

It is very important not to build display drivers that cannot be used with your hardware. For instance, do not build Sun drivers for an x86 PC as the Sun drivers will expect to see SPARC symbols exported from the kernel. Failure to follow this warning will result in a display lockup, which requires a hard reboot, when configuring Xorg for the first time. For this reason, these drivers have been commented out in the wget file.

Install the drivers by running the following commands for each package:

```
case $(basename "$PWD") in
xf86-input-evdev-[0-9]* | xf86-video-ati-[0-9]* | \
xf86-video-fbdev-[0-9]* | xf86-video-glint-[0-9]* | \
xf86-video-newport-[0-9]* )
    sed -i -e "s/\xc3\xb8/\\\\[\/o]/" \
           -e "s/\xc3\xa4/\\\\[:a]/" \
           -e "s/\xc3\x9c/\\\\[:U]/" man/*.man
    ;;
esac &&
./configure $XORG_CONFIG \
    --with-xorg-module-dir=$XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11/modules &&
make
```

These packages do not provide test suites.

Now as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i ... man/*.man: A few packages install man pages in UTF-8 encoding, and they will not display correctly using Man-DB. This command converts the offending characters to ones that **man** can properly display.

`--with-xorg-module-dir=...`: This switch ensures that the drivers are installed into the correct directory.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libI810XvMC.so, libviaXvMC.so, and libviaXvMCPro.so
Installed Directories:	`$XORG_PREFIX`/lib/X11/modules/{drivers,input}

Short Descriptions

`libI810XvMC.so`	is the X-Video Motion Compensation client library for the Intel i810 video driver.
`libviaXvMC.so`	is the X-Video Motion Compensation client library for the VIA Unichrome video driver.
`libviaXvMCPro.so`	is the X-Video Motion Compensation client library for the VIA Unichrome Pro video driver.

X Window System Components

Creating an X11R6 Compatibility Symlink

Until recently (relatively speaking) almost every X Window installation you performed or came across was installed in the `/usr/X11R6` directory. That was the standard for years. Developers picked up on this and wrote their package installation scripts looking for X in the standard location. Things have changed and the trend is to now install X in `/usr`. Some people want to install it in a custom location.

Many package developers have not caught up to the change and their packages are still trying to find X in `/usr/X11R6` and subsequently fail when you try to build the package. Though for most packages it is not difficult to 'hack' the installation script to fix the problem, that is not the long term solution to the problem. Upstream developers need to modernize their installation scripts and eliminate the problem altogether.

Until then, you can create a symbolic link to satisfy the `/usr/X11R6` requirement so that you won't be inconvenienced with a package build failure due to this known issue. If you wish to create the symlink, issue the following command as the `root` user (ensure you modify *<$XORG_PREFIX>* appropriately):

```
ln -vsf <$XORG_PREFIX> /usr/X11R6
```

Configuring The X Window System

If you've installed the X Window System in any prefix other than `/usr`, become the `root` user and update the library linker's cache by adding `/usr/X11R6/lib` to `/etc/ld.so.conf` and running **ldconfig**.

Additionally, while still the `root` user, ensure `/usr/X11R6/bin` and `/usr/X11R6/lib/pkgconfig` are added to the `PATH` and `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` environment variables, respectively. Instructions for doing this are described in the section The Bash Shell Startup Files.

Ensure you replace `/usr/X11R6` with `$XORG_PREFIX` in the previous two paragraphs if you did not create the compatibility symlink in the previous step.

As the `root` user create a basic X Window System configuration file with the following command:

```
cd ~ &&
Xorg -configure
```

The screen will go black and you may hear some clicking of the monitor. This command will create a file in your home directory, `xorg.conf.new` for Xorg, or `XF86Config.new` for XFree86.

Edit the newly created configuration file to suit your system. The details of the files are located in the `xorg.conf.5x` man page. Some things you may want to do are:

- Section "Files". Change the order of the font paths searched. You may want to put 100dpi fonts ahead of 75dpi fonts if your system normally comes up closer to 100 dots per inch. You may want to remove some font directories completely.
- Section "Module". If you are going to install NVIDIA drivers, remove the "dri" line.
- Sections "InputDevice". You may want to change the keyboard autorepeat rate by adding `Option "Autorepeat" "250 30"`.
- Section "Monitor". Specify the `VertRefresh` and `HorizSync` values if the system does not automatically detect the monitor and its values.
- Section "Device". You may want to set some of the options available for your selected video driver. A description of the driver parameters is in the man page for your driver.
- Section "Screen". Add a DefaultDepth statement such as: `DefaultDepth 24`. In the SubSection for your default depth, add a modes line such as: `Modes "1600x1200" "1280x1024" "1024x768"`. The first mode listed will normally be the starting resolution.

Test the system with the following command:

```
X -config ~/xorg.conf.new
```

You will only get a gray background with an X-shaped mouse cursor, but it confirms the system is working. Exit with **Control**+**Alt**+**Backspace**. If the system does not work, take a look at `/var/log/Xorg.0.log` to see what went wrong.

As the `root` user, create the configuration directory and move the configuration file to the new directory:

```
install -v -m644 -D ~/xorg.conf.new /etc/X11/xorg.conf
```

As the `root` user, create `.xinitrc`:

```
cat > ~/.xinitrc << "EOF"
# Begin .xinitrc file
xterm  -g 80x40+0+0   &
xclock -g 100x100-0+0 &
twm
EOF
```

This provides an initial screen with a small clock that is managed by a simple window manager, Tab Window Manager. For details of **twm**, see the man page.

Note

Both the default, and the BLFS configuration for Xorg include xterm. Xorg's modular distribution no longer includes xterm, and as a result, the **startx** command will fail if you have not installed xterm-231 when using the modular X Window System. You can remove the xterm line in the above config file to test the xserver, or install one of the other terminal emulators and make appropriate changes.

When needed, the X Window System creates the directory `/tmp/.ICE-unix` if it does not exist. If this directory is not owned by `root`, the X Window System delays startup by a few seconds and also appends a warning to the logfile. This also affects startup of other applications. To improve performance, it is advisable to manually create the directory before the X Window System uses it. Add the file creation to `/etc/sysconfig/createfiles` that is sourced by the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/cleanfs` startup script.

```
cat >> /etc/sysconfig/createfiles << "EOF"
/tmp/.ICE-unix dir 1777 root root
EOF
```

Start X with:

```
startx
```

and a basic functional X Window System should be displayed.

Checking Direct Rendering Infrastructure (DRI) Installation

DRI is a framework for allowing software to access graphics hardware in a safe and efficient manner. It is installed in X by default if you have a supported video card. To enable direct rendering using the OpenGL implementation from MesaLib-6.5.2 (built separately with Xorg-7.2), the "glx" and "dri" modules must be loaded. Additionally, the created device nodes in `/dev/dri` must have proper permissions for your users. A sample `xorg.conf` file might look like this:

```
Section "Module"
    ...
    Load  "glx"
    Load  "dri"
    ...
EndSection
...
Section "DRI"
    Group "video"
    Mode  0660
EndSection
```

The DRI devices are not accessible for any user except `root` and members of the `video` group. Add any users that might use X to that group:

```
usermod -a -G video <username>
```

Note

DRI configuration may differ if you are using alternate drivers, such as those from *NVIDIA* or *ATI*.

To check if DRI is installed properly, check the log file `/var/log/Xorg.0.log` for statements like:

```
(II) R128(0): Direct rendering enabled
```

If you elected to install the Mesa-Demos package when installing MesaLib-6.5.2, from an **xterm**, run **glxinfo** and look for the phrase:

```
direct rendering: Yes
```

If direct rendering is not enabled, you can add verbosity by running **LIBGL_DEBUG=verbose glxinfo**. This will show the drivers, device nodes and files used by the DRI system.

Again, if you have added the Mesa-Demos package, you can also run the test program **glxgears**. This program brings up a window with three gears turning. The **xterm** will display how many frames were drawn every five seconds, so this is a reasonable benchmark. The window is scalable, and the frames drawn per second is highly dependent on the size of the window.

For troubleshooting problems, check the DRI Users Guide at *http://dri.sourceforge.net/doc/DRIuserguide.html*.

Setting up Fonts

There are two font systems in the X Window System. The first is the core X font protocol, and the second is Xft. Toolkits that use the core X font protocol include Xt, Xaw, Motif clones and GTK+-1.2. Toolkits that use Xft include GTK+-2 and Qt and use Fontconfig for control. Both font systems should be configured for proper font coverage in the X Window System.

Core X Font Protocol

The core X font protocol finds fonts from the server configuration file (`xorg.conf`). If no font paths exist in the configuration file, the server will fall back to an internal hard-coded path. Assuming the prefix for your X installation is `/usr/X11R6`, the core fonts will reside in subdirectories of `/usr/X11R6/lib/X11/fonts`. For each directory in the path, the server reads three files:

- `fonts.dir` - maps font files to font names; updated with **mkfontdir**
- `fonts.alias` - defines aliases (such as "9x18") for existing fonts
- `fonts.scale` - lists scalable fonts; updated with **mkfontscale**

The core X fonts protocol uses names such as `-misc-fixed-medium-r-normal--13-120-75-75-c-80-iso8859-1`. These fonts are rendered by the X server without antialiasing. The server itself uses the "cursor" font for painting the mouse cursor, and the protocol specification requires the font "fixed" to be available.

Scalable fonts, such as Type1 and TrueType, are read from `fonts.scale` files by the server. The core X font system uses the "freetype" module for non-antialiased rendering of these fonts. Ensure that the "freetype" module is loaded in the `xorg.conf` file by adding it to the "Module" section:

```
Section "Module"
    ...
    Load  "freetype"
    ...
EndSection
```

The character set used is part of the font name, e.g. "-iso8859-1". It is important that applications which support a non-English interface specify the character set correctly so that the proper glyphs are used. This can be controlled through the X resources, which will be described later.

In some cases, applications rely upon the fonts named "fixed" or something like "9x18". In these cases, it is important that the `fonts.alias` file specifies the correct character set. Users of ISO-8859-*X* encodings where *X* != 1 should modify the `/usr/lib/X11/fonts/misc/fonts.alias` file by replacing the "iso8859-1" string with the proper encoding name. This is accomplished by running the following command as the `root` user, substituting the proper value for <*X*>:

```
sed -i 's,iso8859-1\( \|$\),iso8859-<X>\1,g' \
    /usr/lib/X11/fonts/{75dpi,100dpi,misc}/fonts.alias
```

Users of Cyrillic fonts have properly defined aliases in `/usr/lib/X11/fonts/cyrillic/fonts.alias`. However, this file will not be used unless the `/usr/lib/X11/fonts/cyrillic` directory is first in the font search path. Otherwise, the `/usr/lib/X11/fonts/misc/fonts.alias` file will be used.

Xft Font Protocol

Xft provides antialiased font rendering through Freetype, and fonts are controlled from the client side using Fontconfig. The default search path is `/usr/share/fonts` and `~/.fonts`. Fontconfig searches directories in its path recursively and maintains a cache of the font characteristics in `fonts.cache-1` files in each directory. If the cache appears to be out of date, it is ignored, and information is (slowly) fetched from the fonts themselves. This cache can be regenerated using the **fc-cache** command at any time. You can see the list of fonts known by Fontconfig by running the command **fc-list**.

The X fonts were not installed in a location known to Fontconfig. This prevents Fontconfig from using the poorly rendered Type 1 fonts or the non-scalable bitmapped fonts. Symlinks were created from the `OTF` and `TTF` X font directories to `/usr/share/fonts/X11-{OTF,TTF}`. This allows Fontconfig to use the OpenType and TrueType fonts provided by X (which are scalable and of higher quality).

Fontconfig uses names such as "Monospace 12" to define fonts. Applications generally use generic font names such as "Monospace", "Sans" and "Serif". Fontconfig resolves these names to a font that has all characters that cover the orthography of the language indicated by the locale settings. Knowledge of these font names is included in `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf`. Fonts that are not listed in this file are still usable by Fontconfig, but they will not be accessible by the generic family names.

Standard scalable fonts that come with X provide very poor Unicode coverage. You may notice in applications that use Xft that some characters appear as a box with four binary digits inside. In this case, a font set with the available glyphs has not been found. Other times, applications that don't use other font families by default and don't accept substitutions from Fontconfig will display blank lines when the default font doesn't cover the orthography of the user's language. This happens, e.g., with Fluxbox in the ru_RU.KOI8-R locale.

In order to provide greater Unicode coverage, it is recommended that you install these fonts:

- *DejaVu fonts* - These fonts are replacements for the Bitstream Vera fonts and provide Latin-based scripts with accents and Cyrillic glyphs. The DejaVu fonts by are not aliased to the generic family names by default, so `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf` will have to be edited for it to be recognized by the generic names such as "Sans". This will be described below.
- *FreeFont* - This set of fonts covers nearly every non-CJK character, but is not visually pleasing. Fontconfig will use it as a last resort to substitute generic font family names.
- *Microsoft Core fonts* - These fonts provide slightly worse Unicode coverage than FreeFont, but are better hinted. Be sure to read the license before using them. These fonts are listed in the `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf` aliases by default.
- *Firefly New Sung font* - This font provides Chinese coverage. This font is not listed in the `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf` aliases by default.
- *Arphic fonts* - A similar set of Chinese fonts to the Firefly New Sung font. These fonts are listed in the `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf` aliases by default.
- *Kochi fonts* - These provide Japanese characters, and they are listed in the aliases in `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf` by default.
- *Baekmuk fonts* - These fonts provide Korean coverage, and they are listed in the aliases in `/etc/fonts/fonts.conf` by default.

The list above will not provide complete Unicode coverage. For more information, please visit the *Unicode Font Guide*.

As an example, consider the installation of the DejaVu fonts. From the unpacked source directory, run the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/fonts/dejavu &&
install -v -m644 *.ttf /usr/share/fonts/dejavu &&
fc-cache -v /usr/share/fonts/dejavu
```

Setting up Keyboards

In this version of X, non-Latin keyboard layouts do not include Latin configurations as was previous practice. To set up a keyboard for Latin and non-Latin input, change the XkbLayout keyboard driver option in the InputDevice section of the `xorg.conf` file. For example:

```
Section "InputDevice"
    Identifier          "Keyboard0"
    Driver              "kbd"
    Option "XkbModel"   "pc105"
    Option "XkbLayout"  "en_US,ru"
    Option "XkbOptions" "grp:switch,grp:alt_shift_toggle,grp_led:scroll"
EndSection
```

In this example, you can use the **Alt+Shift** combination to switch between keyboard layouts and use the Scroll Lock LED to indicate when the second layout is active.

Setting up XDM

xdm provides a graphical logon capability and is normally set up in `/etc/inittab`. Most of the information you need to customize **xdm** is found in its man page. To execute **xdm** during bootup, change the initdefault level to 5 and add the following lines to `/etc/inittab`:

```
# Run xdm as a separate service
x:5:respawn:/usr/X11R6/bin/xdm -nodaemon
```

If Linux-PAM is installed on your system, you should create a PAM entry for **xdm** by duplicating the **login** entry using the following command:

```
cp -v /etc/pam.d/login /etc/pam.d/xdm
```

Using X Resources

There are many options that can be set in X and X clients via resources. Typically resources are set in the `~/.Xresources` file.

The layout of the `~/.Xresources` file consists of a list of specifications in the form of

```
object.subobject[.subobject...].attribute: value
```

Components of a resource specification are linked together by either *tight*, represented by a dot (.), or *loose*, represented by an asterisk (*), bindings. A tight binding indicates that the components on either side of the dot must be directly next to each other as defined in a specific implementation. An asterisk is a wildcard character that means that any number of levels in a defined hierarchy can be between the components. For example, X offers two special cursors: redglass and whiteglass. To use one of these resources, you need to add the following line:

```
Xcursor.theme: whiteglass
```

However, you can specify the background for all clients with:

```
*background: blue
```

More specific resource variables will override less specific names.

Resource definitions can be found in the man pages for each respective client.

In order to load your resources, the **xrdb** program must be called with the appropriate parameters. Typically, the first time resources are loaded, you use:

```
xrdb -load <filename>
```

To add resources to X's database in memory, use:

```
xrdb -merge <filename>
```

The **xrdb** instruction is usually placed in `~/.xinitrc` or `~/.xsession`. To get more information, see the **xrdb** man page.

Additional X Window System Configuration

Below you will find information on fine tuning the components of the X Window System. The documentation links are specifically for XFree86, which has been retired in BLFS, however, the information contained in those documents usually pertains to Xorg as well. Detailed descriptions are also located in the `xorg.conf` man page.

Setting up X Input Devices

Keyboards

The following external links provide a good introduction to setting up various keyboards.

The XKB Configuration Guide

How to further enhance XKB configuration

Mice

Multi-button mice can be used to their full potential by mapping the additional buttons to X button events. Wheel mice are a common example. The ordinary ones contain two buttons, and a scroll wheel that doubles as a third button. As far as X is concerned, there are 5 buttons as it counts the 'scroll up' and 'scroll down' functions (internally they are buttons). Here is an example 'InputDevice' section for a typical PS/2 wheel mouse:

```
Section "InputDevice"
  Identifier  "Mouse 0"
  Driver      "mouse"
  Option      "Device"        "/dev/input/mice"
  Option      "Protocol"      "IMPS/2"
  Option      "ZAxisMapping"  "4 5"
  Option      "Buttons"       "5"
EndSection
```

Button assignments differ for every mouse type. On more exotic mice, you may find that the rocker wheel buttons are 6 and 7. Simply add those values to the `ZAxisMapping` option, and set the `Buttons` option appropriately to enable side to side scrolling. Additional information on button assignment can be found in the following XFree86 document:

Mouse Support in XFree86

Fine Tuning Display Settings

The 'Monitor' Section

One or more monitor sections specify the characteristics of your monitor(s). Usually, the setup program can probe your monitor and setup a monitor properly, however, this does not always work. The most common entries that need to be updated are `HorizSync` and `VertRefresh`. If the configuration program does not set these properly, you will notice a resolution much lower than desired. The default `HorizSync` setting is 28-33kHz which is very conservative. The default `VertRefresh` is 43-72Hz. Consult your monitor documentation or search online for the proper settings for your monitor.

It is also possible to control many detailed timing characteristics of a monitor with a `Modeline` setting. Most users will not need to do this, but details are in the man page referenced above.

Warning

Incorrect monitor settings can destroy your monitor or even set it on fire! For most newer monitors, the result of overly aggressive settings is a blank screen, but older monitors do not all have built in safeguards.

Other items that may be of interest in this section is the `DPMS` and associated `StandbyTime`, `SuspendTime`, and `OffTime` options. These parameters control the energy saving features of your monitor. They may also be controlled at runtime with the **xset** command or via a graphical interface such as KDE's Control Center.

A typical monitor section will normally look like:

```
Section "Monitor"
    DisplaySize   400   300 # mm
    Identifier   "Monitor0"
    VendorName   "VSC"
    ModelName    "G810-2"
    HorizSync     30.0 - 92.0
    VertRefresh   50.0 - 180.0
    Option       "DPMS"
    Option       "StandbyTime" "10"
    Option       "SuspendTime" "20"
    Option       "OffTime"     "30"
EndSection
```

The 'Device' Section

This section basically controls your video card. The key entry is the `Driver` setting. This can be a driver from the X distribution you are using, from the kernel source, or a proprietary driver for devices such as a Nvidia graphics adaptor. The driver often is a kernel module or built into the kernel itself, but there are also separate non-kernel components usually found in the `/usr/X11R6/lib/modules/drivers/` directory. These were either built with the X server or installed via external (i.e., proprietary) programs.

There are many options for device drivers and most are specific to the driver being used. Documentation for many drivers can be found at the *XFree86 Driver Manual Pages*.

A typical Device section will look like:

```
Section "Device"
    Identifier  "Videocard0"
    Driver      "radeon"
    VendorName  "Videocard vendor"
    BoardName   "ATI Radeon 7500"
EndSection
```

Display Layouts

Within the X Window System configuration file there may be multiple layout sections like:

```
Section "ServerLayout"
    Identifier     "X.org Configured"
    Screen      0  "Screen0" 0 0
    InputDevice    "Mouse0" "CorePointer"
    InputDevice    "Keyboard0" "CoreKeyboard"
EndSection
```

The default layout is the first, but if you have special needs, you can create others with different configurations. The `Identifier` line in each section is the key. Different layouts can be created using different Screen and InputDevice sections.

After the configuration file is updated, an alternate configuration can be specified on the **startx** line. For instance, to start X with an alternate layout with an Identifier of "layout2", use the following command line:

```
startx -- -layout layout2
```

Chapter 24. X Libraries

This chapter does not contain libraries that are required to run X. It does contain libraries that enhance X. In some cases the enhancement is as simple as font support. In others it is as complex as libraries that sit between X and applications that run on X whose purpose is to standardize the look and feel and inter-process communications for different applications. They also assist programmers by supplying common elements.

Qt-3.3.8b

Introduction to Qt

The Qt package contains a C++ GUI library. This is useful for creating graphical applications or executing graphical applications that are dynamically linked to the Qt library. One of the major users of Qt is KDE.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.silug.org/mirrors/ftp.trolltech.com/qt/source/qt-x11-free-3.3.8b.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.trolltech.com/qt/source/qt-x11-free-3.3.8b.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 9f05b4125cfe477cc52c9742c3c09009
- Download size: 16.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 261 MB
- Estimated build time: 11 SBU (full), 7.5 SBU (sub-tools)

Qt Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and libmng-1.0.9

Note: if for whatever reason you do not have the recommended libraries installed on your system, you must remove the corresponding *-system-<library>* and *-plugin-imgfmt-<library>* parameters from the **configure** commands shown in the instructions below.

Optional

NAS-1.9, CUPS-1.2.12, MySQL-5.0.41, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, unixODBC-2.2.12, *SQLite* and *Firebird*

Installation of Qt

This package (unfortunately) expects the X Window system to be installed in the `/usr/X11R6` directory. If you're using a recent version of Xorg and it is installed in any other location, ensure you have followed the instructions in the Creating an X11R6 Compatibility Symlink section.

There are several ways to install a complicated package such as Qt. The files are not completely position independent. Installation procedures execute the program **pkg-config** to determine the location of package executables, libraries, headers, and other files. For Qt, **pkg-config** will look for the file `lib/pkgconfig/qt-mt.pc` which must be modified if relocating the package. This file is set up correctly by the build process.

The default installation places the files in `/usr/local/qt/`. Many commercial distributions place the files in the system's `/usr` hierarchy. The package can also be installed in an arbitrary directory.

This section will demonstrate two different methods.

Warning

Building Qt in a **chroot** environment may fail.

Note

The build time for Qt is quite long. If you want to save some time and don't want the tutorials and examples, change the first **make** command to:

```
make sub-tools
```

Method 1 - Installing in the '/usr' Hierarchy

The advantage of this method is that no updates to the `/etc/ld.so.conf` or `/etc/man_db.conf` files are required. The package files are distributed within several subdirectories of the `/usr` hierarchy. This is the method that most commercial distributions use.

Note

If Qt is being reinstalled, run the following commands from a console or non-Qt based window manager. It overwrites Qt libraries that should not be in use during the install process.

```
sed -i '/QMAKE_RPATH/d' mkspecs/linux*/qmake.conf &&

bash
export PATH=$PWD/bin:$PATH &&
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$PWD/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH &&

./configure -prefix /usr \
            -docdir /usr/share/doc/qt \
            -headerdir /usr/include/qt \
            -plugindir /usr/lib/qt/plugins \
            -datadir /usr/share/qt \
            -translationdir /usr/share/qt/translations \
            -sysconfdir /etc/qt \
            -qt-gif \
            -system-zlib \
            -system-libpng \
            -system-libjpeg \
            -system-libmng \
            -plugin-imgfmt-png \
            -plugin-imgfmt-jpeg \
            -plugin-imgfmt-mng \
            -no-exceptions \
            -thread \
            -tablet &&

make &&
exit
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -v -sf libqt-mt.so /usr/lib/libqt.so &&
ln -v -snf ../../bin /usr/share/qt/bin &&
ln -v -snf ../../include/qt /usr/share/qt/include &&
ln -v -snf ../../lib /usr/share/qt/lib &&
cp -v -r doc/man /usr/share &&
cp -v -r examples /usr/share/doc/qt
```

Method 2 - Installing in '/opt'

This is the method recommended by the Qt developers. It has the advantage of keeping all the package files consolidated in a dedicated directory hierarchy. By using this method, an update can be made without overwriting a previous installation and users can easily revert to a previous version by changing one symbolic link.

The Qt developers use a default location of `/usr/local/qt/`, however this procedure puts the files in `/opt/qt-3.3.8b/` and then creates a symbolic link to `/opt/qt/`.

```
bash
export QTDIR=$PWD &&
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$PWD/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH &&
export PATH=$PWD/bin:$PATH &&

./configure -prefix /opt/qt-3.3.8b \
            -sysconfdir /etc/qt \
            -qt-gif \
            -system-zlib \
            -system-libpng \
            -system-libjpeg \
            -system-libmng \
            -plugin-imgfmt-png \
            -plugin-imgfmt-jpeg \
            -plugin-imgfmt-mng \
            -no-exceptions \
            -thread \
            -tablet &&

make &&
exit
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -v -sfn qt-3.3.8b /opt/qt &&
ln -v -s libqt-mt.so /opt/qt/lib/libqt.so &&
cp -v -r doc/man examples /opt/qt/doc
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '/QMAKE_RPATH/d' mkspecs/linux*/qmake.conf: In Method 1, Qt is being installed into the standard system directories. The runtime library search path does not need to be set in this case.

bash: This command enters a sub-shell to isolate environment changes.

export QTDIR=$PWD: This command defines where the root of the Qt directory is located.

export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$PWD/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH: This command allows the not yet installed Qt libraries to be used by the not yet installed Qt programs.

export PATH=$PWD/bin:$PATH: This command allows the build process to find supporting executables.

-qt-gif: This switch adds support for `gif` files to the libraries.

-system-zlib -system-libpng -system-libjpeg -system-mng: These switches force the build instructions to use the shared libraries that are on your system instead of creating a custom set of support libraries for these functions.

-plugin-imgfmt-png -plugin-imgfmt-jpeg -plugin-imgfmt-mng: These switches enable run-time linking of the referenced libraries.

If you pass the `-plugin-sql-<driver>` or `-qt-sql-<driver>` switch to the **configure** command, you must also pass `-I</path/to/sql/headers>` so **make** can find the appropriate header files. For instance, building in MySQL support (as opposed to building the plugin) will need to use `-I/usr/include/mysql -qt-sql-mysql`.

Note

To check if mysql is autotetected properly, examine the output of **./configure -I/usr/include/mysql -help**. Other database support will require similar **configure** parameters.

-no-exceptions: This switch disables the exceptions coding generated by the C++ compiler.

-thread: This switch adds support for multi-threading.

ln -v -sf libqt-mt.so /usr/lib/libqt.so: This command allows **configure** scripts to find a working Qt installation.

ln -v -snf ../../bin /usr/share/qt/bin: This command and the following two allow the `/usr` style installation to mimic the `/opt` style installation by making all binaries, headers and libraries available from a single directory, `/usr/share/qt`.

cp -v -r doc/man examples /usr/share (or /opt/qt/doc): This command installs the man pages and examples which are missed by **make install**.

exit: This command returns to the parent shell and eliminates the environment variables set earlier.

Configuring Qt

Configuration Information

The `QTDIR` environment variable needs to be set when building packages that depend on Qt. Add the following to the `.bash_profile` initialization script for each user that builds packages using the Qt libraries. Alternatively, the variable can be set in the system wide `/etc/profile` file.

For Method 1 (This is optional, only set this if an application is unable to find the installed libraries or headers):

```
export QTDIR=/usr/share/qt
```

or for Method 2:

```
export QTDIR=/opt/qt
```

If you installed Qt using Method 2, you also need to update the following configuration files so that Qt is correctly found by other packages and system processes.

Update the `/etc/ld.so.conf` and `/etc/man_db.conf` files:

```
cat >> /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF" &&
# Begin qt addition to /etc/ld.so.conf

/opt/qt/lib

# End qt addition
EOF
ldconfig &&
cat >> /etc/man_db.conf << "EOF"
# Begin qt addition to man_db.conf

MANDATORY_MANPATH /opt/qt/doc/man

# End qt addition to man_db.conf
EOF
```

Update the `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` environment variable in your `~/.bash_profile` or `/etc/profile` with the following:

```
PKG_CONFIG_PATH=$PKG_CONFIG_PATH:/opt/qt/lib/pkgconfig
```

If you want the Qt executables in your shell search path, update the `PATH` environment variable in your `~/.bash_profile` or `/etc/profile` to include `/opt/qt/bin`.

As with most libraries, there is no explicit configuration to do. After updating `/etc/ld.so.conf` as explained above, run **/sbin/ldconfig** so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries.

Contents

Installed Programs:	assistant, designer, linguist, lrelease, lupdate, moc, qm2ts, qmake, qtconfig, and uic
Installed Libraries:	libqt-mt.so, libqt.so libqui.so, libdesignercore.a, libeditor.a, and libqassistantclient.a
Installed Directories:	/opt/qt-3.3.8b or /usr/lib/qt, /usr/share/qt, /usr/share/doc/qt, /usr/include/qt, and /etc/qt

Short Descriptions

assistant	is a tool for presenting on-line documentation.
designer	is a full-fledged GUI builder. It includes powerful features such as preview mode, automatic widget layout, support for custom widgets, and an advanced property editor.
linguist	provides support for translating applications into local languages.

lrelease is a simple command line tool. It reads a Qt project file and produces message files used by the application.

lupdate reads a Qt project file, finds the translatable strings in the specified source, header and Qt Designer interface files, and produces or updates the translation files listed in the project file.

moc generates Qt meta object support code.

qm2ts is a tool for converting Qt message file formats.

qmake qmake uses information stored in project files to determine what should go in the makefiles it generates.

qtconfig is used to customize the appearance of Qt applications.

uic is a Qt user interface compiler.

Qt-4.3.4

Introduction to Qt4

The Qt4 package contains several C++ libraries with both GUI and non-GUI components. One of the major users of Qt4 is KDE4.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.silug.org/mirrors/ftp.trolltech.com/qt/source/qt-x11-opensource-src-4.3.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.trolltech.com/qt/source/qt-x11-opensource-src-4.3.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 9499101ec54eb7b0de195b3c5e3ffa93
- Download size: 42 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 1914 MB (full), 608 (essential)
- Estimated build time: 26 SBU (full), 13.5 SBU (essential)

Qt Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libmng-1.0.9, LibTIFF-3.8.2, and libpng-1.2.29

Optional

NAS-1.9, D-BUS-1.0.2, GLib-2.12.12, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, CUPS-1.2.12, MySQL-5.0.41, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, unixODBC-2.2.12, and *SQLite*

Installation of Qt4

There are several ways to install a complicated package such as Qt4. The files are not completely position independent. Installation procedures execute the program **pkg-config** to determine the location of package executables, libraries, headers, and other files. For Qt4, **pkg-config** will look for the appropriate `lib/pkgconfig/Qt*.pc` files which must be modified if relocating the package. These files are set up correctly by the build process.

The default installation places the files in `/usr/local/qt/`. Many commercial distributions place the files in the system's `/usr` hierarchy. The package can also be installed in an arbitrary directory.

The advantage of this method is that no updates to the `/etc/ld.so.conf` or `/etc/man_db.conf` files are required. The package files are distributed within several subdirectories of the `/usr` hierarchy. This is the method that most commercial distributions use.

Note

If Qt4 is being reinstalled and the `/usr` directory is used as the prefix, run the following commands from a console or non-Qt4 based window manager. It overwrites Qt4 libraries that should not be in use during the install process.

Note

The build time and space required for the full Qt4 is quite long. The instructions below do not build the tutorials and examples. Removing the *-nomake* lines will create a complete build.

The method recommended by the Qt4 developers does not use the /usr directory prefix. It has the advantage of keeping all the package files consolidated in a dedicated directory hierarchy. By using this method, an update can be made without overwriting a previous installation and users can easily revert to a previous version by changing one symbolic link.

The Qt4 developers use a default location of `/usr/local/qt/`, however the procedure below puts the files in `/opt/qt-4.3.4/` and then creates a symbolic link to `/opt/qt/`.

Install Qt4 by running the following commands:

```
./configure -prefix /opt/qt-4.3.4  \
            -release                \
            -nomake examples        \
            -nomake demos           \
            -no-separate-debug-info &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you installed Qt4 in the /opt directory, again as the `root` user issue:

```
ln -v -sfn qt-4.3.4 /opt/qt
```

Command Explanations

-release, -no-separate-debug-info: These switches minimizes the time and space used to build Qt4 by not adding debug information to the libraries.

-nomake examples, -nomake demos: These switches disable building programs that are only of interest to a Qt4 developer.

There are several optional directories that can be specified in the **./configure** line. These include `-bindir`, `-libdir`, `-docdir`, and `-headerdir`. For a complete list, run **./configure -help**.

-plugin-sql-<driver> or *-qt-sql-<driver>*: These switches build SQL support into the Qt4 libraries.

Note

To check if mysql is autotetected properly, examine the output of **./configure -qt-sql-mysql -help**. Other database support will require similar **configure** parameters.

Configuring Qt4

Configuration Information

If you installed Qt4 in a location other than /usr, you also need to update the following configuration files so that Qt4 is correctly found by other packages and system processes.

Update the `/etc/ld.so.conf` and `/etc/man_db.conf` files:

```
cat >> /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF" &&
# Begin qt addition to /etc/ld.so.conf

/opt/qt/lib

# End qt addition
EOF
ldconfig &&
cat >> /etc/man_db.conf << "EOF"
# Begin qt addition to man_db.conf

MANDATORY_MANPATH /opt/qt/doc/man

# End qt addition to man_db.conf
EOF
```

Update the `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` environment variable in your `~/.bash_profile` or `/etc/profile` with the following:

```
PKG_CONFIG_PATH=$PKG_CONFIG_PATH:/opt/qt/lib/pkgconfig
```

If you want the Qt4 executables in your shell search path, update the `PATH` environment variable in your `~/.bash_profile` or `/etc/profile` to include `/opt/qt/bin`.

As with most libraries, there is no explicit configuration to do. After updating `/etc/ld.so.conf` as explained above, run **/sbin/ldconfig** so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries.

Contents

Installed Programs:	assistant, designer, linguist, lrelease, lupdate, moc, pixeltool, qmake, qt3to4, qtconfig, qtdemo, rcc, uic, and uic3
Installed Libraries:	libQt3Support.so, libQtAssistantClient.so, libQtCore.so, libQtDesigner.so, libQtDesignerComponents.so, libQtGui.so, libQtNetwork.so, libQtOpenGL.so, libQtScript.so, libQtSql.so, libQtSvg.so, libQtTest.so, and libQtXml.so
Installed Directories:	/opt/qt-4.3.4

Short Descriptions

assistant	is a tool for presenting on-line documentation.
designer	is a full-fledged GUI builder. It includes powerful features such as preview mode, automatic widget layout, support for custom widgets, and an advanced property editor.
linguist	provides support for translating applications into local languages.

lrelease is a simple command line tool. It reads a Qt project file and produces message files used by the application.

lupdate reads a Qt project file, finds the translatable strings in the specified source, header and Qt Designer interface files, and produces or updates the translation files listed in the project file.

moc generates Qt meta object support code.

pixeltool is a desktop magnifier and as you move your mouse around the screen it will show the magnified contents in its window.

qmake qmake uses information stored in project files to determine what should go in the makefiles it generates.

qt3to4 qt3to4 is a tool to help update Qt3 code to Qt4.

qtconfig is used to customize the appearance of Qt applications.

qtdemo is a portal into various demonstrations of Qt applications.

rcc is a resource compiler used in conjucntion with designer.

uic is a Qt user interface compiler.

uic3 is a tool to generate Qt4 code out of user interface files generated by the Qt3 version of **designer**.

GTK+-1.2.10

Introduction to GTK+

The GTK+ package contains GTK+ Libraries. This is useful for creating graphical user interfaces for applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/graphics/gimp/gtk/v1.2/gtk+-1.2.10.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gtk.org/pub/gtk/v1.2/gtk+-1.2.10.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 4d5cb2fc7fb7830e4af9747a36bfce20
- Download size: 2.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 51.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.01 SBU

GTK+ Dependencies

Required

GLib-1.2.10, and X Window System

Installation of GTK+

Install GTK+ by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gtk+-1.2.10/{html,text} &&
install -v -m644 docs/html/* /usr/share/doc/gtk+-1.2.10/html &&
install -v -m644 docs/text/* /usr/share/doc/gtk+-1.2.10/text
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This installs the configuration files into `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--with-xinput=xfree`: This configuration flag is necessary to utilize alternative input devices.

Contents

Installed Program:	gtk-config
Installed Libraries:	libgdk.{so,a} and libgtk.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/gtk, /usr/include/gtk-1.2, and /usr/share/themes

Short Descriptions

gtk-config is a tool used by **configure** scripts to determine the compiler and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use GTK+.

`libgtk.{so,a}` (GIMP Tool Kit) is a library for creating graphical user interfaces similar to the Motif “look and feel”.

`libgdk.{so,a}` is designed as a wrapper library that lies on top of Xlib. It performs many common and desired operations for a programmer instead of the programmer having to explicitly ask for such functionality from Xlib directly.

cairo-1.4.14

Introduction to cairo

cairo is a 2D graphics library with support for multiple output devices. Currently supported output targets include the X Window System, win32, image buffers, PostScript, PDF and SVG. Experimental backends include OpenGL (through glitz), Quartz and XCB file output. cairo is designed to produce consistent output on all output media while taking advantage of display hardware acceleration when available (e.g., through the X Render Extension). The cairo API provides operations similar to the drawing operators of PostScript and PDF. Operations in cairo include stroking and filling cubic Bézier splines, transforming and compositing translucent images, and antialiased text rendering. All drawing operations can be transformed by any affine transformation (scale, rotation, shear, etc.).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://cairographics.org/releases/cairo-1.4.14.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: e8c442ff821c0719a69508fecba9038f
- Download size: 3.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 34 MB (additional 62 MB to run the test suite)
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU (additional 2.5 SBU to run the test suite)

cairo Dependencies

Required

X Window System and pkg-config-0.22

Optional

glitz, *DirectFB*, *Open Quartz*, libxcb-1.0 (also requires *xcb-util*), and GTK-Doc-1.8

Optional (to provide extended test suite coverage)

GTK+-2.10.13 (for testing the PDF backend), Poppler-0.5.4 (for testing the PDF backend), librsvg-2.16.1 (for testing the SVG backend).

Note that the GTK, Poppler and librsvg packages are circular in that using them for test suite coverage requires installing cairo first, then installing the desired package(s), then installing cairo again.

Installation of cairo

Install cairo by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that as many as 16 of the tests are known to fail for unknown reasons. If you do not have a **gs** binary in your path, many (up to 87 of the 124) of the tests will fail. Also, to enhance test coverage, the tests should be run with an available X Window screen (e.g. from a local xterm or equivalent window).

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libcairo.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/cairo and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/cairo

Short Descriptions

`libcairo.{so,a}` contains the 2D graphics functions required for rendering to the various output targets.

Pango-1.16.4

Introduction to Pango

The Pango package contains the `libpango` libraries. These are useful for the layout and rendering of text.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/pango/1.16/pango-1.16.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gtk.org/pub/pango/1.16/pango-1.16.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 025e2ac5e40cac163aae4653aeef559c
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 28 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

Pango Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12 and one of cairo-1.4.14 or X Window System or Fontconfig-2.4.2

cairo is not required to build Pango, but it is highly recommended that you install cairo before building Pango. If you don't build Pango with a cairo backend, then GTK+-2 will not build.

Optional

LibThai

Optional (If cairo is Not Installed)

X Window System

Optional (To Rebuild the API Documentation)

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of Pango

Install Pango by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that the “testboundries” test could fail if you have LibThai installed.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This switch installs the configuration files into `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Configuring Pango

Config Files

`/etc/pango/pangorc`, `~/.pangorc`, and the file specified in the environment variable `PANGO_RC_FILE`

Configuration Information

The Pango module path is specified by the key ***`Pango/ModulesPath`*** in the Pango config database, which is read from the config files listed above.

Contents

Installed Programs:	pango-querymodules and pango-view
Installed Libraries:	libpango*-1.0.so and Pango loadable modules.
Installed Directories:	/etc/pango, /usr/include/pango-1.0, /usr/lib/pango, and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/pango

Short Descriptions

pango-querymodules	is a module registration utility that collects information about Pango loadable modules.
Pango libraries	contain low level layout rendering routines, a high level driver for laying out entire blocks of text, and routines to assist in editing internationalized text.

ATK-1.18.0

Introduction to ATK

The ATK package contains the ATK libraries. They are useful for allowing accessibility solutions to be available for all GTK2 applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/atk/1.18/atk-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/atk/1.18/atk-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 9fc33ec48fd32933f7f630479dfad667
- Download size: 655 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 10 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

ATK Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of ATK

Install ATK by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libatk-1.0.so
Installed Directories: /usr/include/atk-1.0 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/atk

Short Descriptions

`atklib-1.0.so` contains functions that are used by assistive technologies in order to interact with the desktop and applications.

GTK+-2.10.13

Introduction to GTK+

The GTK+ package contains GTK+ libraries. These are useful for creating graphical user interfaces for applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtk+/2.10/gtk+-2.10.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gtk.org/pub/gtk/v2.10/gtk+-2.10.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d0af87715f3b0f05bf38a3312a528012
- Download size: 15.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 240 MB (includes building the experimental backends)
- Estimated build time: 3.1 SBU (includes building the experimental backends)

GTK+ Dependencies

Required

cairo-1.4.14, Pango-1.16.4, and ATK-1.18.0

Recommended

LibTIFF-3.8.2 and libjpeg-6b

Though not required, the GTK developers expect libtiff and libjpeg to be installed. Other packages also expect GTK+-2 to be built with support for these graphics packages as well.

Optional

CUPS-1.2.12, GTK-Doc-1.8, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of GTK+

Install GTK+ by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that you must run the tests from a session with X Window Display capability (i.e., not a text-based terminal/console) as the tests attempt to open an X window.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gtk+-2.10.13/{faq,tutorial} &&
cp -v -R docs/faq/html/* /usr/share/doc/gtk+-2.10.13/faq &&
cp -v -R docs/tutorial/html/* /usr/share/doc/gtk+-2.10.13/tutorial &&
install -v -m644 docs/*.txt /usr/share/doc/gtk+-2.10.13
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This switch installs the configuration files into `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: This switch will rebuild the API documentation during the **make** command. Ensure you really want to rebuild this documentation (and end up with what is already shipped in the source tree) as it takes a very long time.

`--without-libtiff`: Use this switch if you don't have libtiff installed.

`--without-libjpeg`: Use this switch if you don't have libjpeg installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gdk-pixbuf-csource, gdk-pixbuf-query-loaders, gtk-demo, gtk-query-immodules-2.0, and gtk-update-icon-cache
Installed Libraries:	libgdk_pixbuf-2.0.so, libgdk-x11-2.0.so, libgtk-x11-2.0.so, libgdk_pixbuf_xlib-2.0.so, and numerous engine, module, and loader plugins
Installed Directories:	/etc/gtk-2.0, /usr/include/gtk-2.0, /usr/lib/gtk-2.0, /usr/share/doc/gtk+-2.10.13, /usr/share/gtk-2.0, /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/{gdk,gdk-pixbuf,gtk}, /usr/share/themes/Default/gtk*, /usr/share/themes/Emacs and /usr/share/themes/Raleigh

Short Descriptions

gdk-pixbuf-csource	generates C code containing images, useful for compiling images directly into programs.
gdk-pixbuf-query-loaders	collects information about loadable modules for gdk-pixbuf and writes it to standard output.
gtk-query-immodules-2.0	collects information about loadable input method modules for GTK+ and writes it to standard output.
gtk-update-icon-cache	creates mmap()able cache files for icon themes.
GTK+ Libraries	provide an API to implement graphical user interfaces.

LessTif-0.95.0

Introduction to LessTif

The LessTif package contains an Open Source version of OSF/Motif®.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/lesstif/lesstif-0.95.0.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ab895165c149d7f95843c7584b1c7ad4
- Download size: 2.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 160 MB (includes building and running the test suite)
- Estimated build time: 4.1 SBU (includes building the test suite)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/lesstif-0.95.0-testsuite_fix-1.patch*

LessTif Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Optional

Lynx-2.8.6rel.5 or Links-2.1pre33 (used to generate the `INSTALL` documentation file) and *Dmalloc*

Installation of LessTif

Install LessTif by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e '/ShellP/d' \
       -e '/XMLIBEXPORT extern Cardinal/i#include <X11/ShellP.h>\n'  \
    include/Motif-2.1/Xm/VendorSP.h &&

patch -Np1 -i ../lesstif-0.95.0-testsuite_fix-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/X11 \
            --disable-debug \
            --enable-production \
            --with-xdnd &&
sed -i "s@libdir)/X11/mwm@sysconfdir)/mwm@" clients/Motif-2.1/mwm/Makefile &&
make rootdir=/usr/share/doc/lesstif-0.95.0
```

This package requires that it is installed before the test suite is run. The commands to run the tests are located a bit later in the instructions.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make rootdir=/usr/share/doc/lesstif-0.95.0 install &&
ldconfig
```

Applicatons that utilize Xorg libraries often, and incorrectly, expect to find configuration files in `$XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11`. While still the `root` user, create a compatibility symlink with the following command:

```
ln -v -sf /etc/X11/mwm $XORG_PREFIX/lib/X11
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e '...' -e '...' include/Motif-2.1/Xm/VendorSP.h: This command moves one line in the header file to avoid C++ compilation problems.

`--disable-debug`: Do not generate debugging information.

`--enable-production`: Build the release version of the LessTif libraries.

`--with-xdnd`: Enable XDND GNOME compatibility support.

`rootdir=/usr/share/doc/lesstif-0.95.0`: This installs the documentation into an appropriate directory instead of the non-FHS compliant `/usr/LessTif` directory.

sed -i "s@libdir)/X11/mwm@sysconfdir)/mwm@" clients/Motif-2.1/mwm/Makefile: This corrects the installation prefix for the mwm directory for FHS compliance.

Testing LessTif

It is advisable to test the installation of LessTif using the included test suite. It is not required to install any of the resulting binaries to validate the installation. Issue the following commands to build the test suite:

```
cd test &&
./configure &&
make
```

To run the tests, issue the following commands:

```
cd Xm &&
./testall *
```

You may need to manually close four of the test windows. The first one is from **test28** in the `list` directory. The second one is from **test10** in the `menushell` directory. You should click on the button in the window and choose “exit” (do it twice) to finish the test. The third test is from **test20** in the `PushButton` and the last one is from **test24** in the `scrolledwindow` directory.

As many as 101 tests are known to fail. The patch applied at the beginning of the installation created a file used to compare known failures to the failures from the test run. This file was created from an installation using the current LFS book and should be a fairly accurate representation of the failures you'll encounter. You could see some minor variances, however.

Configuring LessTif

Config Files

`/etc/X11/mwm/system.mwmrc` and `~/.mwmrc`

Configuration Information

The config files are used to customize the behavior of the **mwm** window manager. Information about customizing these files can be found in the `mwmrc(5)` man page.

Contents

Installed Programs: motif-config, mwm, mxmkmf, uil, and xmbind
Installed Libraries: libDtPrints.so, libMrm.so, libUil.so, and libXm.so
Installed Directories: /etc/X11/mwm, /usr/include/Xm, /usr/include/Mrm, /usr/include/uil, /usr/include/Dt, /usr/lib/LessTif, and /usr/share/doc/lesstif-0.95.0

Short Descriptions

motif-config is used to find out configuration information for packages needing to link to the LessTif libraries.

mwm is a window manager that adheres largely to the Motif **mwm** specification.

mxmkmf is the LessTif version of **xmkmf** which creates a `Makefile` from an `Imakefile`.

uil is a user interface language compiler which translates a plain text description of the user interface of a Motif application into a machine-readable form.

xmbind configures the virtual key bindings of LessTif applications.

`libXm.so` is an OSF/Motif® source code compatible library for the X Window System. You can download an excellent reference guide (mainly for programmers) for the Motif-2.1 specification from *http://unc.dl.sourceforge.net/lesstif/6B_book.pdf*.

startup-notification-0.9

Introduction to startup-notification

The startup-notification package contains `startup-notification` libraries. These are useful for building a consistent manner to notify the user through the cursor that the application is loading.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/startup-notification/0.9/startup-notification-0.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/startup-notification/0.9/startup-notification-0.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 624b42f1fac5a12c543a079e2cd3b366
- Download size: 226 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

startup-notification Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Installation of startup-notification

Install startup-notification by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/startup-notification.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/startup-notification-0.9/startup-notification.txt
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libstartup-notification-1.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/startup-notification-1.0 and /usr/share/doc/startup-notification-0.9

Short Descriptions

`libstartup-notification-1.{so,a}` provides the functions to assist applications in communicating with the cursor system to provide feedback to the user that the application is loading.

libwnck-2.18.3

Introduction to libwnck

The libwnck package contains a Window Navigator Construction Kit.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libwnck/2.18/libwnck-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libwnck/2.18/libwnck-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 1badcbb50e7bc59865f72ec270c15125
- Download size: 482 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

libwnck Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

startup-notification-0.9, intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libwnck

Install libwnck by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libwnck-1.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/libwnck-1.0 and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libwnck

Short Descriptions

`libwnck-1.{so,a}` contains functions for writing pagers and task lists.

shared-mime-info-0.21

Introduction to shared-mime-info

The shared-mime-info package contains a MIME database. This allows central updates of MIME information for all supporting applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://freedesktop.org/~hadess/shared-mime-info-0.21.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/svn/s/shared-mime-info-0.21.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e1965e129a473683ba395ebc02206367
- Download size: 439 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

shared-mime-info Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12, libxml2-2.6.31, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of shared-mime-info

Install shared-mime-info by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring shared-mime-info

Configuration Information

Some applications (including GNOME-2) require a properly set environment variable to locate the MIME database. Satisfy this requirement by setting the following variable in your local shell profile, or the system-wide profile:

```
XDG_DATA_DIRS=/usr/share
export XDG_DATA_DIRS
```

Contents

Installed Program:	update-mime-database
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/mime

Short Descriptions

update-mime-database assists in adding MIME data to the database.

hicolor-icon-theme-0.10

Introduction to hicolor-icon-theme

The hicolor-icon-theme package contains a default fallback theme for implementations of the icon theme specification.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://icon-theme.freedesktop.org/releases/hicolor-icon-theme-0.10.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/hicolor-icon-theme-0.10.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 3534f7b8e59785c7d5bfa923e85510a7
- Download size: 33 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of hicolor-icon-theme

Install hicolor-icon-theme by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/share/icons/hicolor

Short Descriptions

/usr/share/icons/hicolor/* contains icon definitions used as defaults.

libxklavier-3.2

Introduction to libxklavier

The libxklavier package contains a utility library for X keyboard.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/gswitchit/libxklavier-3.2.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 8f89a65b2d0aa8f8f5979c7d9de3d051
- Download size: 466 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libxklavier Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12, X Window System, and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libxklavier

Install libxklavier by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-xkb-base=$XORG_PREFIX/share/X11/xkb`: Use this parameter if the $XORG_PREFIX is anything other than `/usr`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libxklavier.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libxklavier, /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libxklavier and /usr/share/libxklavier

Short Descriptions

`libxklavier.{so,a}` contains XKB utility functions.

freeglut-2.4.0

Introduction to freeglut

freeglut is intended to be a 100% compatible, completely opensourced clone of the GLUT library. GLUT is a window system independent toolkit for writing OpenGL programs, implementing a simple windowing API, which makes learning about and exploring OpenGL programming very easy.

If you built the GLUT library during an installation of MesaLib-6.5.2, you do not need to install this package.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/freeglut/freeglut-2.4.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6d16873bd876fbf4980a927cfbc496a1
- Download size: 459 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

freeglut Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Installation of freeglut

Install freeglut by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/freeglut-2.4.0 &&
install -v -m644 doc/freeglut_user_interface.html \
    /usr/share/doc/freeglut-2.4.0
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libglut.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/share/doc/freeglut-2.4.0

Short Descriptions

`libglut.{so,a}` contains functions that implement the OpenGL Utility Toolkit.

GOffice-0.6.1

Introduction to GOffice

The GOffice package contains a library of GLib/GTK document centric objects and utilities. This is useful for performing common operations for document centric applications that are conceptually simple, but complex to implement fully. Some of the operations provided by the GOffice library include support for plugins, load/save routines for application documents and undo/redo functions.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/goffice/0.6/goffice-0.6.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/goffice/0.6/goffice-0.6.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a8aa21d089a0ae6f62cb2a9bb70e83db
- Download size: 3.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 53 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.0 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/goffice-0.6.1-gtkdoc_rebase-1.patch*

GOffice Dependencies

Required

libgsf-1.14.7, Pango-1.16.4, PCRE-7.6, and which-2.19

Recommended (for the User Interface functionality)

libglade-2.6.1 and libgnomeprint-2.18.0

Note: not installing the recommended dependencies can render the GOffice package incapable of supporting applications which depend on it. If, for whatever reason, you elect not to install the recommended dependencies, you must add the `--without-gtk` parameter to the **configure** command in the instructions below.

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GTK-Doc-1.8, and libgnomeui-2.18.1 (with libgsf built to support GNOME by creating the `libgsf-gnome-1` library)

Installation of GOffice

Install GOffice by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../goffice-0.6.1-gtkdoc_rebase-1.patch &&
```

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libgoffice-0.so and numerous support plugins
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libgoffice-0.4, /usr/lib/goffice, /usr/share/{gtk-doc/html/goffice,{pixmaps/}goffice}

Short Descriptions

`libgoffice-0.so`	contains API functions to provide support for document centric objects and utilities.

MesaLib-6.5.2

Introduction to MesaLib

Mesa is an OpenGL compatible 3-D graphics library.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/mesa3d/MesaLib-6.5.2.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: e4d894181f1859651658b3704633e10d
- Download size (including recommended download): 3.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required (including recommended download): 172 MB
- Estimated build time (including recommended download): 1.6 SBU

Additional Downloads

Recommended demonstration and diagnostic utilities for verifying OpenGL operation

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/mesa3d/MesaDemos-6.5.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e870efe98d3a50be01ab211b9b2e25d9
- Download size: 1.3 MB

Optional GLUT library (see also freeglut-2.4.0)

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/mesa3d/MesaGLUT-6.5.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e84edbb11c69c8e408dfadd2ed08e95b
- Download size: 306 KB

MesaLib Dependencies

Required

Xorg Libraries, Xorg Utilities, libdrm-2.3.0, and expat-2.0.1

Installation of MesaLib

Extract all three tarballs from the same top-level directory as they all will extract to the `Mesa-6.5.2` directory.

Install MesaLib by running the following command:

```
make linux-dri-x86 OPT_FLAGS="-O2 -fno-strict-aliasing" \
    DRI_DRIVER_INSTALL_DIR=${XORG_PREFIX}/lib/X11/modules/dri \
    X11_INCLUDES=-I${XORG_PREFIX}/include \
    EXTRA_LIB_PATH=-L${XORG_PREFIX}/lib
```

If you downloaded and extracted the Demos package, build the programs with the following commands:

```
sed -i 's@-l$(GLUT_LIB)@@g' configs/default &&
make -C progs/xdemos PROGS='glxinfo glxgears'
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install INSTALL_DIR=${XORG_PREFIX} \
    DRI_DRIVER_INSTALL_DIR=${XORG_PREFIX}/lib/X11/modules/dri &&
install -dv ${XORG_PREFIX}/share/doc/MesaLib-6.5.2 &&
install -v -m644 docs/* ${XORG_PREFIX}/share/doc/MesaLib-6.5.2
```

If you built the demo programs, install them using the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 progs/xdemos/glx{info,gears} ${XORG_PREFIX}/bin
```

Finally, if installing to any prefix other than `/usr`, you should create symlinks to the GL headers in `/usr/include`. Execute the following command as the `root` user:

```
ln -s -v ${XORG_PREFIX}/include/GL /usr/include
```


Tip

Do not remove the Mesa source tree yet, it will be required to build the Xorg-Server-1.2.0.

Command Explanations

make ... linux-dri-x86: The `linux-dri-x86` target is specified to use a few other helpful flags in addition to the defaults. See the other targets in the `configs` directory if your architecture is not x86.

`OPT_FLAGS="-O2 -fno-strict-aliasing"`: A bug where OpenGL applications are shifted to the left by 50% can be worked around by adding `-fno-strict-aliasing` to the compiler flags.

`DRI_DRIVER_INSTALL_DIR=${XORG_PREFIX}/lib/X11/modules/dri`: This setting specifies the location that the DRI modules will be installed to. This path is also built into `libGL.so`.

sed -i 's@-l$(GLUT_LIB)@@g' configs/default: Disables linking against the GLUT libraries for the demo programs, omit this command if you downloaded and extracted the GLUT tarball.

make ... PROGS='glxinfo glxgears': Only builds the **glxinfo** and **glxgears** programs.

Contents

Installed Programs (optional):	glxgears and glxinfo
Installed Libraries:	libGL.so, libGLU.so, libGLw.so, *_dri.so and optionally, libglut.so
Installed Directories:	$XORG_PREFIX/lib/modules/dri and $XORG_PREFIX/share/doc/MesaLib-6.5.2

Short Descriptions

`glxgears`	is a GL demo useful for troubleshooting graphics problems.
`glxinfo`	is a diagnostic program that displays information about the graphics hardware and installed GL libraries.
`libGL.so`	is the main OpenGL library.
`libGLU.so`	is the OpenGL Utility library.
`libGLw.so`	is the Xt/Motif OpenGL drawing area widget library.

`libglut.so` is the OpenGL Utility Toolkit (GLUT) library.

Chapter 25. Window Managers

Introduction

Window Managers and Desktop Environments are the primary user interfaces into the X Window System. A window manager is a program that controls the appearance of windows and provides the means by which the user can interact with them. A Desktop Environment provides a more complete interface to the operating system, and provides a range of integrated utilities and applications.

There are many Window Managers available. Some of the more well known ones include fvwm2, Window Maker, AfterStep, Enlightenment, Sawfish, and Blackbox.

The Desktop Environments available for Linux are GNOME, KDE, and XFce.

Choosing a Window Manager or Desktop Environment is highly subjective. The choice depends on the look and feel of the packages, the resources (RAM, disk space) required, and the utilities included. One web site that provides a very good summary of what is available, screenshots, and their respective features is *Window Managers for X*.

In this chapter, the installation instructions of several Window Managers and one lightweight Desktop Environment are presented. Later in the book, both KDE and GNOME have their own sections.

sawfish-1.3

Introduction to sawfish

The sawfish package contains a window manager. This is useful for organizing and displaying windows where all window decorations are configurable and all user-interface policy is controlled through the extension language.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/sawmill/sawfish-1.3.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 9e5ce5e76c60acecdb1889c1f173295a
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 17.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.26 SBU

sawfish Dependencies

Required

rep-gtk-0.18 and EsounD-0.2.37

Installation of sawfish

Install sawfish by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexec=/usr/sbin \
    --infodir=/usr/share/info --disable-themer &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-themer`: This option prevents building the sawfish themer. This program was not migrated to GTK-2.

`--with-audiofile`: This command directs sawfish to use `libaudiofile` for sound manipulation.

`--with-esd`: This command directs sawfish to use the Enlightened Sound Daemon.

Configuring sawfish

Configuration Information

Be sure to backup your current `.xinitrc` before proceeding.

```
cat >> ~/.xinitrc << "EOF"
exec sawfish
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs: sawfish, sawfish-client, and sawfish-ui
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/sawfish, /usr/sbin/sawfish, and /usr/lib/rep/*/

Short Descriptions

`sawfish` is the extensible window manager using a Lisp-based scripting language.

`sawfish-client` allows you to connect to a window manager process and evaluate arbitrary Lisp forms.

`sawfish-ui` is the sawfish configurator.

Fluxbox-0.9.15.1

Introduction to Fluxbox

The Fluxbox package contains a window manager.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/fluxbox/fluxbox-0.9.15.1.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 098eb36a09338aabb63b938a5eab9ef6
- Download size: 670 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 50.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

Fluxbox Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Optional

Imlib2-1.4.0 Image display library

Installation of Fluxbox

Install Fluxbox by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-imlib2`: Use this option if you wish to use other image formats in addition to xpm.

Configuring Fluxbox

Config Files

`~/.fluxbox/init`, `~/.fluxbox/keys`, and `~/.fluxbox/menu`

Configuration Information

If Fluxbox is the only Window Manager you want to use, you can start it with an `.xinitrc` file in your home folder. Be sure to backup your current `.xinitrc` before proceeding.

```
echo startfluxbox > ~/.xinitrc
```

Or alternatively, if you use a login manager like GDM-2.18.3 or kdm and would like to be able to choose Fluxbox at the login prompt, create a `fluxbox.desktop` file like this.

As `root`:

```
cat > /usr/share/xsessions/fluxbox.desktop << "EOF"
[Desktop Entry]
Encoding=UTF-8
Name=Fluxbox
Comment=This session logs you into Fluxbox
Exec=startfluxbox
Type=Application
EOF
```

If you didn't install GDM-2.18.3 or kdm in `/usr`, then change that command to fit the prefix you chose.

Now create the Fluxbox configuration files:

```
mkdir -v ~/.fluxbox &&
cp -v /usr/share/fluxbox/init ~/.fluxbox/init &&
cp -v /usr/share/fluxbox/keys ~/.fluxbox/keys
```

Now if you have which-2.19 installed:

```
cd ~/.fluxbox &&
fluxbox-generate_menu
```

otherwise:

```
cp -v /usr/share/fluxbox/menu ~/.fluxbox/menu
```

Menu items are added by editing `~/.fluxbox/menu`. The syntax is explained on the **fluxbox** man page.

If you want to use an image as your desktop background, copy the theme you like into `~/.fluxbox`. Then add a line to make it use the correct image. In the following command, change *<theme>* for the name of the theme you want and change *</path/to/nice/image.xpm>* to point to the actual image you want to use.

```
cp /usr/share/fluxbox/styles/<theme> ~/.fluxbox/theme &&
sed -i 's,\(session.styleFile:\).*,\1 ~/.fluxbox/theme,' \
 ~/.fluxbox/init &&
echo "background.pixmap: </path/to/nice/image.xpm>" >> ~/.fluxbox/theme
```

In some locales the font specified in the theme may not contain the needed characters. This results in menus with blank items. You can fix this by editing `~/.fluxbox/theme` with a text editor and altering it so that it names a suitable font.

Contents

Installed Programs:	fluxbox, fbsetbg, fbsetroot, fluxbox-generate_menu, startfluxbox, and fbrun
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/fluxbox and ~/.fluxbox

Short Descriptions

fluxbox	is a window manager for X11 based on Blackbox 0.61.0.

fbsetbg	is a utility that sets the background image. It requires **which** to find one of: **display**, **Esetroot**, **wmsetbg**, **xv**, **qiv** or **xsri**.
fbsetroot	is a utility to change root window appearance based on the Blackbox application bsetroot.
fluxbox-generate_menu	is a utility that generates a menu by scanning your PATH. It requires **which** to function properly.
startfluxbox	is a session startup script that allows for command executions prior to **fluxbox** starting.
fbrun	displays a run dialog window.

Metacity-2.18.5

Introduction to Metacity

The Metacity package contains a window manager. This is useful for organizing and displaying windows.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/metacity/2.18/metacity-2.18.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/metacity/2.18/metacity-2.18.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7928172bf41f6b63976a62554a699674
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 61 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Metacity Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

startup-notification-0.9 (recommended if you are installing GNOME-2), GConf-2.18.0.1 (recommended if you are installing GNOME-2), intltool-0.35.5, and *libcm*

Installation of Metacity

Install Metacity by running the following commands:

```
./configure \
    --prefix=/usr \
    --libexecdir=/usr/lib/metacity \
    --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --with-gconf-schema-file-dir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf/schemas &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/metacity-2.18.5 &&
install -v -m644 README rationales.txt doc/*.txt \
                    /usr/share/doc/metacity-2.18.5
```

Command Explanations

`--with-gconf-schema-file-dir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf/schemas`: Omit this parameter if you are not installing Metacity for a GNOME-2 installation.

`--enable-compositor`: You must use this parameter (and have libcm installed) to build the Metacity composite manager.

Configuring Metacity

Configuration Information

To automatically start the Metacity window manager when you issue the **startx** command, append to (or create) `.xinitrc` using the command below (not required if you are installing Metacity for a GNOME-2 installation). Ensure you backup your current `~/.xinitrc` before proceeding:

```
cat >> ~/.xinitrc << "EOF"
xterm &
exec metacity
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	metacity, metacity-message, metacity-theme-viewer and metacity-window-demo
Installed Library:	libmetacity-private.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/metacity-1, /usr/lib/metacity, /usr/share/doc/metacity-2.18.5, /usr/share/gnome/wm-properties, /usr/share/metacity and the following subdirectories of /usr/share/themes/: AgingGorilla Atlanta Bright Crux/metacity-1 Esco Metabox Simple/metacity-1}

Short Descriptions

metacity	is a window manager used mainly by GNOME.
metacity-theme-viewer	allows you to preview any installed Metacity theme. When designing a new Metacity theme, you can use **metacity-theme-viewer** to measure the performance of a window frame option, and to preview the option.
metacity-window-demo	demonstrates various kinds of windows that window managers and window manager themes should handle.

Other Window Managers

twm is the Tab Window Manager. This is the default window manager installed by the X Window System packages.

mwm is the Motif® Window Manager. It is an OSF/Motif® clone packaged and installed with LessTif-0.95.0.

Part VII. KDE

Introduction to KDE

KDE is a comprehensive desktop environment that builds on an X Window System and Qt to provide a window manager and many user tools, including a browser, word processor, spreadsheet, presentation package, games, and numerous other utilities. It provides extensive capabilities for customization.

The KDE instructions are divided into three parts. The first part, the core packages, are needed for the rest of KDE to work. The second part presents additional packages which provide functionality in various areas (multimedia, graphics, etc.) The third part provides resources for software and web developers.

There are two alternatives for installing KDE. Option one, that is used by most of the commercial distributions, is to install KDE in the standard system prefix: `/usr`. This option allows the use of KDE without the need for any additional configuration such as modification of various environment variables or configuration files. Option two is to install it in a unique prefix such as `/opt/kde` or `/opt/kde-3.5.9`. This option allows for easy removal of the KDE version or maintenance of multiple versions for testing.

Tip

All the KDE packages are comprised of various components. The default is to install most of the components. If specific components are to be eliminated, the official way is to set the variable `DO_NOT_COMPILE`. This comes in handy when there are problems compiling a particular component.

```
DO_NOT_COMPILE="component1 component2" \
    ./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX ...
```

The core KDE packages also honor this variable, but omitting components from the core packages is not advisable since it may result in an incomplete KDE installation.

Note

In each of the packages, one other option to **configure** can be added: `--enable-final`. This option can speed up the build process, but requires a lot of memory. If you have less than 256MB of RAM, this option may cause swapping and significantly slow compilation.

Chapter 26. KDE Core Packages

KDE Pre-installation Configuration

Based on your preference, set KDE_PREFIX.

One option is to put KDE into the /usr hierarchy. This creates a simpler setup but is more difficult to try multiple versions of KDE.

```
export KDE_PREFIX=/usr
```

A method of building multiple versions installs KDE in the /opt hierarchy:

```
export KDE_PREFIX=/opt/kde-3.5.9
```

Remember to execute **ldconfig** after installation of libraries to update the library cache.

If you are not installing KDE in /usr, you will need to make some configuration changes:

You should consider installing the desktop-file-utils-0.13 package. Though not required, this package will allow you to easily use existing .desktop files in /usr/share/applications (and any other locations identified by XDG_DATA_DIRS), and automatically add these applications to the KDE menu system.

Add to your system or personal profile:

```
export PATH=$PATH:/opt/kde-3.5.9/bin
export PKG_CONFIG_PATH=$PKG_CONFIG_PATH:/opt/kde-3.5.9/lib/pkgconfig
```

Add to your /etc/ld.so.conf:

```
cat >> /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"
# Begin kde addition to /etc/ld.so.conf

/opt/kde-3.5.9/lib

# End kde addition
EOF
```

Add to your /etc/man_db.conf:

```
cat >> /etc/man_db.conf << "EOF"
# Begin kde addition to man_db.conf

MANDATORY_MANPATH /opt/kde-3.5.9/man

# End kde addition to man_db.conf
EOF
```

Tip

If you prefer installing KDE in `/opt`, one trick to avoid the above configuration changes every time you install a new version is to replace `/opt/kde-3.5.9` with `/opt/kde` and to create a symlink from `/opt/kde-3.5.9` to `/opt/kde`.

```
ln -v -sf kde-3.5.9 /opt/kde
```

aRts-1.5.9

Introduction to aRts

The Analog Real-time Synthesizer (aRts) provides sound support for KDE and necessary libraries for kdelibs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/arts-1.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/arts-1.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 62a5e4d522314bab19288e4702480c93
- Download size: 951 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 30 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.3 SBU

aRts Dependencies

Required

Qt-3.3.8b and GLib-2.12.12

Recommended

libjpeg-6b

Optional

libvorbis-1.2.0, ALSA-1.0.13, Audio File-0.2.6, libmad-0.15.1b, EsounD-0.2.37, NAS-1.9, *MAS*, and *JACK*

Installation of aRts

Install aRts by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite that works with GCC-4.1.2.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$KDE_PREFIX`: This option tells the process to install the package in `$KDE_PREFIX`. aRts is installed here as it's required before installing KDE.

`--disable-debug`: This option causes the package to be compiled without debugging code.

`--disable-dependency-tracking`: This option speeds up one time builds.

Contents

Installed Programs: artsd, artswrapper, artsshell, artsplay, artsdsp, artscat, artscontrol, artsc-config, and mcopidl
Installed Libraries: aRts libraries
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of $KDE_PREFIX/: bin, include/arts, include/artsc, and lib/mcop

Short Descriptions

artsd is a daemon that provides access to the sound hardware resources.

artswrapper is a small wrapper program which simply sets real-time priority (running as `root`) and then executes **artsd** as a non-root user.

artsshell is intended as a utility to perform miscellaneous functions related to the sound server.

artsplay is a simple utility to play a sound file.

artsdsp provides an interim solution that allows most of legacy sound applications to run unchanged.

artscat is a simple utility to send raw audio data to the sound server.

artscontrol is a graphical utility for performing a number of tasks related to the sound server.

artsc-config is a utility to assist developers using the aRts C API.

mcopidl is the Interface Definition Language (IDL) file compiler for MCOP, the Multimedia Communication Protocol used by aRts.

`aRts Libraries` contains functions that support aRts programs.

To find out information about aRts and the various programs included in the package, see *The aRts Handbook*. For information in languages other then English, see the *KDE Documentation* and navigate to the aRts documentation in your language.

Kdelibs-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdelibs

This package includes programs and libraries that are central to the development and execution of a KDE program, as well as internationalization files for these libraries, miscellaneous HTML documentation, theme modules and regression tests.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdelibs-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdelibs-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 55e5f00874933d1a7ba7c95e369a205e
- Download size: 15.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 276 MB (additional 431 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 15 SBU (additional 1.25 SBU for API docs)

Kdelibs Dependencies

Required

Qt-3.3.8b

Recommended

aRts-1.5.9, libjpeg-6b, libart_lgpl-2.3.19, libxml2-2.6.31, libxslt-1.1.22, PCRE-7.6, Gamin-0.1.9, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, and libidn-0.6.14

Optional

LibTIFF-3.8.2, Aspell-0.60.5, CUPS-1.2.12, ALSA-1.0.13, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, *OpenEXR*, *JasPer*, *Lua* (version < 5.1), *mDNSResponder*, *LibThai*, *Hspell*, *libacl* (requires *libattr*), sudo-1.6.9p15, Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Run-Time Dependencies

The KDE libraries access other programs at run time. One additional package that has not been mentioned already is *pmount*. This enables auto-mounting of hotplugged devices at /media/[device_name] for any user without any fstab modification. It is needed to enable the full integration of KDE with HAL-0.5.9.1.

Installation of Kdelibs

Install kdelibs with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/kde \
            --disable-debug \
            --disable-dependency-tracking &&
LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$QTDIR/lib" make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**. This applies to all packages which can utilize Doxygen.

The **make apidox** command generates a lot of errors and warnings. In some cases it complains that Helvetica fonts are missing and substitutes a font that does not fit boxes properly. You can add the font by downloading the *URW Fonts* and unpacking them into `~/.fonts`. **fc-cache** should also be run to update the font properties on your system.

The documents generated are HTML and are found in `$KDE_PREFIX/share/doc/HTML/en/kdelibs-apidocs`.

This package does not come with a test suite that works with GCC-4.1.2.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$KDE_PREFIX`: This option tells the process to install the package in `$KDE_PREFIX`.

`--disable-debug`: This option causes the package to be compiled without debugging code.

`--disable-dependency-tracking`: This option speeds up one time builds.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/kde`: This option places configuration files in compliance with the *Filesystem Hierarchy Standard*. If you omit this parameter, the configuration files will be placed in `$KDE_PREFIX/etc` which may be desirable if you have multiple versions of KDE installed.

`LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$QTDIR/lib" make`: A bug in the kdelibs build system prevents Qt from being found by the Makefiles if Qt was installed in `/opt`. Setting LD_LIBRARY_PATH works around the problem.

Contents

Installed Programs:	Numerous KDE support programs: artsmessage, checkXML, cupsdconf, cupsdoprint, dcop, dcopclient, dcopfind, dcopidl, dcopidl2cpp, dcopidlng, dcopobject, dcopquit, dcopref, dcopserver, dcopserver_shutdown, dcopstart, filesharelist, fileshareset, imagetops, kab2kabc, kaddprinterwizard, kbuildsycoca, kcmshell, kconf_update, kconfig_compiler, kcookiejar, kde-config, kde-menu, kded, kdeinit, kdeinit_shutdown, kdeinit_wrapper, kdesu_stub, kdontchangethehostname, kdostartupconfig, kfile, kfmexec, kgrantpty, khotnewstuff, kinstalltheme, kio_http_cache_cleaner, kio_uiserver, kioexec, kioslave, klauncher, kmailservice, kpac_dhcp_helper, ksendbugmail, kshell, kstartupconfig, ksvgtopng, ktelnetservice, ktradertest, kunittestmodrunner, kwrapper, lnusertemp, make_driver_db_cups, make_driver_db_lpr, makekdewidgets, meinproc, preparetips, and start_kdeinit
Installed Libraries:	Numerous KDE libraries and helper modules
Installed Directories:	/etc/kde and the following subdirectories of $KDE_PREFIX/: include/{dnssd, dom, kabc, kate, kdeprint, kdesu, khexedit, kio, kjs, kmdi, kmediaplayer, knewstuff, kparts, kresources, ksettings, kspell2, ktexteditor, kunittest, libkmid}, lib/kde3, and share/{applications, apps, autostart, config, doc, emoticons, icons, mimelnk, services}

Short Descriptions

KDE Support Programs are essential support programs needed by other KDE applications.

KDE Libraries contain essential functions that are needed by KDE applications.

The number of programs and libraries installed by kdelibs prohibits an explanation of each one in this section. Instead, see the *KDE Documentation*.

Kdebase-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdebase

kdebase is the last mandatory package required for the K Desktop Environment. It provides various applications, infrastructure files and libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdebase-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdebase-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: c8c35389a238aa1b73e68ef5298eadf8
- Download size: 24.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 273 MB (additional 17 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 11 SBU (additional 8.4 SBU for API docs)

Kdebase Dependencies

Required

kdelibs-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libart_lgpl-2.3.19, libxml2-2.6.31, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, and JDK-6 Update 5

Optional

libusb-0.1.12, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, Samba-3.0.30, HAL-0.5.9.1 and D-Bus Qt3 Bindings-0.62, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, *krb4*, *OpenEXR*, *libraw1394*, *lm_sensors* (requires *Sysfs Utilities*), *mDNSResponder*, sudo-1.6.9p15, Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Run-Time Dependencies

Note that there are two additional packages you can install that are used at run-time for **konqueror** ioslave protocols. You can install the *Mtools* package to enable the “floppy” ioslave protocol. This will allow easy access to the floppy disk drives on your system. The *hfsplus* package can be installed to access HFS+ partitions on a Mac OS system using the “mac” ioslave.

One additional package that can be used at run time is PCI Utilities-2.2.3. This enables the KDE Info Center to use lspci for its "pci" info section.

Another package usable at run time is *htdig*. The enables **khelpcenter** to create a search index for the KDE application manuals.

Installation of Kdebase

Note

You should ensure a `nogroup` group exists on your system before performing the **configure** command, as kdebase installs a program (`$KDE_PREFIX/bin/kdesud`) with group ownership of `nogroup`.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install kdebase with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --sysconfdir=/etc/kde \
    --disable-debug --disable-dependency-tracking &&
LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$KDE_PREFIX/lib" make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$KDE_PREFIX/lib" make`: A bug in the kdebase build system prevents kdelibs from being found by the Makefiles when kdelibs is installed in `/opt`. Setting LD_LIBRARY_PATH works around the problem.

Configuring Kdebase

Configuration Information

There is no real configuration necessary for this package other than to ensure you follow the steps outlined in the last section of this chapter, the section called “Configuring the Core KDE Packages”.

Contents

Installed Programs:	appletproxy, drkonqi, extensionproxy, genkdmconf, kaccess, kappfinder, kapplymousetheme, kasbar, kate, kblankscrn.kss, kbookmarkmerger, kcheckpass, kcheckrunning, kcminit, kcminit_startup, kcontrol, kcontroledit, kdcop, kdebugdialog, kdeeject, kdeinstallktheme, kdepasswd, kdeprintfax, kdesktop, kdesktop_lock, kdesu, kdesud, kdialog, kdm, kdm_config, kdm_greet, kdmctl, keditbookmarks, keditfiletype, kfind, kfmclient, kfontinst, kfontview, khc_docbookdig.pl, khc_htdig.pl, khc_htsearch.pl, khc_indexbuilder, khc_mansearch.pl, khelpcenter, khotkeys, kicker, kinfocenter (link to kcontrol), kio_media_mounthelper, kio_system_documenthelper, kjobviewer, klipper, klocaldomainurifilterhelper, kmenuedit, knetattach, kompmgr, konqueror, konsole, kpager, kpersonalizer, kpm, kprinter, krandom.kss, krandrtray, krdb, kreadconfig, krootimage, ksmserver, ksplash, ksplashsimple, kstart, ksysguard, ksysguardd, ksystraycmd, ktip, ktrash, kwebdesktop, kwin, kwin_killer_helper, kwin_rules_dialog, kwrite, kwriteconfig, kxkb, nspluginscan, nspluginviewer, and startkde
Installed Libraries:	Numerous KDE support libraries, helper modules, and kioslaves
Installed Directories:	/etc/xdg/menus/applications-merged and the following subdirectories of $KDE_PREFIX/: include/{kate, ksgrd, ksplash, kwin}, lib/kconf_update_bin, share/{applnk, apps/{too many to list}, config, config.kcfg, desktop-directories, doc/kdm, fonts, /mimelnk/{fonts, media, print}, services/{searchproviders, useragentstrings}, sounds, templates, wallpapers, and /var/lib/kdm

Short Descriptions

kate	is a programmer's text editor for KDE.
kcontrol	is the KDE Control Center.
kdebugdialog	is a dialog box for managing diagnostic messages at runtime.
kdesu	is a graphical front end for the Unix **su** command.
kdm	is the KDE display manager (a replacement for **xdm**).
kfind	is a utility to find files.
khelpcenter	is the KDE help tool.
kicker	is the KDE control panel.
kinfocenter	provides a centralized and convenient overview of your KDE and system settings.
kioslaves	are support modules designed to be intimately familiar with a certain protocol, so that a standard interface (most often these are used by **konqueror**) can be used to get at data from any number of places. Examples are the http and ftp kioslaves, which will retrieve data from an http or ftp server respectively.
klipper	is a clipboard utility.
kmenuedit	is a utility to rearrange or add items to the K-menu.
konqueror	is a filesystem and web browser.
konsole	is a highly configurable X terminal emulator.
kpager	provides a thumbnail view of all virtual desktops.
kprinter	is the printing module in KDE. It manages the actual printing from KDE applications. It handles print job administration and handles printer and print system management.
ksplash	is a splash screen that shows the progress of an application that is loading.
ksysguard	is a network enabled task manager and system monitor application, with the additional functionality of **top**.
kwrite	is a text editor for KDE.
kxkb	is a keyboard layout switching utility based on the X11 xkb extension.

Configuring the Core KDE Packages

Back up your existing `~/.xinitrc` file and create a new `.xinitrc` file to start KDE:

```
echo "exec startkde" > ~/.xinitrc
```

If you have D-BUS-1.0.2 installed, you can start the D-BUS session daemon here as well. Starting the session daemon here has the added bonus that it will exit when you log out of your KDE session. If you wish to start the daemon here, use the following command instead of the one shown above:

```
echo "exec dbus-launch --exit-with-session startkde" >> ~/.xinitrc
```

Note

Check the `~/.xinitrc` file and ensure you have no other window managers or other X applications mentioned before KDE.

If you installed the desktop-file-utils-0.13 package, ensure the `XDG_DATA_DIRS` and `XDG_CONFIG_DIRS` environment variables are configured properly as explained in that package and update the MIME-type application database (as `root`):

```
update-desktop-database
```

Ensure all libraries can be found with (as `root`):

```
ldconfig
```

At this point you can bring up KDE with:

```
startx
```

Chapter 27. KDE Additional Packages

Each of the packages in this chapter depend on the base KDE installation procedures, but each is an independent group of programs that can be optionally installed. Few users will want to install every package, but instead review and install only the ones desired.

Kdeadmin-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdeadmin

Kdeadmin provides several KDE clients useful for managing a system. Clients include programs for managing users, initialization files, cron, and network connections.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeadmin-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeadmin-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e6607ea27b332616d20f4564656cb885
- Download size: 2.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 25 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.1 SBU

Kdeadmin Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 and *LILO*

Run-Time Dependencies

kcron requires a cron implementation, such as Vixie Cron, at run time. It is not compatible with Fcron-3.0.3.

Installation of Kdeadmin

Install kdeadmin with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	kcron, kdat, kpackage, ksysv, and kuser
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

kcron is a task scheduler.

kdat is a tar-based tape archiver.

kpackage is a package manager.

ksysv is a Sys V-Init editor.

kuser is a graphical user manager.

Kdenetwork-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdenetwork

Kdenetwork provides several KDE applications useful in a networking environment. Applications include clients for chat, PPP, news, instant messages, and similar programs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdenetwork-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdenetwork-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0ec1d4ccd550510821a622eb91b893e8
- Download size: 9.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 194 MB (additional 26 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 12 SBU (additional 0.2 SBU for API docs

Kdenetwork Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, libxslt-1.1.22, and OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

PPP-2.4.4, XMMS-1.2.10, Graphviz-2.12, Doxygen-1.5.2, Wireless Tools-28, Speex-1.0.5, ALSA-1.0.13, *gsmlib*, *Meanwhile*, *OpenSLP*, *libgadu*, and *Valgrind*

Installation of Kdenetwork

Install kdenetwork with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring Kdenetwork

Config Files

`/etc/lisarc` and `~/.lisarc`

Configuration Information

To utilize the LAN Browser of **konqueror** you will need to create the `/etc/lisarc` file and start the **lisa** daemon. Create `/etc/lisarc` by filling out the information in the "Guided LISa Setup" section of the "LISa Daemon" tab on the "Control Center" — "Internet & Network" — "Local Network Browsing" dialog box.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/lisa` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-lisa
```

There is no explicit configuration for the rest of the kdenetwork package, however some individual programs need to be set up with user information.

Contents

Installed Programs: kdict, kget, knewsticker, kopete, kpf, kppp, krdc, krfb, ksirc, ktalkd, kwifimanager, and lisa
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

kdict is a graphical client for the Dictionary Server Protocol (DICT).

kget allows you to group downloads.

knewsticker is a news applet for the KDE Application Launcher Panel.

kopete is KDE's multi-protocol instant messenger client.

kpf allows you to share files over a network.

kppp is a dial-up utility.

krdc is a client application that allows you to view or even control the desktop session on another machine that is running a compatible (VNC) server.

krfb is a server application that allows you to share your current session with a user on another machine, who can use a VNC client to view or even control the desktop.

ksirc is a chat client.

ktalkd is an enhanced **talk** daemon—a program to handle incoming **talk** requests, announce them and allow you to respond to them using a talk client.

kwifimanager is used to configure and monitor wireless LAN cards.

lisa is intended to provide a kind of network neighborhood, but only relying on the TCP/IP protocol stack.

Kdepim-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdepim

Kdepim provides several KDE programs for managing personal information. Programs include a contact manager, calendar, mail utilities, newsreader, X.509 certificat manager, and sticky notes.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdepim-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdepim-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ba27b06599556c572a26f03608471ee2
- Download size: 14.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 281 MB (additional 251 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 22 SBU (additional 1 SBU for API docs)

Kdepim Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8, and OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Optional

kdeaccessibility-3.5.9, kdemultimedia-3.5.9, Cyrus SASL-2.1.22, pilot-link-0.12.2, *GPGME* (requires GnuPG-2.0.8), *OpenSync*, *libmal*, *gnokii*, *BlueZ*, *Boost*, Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Installation of Kdepim

Install kdepim with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
sed -i "s@ \*/@&\n#define HAVE_FOPENCOOKIE@" \
    libkdenetwork/libgpgme-copy/{assuan,gpgme}/funopen.c &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: akregator, kaddressbook, kalarm, kandy, karm, kitchensync, kleopatra, kmail, knode, knotes, konsolekalendar, kontact, korganizer, korn, kpilot, ktnef, kwatchgnupg, and supporting programs
Installed Libraries: Numerous kdepim specific libraries
Installed Directories: Numerous subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX/{include,share}

Short Descriptions

akregator is a program to read RSS and other online news feeds.

kaddressbook is the KDE address book.

kalarm is a system to provide reminder messages.

kandy is a program to synchronize mobile phone numbers.

karm is a personal time tracker.

kitchensync is the universal syncing tool and framework for kde.

kleopatra is a tool for managing X.509 certificates in a GpgSM keybox and for retrieving certificates from LDAP servers.

kmail is KDE's email client.

knode is the KDE newsreader.

knotes is a popup notes utility.

konsolekalendar is a command line interface to KDE calendars.

kontact is the integrated solution to personal information management (PIM) needs.

korganizer is a personal calendar/todo system.

korn is a KDE mail checker that has the capabilities to dock itself to **kicker**.

kpilot is a program to synchronize a Palm-Pilot.

ktnef allows handling mail attachments using the TNEF format. Those attachments are usually found in mails coming from Microsoft® mail servers and embed the mail properties as well as the actual attachments.

kwatchgnupg is simpleGnuPG log viewer.

Kdemultimedia-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdemultimedia

Kdemultimedia provides several KDE programs to work with sound. Programs include applications for a jukebox, a soundcard mixer, a midi and karaoke player, and a recording application for aRts.

In this version of Kdemultimedia, some of the functionality provided by the package has been moved into a separate project named Akode. In order for Kdemultimedia to provide the removed functionality, you must install the Akode package first. Instructions to install Akode follow. If you wish to skip the Akode installation, go straight to the Kdemultimedia Instructions.

Akode-2.0.2

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.kde-apps.org/CONTENT/content-files/30375-akode-2.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/a/30375-akode-2.0.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 659ced0c9c735cb3e55b9138ff02342c
- Download size: 462 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Reqiured patch (for FFmpeg support): *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/akode-2.0.2-FFmpeg_fixes-1.patch*

Akode Dependencies

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, FLAC-1.2.1, Speex-1.0.5, libmad-0.15.1b, ALSA-1.0.13, libvorbis-1.2.0, *Secret Rabbit Code* (a.k.a. libsamplerate), *PulseAudio*, *JACK*, and FFmpeg-svn_20070606 (support is experimental)

Installation of Akode

Install Akode by issuing the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --without-ffmpeg \
    --disable-debug --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--without-ffmpeg`: This option disables the experimental FFmpeg support in Akode, as the build fails if it is enabled. You can install the patch listed above and remove this switch to enable the experimental FFmpeg support, however, the functionality of Akode built with FFmpeg support has not been tested by the BLFS editors. To install the patch, issue the following command before beginning the build:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../akode-2.0.2-FFmpeg_fixes-1.patch
```

Resuming the Kdemultimedia Instructions

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdemultimedia-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdemultimedia-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: fdfafe38d2c7e3019dafc80c177add15
- Download size: 6.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 125 MB (additional 1 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 9.8 SBU (additional 0.2 SBU for API docs)

Kdemultimedia Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and ALSA-1.0.13

Optional

Akode-2.0.2, CDParanoia-III-9.8, LAME-3.97, Audio File-0.2.6, libvorbis-1.2.0, xine Libraries-1.1.12, FLAC-1.2.1 (built with libogg-1.1.3 support), GStreamer-0.10.13, *Theora*, *TagLib*, *TunePimp* (requires libmusicbrainz-2.1.5), Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Installation of Kdemultimedia

Install kdemultimedia with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --sysconfdir=/etc/kde \
    --disable-debug --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: artsbuilder, artscontrol, juk, kaboodle, kaudiocreator, kmid, kmix, kmixctrl, krec, kscd, midisend, mpeglibartsplay, noatun, workman2cddb.pl, yaf-cdda, yaf-mpgplay, yaf-splay, yaf-tplay, yaf-vorbis, and yaf-yuv
Installed Libraries: Numerous kdemultimedia specific libraries
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX: include/{libkcddb, mpeglib, noatun}, lib/mcop/Noatun, and share/apps/{too many to list}

Short Descriptions

artsbuilder is a tool to create new structures of small connected aRts modules.
juk is a jukebox, tagger, and music collection manager.
kaboodle is a multimedia player.
kaudiocreator is a front-end tool for ripping audio CDs and encoding the wav files.
kmid is a midi/karaoke player.
kmix is a sound mixer.
krec is a recording frontend for aRts.
kscd is a CD player.
noatun is another multimedia player.

Kdegraphics-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdegraphics

Kdegraphics provides KDE programs to manage the video display and graphical output. Applications include PDF, DVI, and Postscript viewers, an application to adjust monitor gamma correction, a 3D modeling application to generate POV-Ray scenes, and a scanner application.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdegraphics-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdegraphics-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3d75e27180573a4e077e0245055891a5
- Download size: 7.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 150 MB (additional 37 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 7.5 SBU (additional 0.6 SBU for API docs)

Kdegraphics Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and libart_lgpl-2.3.19

Optional

LibTIFF-3.8.2, *Imlib* (not recommended: obsolete, abandoned upstream, *buggy*, needed only for the **kuickshow** image viewer, to which **kview** is a better alternative), little cms-1.16, Poppler-0.5.4 (`libpoppler-qt.so` must have been built), SANE-1.0.18, teTeX-3.0, FriBidi-0.10.8, *libgphoto2*, *t1lib*, *OpenEXR*, *libpaper*, *KADMOS* (a commercial OCR engine), Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Run-Time Dependencies

The **kooka** utility is a scanning and OCR program. In order for **kooka** to utilize the OCR capabilities, you must install an OCR engine. **kooka** provides full OCR support using the *KADMOS* and *GOCR* engines and partial support using the *Ocrad* engine.

The **kghostview** program requires a ghostscript interpreter from AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 to process PS or PDF files.

The **kpovmodeler** program requires *POV-Ray* to render 3D scenes.

Installation of Kdegraphics

Install kdegraphics with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	kcolorchooser, kcoloredit, kdvi, kfax, kfaxview, kghostview, kiconedit, kolourpaint, kooka, kpdf, kpovmodeler, kruler, ksnapshot, kuickshow, kview, kviewshell, mrmlsearch, printnodetest, svgdisplay, and xf86gammacfg
Installed Libraries:	kio_kamera and several other kdegraphics specific libraries and support modules
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX: include/{svg, kviewshell, libtext2path-0.1}, share/applnk/Graphics, share/apps/{too many to list}, and share/config/magic

Short Descriptions

kcolorchooser	is a color chooser for a given pallette.
kcoloredit	is a color pallette editor.
kdvi	is a DVI viewer.
kfax	is a FAX viewer.
kfaxview	is a FAX previewer used with **kviewshell**.
kghostview	is a PS/PDF viewer.
kiconedit	is an icon editor.
kolourpaint	is a paint program.
kooka	is a raster image scan program.
kpdf	is a PDF viewer.
kpovmodeler	is a graphical 3D modeler, which can generate scenes for *POV-Ray*.
kruler	is a screen ruler.
ksnapshot	is a screen capture program.
kuickshow	is an image viewer.
kview	is another image viewer.
kviewshell	is a generic framework for the KDE viewer applications.
xf86gammacfg	is a simple tool for monitor gamma correction.
kio_kamera	is an ioslave that allows you to view and download images from a digital camera using the **`kamera:/`** URL in **konqueror**.

Kdeutils-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdeutils

Kdeutils provides KDE programs for miscellaneous tasks. Programs include a calculator, a note taker, a basic editor, a floppy disk manager, and a binary editor.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeutils-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeutils-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: dbe5ddff57141f27778601df5571e182
- Download size: 3.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 64 MB (additional 8 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 3.7 SBU (additional 0.2 SBU for API docs)

Kdeutils Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and GMP-4.2.2 (required for KCalc)

Optional

Net-SNMP, *tpctl* (for Thinkpad support), Python-2.5.2, XMMS-1.2.10, Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Run-Time Dependencies

Several programs included in kdeutils are frontends for other software, and so require these external programs to be present at run time. **kgpg** requires GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8, **kdessh** requires OpenSSH-4.7p1, while **irkick** requires *LIRC*. The **ark** program will require appropriate utilities to handle various archives, including Zip-2.32, UnZip-5.52, JDK-6 Update 5 (for the **jar** program), Unrar-3.7.8, *rar* (binary only shareware), *p7zip*, *zoo*, and *ncompress*.

Installation of Kdeutils

Install kdeutils with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	ark, irkick, kcalc, kcharselect, kdessh, kdf, kedit, kfloppy, kgpg, khexedit, kjots, klaptop_acpi_helper, klaptop_check, kregexpeditor, ktimer, kwalletmanager, kwikdisk, and superkaramba
Installed Libraries:	Several kdeutils specific libraries
Installed Directories:	Several subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX/share

Short Descriptions

ark	is an archiving tool.
irkick	is the infrastructure for KDE's Infrared Remote Control functionality; **irkick** is the server component of that infrastructure.
kcalc	is a scientific calculator.
kcharselect	is a character selector applet.
kdessh	is a graphical interface to OpenSSH-4.7p1
kdf	is a disk usage viewer.
kedit	is a text editor.
kfloppy	is a floppy formatter.
kgpg	a simple graphical interface for GnuPG-1.4.7.
khexedit	is a binary editor.
kjots	is a note taker.
kregexpeditor	is an editor for editing regular expressions in a graphical style (in contrast to the ASCII syntax).
ktimer	is a task scheduler.
kwalletmanager	provides a secure way to manage passwords.
superkaramba	is a tool to create interactive widgets on a KDE desktop.

Kdeedu-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdeedu

Kdeedu provides KDE programs useful in learning. Programs include a touch typing tutor, a program to help revise/teach Latin, a desktop planetarium, an application to study Spanish verbforms, and the classic hangman game for children.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeedu-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeedu-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: cbdabe916ce6fa300f8dab972c5cb4a4
- Download size: 29.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 205 MB
- Estimated build time: 6.5 SBU

Kdeedu Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

libusb-0.1.12, *Boost.Python*, *OCaml*, and *FaCiLe module for OCaml*.

Installation of Kdeedu

Install kdeedu with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	flashkard, kalzium, kbruch, keduca, khangman, kig, kiten, klettres, kmathtool, kmessedwords, kmplot, kpercentage, kstars, ktouch, kverbos, and kvoctrain
Installed Libraries:	Several kdeedu specific libraries
Installed Directories:	Several subdirectories of $KDE_PREFIX/share

Short Descriptions

kalzium	is a program which shows you the Periodic System of Elements.
kbruch	is a small program to generate tasks with fractions.
keduca	is flash card application, which allows you to make interactive form based tests..
khangman	is the classical hangman game for children, adapted for KDE.
kig	is a KDE application for Interactive Geometry.
kiten	is a Japanese reference/study tool for KDE.
klettres	is an alphabet tutor (French).
kmessedwords	is a simple mind-training word game.
kmplot	is a mathematical function plotter for KDE.
kpercentage	is a small math application that will help pupils to improve their skills in calculating percentages.
kstars	is a desktop planetarium.
ktouch	is a touch typing tutor.
kverbos	is an application specially designed to study Spanish verb forms.
kvoctrain	is a vocabulary trainer.

Kdeaccessibility-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdeaccessibility

Kdeaccessibility provides KDE programs to aid handicapped users. Programs include a screen magnifier, a text to speech plugin service to allow an application to speak using the DCOP interface, and an application for computer speech for mute users.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeaccessibility-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeaccessibility-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 79c7fa53ec60ad51fbdb16aac56d85a1
- Download size: 8.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 57 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.1 SBU

Kdeaccessibility Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and ALSA-1.0.13

Optional

Akode-2.0.2

Run-Time Dependencies

Several KDE accessibility programs access other programs at run time for rendering speech from text. These include FreeTTS-1.2.1, *Festival*, *Festival Lite*, *Epos*, or *MBROLA* with optionally *Txt2pho*.

Installation of Kdeaccessibility

Install kdeaccessibility with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	kmag, kmousetool, and kmouth
Installed Libraries:	kdeaccessibility support libraries
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

kmag is a screen magnifier for KDE.

kmousetool is a utility which clicks the mouse whenever the mouse cursor pauses briefly.

kmouth is an application that enables persons that cannot speak to let their computers speak.

Kdetoys-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdetoys

Kdetoys includes KDE applications for a world clock, an applet showing the phases of the moon, and the ability to track weather stations.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdetoys-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdetoys-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 10fd55e004a582f87eed6796811bb3b8
- Download size: 3.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.9 SBU

Kdetoys Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and libxml2-2.6.31

Installation of Kdetoys

Install kdetoys with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	amor, kmoon, kodo, kteatime, ktux, kweather, and kworldclock
Installed Libraries:	kdetoys support libraries
Installed Directories:	Support subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX/share

Short Descriptions

amor	Amusing Misuse of Resources.
kmoon	is a Moon phase indicator.
kodo	measures your desktop mileage.

kteatime times your tea brewing.

ktux small Tux crossing stars.

kworldclock shows which parts of the world are currently experiencing daylight, and which parts are currently in night. It also shows the current time in a range of cities around the world.

Kdegames-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdegames

Kdegames provides many interesting games.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdegames-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdegames-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 472385f21a692270fb5643d7617c7ff3
- Download size: 11.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 98 MB (additional 13 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 3.2 SBU (additional 0.6 SBU for API docs)

Kdegames Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

Graphviz-2.12 and Doxygen-1.5.2

Installation of Kdegames

Install kdegames with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	a compilation of various games
Installed Libraries:	Support libraries for kdegames
Installed Directories:	Subdirectories of $KDE_PREFIX/{include,share}

Kdeartwork-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdeartwork

Kdeartwork provides additional KDE themes, screensavers, sounds, wallpapers, widget styles, and window styles.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeartwork-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeartwork-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ec526eba38421fd3b143682b8d683c86
- Download size: 16.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 99 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.5 SBU

Kdeartwork Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and libart_lgpl-2.3.19

Optional

XScreenSaver-5.03

Installation of Kdeartwork

Install kdeartwork with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Objects:	additional themes, screensavers, sounds, backgrounds, and widget styles for KDE
Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Kdeaddons-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdeaddons

Kdeaddons provides additional plugins for konqueror, kate, and kicker.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeaddons-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdeaddons-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: eaa3832a25b483d1a9613f75991c3d7b
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 48 MB
- Estimated build time: 5.7 SBU

Kdeaddons Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

kdenetwork-3.5.9, kdemultimedia-3.5.9, kdepim-3.5.9, kdegames-3.5.9, XMMS-1.2.10, and SDL-1.2.11

Installation of Kdeaddons

Install kdeaddons with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	Miscellaneous KDE support programs
Installed Libraries:	Additional plugins, libraries, and scripts for KDE applications
Installed Directories:	None

Kde-i18n-3.5.9

Introduction to Kde-i18n

Kde-i18n is a set of internationalization packages to customize KDE for different languages and locales around the world.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kde-i18n/*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kde-i18n/*
- Download MD5 sum: *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/MD5SUMS*
- Download size: 789 KB to 29 MB (average is about 3 MB)
- Estimated disk space required: varies
- Estimated build time: varies

Download Details

KDE has 52 separate internationalization packages in the form of:

```
kde-i18n-<xx>-3.5.9.tar.bz2
```

where the *<xx>* is a two to five letter code for the country covered. Download the package(s) you need from the directories above.

Kde-i18n Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libxml2-2.6.31

Installation of Kde-i18n

Install kde-i18n with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring Kde-i18n

Configuration Information

To use translated programs, select Control Center —> Personalization —> Country & Language —> Language in your K Desktop Environment.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Internationalization support for KDE
Installed Directories: None

Chapter 28. KDE Software and WEB Development Packages

These KDE applications are generally of interest to software or WEB developers. General users can skip them without a loss of functionality.

Kdesdk-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdesdk

Kdesdk provides several applications useful for developers. Programs include a version control system front-end for CVS, a program to view the differences between files, a UML Modeller, and a profile data visualization tool.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdesdk-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdesdk-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: fd86abfe0ac7c5af61b15eb5367d0399
- Download size: 5.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 112 MB
- Estimated build time: 6.7 SBU

Kdesdk Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, Subversion-1.4.4, libxml2-2.6.31, and libxslt-1.1.22

Optional

kdepim-3.5.9

Run-Time Dependencies

Valgrind and CVS-1.11.22 are needed at run time for there respective frontends, **kcachegrind** and **cervisia**

Installation of Kdesdk

Install kdesdk with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	cervisia, kbabel, kcachegrind, kompare, and umbrello
Installed Libraries:	Several kdesdk specific libraries
Installed Directories:	Several subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX/{include,share}

Short Descriptions

cervisia provides a graphical view of CVS.

kbabel is a suite of an advanced PO file editor comprising **kbabel**, a multi functional **catalogmanager** and a dictionary for translators **kbabeldict**.

kcachegrind is a KDE frontend for **cachegrind**, part of Valgrind.

kompare is a program to view the differences between files.

umbrello is a UML modelling diagram tool.

Kdevelop-3.5.1

Introduction to Kdevelop

Kdevelop provides an Integrated Development Environment (IDE) to be used for a wide variety of programming tasks.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdevelop-3.5.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdevelop-3.5.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 80d2216a0089fe142735d34ae8de6a0c
- Download size: 9.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 187 MB (additional 23 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 15 SBU (additional 0.2 SBU for API docs)

Kdevelop Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, kdesdk-3.5.9, libxml2-2.6.31, and the apidox from kdelibs-3.5.9 (if building API documentation).

Optional

Python-2.5.2, *DocBase*, Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2

Run-Time Dependencies

KDevelop can make use of a large number of external compilers or interpreters for supported languages, version control systems, build tools , and debuggers at run time. Refer to *http://www.kdevelop.org/index.html?filename=3.5/requirements.html* and the *KDevelop User Manual* to find out if your development environment is supported.

Installation of Kdevelop

Install kdevelop with:

```
sed -i -e 's/ kdevutil$//' buildtools/lib/widgets/Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chown -v -R root:root $KDE_PREFIX/kdevbdb
```

If you created the API documentation, install it with:

```
make install-apidox
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e 's/ kdevutil$//' buildtools/lib/widgets/Makefile.in: Remove a duplicate entry on a line in the `Makefile` that causes the build of the API documentation to fail.

chown -v -R root:root $KDE_PREFIX/kdevbdb: If kdevelop is built by any user other than `root` the installed Berkeley-DB files will have incorrect ownership. This command changes the ownership to root:root.

Contents

Installed Programs:	kdevelop and supporting programs
Installed Libraries:	Supporting kdevelop libraries
Installed Directories:	$KDE_PREFIX/kdevbdb and supporting subdirectoies in $KDE_PREFIX/{include,share}

Short Descriptions

kdevelop is an Integrated Development Environment to be used for a wide variety of programming tasks in many programming languages.

Kdewebdev-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdewebdev

Kdewebdev includes KDE based programmers' utilities to generate GUI dialogs, a Web IDE, a stylesheet debugger, and a utility to search and replace strings.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdewebdev-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdewebdev-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e95d1fbb698ec76966abfa5bdf96bd5e
- Download size: 6.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 107 MB
- Estimated build time: 5.6 SBU

Kdewebdev Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and libxslt-1.1.22

Optional

kdesdk-3.5.9

Run-Time Dependencies

The Quanta application included in kdewebdev can use several other utilities at run time. HTML Tidy-cvs_20070326 can be used to check the validity of HTML documents. *Gubed* is useful for debugging PHP scripts. GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8 can be used for checking digital signatures. Kompare, from kdesdk-3.5.9 can be used to view changes to files modified outside of Quanta. Cervisia, also from kdesdk-3.5.9, is useful for interacting with CVS.

Installation of Kdewebdev

Install kdewebdev with:

```
./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: kxsldbg and quanta
Installed Libraries: kdewebdev specific libraries
Installed Directories: Several subdirectories in $KDE_PREFIX/share

Short Descriptions

kxsldbg is a GUI front-end to **xsldbg**, the XSLT debugger.

quanta is a web development tool that strives to be neutral and transparent to all markup languages, while supporting popular web-based scripting languages, CSS, and other emerging W3C recommendations.

Kdebindings-3.5.9

Introduction to Kdebindings

The kdebindings provides the ability to write KDE applications in a variety of languages including Ruby, Perl, Python, Java, JavaScript, C#, and Smoke. For details see *http://developer.kde.org/language-bindings/*

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdebindings-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/3.5.9/src/kdebindings-3.5.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ba780920f6b810a30a61b1ffa888706b
- Download size: 5.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 490 MB
- Estimated build time: 18 SBU

Kdebindings Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libxml2-2.6.31, and libxslt-1.1.22

Optional

GLib-1.2.10, GTK+-1.2.10, Python-2.5.2, Ruby-1.8.6-p111, JDK-6 Update 5, SeaMonkey-1.1.9, *QScintilla*, *Mono*, *DotGNU Portable.NET*, and *Rotor*

Installation of Kdebindings

Note: If KDE is installed in `/opt/kde-3.5.9`, you'll need to make a modification before the build using the following command:

```
sed -i -e 's@/usr@/opt/kde-3.5.9@' \
    python/pykde/configure.py
```

Install kdebindings with:

```
sed -i -e '/configure.*pyqt/s/-c//' \
    -e '/configure.*pykde/s/-c/-i/' python/Makefile.in
sed -i 's%echo "yes" | @PYTHON@ configure.py%& -y qt-mt%' python/Makefile.in
DO_NOT_COMPILE="smoke" ./configure --prefix=$KDE_PREFIX --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e '/configure.*pyqt/s/-c//' -e '/configure.*pykde/s/-c/-i/' python/Makefile.in : Remove a switch that causes concatenation of multiple files for compilation. This fix reduces build time by a factor of five.

sed -i 's%echo "yes" | @PYTHON@ configure.py%& -y qt-mt%' python/Makefile.in: Specifies that the `libqt-mt.so` library should be used to build the pyqt bindings. **configure.py** will fail if it finds both `libqt-mt.so` and `libqt.so`.

DO_NOT_COMPILE="smoke" ./configure: Disables the building of the smoke module of kdebindings, as the build is currently broken and no workaround has been found.

Contents

Installed Programs:	Several support programs for software development
Installed Libraries:	KDE bindings for various programming languages
Installed Directories:	Subdirectories of /usr/lib and $KDE_PREFIX/share

Part VIII. GNOME

Introduction to GNOME

This chapter presents the instructions to install a complete GNOME-2.18.3 desktop environment. The order of the installed packages follows the build order defined by the GNOME development team and has been thoroughly tested by the BLFS team.

The installation of GNOME-2.18.3 is a large undertaking and one we would like to see you complete with the least amount of stress. One of the first goals in this installation is to protect your previously installed software, especially if you are testing GNOME on your machine. GNOME-2.18 packages utilize the `--prefix=option` passed to **configure**, so you will use that and an environment variable (`GNOME_PREFIX`) to add flexibility to the installation.

To install GNOME as your desktop of choice, it is recommended that you install using `--prefix=/usr`. If you are not sure that you are going to keep the GNOME installation, or you think you will update to the newest releases as they become available, you should install with `--prefix=/opt/gnome-2.18.3`. Setting the environment variable and the additional edits required by the second option are covered in the Pre-Installation Configuration section.

If you choose the second option, removal of GNOME-2.18.3 is as easy as removing the edits from the pre-installation page and issuing the following command (you may need to become the `root` user):

```
rm -rf /opt/gnome-2.18.3
```

If your system was completely built per LFS and BLFS instructions, you have a very good chance of using GNOME-2.18.3 after your first installation. If you are a typical LFS user, you have made modifications to the instructions along the way knowing that you have to take those modifications into account on future installations. You should have no problems integrating GNOME-2.18.3 into your unique setup, but you will have to install well over 50 packages before you can run GNOME through any testing (assuming your windowing system is preinstalled and tested). You should anticipate that you will be rebuilding GNOME at least once to make adjustments for your setup.

Alternate Installation Methods

As was previously mentioned, building a GNOME desktop from sources is a significant project. Some may find it too tedious or time-consuming to perform a full installation following the BLFS book. You may wish to review the automated methods mentioned in the GNOME-2.18 *Release Notes* (they are a bit dated). Note that using any other method to install GNOME-2.18.3 other than using the BLFS instructions cannot be supported by the BLFS team. Alternate methods are only mentioned as a courtesy to builders who would like to build GNOME from sources but do not have the time/desire/patience/whatever to follow the BLFS book.

Chapter 29. GNOME Core Packages

This section contains required elements of the GNOME environment to display a functional desktop. The packages are separated into “Platform” and “Desktop” sections in the same manner as the sources are distributed on the GNOME download mirrors.

Caution

The BLFS team recommends that you carefully evaluate the optional dependencies listed for each of the core GNOME packages. You may lose desired functionality if you don't install an optional dependency before the package that lists the dependency, even if you later install it.

Pre-installation Configuration

Set an environment variable to resolve the prefix destination.

If GNOME is your desktop of choice:

```
export GNOME_PREFIX=/usr
```

If you want to try-out GNOME, or install it in an easy-to-remove location:

Note

You may wish to create a symbolic link to the actual versioned directory using a non-versioned name. This has the advantage of an easier path to type in all the changes below and also makes it easy to point to a different/newer version of GNOME without changing all the edits below. If you wish to use a non-versioned name in the changes below, issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /opt/gnome-2.18.3 &&
ln -v -s gnome-2.18.3 /opt/gnome
```

If you created the symbolic link, change all instances of `/opt/gnome-2.18.3` to `/opt/gnome` in the instructions below.

```
export GNOME_PREFIX=/opt/gnome-2.18.3
```

The try-out group will also need to make all the following configuration changes:

Add to your system or personal profile:

```
export PATH=$PATH:/opt/gnome-2.18.3/bin
export PKG_CONFIG_PATH=$PKG_CONFIG_PATH:/opt/gnome-2.18.3/lib/pkgconfig
export PKG_CONFIG_PATH=$PKG_CONFIG_PATH:/opt/gnome-2.18.3/share/pkgconfig
export GNOME_LIBCONFIG_PATH=/usr/lib:/opt/gnome-2.18.3/lib
```

Add to your `/etc/ld.so.conf`:

```
cat >> /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"
# Begin gnome addition to /etc/ld.so.conf

/opt/gnome-2.18.3/lib

# End gnome addition
EOF
```

Add to your `/etc/man_db.conf`:

```
cat >> /etc/man_db.conf << "EOF"
# Begin gnome addition to man_db.conf

MANDATORY_MANPATH /opt/gnome-2.18.3/share/man

# End gnome addition to man_db.conf
EOF
```

Tip

Remember to execute **ldconfig** as the `root` user after installation of libraries to update the linker's library cache.

ORBit2-2.14.7

Introduction to ORBit2

The ORBit2 package contains a high-performance CORBA Object Request Broker. This allows programs to send requests and receive replies from other programs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/ORBit2/2.14/ORBit2-2.14.7.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/ORBit2/2.14/ORBit2-2.14.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3440c44aaef14dd96e4ccd7ce22a7e6e
- Download size: 729 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 34 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

ORBit2 Dependencies

Required

libIDL-0.8.8

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8 and OpenSSL-0.9.8g

Installation of ORBit2

Install ORBit2 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$GNOME_PREFIX \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$GNOME_PREFIX`: This is the base installation for GNOME-2 from which all future package installations will receive their prefix parameter. Be sure that `$GNOME_PREFIX` is set for this install or globally to your install directory as described in the introduction of this Chapter.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs: ior-decode-2, linc-cleanup-sockets, orbit-idl-2, orbit2-config and typelib-dump
Installed Libraries: libname-server-2.a, libORBit-2.{so,a}, libORBit-imodule-2.{so,a}, libORBitCosNaming-2.{so,a}, and Everything_module.{so,a}
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/orbit-2.0, lib/orbit-2.0 and share/{gtk-doc/html/ORBit2, idl/orbit-2.0}

Short Descriptions

`libORBit-2.{so,a}` is the CORBA API.

libbonobo-2.18.0

Introduction to libbonobo

The libbonobo package contains `libbonobo` libraries. This is a component and compound document system for GNOME-2.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libbonobo/2.18/libbonobo-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libbonobo/2.18/libbonobo-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 8f0676e63420abf622f799cdd24ed9cc
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 38 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

libbonobo Dependencies

Required

ORBit2-2.14.7, libxml2-2.6.31, popt-1.10.4, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

X Window System, intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libbonobo

Install libbonobo by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/bonobo \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/bonobo`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/bonobo` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	activation-client, bonobo-slay, echo-client-2, bonobo-activation-run-query, bonobo-activation-server, and bonobo-activation-sysconf
Installed Libraries:	libbonobo-2.{so,a}, libbonobo-activation.{so,a}, ORBit-2 bonobo module, bonobo servers, and libmoniker_std_2.{so,a} bonobo library
Installed Directories:	/etc/gnome/2.18.3/bonobo-activation and the following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/{bonobo-activation-2.0,libbonobo-2.0}, lib/{bonobo{,-2.0},libbonobo}, and share/{gtk-doc/html/{bonobo-activation,libbonobo}, idl/bonobo-{,activation-}2.0}

Short Descriptions

`libbonobo-2.{so,a}`	are a set of language and system independent CORBA interfaces for creating reusable components and compound documents.

GConf-2.18.0.1

Introduction to GConf

The GConf package contains a configuration database system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/GConf/2.18/GConf-2.18.0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/GConf/2.18/GConf-2.18.0.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: aa0e0a0729fb021bab72b4166fd392f9
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 32 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

GConf Dependencies

Required

ORBit2-2.14.7 and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

GTK+-2.10.13, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of GConf

Install GConf by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/GConf \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the GConf-2 configuration database to be built in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. This installation controls all future installations of GConf-2 schemas. If you change the location (which includes eliminating this parameter), it **must** be consistent for every subsequent package installation that updates the GConf-2 configuration database.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/GConf`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/GConf` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gconf-merge-tree and gconftool-2
Installed Library:	libgconf-2.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf and the following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gconf, lib/GConf and share/{GConf, gtk-doc/html/gconf, sgml/gconf}

Short Descriptions

gconf-merge-tree	merges an xml filesystem hierarchy.
gconftool-2	is a command line tool for manipulating the GConf database.
`libgconf-2.{so,a}`	provide the functions necessary to maintain the configuration database.

shared-mime-info-0.21

The shared-mime-info-0.21 package is located in Chapter 26 — X Libraries and is required by GNOME-2 but is not a direct dependency of any GNOME-2 package, therefore the package is mentioned within the GNOME-2 Core Packages (Platform section) chapter to ensure it is installed.

GNOME MIME Data-2.4.3

Introduction to GNOME MIME Data

The GNOME MIME Data package contains the base set of file types and applications for GNOME-2.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-mime-data/2.4/gnome-mime-data-2.4.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-mime-data/2.4/gnome-mime-data-2.4.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2abe573a6e84b71c58a661d4bafa9bd6
- Download size: 563 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

GNOME MIME Data Dependencies

Required

XML::Parser-2.34

Installation of GNOME MIME Data

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install GNOME MIME Data by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D man/gnome-vfs-mime.5 \
    $(pkg-config \
        --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man/man5/gnome-vfs-mime.5
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{application-registry, share/mime-info}

Short Descriptions

`application-registry` contains the application mime database.

`mime-info` contains the mime description database.

hicolor-icon-theme-0.10

The hicolor-icon-theme-0.10 package is located in Chapter 26 — X Libraries and is recommended in a GNOME-2 installation. This package is not a direct dependency of any GNOME-2 package, therefore it is mentioned within the GNOME-2 Core Packages chapter to ensure it is installed.

desktop-file-utils-0.13

The desktop-file-utils-0.13 package is located in Chapter 10 — General Utilities and is required by GNOME-2 but is not a direct dependency of any GNOME-2 package, therefore the package is mentioned within the GNOME-2 Core Packages (Platform section) chapter to ensure it is installed.

GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1

Introduction to GNOME Virtual File System

The GNOME Virtual File System package contains virtual file system libraries. This is used as one of the foundations of the Nautilus file manager.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-vfs/2.18/gnome-vfs-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-vfs/2.18/gnome-vfs-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: bf4a6d95180d05981893e5d021c6695c
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 56 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.3 SBU

GNOME Virtual File System Dependencies

Required

D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74, GConf-2.18.0.1, and GNOME MIME Data-2.4.3

Optional

Samba-3.0.30, Gamin-0.1.9, HAL-0.5.9.1, GTK-Doc-1.8, intltool-0.35.5, OpenSSH-4.7p1, OpenSSL-0.9.8g or GnuTLS-1.6.3, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, *Avahi*, *OpenAFS*, and CDParanoia-III-9.8 (not recommended)

If you run **./configure --help** for the complete list of dependency requirements and available parameters, you may notice a message about the gnome-mount-0.6 package. This package is not required at build-time, and is only a run-time dependency. If gnome-mount is available at run-time, GNOME-VFS will use it. If it is not available, GNOME-VFS will fall back to using other mounting mechanisms.

Installation of GNOME Virtual File System

Install GNOME Virtual File System by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-vfs-2.0 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in /etc/gnome/2.18.3 instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/etc. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-vfs-2.0: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of $GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-vfs-2.0 instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/libexec.

--with-dbus-service-dir=/usr/share/dbus-1/services: Use this parameter if you linked HAL into the build and you want the gnome-vfs-daemon.service file installed in the default D-Bus location instead of in GNOME_PREFIX/share/dbus-1/services. See the information in the configuration section below if you don't use this parameter.

--with-hal-eject=PROGRAM: This parameter does not need to be passed if you have *Eject* or gnome-mount-0.6 installed, as the **eject** program is used if gnome-mount is not installed.

--enable-gtk-doc: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Configuring Gnome Virtual File System

Configuration Information

If HAL was linked into the build and GNOME is being installed in any location other than /usr, you should create a local D-Bus session configuration file so that the installed gnome-vfs-daemon.service file can be discovered by D-Bus. You should reference the information on the D-Bus page for instructions on how to create a D-Bus custom services directory.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gnomevfs-cat, gnomevfs-copy, gnomevfs-info, gnomevfs-ls, gnomevfs-mkdir, gnomevfs-mv, gnomevfs-rm, and gnome-vfs-daemon
Installed Libraries:	libgnomevfs-2.{so,a} and modules
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of /etc/gnome/2.18.3/: gconf/{schemas, gconf.xml.defaults/{desktop, schemas, system}, gnome-vfs-2.0} and the following subdirectories of $GNOME_PREFIX/: include/gnome-vfs-{,module-}2.0, lib/gnome-vfs{,-2.0}, share/gtk-doc/html/gnome-vfs-2.0

GNOME VFS Monikers-2.15.3

Introduction to GNOME VFS Monikers

The GNOME VFS Monikers package contains Bonobo monikers that were pulled out of the GNOME VFS package during the Bonobo to D-Bus conversion. This package is required so that the GNOME VFS API/ABI remains stable.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-vfs-monikers/2.15/gnome-vfs-monikers-2.15.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-vfs-monikers/2.15/gnome-vfs-monikers-2.15.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b16f0db0482263be3318e269f52bb5b6
- Download size: 260 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3 MB
- Estimated build time: .1 SBU

GNOME VFS Monikers Dependencies

Required

libbonobo-2.18.0 and GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1

Installation of GNOME VFS Monikers

Install GNOME VFS Monikers by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	A Bonobo module
Installed Directories:	None

libgnome-2.18.0

Introduction to libgnome

The libgnome package contains the `libgnome` library.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnome/2.18/libgnome-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnome/2.18/libgnome-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 73426589d7c6fa3266fe4e8f3be2f5b5
- Download size: 1.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 24 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

libgnome Dependencies

Required

libbonobo-2.18.0 and GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1

Recommended (if you plan on installing the GNOME desktop)

EsounD-0.2.37

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8 and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of libgnome

Install libgnome by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man \
            --disable-esd &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--localstatedir=/var/lib: This parameter sets `LIBGNOME_LOCALSTATEDIR` to `/var/lib` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/var` to synchronize with the GNOME Games installation and properly record high scores in `/var/lib/games`.

--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

--disable-esd: This parameter is required if EsounD-0.2.37 is not installed. Remove it if the package is installed.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program:	gnome-open
Installed Libraries:	libgnome-2.{so,a} and the libmoniker_extra_2.{so,a} bonobo library
Installed Directories:	/etc/gnome/2.18.3/sound, and the following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libgnome-2.0, share/gtk-doc/html/libgnome

Short Descriptions

`libgnome-2.{so,a}`	are the non-GUI portion of the GNOME libraries.

libgnomecanvas-2.14.0

Introduction to libgnomecanvas

The libgnomecanvas package contains the GNOME canvas library. It is an engine for structured graphics and one of the essential GNOME libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomecanvas/2.14/libgnomecanvas-2.14.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomecanvas/2.14/libgnomecanvas-2.14.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 516c46fb4a1401b05cfef58c350fbd3d
- Download size: 612 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

libgnomecanvas Dependencies

Required

libglade-2.6.1 and libart_lgpl-2.3.19

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libgnomecanvas

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install libgnomecanvas by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libgnomecanvas-2.{so,a} and the libcanvas.{so,a} Glade library
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libgnomecanvas-2.0, lib/libglade and share/gtk-doc/html/libgnomecanvas

libbonoboui-2.18.0

Introduction to libbonoboui

The libbonoboui package contains `libbonoboui` libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libbonoboui/2.18/libbonoboui-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libbonoboui/2.18/libbonoboui-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 22bd67a0a8b7f156c02c5fc08fb1fa24
- Download size: 981 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 31 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.0 SBU

libbonoboui Dependencies

Required

libgnome-2.18.0 and libgnomecanvas-2.14.0

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8 and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of libbonoboui

Install libbonoboui by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d $(pkg-config \
        --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/libbonoboui-2.18.0 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{dtd,txt,xml,html} $(pkg-config \
        --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/libbonoboui-2.18.0
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs: bonobo-browser and test-moniker
Installed Libraries: libbonoboui-2.{so,a} and libbonobo.{so,a} Glade library
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libbonoboui-2.0, share/{doc/libbonoboui-2.18.0, gnome-2.0, gtk-doc/html/libbonoboui}

Short Descriptions

`libbonoboui-2.{so,a}` are the GUI portion of the Bonobo libraries.

gnome-keyring-0.8.1

Introduction to gnome-keyring

The gnome-keyring package contains a daemon that keeps passwords and other secrets for users.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-keyring/0.8/gnome-keyring-0.8.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-keyring/0.8/gnome-keyring-0.8.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 24b15dedcf40c1c60d0fb989370d80ff
- Download size: 448 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

gnome-keyring Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

D-BUS-1.0.2 and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gnome-keyring

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install gnome-keyring by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-keyring &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d $(pkg-config \
        --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/gnome-keyring-0.8.1 &&
install -v -m644 *.txt $(pkg-config \
        --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/gnome-keyring-0.8.1
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-keyring`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-keyring` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Program:	gnome-keyring-daemon
Installed Library:	libgnome-keyring.so
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gnome-keyring-1, lib/gnome-keyring and share/doc/gnome-keyring-0.8.1

Short Descriptions

gnome-keyring-daemon	is a session daemon that keeps passwords for users.
`libgnome-keyring.so`	let other applications utilize **gnome-keyring-daemon**.

GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0

Introduction to GNOME Icon Theme

The GNOME Icon Theme package contains an assortment of scalable and non-scalable icons of different sizes and themes.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-icon-theme/2.18/gnome-icon-theme-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-icon-theme/2.18/gnome-icon-theme-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0b9aa12c473e0be61dc324b059c106e3
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME Icon Theme Dependencies

Required

icon-naming-utils-0.8.2 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5 and pkg-config-0.22

Installation of GNOME Icon Theme

Install GNOME Icon Theme by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/icons/gnome

libgnomeui-2.18.1

Introduction to libgnomeui

The libgnomeui package contains `libgnomeui` libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomeui/2.18/libgnomeui-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomeui/2.18/libgnomeui-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: dbdb274517ad643d9397dd6868788631
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 42 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

libgnomeui Dependencies

Required

libbonoboui-2.18.0 and gnome-keyring-0.8.1

Optional

libjpeg-6b, EsounD-0.2.37, intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libgnomeui

Install libgnomeui by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/libgnomeui &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

if [ $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) != "/usr" ]; then
    ln -v -s $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
             ORBit-2.0)/lib/gtk-2.0/2.10.0/filesystems \
        /usr/lib/gtk-2.0/2.10.0
fi
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/libgnomeui`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/libgnomeui` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--with-kde-datadir=$KDE_PREFIX/share`: Use this parameter if you have KDE installed in any prefix other than `/usr`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

if [... != "/usr"]; then ...; fi: This command is used to create a symbolic link in instances where the GNOME installation prefix is anything other than `/usr`.

Configuring libgnomeui

Configuration Information

Some applications cannot properly discover the libglade interface library installed by libgnomeui. Get around this problem by initializing an environment variable which identifies the location of the library. Add the following line to the system-wide `/etc/profile` file, or to individual user's `~/.profile` or `~/.bashrc` files:

```
export LIBGLADE_MODULE_PATH=$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/libglade/2.0
```

Contents

Installed Programs:
Installed Libraries: libgnomeui-2.{so,a}, the libgnome.{so,a} Glade library, and the libgnome-vfs.{so,a} GTK+ library
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX/`: include/libgnomeui-2.0, lib/{gtk-2.0/2.10.0/filesystems, libgnomeui} and share/gtk-doc/html/libgnomeui

Short Descriptions

`libgnomeui-2.{so,a}` are the GUI portion of the GNOME libraries.

GAIL-1.18.0

Introduction to GAIL

The GAIL package provides accessibility support for GTK+ and libgnomecanvas by implementing AtkObjects for widgets in GTK+ and libgnomecanvas. The GAIL library is a GTK+ module. This module is normally used with the atk-bridge GTK+ module from AT-SPI to allow an assistive technology, e.g., a screenreader, to query or drive the program.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gail/1.18/gail-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gail/1.18/gail-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d58ad8cc79d3cb6778bc015ef69fb499
- Download size: 610 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

GAIL Dependencies

Required

libgnomecanvas-2.14.0

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of GAIL

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install GAIL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

if [ $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) != "/usr" ]; then
    ln -v -s $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
             ORBit-2.0)/lib/gtk-2.0/modules \
         /usr/lib/gtk-2.0
fi
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

if [... != "/usr"]; then ...; fi: GTK+ will look for the GAIL modules in `/usr/lib` even if `$GNOME_PREFIX` is NOT `/usr`. This command creates a symbolic link to satisfy this requirement.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libgailutil.so and GAIL GTK+ modules
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gail-1.0, lib/gtk-2.0/modules and share/gtk-doc/html/gail-libgail-util

Short Descriptions

`libgailutil.so`	provides the functions that solve accessibility problems in a consistent manner across GNOME.

GTK Engines-2.10.2

Introduction to GTK Engines

The GTK Engines package contains eight themes/engines and two additional engines for GTK2.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtk-engines/2.10/gtk-engines-2.10.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtk-engines/2.10/gtk-engines-2.10.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 01de081b24d7b5d92093cad5c5e4b8c7
- Download size: 654 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU (additional ~9 SBU to run the test suite)

GTK Engines Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GTK Engines

Install GTK Engines by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This takes quite a while.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	GTK-2 engines libraries
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/gtk-2.0/2.10.0/engines and /usr/share/themes/{theme names}
Installed Themes:	Clearlooks, Crux, Industrial, LighthouseBlue, Metal, Mist, Redmond and ThinIce

Short Descriptions

engines libraries	are manager systems for specific themes.

GNOME Themes-2.18.1

Introduction to GNOME Themes

The GNOME Themes package contains several more theme sets.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-themes/2.18/gnome-themes-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-themes/2.18/gnome-themes-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: caa1683da286eeeb0f4f7ec8b0cc34bb
- Download size: 2.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 25 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME Themes Dependencies

Required

icon-naming-utils-0.8.2 and GTK Engines-2.10.2

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GNOME Themes

Install GNOME Themes by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-all-themes &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-all-themes`: Using this parameter enables the installation of additional accessibility themes. Omit this parameter if you have no desire for additional accessibility themes.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	Several directories under /usr/share/{icons,themes}
Installed Themes:	Several themes in the /usr/share/themes hierarchy and icons in the /usr/share/icons hierarchy

GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Introduction to GNOME Doc Utils

The GNOME Doc Utils package is a collection of documentation utilities for the GNOME project. Notably, it contains utilities for building documentation and all auxiliary files in your source tree, and it contains the DocBook XSLT stylesheets that were once distributed with Yelp. Starting with GNOME 2.8, Yelp requires GNOME Doc Utils for the XSLT. Starting with GNOME 2.12, many of the core GNOME packages require GNOME Doc Utils.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-doc-utils/0.10/gnome-doc-utils-0.10.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-doc-utils/0.10/gnome-doc-utils-0.10.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 43f3a4086ec1254cbe20b85948192d18
- Download size: 451 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

GNOME Doc Utils Dependencies

Required

libxslt-1.1.22, which-2.19, and XML::Parser-2.34

Recommended

Python-2.5.2 and ScrollKeeper-0.3.14

The packages are listed as recommended even though GNOME Doc Utils will build fine without them. If you don't install the recommended packages (and you pass the appropriate flags to the **configure** command so that it will build without them), functionality will be missing that is expected later in other GNOME packages.

Optional

pkg-config-0.22 and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GNOME Doc Utils

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install GNOME Doc Utils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gnome-doc-prepare and xml2po
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/: gnome-doc-utils, gnome/help/gnome-doc-{make,xslt}, omf/gnome-doc-{make,xslt}, xml/gnome and xml2po}
Installed Stylesheets:	Custom DocBook XSLT stylesheets

Short Descriptions

gnome-doc-prepare	prepares a package to use gnome-doc-utils.
xml2po	is a Python script used to translate XML documents.

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3

Introduction to GNOME Desktop

The GNOME Desktop package contains the **gnome-about** program, the `libgnome-desktop-2` library and GNOME's core graphics files and icons.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-desktop/2.18/gnome-desktop-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-desktop/2.18/gnome-desktop-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 98de3b7d0da690da8b94cddc74f3914b
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME Desktop Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Recommended

startup-notification-0.9

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GNOME Desktop

Install GNOME Desktop by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--with-gnome-distributor="Some Name"`: Use this parameter to supply a custom name in the "Distributor:" field of the "GNOME About" display window.

`--with-kde-datadir=$KDE_PREFIX/share`: Use this parameter if KDE is installed in any prefix other than `/usr`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program:	gnome-about
Installed Library:	libgnome-desktop-2.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gnome-desktop-2.0, share/{gnome-about, {gnome/help,omf}/{fdl,gnome-feedback,gpl,lgpl}, gtk-doc/html/gnome-desktop}

Short Descriptions

gnome-about	produces the about screen.
`libgnome-desktop-2.{so,a}`	contains APIs being tested for inclusion in libgnome or libgnomeui.

gnome-backgrounds-2.18.3

Introduction to gnome-backgrounds

The gnome-backgrounds package contains a collection of graphics files which can be used as backgrounds in the GNOME desktop environment. Additionally, the package creates the proper framework and directory structure so that you can add your own files to the collection.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-backgrounds/2.18/gnome-backgrounds-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-backgrounds/2.18/gnome-backgrounds-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d91b925d358d2cbc705b4a033e7d5c2e
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

gnome-backgrounds Dependencies

Required

XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gnome-backgrounds

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install gnome-backgrounds by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: $GNOME_PREFIX/share/{gnome-background-properties, pixmaps/backgrounds}

Short Descriptions

GNOME backgrounds are backgrounds for the GNOME desktop.

gnome-menus-2.18.3

Introduction to gnome-menus

The gnome-menus package contains an implementation of the draft “Desktop Menu Specification” from freedesktop.org (*http://www.freedesktop.org/Standards/menu-spec*). Also contained are the GNOME menu layout configuration files, `.directory` files and a menu related utility program.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-menus/2.18/gnome-menus-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-menus/2.18/gnome-menus-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e2b97b01b33b9744baf26982a8ad588a
- Download size: 437 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

gnome-menus Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

Python-2.5.2, Gamin-0.1.9, and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gnome-menus

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install gnome-menus by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --enable-inotify &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in /etc/gnome/2.18.3 instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/etc. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--enable-inotify: This parameter is used so that file polling is accomplished using the kernel inotify calls, instead of using other polling methods. Remove this parameter if you wish to fall back to Gamin as the file polling method.

Configuring gnome-menus

Configuration Information

XDG_CONFIG_DIRS Variable

So that GNOME can find the desktop configuration files, ensure you set the XDG_CONFIG_DIRS environment variable in the system profile, or in individual user's profiles as shown below (you may add additional directories, separated with colons, if desired):

```
export XDG_CONFIG_DIRS=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/xdg:/etc/xdg
```

XDG_DATA_DIRS Variable

So that GNOME can find the data to populate the menus, ensure you set the XDG_DATA_DIRS environment variable in the system profile, or in individual user's profiles as shown below (you may add additional directories, separated with colons, if desired):

```
export XDG_DATA_DIRS=$GNOME_PREFIX/share:/usr/share
```

PYTHONPATH Variable

If your GNOME-2 installation prefix is anything other than /usr and you have Python installed, you need to update the PYTHONPATH environment variable so that the gmenu module can be located by Python. Set the variable in the system profile, or in individual user's profiles as shown below:

```
export PYTHONPATH=$PYTHONPATH:$(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
       ORBit-2.0)/lib/python2.5/site-packages:$(pkg-config \
       --variable=prefix \
       ORBit-2.0)/lib/python2.5/site-packages/GMenuSimpleEditor
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	gmenu-simple-editor and gnome-menu-spec-test
Installed Library:	libgnome-menu.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/gnome/2.18.3/xdg and the following subdirectories of $GNOME_PREFIX/: include/gnome-menus, lib/python2.5/site-packages/GMenuSimpleEditor, share/{desktop-directories, gnome-menus}

Short Descriptions

gmenu-simple-editor	is a simple front-end script to the Python Gmenu Simple Editor module
gnome-menu-spec-test	is used to test GNOME's implementation of the Desktop Menu Specification.

`libgnome-menu.{so,a}` contains functions required to support GNOME's implementation of the Desktop Menu Specification.

GNOME Panel-2.18.3

Introduction to GNOME Panel

The GNOME Panel package contains hooks to the menu sub-system and the applet sub-system.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-panel/2.18/gnome-panel-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-panel/2.18/gnome-panel-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 545348de234fa8222e328fa7f3a5ba71
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 67 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

GNOME Panel Dependencies

Required

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3, libwnck-2.18.3, and gnome-menus-2.18.3

Optional

Evolution Data Server-1.10.3 (required if you plan to install Evolution-2.10.3 or Ekiga-2.0.9), intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Note

The libxml2 Python module must have been built during the installation of libxml2 else the GNOME Panel build will fail.

Installation of GNOME Panel

Install GNOME Panel by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-panel \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-panel`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-panel` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gnome-desktop-item-edit, gnome-panel and panel-test-applets
Installed Library:	libpanel-applet-2.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/panel-2.0, lib/gnome-panel, share/{gnome/{help/{too many to list}, panel}, gtk-doc/html/panel-applet, icons, idl/gnome-panel-2.0, omf/{too many too list}}

Short Descriptions

`libpanel-applet-2.{so,a}`	allow development of small applications (applets) which may be embedded in the panel.

VTE-0.16.6

Introduction to VTE

The VTE package contains a termcap file implementation for terminal emulators.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/vte/0.16/vte-0.16.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/vte/0.16/vte-0.16.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 131174986ab519b91dfcd6cf22541cbb
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 26 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

VTE Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8, intltool-0.35.5, and PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk module)

Installation of VTE

Install VTE by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's%\\177:%&kh=\\EOH:@7=\\EOF:%' termcaps/xterm &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib/vte &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i ... termcaps/xterm: The Home and End keys are broken in the **xterm** termcap file. This **sed** command fixes them.

`--libexecdir=/usr/lib/vte`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `/usr/lib/vte` instead of `/usr/libexec`.

`--with-glX`: This parameter can be passed to the **configure** script to enable additional drawing methods in the VTE library.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Program: vte
Installed Libraries: libvte.{so,a} and the vtemodule.{so,a} Python module
Installed Directories: /usr/include/vte, /usr/lib/vte, /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/vte, and /usr/share/vte

Short Descriptions

vte is a test application for the VTE libraries.

`libvte.{so,a}` is a library which implements a terminal emulator widget for GTK+.

GNOME Terminal-2.18.1

Introduction to GNOME Terminal

The GNOME Terminal package contains the console. This is useful for executing programs from a command prompt.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-terminal/2.18/gnome-terminal-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-terminal/2.18/gnome-terminal-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: c1902cf4727f4cd976d6cc0beb1c03fe
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 43 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME Terminal Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, VTE-0.16.6, and startup-notification-0.9

Installation of GNOME Terminal

Install GNOME Terminal by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Program: gnome-terminal
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/,omf/}gnome-terminal

Short Descriptions

gnome-terminal provides the command prompt in the GNOME environment.

LibGTop-2.14.9

Introduction to LibGTop

The LibGTop package contains the GNOME top libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgtop/2.14/libgtop-2.14.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgtop/2.14/libgtop-2.14.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a228ccab58216f7fef97de9c2b6e328e
- Download size: 772 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 16 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

LibGTop Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12 and popt-1.10.4

Optional

GDBM-1.8.3, GTK-Doc-1.8, and X Window System

Installation of LibGTop

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install LibGTop by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --infodir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/info &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you passed `--with-libgtop-examples` to the **configure** script to build the example programs, install them using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d $(pkg-config \
        --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/libgtop/examples &&
install -v -m755 examples/.libs/* \
        $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/libgtop/examples
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--infodir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/info`: This switch installs the info documentation in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/info` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/info`. You may need to add this directory to your `$INFOPATH` environment variable if your GNOME installation prefix is anything other than `/usr`.

`--with-libgtop-examples`: Adding this parameter to the **configure** script will build numerous example programs.

`--with-libgtop-inodedb`: Add this parameter to the **configure** script if you have GDBM installed and wish to build the inodedb programs.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Configuring LibGTop

Configuration Information

If `$GNOME_PREFIX` is anything other than `/usr`, update the `INFOPATH` environment variable by adding the following to your system-wide or personal profile:

```
export INFOPATH=/usr/share/info:$(pkg-config \
       --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/info
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	file_by_inode2 and mkinodedb2
Installed Library:	libgtop-2.0.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libgtop-2.0 and lib/libgtop/examples

Short Descriptions

`libgtop-2.0.{so,a}`	contains the functions that allow access to system performance data.

libgnomekbd-2.18.2

Introduction to libgnomekbd

The libgnomekbd package contains xkb hooks used by the GNOME desktop.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomekbd/2.18/libgnomekbd-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomekbd/2.18/libgnomekbd-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e99a9f1de689ba3c0ad03fadd55dd3e4
- Download size: 359 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

libgnomekbd Dependencies

Required

libxklavier-3.2 and libgnomeui-2.18.1

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of libgnomekbd

Install libgnomekbd by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

Contents

Installed Program:	gkbd-indicator-plugins-capplet
Installed Libraries:	libgnomekbd.{so,a} and libgnomekbdui.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`: /include/libgnomekbd and /share/libgnomekbd

Short Descriptions

gkbd-indicator-plugins-capplet is used internally by the GNOME desktop to interface with xkb.

`libgnomekbd{,ui}.{so,a}` contain the X keyboard API functions to support xkb on the GNOME desktop.

EEL-2.18.3

Introduction to EEL

The EEL package contains the Eazel Extensions Library. This is a collection of widgets and extensions to the GNOME platform.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/eel/2.18/eel-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/eel/2.18/eel-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: c51fea61eb99eaa7995754b8acf787ff
- Download size: 643 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 14 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

EEL Dependencies

Required

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3, gnome-menus-2.18.3, and GAIL-1.18.0

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of EEL

Install EEL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libeel-2.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	`$GNOME_PREFIX`/include/eel-2

Short Descriptions

`libeel-2.{so,a}` is a collection of widgets developed by the Nautilus project.

Nautilus-2.18.3

Introduction to Nautilus

The Nautilus package contains the GNOME shell and file manager.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/nautilus/2.18/nautilus-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/nautilus/2.18/nautilus-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e027b4e1a925122ef3e7f54323cc3c44
- Download size: 4.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 103 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.1 SBU

Nautilus Dependencies

Required

EEL-2.18.3, EsounD-0.2.37, libexif-0.6.16, and librsvg-2.16.1

Optional

startup-notification-0.9, *Tracker* (see the Tracker README file for the extensive dependencies), *Beagle* (needs *Gnome-Sharp* which requires *Mono*), and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of Nautilus

Install Nautilus by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d $(pkg-config \
    --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/nautilus-2.18.3 &&
install -v -m644 docs/*.{txt,dia,pdf,sxw,faq,html} $(pkg-config \
    --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/nautilus-2.18.3
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

Contents

Installed Programs: nautilus, nautilus-connect-server and nautilus-file-management-properties
Installed Library: libnautilus-extension.so
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/nautilus, share/{doc/nautilus-2.18.3, {,pixmaps}nautilus}

Short Descriptions

nautilus is the GNOME file manager.

`libnautilus-extension.so` supplies the functions needed by the file manager.

Control Center-2.18.1

Introduction to Control Center

The Control Center package contains the GNOME settings managers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/control-center/2.18/control-center-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/control-center/2.18/control-center-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: bae0fd0f9e32f374bd7236d98788b13f
- Download size: 2.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 71 MB
- Estimated build time: 2 SBU

Control Center Dependencies

Required

GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13, libgnomekbd-2.18.2, Metacity-2.18.5, and Nautilus-2.18.3

Optional

HAL-0.5.9.1, shared-mime-info-0.21, Evolution Data Server-1.10.3, and ALSA-1.0.13

Though they are only run-time dependencies and Control Center will compile just fine without them installed, there are two screen saver packages that can be installed which will provide a robust collection of screen savers and screen locking capability. gnome-screensaver-2.18.2 is looked for first, with a fallback to XScreenSaver-5.03 if necessary.

Installation of Control Center

Install Control Center by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/control-center &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--localstatedir=/var/lib: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/control-center: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/control-center` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--enable-aboutme`: Enables building the **gnome-about-me** capplet. Evolution Data Server must be installed to use this parameter.

Configuring Control Center

Configuration Information

If HAL was linked into the build and GNOME is being installed in any location other than `/usr`, you should create a local D-Bus session configuration file so that the installed `org.gnome.SettingsDaemon.service` file can be discovered by D-Bus. You should reference the information on the D-Bus page for instructions on how to create a D-Bus custom services directory. You may disregard this if you already created the local D-Bus session configuration file during the GNOME VFS installation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gnome-about-me,gnome-accessibility-keyboard-properties, gnome-at-properties, gnome-background-properties, gnome-control-center, gnome-default-applications-properties, gnome-display-properties, gnome-font-properties, gnome-font-viewer, gnome-keybinding-properties, gnome-keyboard-properties, gnome-mouse-properties, gnome-network-preferences, gnome-sound-properties, gnome-theme-manager, gnome-theme-thumbnailer, gnome-thumbnail-font, gnome-typing-monitor, gnome-ui-properties, gnome-window-properties, and themus-theme-applier
Installed Libraries:	libgnome-window-settings.{so,a}, GNOME VFS and window manager settings library modules and Nautilus library module extensions
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gnome-window-settings-2.0, lib/{control-center, nautilus, window-manager-settings}, share/{{,gnome/help/,omf/}control-center-2.0, gnome/{default-applications,cursor-fonts}}

GNOME Applets-2.18.0

Introduction to GNOME Applets

The GNOME Applets package contains small applications which generally run in the background and display their output to the GNOME panel.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-applets/2.18/gnome-applets-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-applets/2.18/gnome-applets-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: db3ef99c00335798f30fc0a9162c0257
- Download size: 7.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 118 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.1 SBU

GNOME Applets Dependencies

Required

ScrollKeeper-0.3.14, GAIL-1.18.0, GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0, GNOME Panel-2.18.3

Optional to Build the Invest Applet

PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk and gtk.libglade modules) and Gnome-Python-Desktop-2.18.0 (including the gnomeapplet module)

Optional

LibGTop-2.14.9, Control Center-2.18.1, GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13, HAL-0.5.9.1, libgnomekbd-2.18.2, gucharmap-1.10.0, system-tools-backends-1.4.2, DocBook-utils-0.6.14, *libapm*, and *libnotify*

Installation of GNOME Applets

Install GNOME Applets by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-applets \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make -C man install-man
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-applets`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of in `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-applets` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

make -C man install-man: This command installs the man-pages that are not installed during **make install**.

Contents

Installed Program:	cpufreq-selector
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libgweather, lib/gnome-applets, share/{gnome-applets, {gnome/help,omf}/{too many to list}, pixmaps/{accessx-status-applet, cpufreq-applet, stickynotes}, xmodmap}

GNOME Session-2.18.3

Introduction to GNOME Session

The GNOME Session package contains the GNOME session manager.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-session/2.18/gnome-session-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-session/2.18/gnome-session-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 59b6809ed1d8e39c1550217e665c75df
- Download size: 716 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 14 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME Session Dependencies

Required

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3 and Control Center-2.18.1

Optional

TCP Wrapper-7.6 and *libnotify*

Installation of GNOME Session

Install GNOME Session by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man \
            --with-at-spi-registryd-directory=$(pkg-config \
               --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/at-spi
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

`--with-at-spi-registryd-directory=...`: This parameter is used to identify where the AT-SPI Registry daemon is located, as the default is `$GNOME_PREFIX`/libexec.

Contents

Installed Programs: gnome-session, gnome-session-properties, gnome-session-remove, gnome-session-save, and gnome-wm
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/pixmaps/splash

Short Descriptions

gnome-session starts up the GNOME desktop.

gnome-session-* session utilities includes a configuration program and other session management related utilities.

gnome-wm uses the `$WINDOW_MANAGER` environment variable to allow a user to define a window manager of choice. If no `$WINDOW_MANAGER` is defined, **gnome-wm** defaults to **metacity** as the default window manager.

Yelp-2.18.1

Introduction to Yelp

The Yelp package contains the help browser. This is useful for viewing help files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/yelp/2.18/yelp-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/yelp/2.18/yelp-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 84abbfe7e042706cbf21752957e29bf3
- Download size: 900 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 18 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Yelp Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, startup-notification-0.9, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, and a mozilla.org Gecko layout engine (SeaMonkey-1.1.9 or Firefox-2.0.0.15 or Thunderbird-2.0.0.12 or *Mozilla*)

Optional

Beagle

Note

The Yelp package is not required for a functional GNOME desktop. Note, however, that without Yelp you will not be able to view the built-in Help provided by core GNOME and many of the support applications. This is mentioned here because you may not wish to install a Gecko layout engine. Without a Gecko layout engine you will have no graphical browser capability as the default GNOME browser, Epiphany-2.18.3, also requires a Gecko layout engine.

Installation of Yelp

Install Yelp by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --enable-cpp-rtti &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Programs: gnome-help and yelp
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/yelp

Short Descriptions

gnome-help is a symbolic link to **yelp**.

yelp is the GNOME help browser.

GNOME User Docs-2.18.2

Introduction to GNOME User Docs

The GNOME User Docs package contains documentation for GNOME.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-user-docs/2.18/gnome-user-docs-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-user-docs/2.18/gnome-user-docs-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 4d3b5c8bd3cc8008f2a44d98efaa2502
- Download size: 6.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 52 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

GNOME User Docs Dependencies

Required

GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3 and which-2.19

Installation of GNOME User Docs

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install GNOME User Docs by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{gnome/help/{gnome-access-guide, system-admin-guide, user-guide}, omf/{gnome-user-docs,user-guide}}

Short Descriptions

OMF files contain user documentation. These include introductions and help on the core packages.

Configuring the Core GNOME Packages

Create (or append to) a `~/.xinitrc` file to start GNOME:

```
echo "exec gnome-session" >> ~/.xinitrc
```

If you have D-BUS-1.0.2 installed, you can start the D-BUS session daemon here as well. Starting the session daemon here has the added bonus that it will exit when you log out of your GNOME session. If you wish to start the daemon here, use the following command instead of the one shown above:

```
echo "exec dbus-launch --exit-with-session gnome-session" >> ~/.xinitrc
```

Note

Check the `~/.xinitrc` file and ensure you have no other window managers or other X applications mentioned before GNOME.

Ensure all libraries can be found by udating the linker's cache (as `root`):

```
ldconfig
```

Update the MIME-type application database (as `root`):

```
update-desktop-database
```

At this point you can bring up GNOME with **startx**.

Chapter 30. GNOME Additional Packages

These packages are modular and add desktop applications and assorted utilities to the GNOME environment. Feel free to install them on an as needed or as desired basis.

Evolution Data Server-1.10.3

Introduction to Evolution Data Server

The Evolution Data Server package provides a unified backend for programs that work with contacts, tasks, and calendar information. It was originally developed for Evolution (hence the name), but is now used by other packages as well.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/evolution-data-server/1.10/evolution-data-server-1.10.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/evolution-data-server/1.10/evolution-data-server-1.10.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 44438eca3ca3cab861109605611fe778
- Download size: 7.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 185 MB
- Estimated build time: 3.3 SBU (additional 0.5 SBU to run the test suite)

Evolution Data Server Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and libsoup-2.2.100

Recommended (For SSL and S/MIME support)

NSS-3.11.7

The NSS package is not required if you have Firefox-2.0.0.15, Thunderbird-2.0.0.12, SeaMonkey-1.1.9 or *Mozilla* installed. These packages contain internal copies of NSS (or they used a system-installed copy). If any of the four packages are installed, one way or another you will already have NSS/NSPR libraries on your system.

Optional

OpenLDAP-2.3.39, an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command), Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, *krb4*, GTK-Doc-1.8, intltool-0.35.5, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of Evolution Data Server

Install Evolution Data Server by running the following commands:

Note

The instructions below assume you have the NSS/NSPR libraries installed on your system. If you elected not to install NSS (or one of the other packages mentioned above), you'll need to remove the following two parameter settings from the **configure** command below:

```
--enable-nss
--enable-smime
```

The Evolution **configure** script does not look for the Thunderbird mail client for the NSS/NSPR libraries. If you are using Thunderbird as your source for the NSS/NSPR libraries, you will have to add the following two parameter settings to the **configure** command below:

```
--with-nspr-includes=/usr/include/nspr
--with-nss-includes=/usr/include/nss
```

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
                ORBit-2.0)/lib/evolution-data-server-1.2 \
            --enable-nntp \
            --enable-gnome-keyring \
            --enable-nss \
            --enable-smime &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make -k check**. Some tests are known to fail, however most should pass.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/evolution-data-server-1.2`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/evolution-data-server-1.2` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--enable-nntp`: This parameter is used to build the Usenet news (NNTP) backend.

`--enable-gnome-keyring`: This parameter is used so that passwords are stored using the gnome-keyring storage manager.

`--enable-nss`: This parameter is used to pull in the Mozilla Network Security Services libraries for SSL support.

`--enable-smime`: This parameter is used to pull in the Mozilla Network Security Services libraries for S/MIME support.

Note

To enable many of the optional dependencies, review the information from **./configure --help** for the necessary parameters you must pass to the **configure** script.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libcamel-1.2.so, libcamel-provider-1.2.so, libebook-1.2.so, libecal-1.2.so, libedata-book-1.2.so, libedata-cal-1.2.so, libedataserver-1.2.so, libedataserverui-1.2.so, libegroupwise-1.2.so, libexchange-storage-1.2.so and numerous provider and extension modules.
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/evolution-data-server-1.10, lib/evolution-data-server-1.2, share/{evolution-data-server-1.10, gtk-doc/html/libe{book,cal,data{,server}}, idl/evolution-data-server-1.10, pixmaps/evolution-data-server-1.10}

Short Descriptions

`libe*.so` libraries are client, backend and utility libraries for the Evolution address books, calendar and data servers.

gnome-audio-2.0.0

Introduction to gnome-audio

The gnome-audio package contains a set of default sounds for the GNOME GUI desktop. Sound files for startup, shutdown and many GTK+ events are included. These sounds complement the GNOME Media package.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-audio/2.0/gnome-audio-2.0.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-audio/2.0/gnome-audio-2.0.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: cd14b84af59fb2ec673527d32f4e379f
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of gnome-audio

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install gnome-audio by running the following command as the `root` user:

```
make prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) install
```

Command Explanations

`prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/sounds

GtkHTML-3.14.3

Introduction to GtkHTML

The GtkHTML package contains a lightweight HTML rendering/printing/editing engine.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtkhtml/3.14/gtkhtml-3.14.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtkhtml/3.14/gtkhtml-3.14.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7c028f07e0eb061b0a895ac514265cf1
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 61 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.3 SBU

GtkHTML Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, GAIL-1.18.0, GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0, and libgnomeprintui-2.18.0

Optional

libsoup-2.2.100 and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GtkHTML

Install GtkHTML by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gtkhtml &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gtkhtml`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gtkhtml` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libgtkhtml-3.14.{so,a} and libgnome-gtkhtml-editor-3.14.{so,a}
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX/`: include/libgtkhtml-3.14, lib/gtkhtml, and share/gtkhtml-3.14

Short Descriptions

`libgtkhtml-3.8.{so,a}` provide the functions to render HTML within applications.

gtksourceview-1.8.5

Introduction to gtksourceview

The gtksourceview package contains `libgtksourceview` libraries. This is useful for extending the GTK text functions to include syntax highlighting.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtksourceview/1.8/gtksourceview-1.8.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gtksourceview/1.8/gtksourceview-1.8.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: de67df2944c1cccbc2d0b4a738e11050
- Download size: 785 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

gtksourceview Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Recommended

libgnomeprint-2.18.0

Optional (Required to Build the Test Programs)

GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1 and libgnomeprintui-2.18.0

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8 and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gtksourceview

Install gtksourceview by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite. If you have the optional dependencies to build the test programs installed, **after the package is installed** you can change to the `tests` directory in the source tree and issue **./test-widget**. This will test the functionality of the `libgtksourceview-1.0` library.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libgtksourceview-1.0.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gtksourceview-1.0, share/{gtk-doc/html/gtksourceview, gtksourceview-1.0}

Short Descriptions

`libgtksourceview-1.0.{so,a}` contains function extensions for the GtkTextView widget.

libgnomecups-0.2.2

Introduction to libgnomecups

The libgnomecups package contains a library used to wrap the CUPS API in a GLib fashion, so CUPS code can be cleanly integrated with GLib code.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomecups/0.2/libgnomecups-0.2.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomecups/0.2/libgnomecups-0.2.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 959d5524fe9c37efb55ccfa02e3a063b
- Download size: 314 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libgnomecups Dependencies

Required

CUPS-1.2.12, GLib-2.12.12, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of libgnomecups

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install libgnomecups by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libgnomecups-1.0.{so,a}
Installed Directory: $GNOME_PREFIX/include/libgnomecups-1

Short Descriptions

`libgnomecups-1.0.{so,a}` libraries are used to wrap the CUPS API in a GLib type interface.

libgnomeprint-2.18.0

Introduction to libgnomeprint

The libgnomeprint package contains `libgnomeprint` libraries.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomeprint/2.18/libgnomeprint-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomeprint/2.18/libgnomeprint-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 5bfc42d67cae1148d1faf238185cbf4d
- Download size: 830 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 26 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

libgnomeprint Dependencies

Required

Pango-1.16.4, libart_lgpl-2.3.19, popt-1.10.4, libxml2-2.6.31, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

libgnomecups-0.2.2, GTK-Doc-1.8, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

If you have CUPS-1.2.12 installed, you must also have libgnomecups-0.2.2 installed or pass `--without-cups` to the **configure** command in the instructions below.

Installation of libgnomeprint

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install libgnomeprint by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --disable-gtk-doc &&
make
```

The test suite requires Acroread-4 to be installed and passing `--with-metadata-printer` to the **configure** script. If the previous requirements are met and you wish to run the regression tests, change directories to the `tests` directory and issue: **./run-test.pl**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--disable-gtk-doc`: This switch prevents rebuilding the documentation during the **make** command. Remove this parameter if you have GTK-Doc installed and wish to rebuild the documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libgnomeprint-2-2.{so,a} and numerous filters and modules
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libgnomeprint-2.2, lib/libgnomeprint, share/{,gtk-doc/html/}libgnomeprint

Short Descriptions

`libgnomeprint-2-2.{so,a}`	implements the GNOME Printing Architecture.

libgnomeprintui-2.18.0

Introduction to libgnomeprintui

The libgnomeprintui package contains the `libgnomeprintui` library.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomeprintui/2.18/libgnomeprintui-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgnomeprintui/2.18/libgnomeprintui-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: bea9871059cabee9d108bab32d58d2af
- Download size: 656 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

libgnomeprintui Dependencies

Required

libgnomecanvas-2.14.0, GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0, and libgnomeprint-2.18.0

Optional

GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of libgnomeprintui

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install libgnomeprintui by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this option if you have GTK-Doc installed and wish to build the API documentation, as the source tarball does not contain any pre-built docs.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libgnomeprintui-2-2.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libgnomeprintui-2.2 and share/{,gtk-doc/html/}libgnomeprintui

Short Descriptions

`libgnomeprintui-2-2.{so,a}` is the GUI portion of the GNOME Printing Architecture implementation.

system-tools-backends-1.4.2

Introduction to system-tools-backends

The system-tools-backends are a set of cross-platform scripts for Linux and other Unix systems. The backends provide a standard XML interface for modifying the configuration regardless of the distribution being used.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/system-tools-backends/1.4/system-tools-backends-1.4.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/system-tools-backends/1.4/system-tools-backends-1.4.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a0af1513becdf3b9bfed3535ad8f7dab
- Download size: 708 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 10.2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

system-tools-backends Dependencies

Required

XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of system-tools-backends

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install system-tools-backends by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: $GNOME_PREFIX/share/setup-tool-backends

Short Descriptions

System tools backend scripts are configuration files, Perl and shell scripts used to perform setup of various desktop frontend processes and services.

bug-buddy-2.18.1

Introduction to bug-buddy

The bug-buddy package contains a graphical bug reporting tool. This can extract debugging information from a core file or crashed application.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/bug-buddy/2.18/bug-buddy-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/bug-buddy/2.18/bug-buddy-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ebeaeee4acc1432b59a4ef242abff620
- Download size: 553 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 10 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

bug-buddy Dependencies

Required

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3, gnome-menus-2.18.3, Evolution Data Server-1.10.3, LibGTop-2.14.9, and ScrollKeeper-0.3.14

Optional

NetworkManager (*download*), and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of bug-buddy

Install bug-buddy by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Program: bug-buddy
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}bug-buddy

Short Descriptions

bug-buddy is a graphical bug reporting system.

Ekiga-2.0.9

Introduction to Ekiga

Ekiga is an H.323 and SIP compatible videoconferencing and VOIP/IP-Telephony application that allows you to make audio and video calls to remote users with H.323 hardware or software (such as Microsoft Netmeeting) and SIP compatible software. It supports all modern videoconferencing features, such as registering to an ILS directory, gatekeeper support, making multi-user conference calls using an external MCU, using modern Quicknet telephony cards, and making PC-To-Phone calls.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/ekiga/2.0/ekiga-2.0.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/ekiga/2.0/ekiga-2.0.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 6c7a01faef8203d6f0ba0dfe6188bb1a
- Download size: 5.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 70 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.9 SBU

Ekiga Dependencies

Required

ScrollKeeper-0.3.14, EsounD-0.2.37, Evolution Data Server-1.10.3, *PWLib-1.10.7* (compiled with OpenLDAP-2.3.39 support), and *OPAL-2.2.8* (*home page for PWLib and OPAL*)

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, SDL-1.2.11 (required for full-screen video), and *Avahi*

Installation of Ekiga

Install Ekiga by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Two D-BUS service scripts were installed in the previous step. If the `$GNOME_PREFIX` is anything other than `/usr`, as the `root` user you should add the `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/dbus-1/services` directory to the local session configuration as described in the D-BUS-1.0.2 configuration section.

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--localstatedir=/var/lib: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Programs: ekiga, ekiga-config-tool and ekiga-helper
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{gnome/help/, omf/, pixmaps/, sounds/}ekiga

Short Descriptions

ekiga is a H.323 and SIP VOIP, telephony and video conferencing application which uses the H.323 and SIP protocols.

EOG-2.18.2

Introduction to EOG

The EOG package contains Eye of GNOME. This is useful for viewing and cataloging image files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/eog/2.18/eog-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/eog/2.18/eog-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7e5fc342201ea00404008258c19b4461
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 22 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

EOG Dependencies

Required

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3 and GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0

Recommended

libjpeg-6b

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, libexif-0.6.16, and little cms-1.16

Installation of EOG

Install EOG by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Program: eog
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/ ,pixmaps/}eog

Short Descriptions

eog is a fast and functional image viewer as well as an image cataloging program.

Epiphany-2.18.3

Introduction to Epiphany

Epiphany is a simple yet powerful GNOME web browser targeted at non-technical users. Its principles are simplicity and standards compliance.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/epiphany/2.18/epiphany-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/epiphany/2.18/epiphany-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2e77f3f0651a27cac29224e82c3cc793
- Download size: 4.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 91 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.3 SBU

Epiphany Dependencies

Required

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3, startup-notification-0.9, ISO Codes-1.2, and a mozilla.org Gecko layout engine (SeaMonkey-1.1.9 or Firefox-2.0.0.15 or Thunderbird-2.0.0.12 or *Mozilla*)

Optional for Python Support

PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk module) and Gnome-Python-2.18.2

Optional

Enchant, intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of Epiphany

Install Epiphany by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

A D-BUS service script was installed in the previous step. If the `$GNOME_PREFIX` is anything other than `/usr`, as the `root` user you should add the `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/dbus-1/services` directory to the local session configuration as described in the D-BUS-1.0.2 configuration section.

If you have GNOME-Python installed, the Epiphany Python extension is automatically built. If your $GNOME_PREFIX is anything but `/usr` and you have GNOME-Python installed, as the `root` user create the following symbolic link in the PyGTK extensions directory of `/usr/share`:

```
ln -v -s $GNOME_PREFIX/share/pygtk/2.0/defs/epiphany.defs \
    /usr/share/pygtk/2.0/defs
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Program:	epiphany
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/epiphany-2.14, lib/epiphany, share/{,gnome/help/, gtk-doc/html/, omf/}epiphany

Short Descriptions

epiphany is a GNOME web browser based on the Mozilla rendering engine.

Evince-0.8.3

Introduction to Evince

The Evince package contains a document viewer for multiple document formats. It currently supports PDF, Postscript, DjVu, TIFF and DVI. This is useful for viewing documents of various types using one simple application instead of the multiple document viewers that once existed on the GNOME Desktop.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/evince/0.8/evince-0.8.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/evince/0.8/evince-0.8.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 0603d3f3f5648c88f10f75c89807c3d1
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 44 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

Evince Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0, and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Run-Time Requirement

shared-mime-info-0.21

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GTK-Doc-1.8, libgnomeprintui-2.18.0 (only used as an alternate method for printing), LibTIFF-3.8.2, teTeX-3.0 (required to build the DVI viewer), Nautilus-2.18.3 (required to build the Nautilus plugin), Poppler-0.5.4 (required for PDF support and must be built with GTK+ support), ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 or AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 (required for Postscript ability from Evince), *DjVuLibre* (required for DjVu graphics from Evince), and *t1lib* (required for Type1 font support in the DVI viewer)

Installation of Evince

Install Evince by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
              --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man \
            --disable-ps \
            --enable-pixbuf &&
make
```

The test suite for this package requires a functional dogtail installation. Requirements and download information can be found at *http://people.redhat.com/zcerza/dogtail/*. The test suite is invoked by issuing **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

`--disable-ps`: This parameter is required if you don't have a Ghostscript package installed. Remove the parameter if you do have a Ghostscript package installed and wish to build the DVI viewer which provides Postscript support.

`--enable-djvu`: Use this parameter if you have the DjVuLibre package installed and you wish to build support to view DjVu graphic files.

`--enable-dvi`: Use this parameter if you have the teTeX package installed and you wish to build support to view DVI files.

`--enable-t1lib`: Use this parameter if you have the t1lib package installed and you wish to build support for Type1 fonts in the DVI viewer.

Contents

Installed Programs:	evince and evince-thumbnailer
Installed Library:	libevince-properties-page.{so,a} Nautilus extension
Installed Directories:	`$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}evince

Short Descriptions

evince	is a multiple format document viewer.
evince-thumbnailer	is a simple program used to create thumbnail images of supported documents.

File Roller-2.18.4

Introduction to File Roller

File Roller is an archive manager for GNOME with support for tar, bzip2, gzip, zip, jar, compress, lzop and many other archive formats.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/file-roller/2.18/file-roller-2.18.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/file-roller/2.18/file-roller-2.18.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f651f951d5c1c24288c1a25b1f567be0
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

File Roller Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Optional

intltool-0.35.5 and Nautilus-2.18.3

Installation of File Roller

Install File Roller by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --disable-nautilus-actions &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--disable-nautilus-actions`: This parameter is required if Nautilus is not installed. Remove the parameter if Nautilus is installed.

Contents

Installed Program:	file-roller
Installed Libraries:	A Nautilus extension
Installed Directories:	`$GNOME_PREFIX`/lib/file-roller, `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}file-roller

Short Descriptions

file-roller is an archiver for GNOME.

gcalctool-5.9.14

Introduction to gcalctool

gcalctool is a powerful graphical calculator with financial, logical and scientific modes. It uses a multiple precision package to do its arithmetic to give a high degree of accuracy.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gcalctool/5.9/gcalctool-5.9.14.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gcalctool/5.9/gcalctool-5.9.14.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: dd51bc2fa9e53a3b6d7b3264e1059296
- Download size: 1.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 20 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

gcalctool Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gcalctool

Install gcalctool by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Programs: gcalctool and gnome-calculator
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{gnome/help/, omf/}gcalctool

Short Descriptions

gcalctool is a desktop calculator for GNOME.

gnome-calculator is a symlink to the **gcalctool** program.

GConf Editor-2.18.0

Introduction to GConf Editor

The GConf Editor package contains a GUI editor for the GConf configuration database.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gconf-editor/2.18/gconf-editor-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gconf-editor/2.18/gconf-editor-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: cbaefa1ff8a548a3d381c67aed426fb7
- Download size: 694 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

GConf Editor Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GConf Editor

Install GConf Editor by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Program: gconf-editor
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: $GNOME_PREFIX/share/{gnome/help, omf, pixmaps}/gconf-editor

Short Descriptions

gconf-editor allows direct modification of the GConf configuration database.

GDM-2.18.3

Introduction to GDM

The GDM package contains GNOME's Display Manager daemon. This is useful for allowing configurable graphical logins.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gdm/2.18/gdm-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gdm/2.18/gdm-2.18.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 08555fce34d247062625c1a451a4d5a6
- Download size: 3.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 64 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

GDM Dependencies

Required

libgnomecanvas-2.14.0, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, and librsvg-2.16.1

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, Zenity-2.18.2, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, TCP Wrapper-7.6, *ConsoleKit*, and *OpenAFS*

If you configure GDM to offer secure connections to remote machines, you will need to have Zenity-2.18.2, OpenSSH-4.7p1 and which-2.19 installed.

Installation of GDM

It is recommended to have a dedicated user and group to take control of the **gdm-binary** daemon after it is started. Issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
groupadd -g 21 gdm &&
useradd -c "GDM Daemon Owner" -d /dev/null \
        -g gdm -s /bin/bash -u 21 gdm
```

Install GDM by running the following commands as an unprivileged user:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gdm \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man \
            --with-pam-prefix=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the root user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0): Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with $GNOME_PREFIX will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in /etc/gnome/2.18.3 instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/etc. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--localstatedir=/var/lib: This command puts files in /var/lib instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/var. This also has the downside affect of using /var/lib/log/gdm as the log directory. See the "Configuration Information" section below for instructions on relocating the log file directory.

--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gdm: This parameter is used so that the GDM internal support programs are installed in the preferred location of $GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gdm instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/libexec.

--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man: This parameter causes the man.(X) files to be installed in $GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X) instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X).

--with-pam-prefix=/etc: This command puts PAM configuration files in /etc/pam.d instead of /etc/gnome/2.18.3.

Configuring GDM

Config Files

/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf, $GNOME_PREFIX/share/gdm/defaults.conf

Configuration Information

Starting with the 2.14.x version of GNOME, the default configuration parameters are stored in a static file ($GNOME_PREFIX/share/gdm/defaults.conf). This file is not intended to be edited. If modification of the configuration is necessary, you should add parameters to the /etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf file. The settings in this file will override the settings in the static file. The same parameters in the static file are used in the configuration file.

Change the directory containing the GDM log files to the /var/log hierarchy by creating a directory and modifying the /etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf configuration file. Issue the following commands as the root user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /var/log/gdm &&
sed -i.orig "/\[daemon\]/ a LogDir=/var/log/gdm" \
    /etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf &&
rmdir -v /var/lib/log/gdm &&
rmdir -v /var/lib/log
```

The GDM PAM configuration files contain modules not present in a BLFS installation. If you have PAM installed, issue the following commands as the `root` user to replace those files with files containing correctly specified modules:

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/gdm << "EOF"
auth        required    pam_unix.so
auth        requisite   pam_nologin.so
account     required    pam_unix.so
password    required    pam_unix.so
session     required    pam_unix.so

EOF
cat > /etc/pam.d/gdm-autologin << "EOF"
auth        required    pam_env.so
auth        requisite   pam_nologin.so
auth        required    pam_permit.so
account     required    pam_unix.so
password    required    pam_unix.so
session     required    pam_unix.so

EOF
```

If you have D-BUS installed and you want to start the session D-BUS daemon when you start the GNOME desktop environment using **gdm**, you'll need to create a new Xsession file. Create the file using the following command as the root user.

```
cat > $GNOME_PREFIX/share/xsessions/gnome-dbus.desktop << "EOF"
[Desktop Entry]
Encoding=UTF-8
Name=GNOME with D-BUS
Comment=GNOME Desktop with D-BUS support
Exec=dbus-launch --exit-with-session gnome-session
TryExec=/usr/bin/dbus-launch
Icon=
Type=Application

EOF
chmod -v 644 $GNOME_PREFIX/share/xsessions/gnome-dbus.desktop
```

Choose this session using the session selection dialog on the display manager login screen. You also have the opportunity to make this your default session.

Note

You may use the `.desktop` file created above as an example to create additional `.desktop` files and add any other desired items to the GDM display manager session selection menu.

gdm can be tested by executing it as the `root` user. Use the **gdm-stop** command if you wish to stop the display manager.

Boot Script

To start a graphical login when the system is booted, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/gdm` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package. If your `GNOME_PREFIX` environment variable is anything other than `/usr` or `/opt/gnome-2.18.3`, you will need to modify the `PATH` statement in the script to include the path where you have GNOME installed.

```
make install-gdm
```

Now edit `/etc/inittab` so that the line containing:

```
id:3:initdefault:
```

is changed to:

```
id:5:initdefault:
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	gdm, gdm-binary, gdm-dmx-reconnect-proxy, gdm-restart, gdm-safe-restart, gdm-stop, gdmXnest, gdmXnestchooser, gdmdynamic, gdmflexiserver, gdmphotosetup, gdmsetup, and gdmthemetester
Installed Libraries:	lib*mouselistener.{so,a} GTK+ modules
Installed Directories:	/etc/gnome/2.18.3/{,g}dm, /var/lib/gdm, /var/log/gdm and the following directories in `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}gdm

Short Descriptions

gdm	is a wrapper script to execute the GDM binary, the configurable GNOME based login prompt.
gdm-restart	sends the HUP signal to the GDM daemon so that it restarts. It's used after the config file is edited
gdm-safe-restart	sends the USR1 signal to the GDM daemon so that it restarts. It's used after the config file is edited.
gdmsetup	is a graphical interface to edit the `gdm.conf` file.

gedit-2.18.2

Introduction to gedit

The gedit package contains a lightweight UTF-8 text editor for the GNOME desktop.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gedit/2.18/gedit-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gedit/2.18/gedit-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7e8bf29bd6bf0d17ceaf42d9bd5d94e6
- Download size: 3.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 80 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.1 SBU (includes spell-check support and Python plugins)

gedit Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, libgnomeprintui-2.18.0, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, gtksourceview-1.8.5, and which-2.19

Optional (to Provide Spell-Checking Capability)

ISO Codes-1.2 and *Enchant**

Optional (to Provide Python Bindings and Plugins)

PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk, pango and gtk.libglade modules) and Gnome-Python-Desktop-2.18.0 (including the gtksourceview module)

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GTK-Doc-1.8, *libattr*

* Aspell-0.60.5 is just one of many backend spell libraries Enchant can use. See the Enchant project page (URL above) for additional information about the available backends.

Installation of gedit

Install gedit by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --disable-spell &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--disable-spell`: This parameter disables spell-checking capability and is required if Enchant is not installed. Remove the parameter if Enchant is installed.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gedit and gnome-text-editor
Installed Libraries:	gedit plugin modules
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gedit-2.16, lib/gedit-2, share/{gedit-2, {gnome/help, omf}/gedit}

Short Descriptions

gedit	is a lightweight text editor integrated with the GNOME desktop.
gnome-text-editor	is a symlink to **gedit**.

GNOME Games-2.18.2.1

Introduction to GNOME Games

The GNOME Games package contains games. Starting with GNOME-2.8, the background graphics, artwork and themes for the games are supplied in a separate package. You can download the GNOME Games Extra Data package from *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-games-extra-data/2.18/*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-games/2.18/gnome-games-2.18.2.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-games/2.18/gnome-games-2.18.2.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: c3434a724cd72a536ba48d9187f10697
- Download size: 7.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 118 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.8 SBU

GNOME Games Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, Gnome-Python-Desktop-2.18.0, and librsvg-2.16.1

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, EsounD-0.2.37, Guile-1.8.2 (to build the AisleRiot solitaire games), and *GGZ* (to enable network gaming; see the GNOME Games `README` file for the specific GGZ packages you will need)

See the `glchess/README` file for additional optional dependencies for the chess game.

Installation of GNOME Games

Some of the GNOME Games game binaries need to be setgid to track high scores. Create a separate user and group for games. See the `README` file in the source directory for more information:

```
install -v -m755 -d /var/lib/games &&
groupadd -g 60 games &&
useradd -c 'Games High Score Owner' -d /var/lib/games \
        -g games -s /bin/false -u 60 games &&
chown -v games:games /var/lib/games
```

Install GNOME Games by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

To test the results, issue **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper` and also causes the game programs to use `/var/lib/games` as the directory holding the high score files.

`--disable-setgid`: This will prevent the setgid bit on the executables from being set. It provides system administrators with the option to disable setgid binaries, though it also means that the functionality to save high game scores will be disabled.

Contents

Installed Programs:	blackjack, glchess, glines, gnect, gnectd, gnibbles, gnibblesd, gnobots2, gnome-gnuchess, gnome-sudoku, gnometris, gnomine, gnotravex, gnotski, gtali, iagno, iagnod, mahjongg, same-gnome, and sol
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: share/{{many game names}, {,omf/}gnome-games, {,help,pixmaps,sound}/{game names}, /var/lib/games

Short Descriptions

See the `README` file in the source tree for a description of each game.

GNOME Keyring Manager-2.18.0

Introduction to GNOME Keyring Manager

The GNOME Keyring Manager package contains a keyring management program for the GNOME Desktop. This is useful for maintenance of a keyring database using a graphical user interface.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-keyring-manager/2.18/gnome-keyring-manager-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-keyring-manager/2.18/gnome-keyring-manager-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 05183cdea9d933cb1e9a8f4202c6ffc0
- Download size: 455 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

GNOME Keyring Manager Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Installation of GNOME Keyring Manager

Install GNOME Keyring Manager by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--localstatedir=/var/lib: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Program: gnome-keyring-manager
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}gnome-keyring-manager

Short Descriptions

gnome-keyring-manager is a graphical key management tool for GNOME. It allows the user to create, delete, and otherwise manipulate keys and keyrings which can be used to store passwords.

GNOME Media-2.18.0

Introduction to GNOME Media

The GNOME Media package contains GNOME's media applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-media/2.18/gnome-media-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-media/2.18/gnome-media-2.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a472d8c7733b119376bc6127ee55a82d
- Download size: 3.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 44 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

GNOME Media Dependencies

Required

ScrollKeeper-0.3.14, EsounD-0.2.37, and libgnomeui-2.18.1

Optional

GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13 (required to build the sound mixer), GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6 (required to build the sound recorder), Nautilus CD Burner-2.18.2 (required to build the CD player), an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command), intltool-0.35.5, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of GNOME Media

Install GNOME Media by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-media &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-media`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-media` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	CDDBSlave2, cddb-slave2-properties, cddb-track-editor, gnome-audio-profiles-properties, gnome-cd, gnome-sound-recorder, gnome-volume-control, gstreamer-properties and vumeter
Installed Libraries:	libcddb-slave2.{so,a}, libgnome-media-profiles.{so,a} and a libgnome-media-profiles.{so,a} Glade library
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/{cddb-slave2,gnome-media}, lib/gnome-media, share/{gnome-{media,sound-recorder}, gnome/help/{gnome-{cd, sound-recorder, volume-control}, grecord, gstreamer-properties}, gstreamer-properties, omf/gnome-media, pixmaps/gnome-{cd, media}}

Short Descriptions

gnome-cd	is GNOME's CD Player.
gnome-sound-recorder	is GNOME's recorder.
gnome-volume-control	is GNOME's mixer with volume applet.
gstreamer-properties	is a GUI front-end to GStreamer's audio/video input/output parameters.
vumeter	is a visual volume meter.

gnome-mount-0.6

Introduction to gnome-mount

The gnome-mount package contains programs for mounting, unmounting and ejecting storage devices. The goal for gnome-mount is to get the appropriate GNOME software (such as gnome-volume-manager and GNOME-VFS) to use this instead of invoking **mount**/**umount**/**eject** or direct HAL invoking methods.

All the gnome-mount programs utilize the methods on HAL and as such run unprivileged. The rationale for gnome-mount is to have a centralized place (in GConf) where settings (e.g., mount options and mount locations) are maintained.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://people.freedesktop.org/~david/dist/gnome-mount-0.6.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: d2612aecfa73806e072316033d78b203
- Download size: 466 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

gnome-mount Dependencies

Required

gnome-keyring-0.8.1 and HAL-0.5.9.1

Optional

Nautilus-2.18.3, *libnotify*, and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gnome-mount

Install gnome-mount by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

Contents

Installed Programs: gnome-eject, gnome-mount and gnome-umount
Installed Libraries: libgnome-mount.{so,a} Nautilus extention
Installed Directories: $GNOME_PREFIX/share/gnome-mount

Short Descriptions

gnome-mount is used to automatically mount storage media and other removable media.

gnome-umount is a symbolic link to **gnome-mount** used to automatically unmount storage media and other removable media.

gnome-eject is a symbolic link to **gnome-mount** used to automatically open and close (if supported by the drive) the drive door and tray in CD/DVD drives.

GNOME Netstatus-2.12.1

Introduction to GNOME Netstatus

The GNOME Netstatus package contains a panel applet that monitors network interfaces. It provides indicators for incoming and outgoing data, packets received and transmitted, and information about the network interface such as IP information and Ethernet address.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-netstatus/2.12/gnome-netstatus-2.12.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-netstatus/2.12/gnome-netstatus-2.12.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 8651ca1694a6c222ae5cad6e21814d24
- Download size: 500 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

GNOME Netstatus Dependencies

Required

GNOME Panel-2.18.3

Installation of GNOME Netstatus

Install GNOME Netstatus by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-netstatus &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-netstatus`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of in `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-netstatus` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Applet: gnome-netstatus-applet
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}gnome-netstatus

Short Descriptions

gnome-netstatus-applet displays information about a network interface on your panel.

gnome-screensaver-2.18.2

Introduction to gnome-screensaver

The gnome-screensaver package contains a screen saver and locker designed to have simple, sane, secure defaults and be well integrated with the desktop. It supports locking down of configuration settings, has translations into many languages and convenient user switching.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-screensaver/2.18/gnome-screensaver-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-screensaver/2.18/gnome-screensaver-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b5931e1f39c62acee0df1fcf016ddc39
- Download size: 2.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

gnome-screensaver Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and gnome-menus-2.18.3

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, libexif-0.6.16, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, libgnomekbd-2.18.2, XScreenSaver-5.03 (and libxslt-1.1.22), GDM-2.18.3, and *xmlto*

Installation of gnome-screensaver

Note

Optional Features

1. If you have XScreenSaver installed and wish to import any or all of the “hacks” into gnome-screensaver themes, set the following environment variable (modify it if XScreenSaver is installed in a non-standard location):

```
XSAVERDIR=/usr/share/xscreensaver/config
```

Also add the following parameter to the **configure** script below:

```
--with-xscreensaverdir=$XSAVERDIR
```

2. If you have GDM installed and wish to provide user-switching from the gnome-screensaver unlock-screen dialog box, add the following parameter to the **configure** script below:

```
--with-gdm-config=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf
```

Install gnome-screensaver by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's|etc/pam\.d"|etc"|' data/Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-screensaver \
            --with-pam-prefix=/etc &&
make
```

If you have XScreenSaver installed and wish to import any or all of the “hacks” into gnome-screensaver themes, you'll need to identify which “hacks” you wish to import. The commands below will import all of them. If you want to import less than all of them, modify the setting of the XSAVERLIST environment variable below (listing the desired hacks by filename without the extension, space delimited) and issue the following commands:

```
mkdir xscreensavers &&
cd xscreensavers &&

XSAVERLIST="*" &&

for SAVERLIST in $(ls ${XSAVERDIR}/${XSAVERLIST}.xml); do
    ../data/migrate-xscreensaver-config.sh $SAVERLIST
done &&

unset XSAVERDIR
unset XSAVERLIST
unset SAVERLIST

cd ..
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the root user:

```
make install &&

GNOMEDOCDIR="$(pkg-config \
    --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/gnome-screensaver-2.18.2" &&

install -v -m644 -D doc/gnome-screensaver.html \
                    ${GNOMEDOCDIR}/gnome-screensaver.html &&
unset GNOMEDOCDIR
```

If you identified some, or all, XScreenSaver hacks to be imported into gnome-screensaver, install them by issuing the following commands as the root user:

```
install -v -m755 -d $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
        ORBit-2.0)/share/gnome-screensaver/themes/xscreensaver &&
install -v -m644 xscreensavers/*.desktop \
        $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
            ORBit-2.0)/share/gnome-screensaver/themes/xscreensaver
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's|etc/pam\.d"|etc|' data/Makefile.in: This command is used so that an erroneous message to copy the PAM configuration file is not displayed.

--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0): Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-screensaver: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-screensaver` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

--with-pam-prefix=/etc: This parameter is used so that the Linux-PAM configuration file for the gnome-screensaver application is installed in the correct location. You may omit this parameter if you don't have Linux-PAM installed, though it won't affect the build if you don't.

Configuring gnome-screensaver

Config Files

`/etc/pam.d/gnome-screensaver`, `/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf`

Configuration Information

General Configuration

Most of the gnome-screensaver configuration parameters can be modified using the Screensaver menu item from the Desktop—Preferences drop-down menu. Some of the fine-tuning parameters are only available using GConf Editor-2.18.0.

Linux-PAM Configuration

If you have Linux-PAM installed, the just-installed `gnome-screensaver` configuration file does not work with a BLFS system. Replace the existing file with one that can be used on a BLFS system by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
cat > /etc/pam.d/gnome-screensaver << "EOF"
# File: /etc/pam.d/gnome-screensaver

auth         required      pam_unix.so
account      required      pam_unix.so
session      required      pam_unix.so
password     required      pam_unix.so

EOF
chmod -v 644 /etc/pam.d/gnome-screensaver
```

User-Switching Configuration

If you have GDM installed and you passed the `--with-gdm-config=` option to the **configure** script, the screen-unlocking dialog box will contain an option to "Switch Users". This user switching option uses the same configuration as GDM to determine what users are displayed in this dialog. You can use the GDM configuration option from the GDM login screen, or you can directly edit the `/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gdm/custom.conf` file to modify the settings.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gnome-screensaver, gnome-screensaver-command and gnome-screensaver-preferences
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	`$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{doc/gnome-screensaver-2.18.2, gnome-screensaver, pixmaps/backgrounds/cosmos}

Short Descriptions

gnome-screensaver	is a screensaver and screen-locking program designed to work seamlessly with the GNOME desktop.

GNOME System Monitor-2.18.2

Introduction to GNOME System Monitor

The GNOME System Monitor package contains **gnome-system-monitor**, GNOME's replacement for **gtop**.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-system-monitor/2.18/gnome-system-monitor-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-system-monitor/2.18/gnome-system-monitor-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 860047e636522af2c068dddb5df883bd
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 23 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME System Monitor Dependencies

Required

GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1, GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, libwnck-2.18.3, and LibGTop-2.14.9

Optional

intltool-0.35.5

Recommended (by the package developer) Run-time Component

libgksu2

Installation of GNOME System Monitor

Install GNOME System Monitor by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Program: gnome-system-monitor
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{gnome/help, omf}/gnome-system-monitor

Short Descriptions

gnome-system-monitor displays the process tree and hardware meters.

GNOME Utilities-2.18.1

Introduction to GNOME Utilities

The GNOME Utilities package contains a collection of small applications designed to make your life a little easier.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-utils/2.18/gnome-utils-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-utils/2.18/gnome-utils-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 10e8bd928d099a0d1f70919c8b7b7784
- Download size: 4.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 55 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

GNOME Utilities Dependencies

Required

GNOME Panel-2.18.3, libgnomeprintui-2.18.0, and LibGTop-2.14.9

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 (only if consolehelper is also installed), and HAL-0.5.9.1

Installation of GNOME Utilities

Install GNOME Utilities by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/gnome-utils \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/bonobo`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/gnome-utils` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

`--with-pam-prefix=/etc/pam.d`: This parameter causes the PAM files to be installed in the correct location of `/etc/pam.d` instead of `/etc/gnome/2.18.3`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gfloppy, gnome-dictionary, gnome-panel-screenshot, gnome-screenshot, gnome-search-tool, and gnome-system-log
Installed Libraries:	libgdict-1.0.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gdict-1.0, lib/gnome-utils, share/{gnome-{screenshot, system-log, utils}, gnome/help/{gfloppy, gnome-dictionary, gnome-search-tool, gnome-system-log} omf/gnome-utils, pixmaps/gsearchtool}

Short Descriptions

gfloppy	formats floppy disks under Linux.
gnome-dictionary	allows you to look up definitions and spelling of words.
gnome-screenshot	is used to capture the contents of the current desktop as a graphics formatted file.
gnome-search-tool	allows you to search for files on your system using simple and advanced search options.
gnome-system-log	allows you to monitor and view system log files.

gnome-volume-manager-2.17.0

Introduction to gnome-volume-manager

The gnome-volume-manager package contains a volume manager for GNOME. It is a desktop-level daemon that enforces volume-related policy in response to events received from HAL. This is useful for automatic mounting of floppy diskettes, CDROMs and removable storage devices. It can also be used to automatically run a program in response to other hotplug events such as plugging in USB printers or cameras, or inserting DVDs and music CDs. The goal of gnome-volume-manager is to implement all functionality as a state-machine in response to asynchronous events from HAL. It is one component in a larger plan to fully integrate all levels of the Linux system, from the kernel on up through the desktop and its applications.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-volume-manager/2.17/gnome-volume-manager-2.17.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-volume-manager/2.17/gnome-volume-manager-2.17.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 104cec26e721e0bba69debd392367195
- Download size: 341 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 11 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

gnome-volume-manager Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1 and HAL-0.5.9.1

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, Nautilus-2.18.3, and *libnotify*

Installation of gnome-volume-manager

Install gnome-volume-manager by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --disable-multiuser &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--disable-multiuser`: Without this parameter, gnome-volume-manager will only allow the user who is at the active console to manage volumes. This is determined through the Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0 module *pam_console*. If your system is configured to use *pam_console*, you can drop this parameter.

Configuring gnome-volume-manager

Configuration Information

Proper operation of this package is dependant upon the **hald** daemon running on the system. Ensure the **hald** daemon is running before attempting to start or configure **gnome-volume-manager**. Configuration is accomplished using the "Removable Drives and Media" graphical interface found on the "Desktop"—"Preferences" drop-down menu. You can also run the **gnome-volume-properties** command from the command line to bring up the configuration interface.

Note that the **gnome-volume-manager** daemon program should be started when your GNOME desktop environment is started. This should be automatically configured during the installation of gnome-volume-manager.

The "Disk Mounter" applet can be installed in the control panel for visual display status of removable media. Installing this applet in the panel is accomplished using conventional methods.

Contents

Installed Programs: gnome-volume-manager and gnome-volume-properties
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/gnome-volume-manager

Short Descriptions

gnome-volume-manager is the manager daemon, designed to be run at the desktop level. It is a simple policy engine that implements a state machine in response to events from HAL. Responding to these events, it implements automount, autorun, autoplay, automatic photo management, and so on.

gnome-volume-properties is a control panel applet for gnome-volume-manager. It is also provides a graphical configuration interface.

gucharmap-1.10.0

Introduction to gucharmap

gucharmap is a Unicode character map and font viewer. It allows you to browse through all the available Unicode characters and categories for the installed fonts, and to examine their detailed properties. It is an easy way to find the character you might only know by its Unicode name or code point.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gucharmap/1.10/gucharmap-1.10.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gucharmap/1.10/gucharmap-1.10.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a0e01bcff2bc5e35ec88f60a383051d3
- Download size: 2.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 30 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

gucharmap Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional

GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3 (to build the user manual), libgnomeui-2.18.1, and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of gucharmap

Note

The instructions below are based on installing the package into a GNOME-2 environment. If, for whatever reason, you're installing this package without having ORBit2 and the core GNOME-2 libraries installed, you'll need to modify the `--prefix=` parameter on the **configure** script to point to your desired installation path (e.g., `--prefix=/usr`).

Install gucharmap by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	charmap, gnome-character-map, and gucharmap
Installed Library:	libgucharmap.so
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gucharmap and share/{gnome/help/,omf/}/gucharmap

Short Descriptions

gucharmap is a Unicode character map and font viewer.

Nautilus CD Burner-2.18.2

Introduction to Nautilus CD Burner

The Nautilus CD Burner package provides an easy method to write files to a CD or DVD burner with GNOME; by drag-and-dropping files using the GNOME file manager, Nautilus.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/nautilus-cd-burner/2.18/nautilus-cd-burner-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/nautilus-cd-burner/2.18/nautilus-cd-burner-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: fee9ec2f398a6b1eacfd59e239d06837
- Download size: 740 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Nautilus CD Burner Dependencies

Required

Nautilus-2.18.3 and HAL-0.5.9.1

Optional

gnome-mount-0.6 and intltool-0.35.5

Though Nautilus CD Burner happily passes all the **configure** script checks and then builds successfully without them, the Cdrtools-2.01 and dvd+rw-tools-7.0 packages are required to be installed or you won't be able to create ISO filesystems or burn CDs and DVDs.

Installation of Nautilus CD Burner

Install Nautilus CD Burner by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/nautilus-cd-burner &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--libexecdir=`pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0`/lib/nautilus-cd-burner`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/nautilus-cd-burner` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	nautilus-cd-burner
Installed Libraries:	libnautilus-burn.so and gnome-vfs and nautilus modules
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/libnautilus-burn, lib/nautilus-cd-burner and share/nautilus-cd-burner

Short Descriptions

nautilus-cd-burner	is an extension to Nautilus that lets you burn CDs easily.

Sound Juicer-2.16.4

Introduction to Sound Juicer

The Sound Juicer package contains the **sound-juicer** program, a simple and clean CD ripping tool. This is useful for extracting the audio tracks from audio compact discs and converting them into audio files. It can also play the audio tracks directly from the CD, allowing you to preview the CD before ripping it. Sound Juicer is designed to be easy to use, and to work with little user intervention. When you start **sound-juicer** it will examine the CD in the drive and try to locate information about the audio tracks using the MusicBrainz service.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/sound-juicer/2.16/sound-juicer-2.16.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/sound-juicer/2.16/sound-juicer-2.16.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: bcf1f77027b1d1d4c1667b20c6448122
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Sound Juicer Dependencies

Required

Nautilus CD Burner-2.18.2, GNOME Media-2.18.0, GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13 (for the cdparanoiasrc, gnomevfssink and vorbisenc plugins), and libmusicbrainz-2.1.5

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6 (for the flacenc and wavenc plugins), *libcdio* (which can use CDParanoia-III-9.8, *libcddb*, and *VCDImager*), and *TagLib*

Optional (Run-Time Only to Encode in MP3 Format)

GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins-0.10.6 (for the lame plugin)

Note

At a minimum you should have the following plugins configured into the GStreamer installation: cdparanoiasrc and gnomevfssink. If either of these plugins are not configured into the GStreamer setup, Sound Juicer will fail at run-time. Additionally, if you need to encode in Ogg Vorbis, FLAC, Wave or MP3 formats, you should ensure the vorbisenc, flacenc, wavenc and lame plugins are configured into GStreamer. You can easily determine if you have the necessary plugins configured by using the **gst-inspect** program. Here is an example:

```
gst-inspect | grep cdparanoiasrc
```

Installation of Sound Juicer

Install Sound_Juicer by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

Configuring Sound Juicer

Configuration Information

Configuration is accomplished by using the “Preferences” drop-down menu option. For information on how to configure **sound-juicer** to use LAME as the default encoding method (creating MP3 files as the default) see the Sound Juicer Help section.

Contents

Installed Program:	sound-juicer
Installed Libraries:	none
Installed Directories:	`$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}sound-juicer

Short Descriptions

sound-juicer	is a graphical CD extraction (ripping) tool based on GNOME-2 and GStreamer.

Totem-2.18.2

Introduction to Totem

The Totem package contains the official movie player of the GNOME desktop environment based on GStreamer or Xine Libraries. It features a playlist, a full-screen mode, seek and volume controls, as well as keyboard navigation. This is useful for playing any GStreamer or Xine Libraries supported file, DVD, VCD or digital CD.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/totem/2.18/totem-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/totem/2.18/totem-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: a77ca6f0c56b2fc6ececd8158bb0cdca
- Download size: 2.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 48 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.0 SBU

Totem Dependencies

Required

GNOME Icon Theme-2.18.0, GNOME Desktop-2.18.3, ISO Codes-1.2, and GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6 (default back-end) or xine Libraries-1.1.12 (secondary back-end)

If you anticipate using Totem to play DVDs, you should use the Xine Libraries backend by passing `--enable-xine` to the **configure** script as the the GStreamer backend does not work properly. If you elect to use the default GStreamer backend anyway, ensure you built GStreamer Good Plugins with GConf support or the **configure** script will fail.

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, Nautilus-2.18.3, HAL-0.5.9.1, SeaMonkey-1.1.9 or Firefox-2.0.0.15 (to build the browser plug-in), *libirman*, *LIRC*, *Gromit* (required for the telestrator mode), and *NvTv Simple*

Note: libdvdcss-1.2.9 is a run-time requirement if you wish to play encrypted DVDs

Installation of Totem

Install Totem by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/totem \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/totem`: This parameter is used so that the movie player browser plugin is installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/totem` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Configuring Totem

Configuration Information

There are no configuration files that need to be directly edited. Configuration is accomplished by setting the desired values in the various menu options accessed via the **totem** graphical interface.

Contents

Installed Programs:	totem, totem-video-thumbnailer and optionally, vanity
Installed Libraries:	libtotem-plparser.{so,a}, a Nautilus extension plugin and optionally, a Mozilla video plugin
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/totem, lib/totem, share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}totem

Short Descriptions

totem	is a GNOME-desktop movie player.
totem-video-thumbnailer	is a video thumbnailer for the GNOME desktop used internally by GNOME applications such as Nautilus to generate PNG thumbnails of video files. While it is possible to invoke it manually, it is usually done automatically by Nautilus.

Zenity-2.18.2

Introduction to Zenity

Zenity is a rewrite of gdialog, the GNOME port of dialog which allows you to display GTK+ dialog boxes from the command line and shell scripts.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/zenity/2.18/zenity-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/zenity/2.18/zenity-2.18.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 6eb60cebdfddd7f9ad302d0b5477382e
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 11 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Zenity Dependencies

Required

libgnomecanvas-2.14.0 and GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3

Optional

libnotify and intltool-0.35.5

Installation of Zenity

Install Zenity by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --mandir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--mandir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/man`: This parameter causes the `man.(X)` files to be installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/share/man/man(X)` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/man/man(X)`.

Contents

Installed Programs: gdialog and zenity
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/{,gnome/help/ ,omf/}zenity

Short Descriptions

gdialog is a Perl wrapper script which can be used with legacy scripts.

zenity is a program that will display GTK+ dialogs, and return the user's input.

AT SPI-1.18.1

Introduction to AT SPI

The AT SPI package contains the Assistive Technology Service Provider Interface. This is useful for redirecting UI events to accessible applications and adaptive/assistive technologies.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/at-spi/1.18/at-spi-1.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/at-spi/1.18/at-spi-1.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 46c531204df5d39f7e83822372b0ce69
- Download size: 780 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 22 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

AT SPI Dependencies

Required

GAIL-1.18.0 and libbonobo-2.18.0

Optional

intltool-0.35.5 and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of AT SPI

Install AT SPI by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
            --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/at-spi &&
make
```

This package does not come with a functional test suite. Review the `README` file for additional information about testing the package.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/at-spi`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/at-spi` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec`.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libspi.{so,a}, libcspi.{so,a}, libloginhelper.{so,a}, the libatk-bridge.so GTK+ module, and ORBit-2.0 Accessibility modules
Installed Directories: The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/at-spi-1.0, lib/at-spi, share/{gtk-doc/html/at-spi-cspi, idl/at-spi-1.0}

Short Descriptions

at-spi-registryd is the registry daemon that allows communication between the UI and assistance devices.

GNOME Magnifier-0.14.6

Introduction to GNOME Magnifier

The GNOME Magnifier includes a screen magnifier, which allows you to zoom in on portions of the desktop. It is expressly designed for users with low vision who wish to use the GNOME desktop.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-mag/0.14/gnome-mag-0.14.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-mag/0.14/gnome-mag-0.14.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: c5eafb3c492d2b84c37b9a12e3b7a19e
- Download size: 468 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 20 MB (includes building reference docs)
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

GNOME Magnifier Dependencies

Required

AT SPI-1.18.1

Optional (to Build the Colorblind Applet)

GNOME Desktop-2.18.3, *colorblind*, PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk and gtk.libglade modules), PyORBit-2.14.3, Gnome-Python-2.18.2 (including the gnome.ui module), and Gnome-Python-Desktop-2.18.0 (including the gnomeapplet module)

Optional

intltool-0.35.5 and Doxygen-1.5.2

Installation of GNOME Magnifier

If Doxygen-1.5.2 is installed, the reference documentation is automatically generated. Install GNOME Magnifier by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

For full functionality of this package, you should install the libgail-gnome-1.18.0 package.

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

Contents

Installed Program:	magnifier
Installed Library:	libgnome-mag.so
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX/`: include/gnome-mag-1.0, lib/colorblind-applet, lib/python2.5/site-packages/colorblind, share/{colorblind,doc/gnome-mag-0.14.6,gnome-mag,idl/gnome-mag-1.0}

Short Descriptions

magnifier is a screen zooming utility.

GNOME Speech-0.4.16

Introduction to GNOME Speech

The GNOME Speech package provides a simple general API for producing text-to-speech output. Multiple backends are supported by the GNOME Speech library, but currently only the Festival backend is built by default; the other backends require either Java or proprietary software.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-speech/0.4/gnome-speech-0.4.16.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnome-speech/0.4/gnome-speech-0.4.16.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 381e2e9126e102ace9abb452c9087141
- Download size: 308 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

GNOME Speech Dependencies

Required

libbonobo-2.18.0

Optional Backend Drivers

Java Access Bridge-1.18.0, FreeTTS-1.2.1, *DECtalk*, *eSpeak*, *Festival*, *Loquendo*, *Speech Dispatcher*, *Speechworks ETI Eloquence*, *Swift*, *Theta*, and *ViaVoice*

Installation of GNOME Speech

Note

You must install at least one of the backend drivers for GNOME Speech to render speech through the audio hardware. You should test the installation of the backend driver and ensure it produces desired results before installing GNOME Speech.

Install GNOME Speech by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/gnome-speech.html \
    $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
    ORBit-2.0)/share/doc/gnome-speech-0.4.16/gnome-speech.html
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--with-jab-dir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/share/jar`: Use this option if you have installed the Java Access Bridge package and wish to have GNOME Speech build in Java support.

Note: see the `README` and `INSTALL` files in the package source tree for the correct parameters to pass to **configure** to enable the desired backends.

Testing the Installation

You can test all the available backend drivers, voices and audio hardware using the **test-speech** command. Invoking **test-speech** produces a menu allowing you to select a backend driver and the desired voice, then prompts you (with on-screen prompts and text-to-speech audio) for additional information.

If you are using the FreeTTS backend and you do not hear any audio, you may need to use the streaming audio method instead of the clip audio method. As the `root` user, modify the **freetts-synthesis-driver** script:

```
sed -i "s/clip/streaming/" $GNOME_PREFIX/bin/freetts-synthesis-driver
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	festival-synthesis-driver, freetts-synthesis-driver, speechd-synthesis-driver and test-speech
Installed Library:	libgnomespeech.{so,a}. Other drivers and libraries are also installed if you have enabled additional backends.
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/: include/gnome-speech-1.0, share/{doc/gnome-speech-0.4.16, gnome-speech, idl/gnome-speech-1.0}

Short Descriptions

test-speech	is used to test the various backend drivers and voices installed on the system.
`libgnomespeech.{so,a}`	provides the API for programs to convert text into speech.

GOK-1.2.5

Introduction to GOK

GOK is a dynamic onscreen keyboard. It features Direct Selection, Dwell Selection, Automatic Scanning and Inverse Scanning access methods and includes word completion.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gok/1.2/gok-1.2.5.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gok/1.2/gok-1.2.5.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2ef1f171385a37f93408dbca7ecfdf11
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 50 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

GOK Dependencies

Required

EsounD-0.2.37, ScrollKeeper-0.3.14, AT SPI-1.18.1, libwnck-2.18.3, libgnomeui-2.18.1, and GNOME Speech-0.4.16

Optional

libusb-0.1.12, intltool-0.35.5, and GTK-Doc-1.8

Installation of GOK

Install GOK by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod -v 644 $(pkg-config --variable=prefix
      ORBit-2.0)/share/gnome/help/gok/C/legal.xml
```

For full functionality of this package, you should install the libgail-gnome-1.18.0 package.

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in /etc/gnome/2.18.3 instead of $GNOME_PREFIX/etc. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

--localstatedir=/var/lib: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in /var/lib/scrollkeeper instead of some files being installed in $GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper.

--enable-gtk-doc: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Configuring GOK

Configuration Information

It is recommended that you configure your input device as an “Extended” input device. Exact configuration methods depend on the type of hardware attached to your system. See the README file in the package source tree and GOK Help for information on how to configure your input device.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gok and create-branching-keyboard
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of $GNOME_PREFIX/: share/{,gnome/help/ ,gtk-doc/html ,omf}gok

Short Descriptions

gok is a dynamic onscreen keyboard utility.

Java Access Bridge-1.18.0

Introduction to Java Access Bridge

The Java Access Bridge package contains Java components which connect the built-in accessibility support in Java Swing applications to the GNOME Accessibility framework, specifically the Assistive Technology Service Provider Interface (AT-SPI).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/java-access-bridge/1.18/java-access-bridge-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/java-access-bridge/1.18/java-access-bridge-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 9d250af333d03a091be06d2baab8cad4
- Download size: 108 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.2 SBU

Java Access Bridge Dependencies

Required

AT SPI-1.18.1 and JDK-6 Update 5

Installation of Java Access Bridge

Install Java Access Bridge by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

cat $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
    ORBit-2.0)/share/jar/accessibility.properties \
    >> $JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/accessibility.properties &&
chmod -v 644 $JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/accessibility.properties &&

ln -v -sf $(pkg-config --variable=prefix \
    ORBit-2.0)/share/jar/gnome-java-bridge.jar \
    $JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/ext
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

cat $(pkg-config ...: This command appends to (or creates) the Java runtime `accessibility.properties` file required for Java Access Bridge.

ln -v -sf $(pkg-config ...: This command creates a link from the Access Bridge `jar` file to the Java runtime library extensions directory.

Configuring Java Access Bridge

Config Files

`~/.orbitrc`

Configuration Information

Before running a Java program with the Java Access Bridge, you should ensure that your GNOME 2 installation enables CORBA traffic over IP from the ORBit2 ORB. Do this by adding the following line to `~/.orbitrc` using the following command:

```
cat >> ~/.orbitrc << "EOF"
ORBIIOPIPv4=1

EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: gnome-java-bridge.jar and JNav.jar
Installed Directories: $GNOME_PREFIX/share/jar

Short Descriptions

`gnome-java-bridge.jar` is a Java runtime environment extension that connects the built-in accessibility support in Java Swing applications to the GNOME Accessibility framework.

libgail-gnome-1.18.0

Introduction to libgail-gnome

The libgail-gnome package contains the GNOME Accessibility Implementation library additions which implement ATK interfaces for libbonoboui and libgnomeui widgets.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgail-gnome/1.18/libgail-gnome-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/libgail-gnome/1.18/libgail-gnome-1.18.0.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2dd239118bf252c7b1e3d1701cd8a954
- Download size: 223 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

libgail-gnome Dependencies

Required

GNOME Panel-2.18.3 and AT SPI-1.18.1

Installation of libgail-gnome

Install libgail-gnome by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libgail-gnome.so GTK+ module
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

`libgail-gnome.so`	library module is a GAIL addition which implements ATK interfaces for libbonoboui and libgnomeui widgets.

Orca-2.18.1

Introduction to Orca

Orca enables users with limited vision, or no vision, to use the GNOME desktop and applications effectively. It provides a number of features, including magnification, focus tracking, braille output, automatic screen reading and more.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/orca/2.18/orca-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/orca/2.18/orca-2.18.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 764f170af318c3ffd63b9cdfdcd19248
- Download size: 934 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 17 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Orca Dependencies

Required

AT SPI-1.18.1, PyORBit-2.14.3, and Gnome-Python-2.18.2

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GNOME Speech-0.4.16 (required for speech-enabled screen reading), GNOME Magnifier-0.14.6 (required for screen magnification), *BRLTTY* (required for braille output, must have *Pyrex* installed first)

Installation of Orca

Install Orca by running the following commands:

```
if [ $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) != "/usr" ]; then
    sed -i "s|PATH=\"|&$(pkg-config \
           --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/bin:|" \
        src/orca/orca.in
fi

./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-pydoc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/orca-2.18.1 &&
install -v -m644    docs/pydoc/*.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/orca-2.18.1
```

For full functionality of this package, you should install the libgail-gnome-1.18.0 package.

Command Explanations

if [... != "/usr"]; then ...; fi: This command is used to add the GNOME prefix `bin` directory to the hard-coded `PATH` statement in the script if the GNOME prefix is anything other than `/usr`.

`--enable-pydoc`: This parameter is used to build the documentation. Remove it if you don't want the documentation (also remove the installation commands).

Contents

Installed Program:	orca
Installed Libraries:	Python assistive technology (accessiblity) modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/python2.5/site-packages/orca and /usr/share/orca

Short Descriptions

orca is a GUI menu interface used to access and configure the various functionality parameters provided for users with limited vision.

Part IX. X Software

Chapter 31. Individual Office Programs

This chapter is a collection of independent projects that can be installed based on specific needs. Together, they create a respectable office suite. While they may be lacking in user interface consistency, they excel in doing one thing and doing it well.

AbiWord-2.4.6

Introduction to AbiWord

The AbiWord package contains a word processing application. This is useful for writing reports, letters and other formatted documents.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.abisource.com/downloads/abiword/2.4.6/source/abiword-2.4.6.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 8ed5fb282b9741aca75b9e47500d39a1
- Download size: 25 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 262 MB (additional 210 MB to build and install the API docs)
- Estimated build time: 4.5 SBU (to build and install the program, docs and all plugins)

AbiWord Dependencies

Required

FriBidi-0.10.8 and libgnomeprintui-2.18.0

Optional

libgnomeui-2.18.1 (for GNOME-2 support), gucharmap-1.10.0, *Enchant* (uses Aspell-0.60.5), *wv* (with *libwmf* installed first), and *Valgrind*

Optional for Plugins

libgsf-1.14.7 (to build the OpenDocument/OpenOffice plugin), Poppler-0.5.4 (for the pdf plugin, requires installing with unsupported xpdf headers), librsvg-2.16.1, Nautilus-2.18.3 (for GNOME-2 support), GOffice-0.6.1 (you must use a version of *GOffice <0.3.0*), *Link Grammar*, *Aiksaurus*, *libgnomedb version <1.3.0** (requires *libgda version <1.3.0*), *libwmf*, *GtkMathView* (requires *Gnome DOM Bindings* which requires *gdome2*), *libwpd*, *OTS*, and *Psiconv*

* The libgda/libgnomedb stack required for AbiWord database access may conflict with the versions used by the Gnumeric-1.8.2 database plugin. Though the libraries themselves pose no conflict, the executables and support files will overwrite one another. Note that the current (version 3.0.x) stack does not pose a conflict with any of the previous versions (but does not support AbiWord or Gnumeric database access. AbiWord requires versions <1.3.0 (1.2.2 is known to work).

Installation of AbiWord

Install AbiWord by running the following commands:

```
cd abi &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&

cd ../abiword-plugins &&
sed -i 's/dictionary_file)/reinterpret_cast<const unsigned char *>(&)/' \
        tools/ots/xp/AbiOts.cpp &&

./configure --prefix=/usr --without-inter7eps &&
make &&

cd ..
```

If you wish to create the API documentation, Doxygen-1.5.2 must be installed and issue the following commands:

```
pushd abi &&
doxygen &&
popd
```

This package's test suite requires *Valgrind*. Though the end message will indicate the tests failed, there will actually be many tests that run to a successful completion. Run the tests by issuing the following commands:

```
pushd abi &&
make check &&
popd
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
cd abi &&
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/abiword-2.4.6 &&
install -v -m644    docs/*.* \
                    /usr/share/doc/abiword-2.4.6 &&

cd ../abiword-plugins &&
make install &&

cd ..
```

AbiWord is now installed and must be used to build the Help files. Issue the following commands as an unprivileged user:

```
pushd abiword-docs &&
./make-html.sh &&
cd ..
```

Then as the `root` user, install the help files:

```
install -v -m644 man/abiword.1 /usr/share/man/man1 &&
install -v -m644 Manual/en/Abiword_Manual.abw \
                 /usr/share/doc/abiword-2.4.6 &&
cp -v -Rf help   /usr/share/AbiSuite-2.4/AbiWord &&
find             /usr/share/AbiSuite-2.4/AbiWord/help \
                 -type d -exec chmod -v 755 {} \;
```

If you have a GNOME installation, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the AbiWord Bonobo component description file:

```
install -v -m644 abidistfiles/GNOME_AbiWord_Control_2_4.server \
        $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib/bonobo/servers &&

if [ $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) != "/usr" ]; then
    rmdir -v /usr/lib/{bonobo/servers,bonobo}
fi
```

If you built the API documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d  /usr/share/doc/abiword-2.4.6/api &&

for FILENAME in $(ls abi/docs/dox/html); do
    install -v -m644 abi/docs/dox/html/${FILENAME} \
                     /usr/share/doc/abiword-2.4.6/api
done
```

Command Explanations

`--without-inter7eps`: Some of the headers from the EPS package are not compatible with GCC-4.1.2. This parameter prevents linking to the package and incurring a build failure.

sed -i '...' tools/ots/xp/AbiOts.cpp : This command is used to fix an incompatibility with GCC and the libots package.

if [... != "/usr"]; then ...;fi: This command is used to remove unneeded directories if the GNOME installation is in any prefix other than `/usr`.

Configuring AbiWord

Config File

`~/.AbiSuite/templates/normal.awt`

Configuration Information

Choose the right template for your language and locale from the list produced by the following command:

```
ls /usr/share/AbiSuite-2.4/templates
```

Create the folder `~/.AbiSuite/templates` then copy the `normal.awt` you want into it:

```
install -v -m750 -d ~/.AbiSuite/templates &&
install -v -m640    /usr/share/AbiSuite-2.4/templates/normal.awt-<lang> \
                    ~/.AbiSuite/templates/normal.awt
```

Change *<lang>* in the above command to fit the name of the file you want.

If you have desktop-file-utils-0.13 installed, you should run the **update-desktop-database** command to update the mimeminfo cache and allow the Help system to work.

Contents

Installed Programs: abiword, AbiWord-2.4, ttfadmin.sh, and ttftool
Installed Libraries: Numerous plugin library support modules
Installed Directories: /usr/lib/AbiWord-2.4 and /usr/share/AbiSuite-2.4

Short Descriptions

abiword is a symbolic link to the main **AbiWord-2.4** executable.

AbiWord-2.4 is the word-processing program executable.

ttfadmin.sh generates support files required by AbiWord for each TrueType font in a given directory.

ttftool is a utility for processing TrueType fonts.

Gnumeric-1.8.2

Introduction to Gnumeric

The Gnumeric package contains a spreadsheet program. This is useful for mathematical analysis.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnumeric/1.8/gnumeric-1.8.2.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gnumeric/1.8/gnumeric-1.8.2.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f60edc6ca42daa2fb3717f3c90fa8a6e
- Download size: 14.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 206 MB
- Estimated build time: 3.0 SBU (includes creating HTML documentation)

Gnumeric Dependencies

Required

libgnomeprintui-2.18.0 and GOffice-0.6.1

Optional

PyGTK-2.10.6, libgnomeui-2.18.1 (combined with the `libgsf-gnome-1` library from the libgsf-1.14.7 package will provide GNOME-2 support), *libgnomedb** (requires *libgda*), *pxlib*, *Psiconv*, *Hildon*, *Gnome Basic* (this package is no longer under active development), and *Valgrind* (to run some of the testsuite)

* The libgda/libgnomedb stack required for Gnumeric database access may conflict with the versions used by the AbiWord-2.4.6 database plugin. Though the libraries themselves pose no conflict, the executables and support files will overwrite one another. Note that the current (version 3.0.x) stack does not pose a conflict with any of the previous versions (but does not support Gnumeric or AbiWord database access. Gnumeric requires versions >1.2.x and <2.x.x (1.99.1 is known to work).

Note

Though only a run-time dependency, if you don't install the Yelp-2.18.1 package, the built-in help functionality in Gnumeric will not be available.

Installation of Gnumeric

Install Gnumeric by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

This package requires that it is installed before the test suite is run. The commands to run the tests are located a bit later in the instructions.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
```

If you have GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3 installed you can create an HTML version of the Help documentation by issuing the following commands:

```
./configure \
    --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix gnome-doc-utils) &&
make -C doc html
```

If you created the HTML documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/figures/icons &&
install -v -m644    doc/C/figures/*.png \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/figures &&
install -v -m644    doc/C/figures/icons/*.png \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/figures/icons &&
install -v -m644    doc/C/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2 &&

ln -v -s /usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1/images \
    /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/stylesheet
```

If you wish to install the Developer documentation, issue the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/developer &&
install -v -m644    doc/developer/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/developer &&

rm -v /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2/developer/Makefile*
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix gnome-doc-utils)`: This rebuilds the `Makefile`s with the same prefix used in the GNOME Doc Utils installation.

Testing gnumeric

If you wish to run the testuite, issue:

```
make check
```

Two of the seven tests fail because the scripts they use are missing, two others fail for unknown reasons.

Contents

Installed Programs: gnumeric, gnumeric-1.8.2, ssconvert, and ssindex
Installed Libraries: libspreadsheet and numerous filters, plugins and GNOME components
Installed Directories: /usr/lib/gnumeric, /usr/share/doc/gnumeric-1.8.2, and /usr/share/{,gnome/help/, omf/, pixmaps/}gnumeric

Short Descriptions

gnumeric is a symlink to **gnumeric-1.8.2**

gnumeric-1.8.2 is GNOME's spreadsheet application.

ssconvert is a command line utility to convert spreadsheet files between various spreadsheet file formats.

ssindex is a command line utility to generate index data for spreadsheet files.

GnuCash-2.2.4

Introduction to GnuCash

GnuCash is a personal finance manager.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.gnucash.org/pub/gnucash/sources/stable/gnucash-2.2.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.at.gnucash.org/pub/gnucash/gnucash/sources/stable/gnucash-2.2.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f521cea858ee7223325114ec98de86ca
- Download size: 6.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 163 MB (additional 50 MB if running test suite; additional 124 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 3.1 SBU (additional 1.8 SBU to run the test suite; additional 0.3 SBU for docs)

Additional Downloads

- Help documentation: *http://www.gnucash.org/pub/gnucash/sources/stable/gnucash-docs-2.2.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 97a29e499baca1807a3944ae3c0ad61e
- Download size: 10.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 27 MB (additional 41 MB for html and pdf)
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU (additional 0.4 SBU for html and pdf)

GnuCash Dependencies

Required

Guile-1.8.2, SLIB-3a4, GOffice-0.6.1, and GtkHTML-3.14.3

Optional

PostgreSQL-8.2.4, *Guile-www*, and *Electric Fence*

Optional (Required for the Help System)

ScrollKeeper-0.3.14 and Yelp-2.18.1 (run-time requirement to view the Help documents)

Optional (for On-Line Banking)

LibOFX (requires OpenSP-1.5.2 and cURL-7.16.3), *KtoBlzCheck*, and *AqBanking* (requires *Gwenhywfar* and *libchipcard3*)

Installation of GnuCash

Install GnuCash by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's|xml::${sysconfdir}|xml::/etc/gnome/2.18.3|' configure &&

./configure \
    --prefix=/usr \
    --sysconfdir=/etc \
    --libexecdir=/usr/lib \
    --with-gconf-schema-file-dir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf/schemas &&
make
```

If you wish to create the API documentation in HTML format, you must have Doxygen-1.5.2 and Graphviz-2.12 installed, then issue: **make doc**. If you wish to create the API Design Guide in several formats, you must have teTeX-3.0 installed and issue: **make -C src/doc/design html pdf ps**.

To test the results, issue **make check**. All tests should pass. An easy way to look at the results of the tests is to issue **grep -A1 ========== check.log** (this is assuming you redirected the output from the tests to the indicated filename).

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

mv -v /usr/share/gnucash/doc /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4 &&
ln -v -s ../doc/gnucash-2.2.4 /usr/share/gnucash/doc &&

for FILENAME in doc/{misc*,gnome*,generic*,build*}.txt \
                doc/{gtkrc*,TRANSLATION_HOWTO,README.translator.txt} \
                doc/README.{build-system,OFX,HBCI}
do
    install -v -m644 ${FILENAME} /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4
done &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/api/engine &&
install -v -m644    src/doc/{TODO*,*.txt,*.html} \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/api &&
install -v -m644    src/engine/*.txt \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/api/engine
```

If you built the API HTML or Design Guide documentation, issue the following commands (modified as necessary, depending on what docs are being installed) as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/{design,api}/html &&
install -v -m644    src/doc/design/gnucash-design.html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/design/html &&
install -v -m644    src/doc/design/gnucash-design.{pdf,ps,dvi} \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/design &&
install -v -m644    src/doc/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4/api/html
```

If you want to install the Help documentation system, you must have ScrollKeeper-0.3.14 installed. Then unpack the additional tarball, change into the `gnucash-docs-2.2.0` source directory and issue the following commands as an unprivileged user:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib &&
make
```

HTML versions of the Help Manual and Users Guide can be created if the DocBook XML tools are installed (libxslt-1.1.22, DocBook XML DTD-4.5 and DocBook XSL Stylesheets-1.71.1). A PDF version of the Users Guide can be created if you have DocBook-utils-0.6.14 and JadeTeX-3.13 installed. Issue the following commands to create the documentation (modify as appropriate for your desires):

```
make -C help  html &&
make -C guide html &&
make -C guide pdf
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you built the Help Manual or Users Guide, install them using the following commands as the `root` user (modify as necessary):

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.0/{users_guide,help} &&
cp -v -R            help/C/gnucash-help/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.0/help &&
cp -v -R            guide/C/gnucash-guide/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.0/users_guide &&
install -v -m644    guide/C/gnucash-guide.pdf \
                    /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.0
```

Note that you must have Yelp-2.18.1 installed in order to view the Help documents using the default GnuCash method.

Command Explanations

sed -i 's|xml::${sysconfdir}|xml::/etc/gnome/2.18.3|' configure: This command is used because the location of the GConf source database is hard-coded into the **configure** script as `$sysconfdir/gconf` (rendering the `--with-gconf-source` parameter useless). The modification ensures that the GConf database is properly updated while still allowing the package configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnucash`.

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This installs configuration files in `/etc/gnucash` instead of `/usr/etc/gnucash`.

`--with-gconf-schema-file-dir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf/schemas`: This parameter ensures that the GConf schema files are installed in the proper location instead of `/etc/gconf`.

mv -v /usr/share/gnucash/doc /usr/share/doc/gnucash-2.2.4 and **ln -v -s ../doc/gnucash-2.2.4 /usr/share/gnucash/doc**: These commands are used to relocate the documentation files to the customary location and create a symbolic link to the original location.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--enable-sql`: This parameter is required if you want to build in SQL support using PostgreSQL.

`--enable-hbci`: This parameter is required if you want to build in on-line banking support using AqBanking. See `doc/README.HBCI` in the GnuCash source tree for complete information.

Configuring GnuCash

Configuration Information

If you wish to use GnuCash to retrieve stock price quotes, you'll need to install the following Perl modules: libwww-perl-5.806, Date::Manip-5.54, HTML::Parser-3.56, HTML::TableExtract-2.10, Crypt::SSLeay-0.56 [376], and Finance::Quote-1.13. Alternatively, you can run the **/usr/bin/gnc-fq-update** script as the `root` user.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gnc-fq-check, gnc-fq-dump, gnc-fq-helper, gnc-fq-update, gnc-test-env, gnucash, gnucash-bin, gnucash-env, gnucash-make-guids, gnucash-valgrind, and update-gnucash-gconf
Installed Libraries:	libgnc-backend-file-utils.so, libgnc-backend-postgres.so, libgnc-business-ledger.so,libgnc-core-utils.so, libgnc-gnome.so, libgnc-module.so, libgnc-qof.so and numerous support libraries installed in `/usr/lib/gnucash`
Installed Directories:	/etc/gnucash, /usr/include/gnucash, /usr/lib/gnucash, and the following subdirectories of /usr/share/: doc/gnucash-2.2.4, gnome/help/gnucash, gnucash, omf/gnucash-docs, and /xml/gnucash

Short Descriptions

gnucash is a personal finance manager.

GIMP-2.2.17

Introduction to GIMP

The GIMP package contains the GNU Image Manipulation Program. This is useful for photo retouching, image composition and image authoring.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gwdg.de/pub/misc/grafik/gimp/gimp/v2.2/gimp-2.2.17.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gimp.org/pub/gimp/v2.2/gimp-2.2.17.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 4f509ed4a605452d88e04045ff388d58
- Download size: 13.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 310 MB (additional 314 MB to install the help system)
- Estimated build time: 4.6 SBU (additional 0.6 SBU to run the test suite and additional 9.1 SBU to build the help files)

Additional Downloads

Help System

- Optional help files: *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/svn/g/gimp-help-2-0.12.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: fc1e2153eafa04fa701b23818029c3e1
- Download size: 59.8 MB

GIMP Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13, libart_lgpl-2.3.19, and XML::Parser-2.34

Recommended

libjpeg-6b and LibTIFF-3.8.2

Note

If the recommended dependencies are not installed, the **configure** switches below will need to be modified as explained in the section called “Command Explanations” below.

Optional

libmng-1.0.9, librsvg-2.16.1, AAlib-1.4rc5, little cms-1.16, libexif-0.6.16, libxslt-1.1.22, ALSA-1.0.13, libgtkhtml-2.11.1 (required to build the help system browser plugin), *libwmf*, PyGTK-2.10.6 (including the gtk and pango modules), *Gimp-Print version 4.2.7*, an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** program), and GTK-Doc-1.8

Optional (for Building Documentation from the Help Tarball)

libxslt-1.1.22, DocBook XML DTD-4.5, and DocBook XSL Stylesheets-1.71.1

Installation of GIMP

Install GIMP by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --disable-print &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gimp-2.2.17 &&
install -v -m644 docs/{Wilber*,keybindings.txt,quick_reference.ps} \
                    /usr/share/doc/gimp-2.2.17
```

The `gimp-help` tarball contains a help system designed for use with external web browsers, the internal GIMP help browser, and HTML renderers. The tarball only contains the XML sources, so you will need the **xsltproc** program from libxslt-1.1.22 to build the HTML files.

If you downloaded the `gimp-help` tarball, unpack it and change into the root of the newly created source tree (as an unprivileged user). Issue the following commands to install the help files:

```
./configure &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`-disable-print`: This option disables print support and is required if the obsolete Gimp-Print package is not installed. Print support for the Gimp can be provided later by installing the Gutenprint-5.0.1 package.

`--without-libjpeg`: This option is necessary if libjpeg is not installed.

`--without-libtiff`: This option is necessary if libtiff is not installed.

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

Configuring GIMP

Config Files

`/etc/gimp/2.0/*` and `~/.gimp-2.0/gimprc`

Configuration Information

GIMP executes a configuration wizard for each user upon their initial use of the program.

GIMP executes the **mozilla** web browser by default to view the help files. If you do not have Mozilla, or prefer a different web browser, you can set a new system value in `/etc/gimp/2.0/gimprc`. Execute the following command as the `root` user, replacing *<browser>* with your preferred web browser:

```
echo '(web-browser "<browser> %s")' >> /etc/gimp/2.0/gimprc
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	gimp, gimp-2.2, gimp-remote, gimp-remote-2.2, and gimptool-2.0
Installed Libraries:	libgimp-2.0.so, libgimpbase-2.0.so, libgimpcolor-2.0.so, libgimpmath-2.0.so, libgimpmodule-2.0.so, libgimpthumb-2.0.so, libgimpui-2.0.so, libgimpwidgets-2.0.so, and many other modules and plugin libraries
Installed Directories:	/etc/gimp, /usr/include/gimp-2.0, /usr/lib/gimp, /usr/share/doc/gimp-2.2.17, /usr/share/gimp and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libgimp{,base,color,math,module,thumb,widgets}

Short Descriptions

gimp	is a symbolic link to **gimp-2.2**.
gimp-2.2	is an image manipulation program. It works with a variety of image formats and provides a large selection of tools.
gimp-remote	is a symbolic link to **gimp-remote-2.2**.
gimp-remote-2.2	is a small utility that tells a running GIMP to open a local or remote image file.
gimptool-2.0	is a tool that can build plug-ins or scripts and install them if they are distributed in one source file. **gimptool-2.0** can also be used by programs that need to know what libraries and include-paths GIMP was compiled with.
`libgimp-2.0.so`	provides C bindings for GIMP's Procedural Database (PDB) which offers an interface to core functions and to functionality provided by plug-ins.
`libgimpbase-2.0.so`	provides the C functions for basic GIMP functionality such as determining enumeration data types, gettext translation, determining GIMP's version number and capabilities, handling data files and accessing the environment.
`libgimpcolor-2.0.so`	provides the C functions relating to RGB, HSV and CMYK colors as well as converting colors between different color models and performing adaptive supersampling on an area.
`libgimpmath-2.0.so`	contains C functions which provide mathematical definitions and macros, manipulate 3x3 transformation matrices, set up and manipulate vectors and the MD5 message-digest algorithm.
`libgimpmodule-2.0.so`	provides the C functions which implements module loading using GModule and keeps a list of GimpModule's found in a given searchpath.
`libgimpthumb-2.0.so`	provides the C functions for handling GIMP's thumbnail objects.
`libgimpui-2.0.so`	contains the GIMP common user interface functions.
`libgimpwidgets-2.0.so`	contains GIMP and GTK widget creation and manipulation functions.

Evolution-2.10.3

Introduction to Evolution

The Evolution package contains an integrated mail, calendar and address book suite designed for the GNOME-2 environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/evolution/2.10/evolution-2.10.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/evolution/2.10/evolution-2.10.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 09cc60b037849b3c9b34961eb7da217f
- Download size: 26 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 355 MB
- Estimated build time: 10 SBU

Evolution Dependencies

Required

GtkHTML-3.14.3, GNOME Doc Utils-0.10.3, and Evolution Data Server-1.10.3

Recommended (For SSL and S/MIME support)

NSS-3.11.7

The NSS package is not required if you have Firefox-2.0.0.15, Thunderbird-2.0.0.12, SeaMonkey-1.1.9 or *Mozilla* installed. These packages contain internal copies of NSS (or they used a system-installed copy). If any of the four packages are installed, one way or another you will already have NSS/NSPR libraries on your system.

Optional

OpenLDAP-2.3.39, HAL-0.5.9.1, D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74, *GNOME Spell*, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, *krb4*, *GNOME Pilot conduits* (requires pilot-link-0.12.2 then *GNOME Pilot*), *GStreamer-0.8.x*, *NetworkManager* (*download*), *libnotify*, *Mono*, intltool-0.35.5, GTK-Doc-1.8, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of Evolution

Install Evolution by running the following commands:

Note

The instructions below assume you have the NSS/NSPR libraries installed on your system. If you elected not to install NSS (or one of the other packages mentioned above), you'll need to remove the following two parameter settings from the **configure** command below:

```
--enable-nss
--enable-smime
```

The Evolution **configure** script only looks for the stand-alone NSS package and the Mozilla and Firefox browsers for the NSS/NSPR libraries. If you are using Thunderbird as your source for the NSS/NSPR libraries, you will have to add the following two parameter settings to the **configure** command below:

```
--with-nspr-includes=/usr/include/nspr
--with-nss-includes=/usr/include/nss
```

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --libexecdir=$(pkg-config \
                --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib \
            --enable-nntp \
            --enable-nss \
            --enable-smime &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
ln -v -s evolution-2.10 \
    $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/bin/evolution
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--libexecdir=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/lib`: This parameter causes the libexec files to be installed in the preferred location of `$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/evolution` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/libexec/evolution`.

--enable-nntp: This parameter is used to build the Usenet news (NNTP) backend.

--enable-nss: This parameter is used to pull in the Mozilla Network Security Services libraries for SSL support.

--enable-smime: This parameter is used to pull in the Mozilla Network Security Services libraries for S/MIME support.

--with-openldap: This parameter will compile LDAP support into Evolution.

--with-krb5: This parameter will compile Kerberos5 support into Evolution.

--with-pilot-conduits: This parameter will build the GNOME Pilot conduits allowing you to synchronize Evolution data on a Palm device.

ln -v -s evolution-2.10 $(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)/bin/evolution: This optional command creates a convenience symlink to the **evolution-2.10** binary.

--with-kde-applnk-path=<$KDE_PREFIX/share/applnk>: Use this parameter if you wnat the installation process to create a .desktop file in the KDE global desktop file directory.

Contents

Installed Programs:	evolution and evolution-2.10
Installed Libraries:	$GNOME_PREFIX/lib/evolution/2.10/* (contains support libraries, conduits, and other components)
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of $GNOME_PREFIX/: include/evolution-2.10, lib/evolution, share/{{,omf/}evolution, {gnome/help,idl}/evolution-2.10}

Short Descriptions

evolution	is a symlink to the **evolution-2.10** program.
evolution-2.10	is an email, calendar and address book suite.

Chapter 32. Office Suites

This chapter contains applications that bundle all the essential needs of everyday office workers into one neat 'little' package. The benefits are a consistent user interface and cooperation between applications.

KOffice-1.6.3

Introduction to KOffice

KOffice is the integrated office suite for KDE. It provides native OASIS OpenDocument format support.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/koffice-1.6.3/src/koffice-1.6.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/koffice-1.6.3/src/koffice-1.6.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 386d388094734f9759977c3267098e30
- Download size: 55.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 489 MB (additional 592 MB for API docs)
- Estimated build time: 44 SBU (additional 4.4 SBU for API docs)

Additional Downloads

KOffice has many localization packages in the form of: `koffice-l10n-<xx>-1.6.3.tar.bz2`. The *<xx>* is a two to seven character code for the country covered. The sizes of these files range from about 0.2 MB to 15 MB.

- KOffice l10n package listing: *http://download.kde.org/stable/koffice-1.6.3/src/koffice-l10n/*
- Download MD5 sums: *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/koffice-1.6.3/src/MD5SUMS*

KOffice Dependencies

Required

kdebase-3.5.9

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libart_lgpl-2.3.19, libxml2-2.6.31, and libxslt-1.1.22

Optional

Aspell-0.60.5, Python-2.5.2, Ruby-1.8.6-p111, *libpqxx* (for kexi, requires PostgreSQL-8.2.4), MySQL-5.0.41 (plugin), little cms-1.16 and ImageMagick-6.3.5-10 (required for krita), *OpenEXR* (for enhanced image processing), *libwv2* (for MS Word filter), *libwpd* (for Wordperfect filter), *libpaper*, Graphviz-2.12, and Doxygen-1.5.2 (the last two to build API documentation)

Installation of KOffice

Install KOffice with the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(kde-config --prefix) --disable-debug \
    --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

Note

If you wish to create the API documentation and you have Doxygen and Graphviz installed, **make apidox** must be done before **make install**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	karbon, kchart, kexi, kformula, kivio, koconverter, koshell, kplato, kprconverter.pl, kpresenter, krita, krossrunner, kspread, ksqlite, ksqlite2, ksqlite2to3, kthesaurus, kudesigner, kugar, and kword
Installed Libraries:	Numerous libraries (about 50) in $KDE_PREFIX/lib
Installed Directory:	Numerous directories in $KDE_PREFIX/share

Short Descriptions

kchart	is a chart drawing application.
kexi	is an integrated data management application.
kformula	is a formula editor.
kivio	is a flowchart program.
kplato	is a project management application.
kpresenter	is a presentation builder/display program.
krita	is a painting and image editing application for KOffice..
kspread	is a scriptable spreadsheet program.
kugar	is a tool for creating reports.
kword	is a framemaker-like word processing and desktop publishing program.

OpenOffice-2.3.1

Introduction to OpenOffice

OpenOffice is an office suite, the open source sibling of StarOffice.

Package Information

- OpenOffice Core Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_core.tar.bz2*
- OpenOffice Core Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_core.tar.bz2*
- OpenOffice Core Download MD5 sum: 9555a2d5fae9a25c788cc732921ef57a
- OpenOffice Core Download size: 138 MB
- OpenOffice System Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_system.tar.bz2*
- OpenOffice System Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_system.tar.bz2*
- OpenOffice System Download MD5 sum: 1e20befe2fdb65c00be11f1f5d9ebdca
- OpenOffice System Download size: 36 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.2-4.8 GB (depending on configured options)
- Estimated build time: 75-100 SBU (depending on configured options)

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/OOo_2.3.1-use_bin_hsqldb-1.patch*
- Optional download if you wish to build the in-tree Mozilla browser: *ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/mozilla/releases/mozilla1.7.5/source/mozilla-source-1.7.5.tar.gz*
- Optional download if you wish to build the OpenOffice SDK: *ftp://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_sdk.tar.bz2* which also requires *MinGW* or a precompiled `unowinreg.dll` for the cross-platform Java components.
- Optional download if you would like to localize the installation: *ftp://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_l10n.tar.bz2*
- Optional download if you need to support the old StarOffice-5.x file formats: *ftp://ftp.osuosl.org/pub/openoffice/stable/2.3.1/OOo_2.3.1_src_binfilter.tar.bz2*

OpenOffice Dependencies

Required

Apache Ant-1.7.0, GTK+-2.10.13, libIDL-0.8.8, Perl Modules XML::Parser-2.34 and Archive::Zip-1.20, UnZip-5.52, which-2.19, and Zip-2.32

Recommended

libart_lgpl-2.3.19 and libxslt-1.1.22

Optional

ALTLinuxhyph, *boost*, CUPS-1.2.12, cURL-7.16.3, Berkeley DB-4.5.20 (built with Java support), desktop-file-utils-0.13, *EPM*, Evolution-2.10.3, GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1, *GPC*, KDE, libjpeg-6b, *libsndfile*, LibTIFF-3.8.2, *libwpd*, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, Firefox-2.0.0.15 (with ldap support), *MySpell*, *MyThes*, NAS-1.9, *neon*, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, *PortAudio*, Python-2.5.2, *Sablotron*, SANE-1.0.18, startup-notification-0.9, *STLPort*, and unixODBC-2.2.12

Installation of OpenOffice

The OpenOffice source code is now distributed in several tarballs. You should extract each from the same top-level directory before entering the build directory. At a minimum, you will need to extract the “core” and “system” tarballs. Note that the source directory name is not consistent with the tarball name and will be named `OOG680_m9`.

If you wish to build an in-tree Mozilla, as opposed to using a system wide installation, copy the Mozilla source tarball into the source tree:

```
cp ../mozilla-source-1.7.5.tar.gz moz/download/
```

If you want to optimize the build, edit the appropriate makefile in `solenv/inc/` and add the desired optimization flags to the `CFLAGSOPT` variable. The makefiles are arch specific, for instance edit `solenv/inc/unxlngi6.mk` for i686. Some users have reported problems with `-fomit-frame-pointer`. The best option is to not use any custom optimizations.

Note

Because of the complexity of the OpenOffice build system, it is not possible to provide generic build instructions for all systems. You should review the output of **config_office/configure --help** and take advantage of any system installed programs and libraries available using the *`--enable-*`*, *`--disable-*`*, and *`--with-system-*`* parameters. Additionally, if you have installed KDE in the `/opt` prefix, and would like to use the *`--enable-kde`* switch, you must set **KDEDIR=$KDE_PREFIX** before running **configure**.

OpenOffice fails to compile if **umask** is set to something exotic. The build can also fail if the `LANG` or `LC_ALL` environment variables are set. Use the following commands to change your environment accordingly:

```
umask 0022 &&
unset LANG LC_ALL
```

Install OpenOffice by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../OOo_2.3.1-use_bin_hsqldb-1.patch &&

sed -i 's@..$/dist$/configure@uudecode="no" &@' \
    berkeleydb/makefile.mk &&

pushd config_office &&
./configure --prefix=/opt/openoffice-2.3.1 \
            --enable-libart                \
            --disable-fontooo              \
            --disable-gnome-vfs            \
            --without-fonts                \
            --without-system-jars          \
            --without-pam                  \
            --with-system-stdlibs          \
            --with-system-freetype         \
            --with-system-expat            \
            --with-system-libxml           \
            --with-system-libxslt          \
            --with-system-zlib             \
            --enable-cairo                 \
            --enable-build-mozilla         \
            --with-build-version=BLFS      \
            --with-package-format=native   \
            --disable-binfilter            \
            --disable-odk                  \
            --disable-qadevooo             \
            --with-use-shell=bash &&
popd &&

./bootstrap &&
source LinuxX86Env.Set.sh &&
dmake
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
pushd instsetoo_native/unxlngi6.pro/OpenOffice/\
native/install/en-US/linux-2.6-intel/buildroot/opt &&
cp -r -v openoffice.org2.3 /opt/openoffice-2.3.1 &&
popd &&

for appl in sbase scalc sdraw simpress smath soffice spadmin swriter
do
    ln -v -sf /opt/openoffice-2.3.1/program/$appl /usr/bin
done &&

pushd sysui/desktop/icons &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/icons/{HighContrast,hicolor,locolor} &&
cp -r -v HighContrast/*x* /usr/share/icons/HighContrast &&
cp -r -v hicolor/*x*      /usr/share/icons/hicolor &&
cp -r -v locolor/*x*      /usr/share/icons/locolor &&
popd
```

If you have installed desktop-file-utils-0.13, you should copy the `*.desktop` files to `/usr/share/applications` using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/applications &&
pushd /opt/openoffice-2.3.1/share/xdg/ &&
for appl in *.desktop
do
    sed -i '/Exec/d' $appl &&
    echo "Exec=/usr/bin/s`echo $appl | sed 's/.desktop//'`" >> $appl &&
    sed -i '/Icon/d' $appl &&
    echo "Icon=`echo $appl | sed 's/.desktop//'`" >> $appl
done &&
sed -i 's@bin/sprinteradmin@bin/spadmin@' printeradmin.desktop &&
cp -v *.desktop /usr/share/applications &&
update-desktop-database &&
popd
```

Finally, if you'd like to edit OpenOffice documents directly from SeaMonkey-1.1.9 or Firefox-2.0.0.15, create a symbolic link in your plugins directory to `/opt/openoffice-2.3.1/program/libnpsoplugin.so`. Additionally, you must enable the plugin from the *`Internet Options`* within any OpenOffice application.

Command Explanations

sed 's@..\$dist\$/configure@uudecode="no"...': This command corrects a build failure if a faulty **uudecode** program provided by the GMime-2.2.10 package is installed.

`--enable-*`: The switches listed in the example **configure** command above force the use of system installed libraries that are known to be available on a BLFS system that meets the required and recommended dependencies.

`--disable-fontooo`: Use Fontconfig instead of the FontOOo.

--disable-gnome-vfs: Disable the use of Gnome Virtual File System libraries. Omit this switch if you have Gnome installed.

--without-fonts: Do not install Bitstream Vera fonts since they are already included in the X Window System Environment.

*--with{,out}-system-**: Determines whether to use the system libraries and programs or to build the source packages included in the build tree.

--without-pam: Disable the use of Linux-PAM functions. Omit this switch if Linux-PAM is installed.

--enable-build-mozilla: Build the in-tree Mozilla suite.

--with-build-version=BLFS: Appends “BLFS” to the end of the version string.

--with-package-format=native: This switch forces the build to skip the packaging process, leaving only the temporary installation that would be used for packaging. This temporary installation is later copied directly to the final destination.

--disable-binfilter: This switch disables the build of legacy StarOffice-5 import filters. Omit this switch if you've downloaded the binfilter package above. Warning: Installation of the legacy import filters increases the build time considerably. Only install them if you have these old file types, and need to edit them in OpenOffice.

--disable-odk: This switch disables the build of the OpenOffice SDK. Omit this switch if you've downloaded the SDK package (and additional requirements) above.

--disable-qadevooo: This switch skips the building of the quality assurance tools used by the OpenOffice development teams.

--with-system-mozilla=<type> : Enables the use of a system installed gecko or XULRunner engine in place of the full Mozilla suite. This will disable the use of a Thunderbird address book as a data source. If you omit the type of installation, **configure** defaults to and searches for a working XULRunner installation and will fail if one is not found.

--disable-cups: Disable the use of CUPS for printing.

--with-lang=<LANG>: Allows the use of additional languages in OpenOffice. US English (ENUS) is the default.

--with-dict=<LANG>: Allows the use of alternate dictionaries in OpenOffice. US English (ENUS) is the default.

--with-use-shell=bash: Tells the OpenOffice build system to use **bash** instead of **tcsh**.

./bootstrap: Build the **dmake** utility required to complete the build.

dmake: Compiles the package.

for appl in sbase scalc...: Creates symlinks for the applications in `/usr/bin`.

for appl in *.desktop...: Edit the `*.desktop` files for use with a standard BLFS system.

Contents

Installed Programs:	scalc, sdraw, simpress, smath, soffice, spadmin, and swriter.
Installed Libraries:	OpenOffice libraries
Installed Directory:	/opt/openoffice-2.3.1

Short Descriptions

sbase	is a database application.

scalc is a spreadsheet application.

sdraw is a drawing application.

simpress is a presentation application.

smath is a mathematical formula editor.

soffice opens a base window with access to all OpenOffice applications.

spadmin is the OpenOffice printer configuration utility.

swriter is a word processing application.

Chapter 33. Graphical Web Browsers

This chapter contains a wonderful selection of browsers. We hope you can find one you enjoy using or give them each a trial run.

SeaMonkey-1.1.9

Introduction to SeaMonkey

SeaMonkey is a browser suite, the Open Source sibling of Netscape. It includes the browser, composer, mail and news clients, and an IRC client. It is the follow-on to the Mozilla browser suite.

The Mozilla project also hosts two subprojects that aim to satisfy the needs of users who don't need the complete browser suite or prefer to have separate applications for browsing and e-mail. These subprojects are *Mozilla Firefox*, (a stand-alone browser based on the Mozilla source code) and *Mozilla Thunderbird*, (a stand-alone mail/newsgroup client based on the Mozilla source code). The build instructions for these two applications are discussed in separate sections:

- Firefox-2.0.0.15
- Thunderbird-2.0.0.12

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/seamonkey/releases/1.1.9/seamonkey-1.1.9.source.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/seamonkey/releases/1.1.9/seamonkey-1.1.9.source.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 2b08c472164e80922f715c6e96e0bee7
- Download size: 33.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 632 MB
- Estimated build time: 17.0 SBU

To enable the Enigmail extension to the SeaMonkey mail client, you'll need to download the tarball listed below. The Enigmail extension allows users to access the authentication and encryption features provided by the GnuPG package. The Enigmail extension will not operate correctly unless you have GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8 installed.

- *http://www.mozilla-enigmail.org/download/source/enigmail-0.95.6.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum (Enigmail): cfbe6ff77f80a349b396829757ad952a

SeaMonkey Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13, libIDL-0.8.8, and Zip-2.32

Note

libjpeg-6b should have been installed before GTK+ and should exist on your system. If for some reason you haven't installed libjpeg, you should remove the `--with-system-jpeg` option from the `.mozconfig` file created below.

Recommended

NSS-3.11.7 (if you will be installing any other package that utilizes NSS/NSPR, such as Firefox, Thunderbird, Evolution, or OpenOffice)

Optional

UnZip-5.52 and libgnomeui-2.18.1 (to build the gnomevfs extension)

Installation of SeaMonkey

The configuration of SeaMonkey is accomplished by creating a `.mozconfig` file containing the desired configuration options. A default `.mozconfig` file is created below. To see the entire list of available configuration options (and an abbreviated description of each one), issue **./configure --help**. Additional information can also be found below in the section titled Additional .mozconfig Options. If you are going to use system-installed versions of the NSS and NSPR libraries, ensure you uncomment the two lines near the bottom of the file. If you would prefer to download the file instead of creating it by typing or cut-and-pasting, you can find it at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/seamonkey-1.1.9-mozconfig* (the file must be installed in the root of the source tree `mozilla` directory, and named `.mozconfig`). Create the file by issuing the following command:

```
cat > .mozconfig << "EOF"
# This file contains the options used in the SeaMonkey build. You may
# need to specify additional options for your specific build needs.
# Use the information provided by running './configure --help' to
# help you determine if you need to add any additional options.
# Some additional options can be added by uncommenting the examples
# in this file or adding options by inserting a line containing
# 'ac_add_options --some-option-you-need'.


# Create an object directory and specify to build the package in that
# directory. If desired, modify the location of the object directory
# to a directory inside the source tree by removing '../' from the
# line below.
mk_add_options MOZ_OBJDIR=@TOPSRCDIR@/../seamonkey-build

# This option is used to specify that the SeaMonkey suite is
# being built and to use all the default options for SeaMonkey.
ac_add_options --enable-application=suite

# Specify the installation prefix. If you would prefer SeaMonkey
# installed in a different prefix, modify the line below to fit
# your needs. You'll also need to modify some of the instructions in
# the BLFS book to point to your desired prefix.
ac_add_options --prefix=/usr

# These options are used so that the SeaMonkey binaries are linked to
# the system-installed copies of the specified libraries instead of
# the source tree code which may not be the most recent versions.
ac_add_options --with-system-zlib
ac_add_options --with-system-png
ac_add_options --with-system-jpeg
ac_add_options --enable-system-cairo

# This option specifies to include support for rendering the HTML
# <canvas></canvas> tag in the SeaMonkey browser.
ac_add_options --enable-canvas
```

```
# This option is used so that the debugging symbols are removed from
# the installed binaries during the installation process. Comment out
# this option if you may have a need to retain the debugging symbols
# in the installed binaries. Note that this can substantially
# increase the size of the installed binaries.
ac_add_options --enable-strip

# This option is added so that test libraries and programs are not
# built. These would only be required for debugging purposes.
ac_add_options --disable-tests

# This option is added so that the Mozilla Installer program is not
# built or installed. The program is not required for a BLFS
# installation of SeaMonkey.
ac_add_options --disable-installer

# This option is used to disable the a11y support in the SeaMonkey
# binaries. Comment out this option if you require a11y support.
ac_add_options --disable-accessibility

# This option is used to enable support for rendering SVG files in the
# SeaMonkey browser.
ac_add_options --enable-svg

# This option is used to enable source tree included LDAP support in
# the SeaMonkey binaries.
ac_add_options --enable-ldap

# These two options enable support for building SeaMonkey with
# system-installed versions of the Network Security Services (NSS)
# and Netscape Portable Runtime (NSPR) libraries. Uncomment both
# lines to enable support for system-installed NSS/NSPR.
#ac_add_options --with-system-nspr
#ac_add_options --with-system-nss

# Uncomment this option if you desire support for dual-monitor
# display of SeaMonkey using the X-Window Xinerama libraries.
#ac_add_options --enable-xinerama

# Complex scripts such as Thai can only be rendered in SeaMonkey with the
# help of Pango. This option significantly slows rendering, so only use
# it if necessary.
#ac_add_options --enable-pango

# This option identifies the default binary directory of the SeaMonkey
# installation and is used to locate SeaMonkey's installed files. This
```

```
# option is not required for end-user browsing, and is only used for
# development purposes.
#ac_add_options --with-default-mozilla-five-home=/usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9

EOF
```

Compile SeaMonkey by running the following commands:

```
cat >> layout/build/Makefile.in << "EOF"

ifdef MOZ_ENABLE_CANVAS
EXTRA_DSO_LDOPTS += $(XLDFLAGS) -lX11 -lXrender
endif
EOF

make -f client.mk build
```

If you're building the SeaMonkey mail/newsgroup client and plan to install the Enigmail extension, issue the following commands:

```
tar -xf ../enigmail-0.95.6.tar.gz -C mailnews/extensions &&

( cd mailnews/extensions/enigmail && ./makemake -r ) &&

make -C ../seamonkey-build/mailnews/extensions/enigmail &&
make -C ../seamonkey-build/mailnews/extensions/enigmail \
        XPIFILE=enigmail-0.95.6.xpi xpi
```

This package does not come with a test suite. However, it cn be launched fom the build directory before installing with the command line: **`../seamonkey-build/dist/bin/seamonkey`**.

Install SeaMonkey by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
make -f client.mk install &&

install -v -m644 ../seamonkey-build/dist/public/ldap-private/* \
    /usr/include/seamonkey-1.1.9/ldap &&

install -v -m644 ../seamonkey-build/dist/bin/isp/movemail.rdf \
    /usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/isp
```

If you built SeaMonkey utilizing system-installed NSS and NSPR libraries, the `seamonkey-ns*.pc` pkgconfig files are broken as they point to the wrong directories where the actual libraries and interface headers are located. Issue the following commands as the `root` user to replace the broken files with symbolic links to known good files:

```
ln -v -sf nss.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/seamonkey-nss.pc &&
ln -v -sf nspr.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/seamonkey-nspr.pc
```

If you did **NOT** build seamonkey utilizing system-installed NSS and NSPR libraries, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the NSS interface headers:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/include/seamonkey-1.1.9/nss &&
cp -v -Lf ../seamonkey-build/dist/{private,public}/nss/*.h \
   /usr/include/seamonkey-1.1.9/nss
```

If you built the Enigmail extension, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the `.xpi` file into the `/usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/xpi_store` directory:

```
install -v -m644 -D ../seamonkey-build/dist/bin/enigmail-0.95.6.xpi \
    /usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/xpi_store/enigmail-0.95.6.xpi
```

There are two methods you can use to install the Enigmail extension. Both are shown here and provide similar functionality with one major difference. The first method will install the extension system-wide and all users of SeaMonkey will have an Enigmail-enabled mail client. The method shown later only installs it on a per-user basis. The first method must be accomplished now (before the object directory is removed) and uses the conventional **make install** command to install the Enigmail files straight from the distribution directory of the object directory. The alternate method is shown as it installs using the `.xpi` file created earlier and can be done later (at any time you desire) as the file used to install Enigmail was copied into `/usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/xpi_store` in the previous step. This method can be used to install any downloaded Mozilla extension distributed in a `.xpi` file. There are many extensions available for SeaMonkey. A list containing many of them can be found at *http://extensionroom.mozdev.org/*.

If you want to install the Enigmail extension now, which offers system-wide access, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
make -C ../seamonkey-build/mailnews/extensions/enigmail install
```

To install an extension from a created or download `.xpi` file, you simply need to “open” the `.xpi` file using the “Open File” option of the “File” menu of the browser window. You can browse to find the file (for example, the Enigmail `.xpi` file is located in `/usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/xpi_store`), select it, then follow the prompts to install the extension.

Note

You should run **/usr/bin/seamonkey** once as the `root` user (or any user with write privileges) to create some necessary additional files in the `/usr` hierarchy. Also do this each time you install additional system-wide extensions.

Additional .mozconfig Options

Information about some of the additional options which can be added to the `.mozconfig` configuration file is shown below. Note that this is just a few of the options. You may wish to run **./configure --help** and review each of the listed options to discover what affect they have on the build. Feel free to add or remove options to tailor the build to your desires. Listed below are some common options not in the default `.mozconfig` file but can be added in order to have the described effect on the SeaMonkey compile.

`ac_add_options --enable-elf-dynstr-gc`: Removes un-referenced strings from ELF shared objects generated during the build. Note that this option breaks the build on alpha.

`ac_add_options --disable-mailnews`: Disables the mail and news clients.

`ac_add_options --disable-ldap`: Disables LDAP support, recommended if mail is disabled.

`ac_add_options --enable-xterm-updates`: Displays the current command in the **xterm** window title during the compilation.

`ac_add_options --enable-plaintext-editor-only`: Disables support for HTML editing. Do not use this switch if you are building the mail-news component.

.mozconfig Option Explanations

To simplify reading the options below, they are labeled without *`ac_add_options`* inserted at the beginning of the option. These options are also described in the `.mozconfig` file created earlier.

`mk_add_options MOZ_OBJDIR=@TOPSRCDIR@/../seamonkey-build`: Creates an object directory and specifies to build the package in that directory. If desired, modify the location of the object directory to a directory inside the source tree by removing "../" from the line.

`--enable-application=suite`: Identifies the build as a SeaMonkey suite build.

`--with-system-zlib --with-system-png --with-system-jpeg --enable-system-cairo`: Uses the system-installed versions of these packages.

`--enable-xinerama --enable-reorder --enable-strip --enable-cpp-rtti --disable-accessibility --disable-tests --disable-logging --disable-pedantic --disable-installer`: Various options that affect what components are built and some optimization options. You can pick and choose from these options. More information on them, and many other available options, can be found by running **./configure --help**.

Command Explanations

'EXTRA_DSO_LDOPTS' += -lX11 -lXrender ...: Building the layout backend will break when the canvas element is enabled without adding these two required libraries.

make -f client.mk ...: Mozilla products are packaged to allow the use of a configuration file which can be used to pass the configuration settings to the **configure** command. **make** uses the `client.mk` file to get initial configuration and setup parameters, then depending on the target parameter (*`build`* or *`install`*), either runs the **configure** script and compiles the package or installs the package.

./makemake -r: This command is used to recursively create `Makefile`s in the appropriate subdirectory of `seamonkey-build`.

make -C ... xpi: This command builds the Enigmail `.xpi` file which can be used to install Enigmail.

install .../movemail.rdf ...: This command is used to install a file inadvertently left out of the installation script.

Configuring SeaMonkey

No specific configuration is required as long as the **seamonkey** script is in the user's path. If SeaMonkey is installed in a non-standard location, make a symlink to the **seamonkey** script in the `/usr/bin` directory.

Some applications look for **netscape** when they need to open a browser. You may make the following symlink for convenience (as the `root` user).

```
ln -v -sf seamonkey /usr/bin/netscape
```

For installing various SeaMonkey plugins, refer to *Mozdev's PluginDoc Project*. If you have JDK-6 Update 5 already installed, create the following link as the `root` user to utilize the JAVA plugin:

```
ln -v -s $JAVA_HOME/jre/plugin/i386/ns7/libjavaplugin_oji.so \
    /usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/plugins
```

Some packages install SeaMonkey plugins into the default system-wide directory `/usr/lib/mozilla/plugins`. If desired, create symbolic links in the SeaMonkey plugin directory `/usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/plugins` to the files in the default plugin directory (you should link to the actual files and not other links). Alternatively, you can move or copy the files in the default plugin directory to the SeaMonkey plugin directory. An example of creating a symbolic link is shown below. Create the links as the `root` user:

```
ln -v -s ../../mozilla/plugins/<plugin.so> \
    /usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9/plugins
```

Along with using the “Preferences” menu to configure SeaMonkey's options and preferences to suit individual tastes, finer grain control of many options is only available using a tool not available from the general menu system. To access this tool, you'll need to open a browser window and enter `about:config` in the address bar. This will display a list of the configuration preferences and information related to each one. You can use the “Filter:” bar to enter search criteria and narrow down the listed items. Changing a preference can be done using two methods. One, if the preference has a boolean value (True/False), simply double-click on the preference to toggle the value and two, for other preferences simply right-click on the desired line, choose “Modify” from the menu and change the value. Creating new preference items is accomplished in the same way, except choose “New” from the menu and provide the desired data into the fields when prompted.

Tip

There is a multitude of configuration parameters you can tweak to customize SeaMonkey. A very extensive and up-to-date list of these parameters can be found at *http://preferential.mozdev.org/preferences.html*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	seamonkey and seamonkey-config
Installed Libraries:	Numerous libraries, browser, and email/newsgroup components, plugins, extensions, and helper modules installed in `/usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9`
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/seamonkey-1.1.9, /usr/lib/seamonkey-1.1.9, and /usr/share/idl/seamonkey-1.1.9

Short Descriptions

seamonkey is a browser/email/newsgroup/chat client suite. The various components such as the Composer, mail-news client, IRC chat client, and address book can be accessed from the menu after **seamonkey** starts or via command-line switches to the **seamonkey** script. Issue **man seamonkey** for additional information.

Firefox-2.0.0.15

Introduction to Firefox

Firefox is a stand-alone browser based on the Mozilla codebase.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://releases.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/firefox/releases/2.0.0.15/source/firefox-2.0.0.15-source.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/firefox/releases/2.0.0.15/source/firefox-2.0.0.15-source.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: ef827973830cc6453adf8ca3b88a9c6d
- Download size: 38 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 574 MB
- Estimated build time: 13 SBU

Firefox Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13, libIDL-0.8.8, and Zip-2.32

Note: libjpeg should have been installed before GTK+ and should exist on your system. If for some reason you haven't installed libjpeg, you should remove the `--with-system-jpeg` option from the `.mozconfig` file created below.

Recommended

NSS-3.11.7(if you will be installing any other package that utilizes NSS/NSPR, such as Thunderbird, SeaMonkey, Evolution, or OpenOffice)

Optional

UnZip-5.52 and libgnomeui-2.18.1 (to build the gnomevfs extension)

Installation of Firefox

The configuration of Firefox is accomplished by creating a `.mozconfig` file containing the desired configuration options. A default `.mozconfig` is created below. To see the entire list of available configuration options (and an abbreviated description of each one), issue **./configure --help**. If you are going to use system-installed versions of the NSS and NSPR libraries, ensure you uncomment the two lines near the bottom of the file. If you are going to build the OpenOffice package and you want to use this Firefox installation as the default Mozilla source, ensure you uncomment the `--enable-ldap` option in the file created below. You may also wish to review the entire file and uncomment any other desired options. If you would prefer to download the file instead of creating it by typing or cut-and-pasting, you can find it at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/firefox-2.0.0.15-mozconfig* (the file must be installed in the root of the source tree `mozilla` directory, and named `.mozconfig`). Create the file by issuing the following command:

```
cat > .mozconfig << "EOF"
# This file contains the options used in the Firefox build. You may
# need to specify additional options for your specific build needs.
# Use the information provided by running './configure --help' to
```

```
# help you determine if you need to add any additional options.
# Some additional options can be added by uncommenting the examples
# in this file or adding options by inserting a line containing
# 'ac_add_options --some-option-you-need'.


# Use the default settings specified in the source tree
. $topsrcdir/browser/config/mozconfig

# Create an object directory and specify to build the package in that
# directory. If desired, modify the location of the object directory
# to a directory inside the source tree by removing '../' from the
# line below.
mk_add_options MOZ_OBJDIR=@TOPSRCDIR@/../firefox-build

# Specify the installation prefix. If you would prefer Firefox
# installed in a different prefix, modify the line below to fit
# your needs. You'll also need to modify some of the instructions in
# the BLFS book to point to your desired prefix.
ac_add_options --prefix=/usr

# These options are used so that the Firefox binaries are linked to
# the system-installed copies of the specified libraries instead of
# the source tree code which may not be the most recent versions.
ac_add_options --with-system-zlib
ac_add_options --with-system-png
ac_add_options --with-system-jpeg
ac_add_options --enable-system-cairo

# This option causes the installed binaries to have the official
# Firefox name embedded in them. Due to license restrictions, you
# may not distribute binaries created using this option.
ac_add_options --enable-official-branding

# This option is used to enable support for rendering SVG files in the
# Firefox browser. Comment out the line to disable the option.
ac_add_options --enable-svg

# This option is used so that the debugging symbols are removed from
# the installed binaries during the installation process. Comment out
# this option if you may have a need to retain the debugging symbols
# in the installed binaries. Note that this can substantially
# increase the size of the installed binaries.
ac_add_options --enable-strip

# This option is added so that test libraries and programs are not
# built. These would only be required for debugging purposes.
```

```
ac_add_options --disable-tests

# This option is added so that the Mozilla Installer program is not
# built or installed. The program is not required for a BLFS
# installation of Firefox.
ac_add_options --disable-installer

# This option is used to disable the a11y support in the Firefox
# binaries. Comment out this option if you require a11y support.
ac_add_options --disable-accessibility

# This option is used to enable source tree included LDAP support in
# the Firefox binaries.
#####################################################################
#
# NOTE: You must uncomment this option if there is any chance of
# compiling the OpenOffice package from source code using this copy
# of Firefox for your Mozilla support.
#
#####################################################################
#ac_add_options --enable-ldap

# Uncomment this option if you desire support for dual-monitor
# display of Firefox using the X-Window Xinerama libraries.
#ac_add_options --enable-xinerama

# These two options enable support for building Firefox with
# system-installed versions of the Network Security Services (NSS)
# and Netscape Portable Runtime (NSPR) libraries. Uncomment both
# lines to enable support for system-installed NSS/NSPR.
#ac_add_options --with-system-nss
#ac_add_options --with-system-nspr

# Complex scripts such as Thai can only be rendered in Firefox with the
# help of Pango. This option significantly slows rendering, so only use
# it if necessary.
#ac_add_options --enable-pango

# This option identifies the default binary directory of the Firefox
# installation and is used to locate Firefox's installed files. This
# option is not required for end-user browsing, and is only used for
# development purposes.
#ac_add_options --with-default-mozilla-five-home=/usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15

EOF
```

Compile Firefox by issuing the following commands:

```
cat >> layout/build/Makefile.in << "EOF" &&
ifdef MOZ_ENABLE_CANVAS
EXTRA_DSO_LDOPTS += $(XLDFLAGS) -lX11 -lXrender
endif
EOF

sed -i "s/^    enum$/& xptinfo_enum_1/" \
    xpcom/reflect/xptinfo/public/xptinfo.h &&

make -f client.mk build
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user, install the package:

```
make -f client.mk install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15/chrome/icons/default &&
ln -v -s ../../../icons/default.xpm \
    /usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15/chrome/icons/default &&

chown -v -R root:root \
    /usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15/extensions/inspector@mozilla.org/*
```

If you enabled LDAP support in the Firefox build, install some additional interface headers as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 ../firefox-build/dist/public/ldap-private/* \
    /usr/include/firefox-2.0.0.15/ldap
```

If you built Firefox utilizing system-installed NSS and NSPR libraries, the `firefox-ns*.pc` pkgconfig files are broken as they point to the wrong directories where the actual libraries and interface headers are located. Issue the following commands as the `root` user to replace the broken files with symbolic links to known good files:

```
ln -v -sf nss.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/firefox-nss.pc &&
ln -v -sf nspr.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/firefox-nspr.pc
```

If you did **NOT** build Firefox utilizing system-installed NSS and NSPR libraries, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the NSS interface headers:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/include/firefox-2.0.0.15/nss &&
cp -v -Lf ../firefox-build/dist/{private,public}/nss/*.h \
    /usr/include/firefox-2.0.0.15/nss
```

Note

You should run **/usr/bin/firefox** once as the `root` user (or any user with write privileges) to create some necessary additional files in the `/usr` hierarchy.

Command Explanations

'EXTRA_DSO_LDOPTS' += -lX11 -lXrender ...: Building the layout backend will break when the canvas element is enabled without adding these two required libraries.

sed -i "s/^ enum$/& xptinfo_enum_1/" ...: This command is used to fix an anonymous enum in an external/public interface header file.

make -f client.mk ...: Mozilla products are packaged to allow the use of a configuration file which can be used to pass the configuration settings to the **configure** command. **make** uses the `client.mk` file to get initial configuration and setup parameters, then depending on the target parameter (*`build`* or *`install`*), either runs the **configure** script and compiles the package or installs the package.

install -v -m755 -d .../chrome/icons/default and **ln -v -s ../../../icons/default.xpm ...**: These two commands are used to create a symlink in the required directory so that the proper icon is displayed in the taskbar and when Firefox windows are minimized.

chown -v -R root:root ...: This command changes the ownership of some installed files to more appropriate user:group names.

Configuring Firefox

No specific configuration is required as long as the **firefox** script is in the user's path. If Firefox is installed in a non-standard location, then make a symlink to the **firefox** script in the `/usr/bin` directory.

If your Window or Desktop Manager does not allow you to configure a default mail client, you can add a configuration parameter to Firefox so that an email client will start when you click on a `mailto:` URL. There are two parameters you need to check. The procedure to check or modify any of the configuration parameters is quite simple and the instructions here can be used to view or modify any of the parameters.

First, open the configuration dialog by entering `about:config` in the address bar. This will display a list of the configuration preferences and information related to each one. You can use the “Filter:” bar to enter search criteria and narrow down the listed items. Changing a preference can be done using two methods. One, if the preference has a boolean value (True/False), simply double-click on the preference to toggle the value and two, for other preferences simply right-click on the desired line, choose “Modify” from the menu and change the value. Creating new preference items is accomplished in the same way, except choose “New” from the menu and provide the desired data into the fields when prompted.

The two configuration preference items you need to check so that Firefox uses a specified default mail client are the *`network.protocol-handler.external.mailto`* which should be set to `True` and the *`network.protocol-handler.app.mailto`* which should be set to the path of the desired mail client, e.g., `/usr/bin/thunderbird`.

Tip

There is a multitude of configuration parameters you can tweak to customize Firefox. A very extensive and up-to-date list of these parameters can be found at *http://preferential.mozdev.org/preferences.html*.

Many applications look for **netscape** when they need to open a browser. You may wish to make the following symlink for convenience (as the `root` user).

```
ln -v -sf firefox /usr/bin/netscape
```

For installing various Firefox plugins, refer to *Mozdev's PluginDoc Project*. If you have the JDK-6 Update 5 already installed, create the following link as the `root` user to utilize the installed Java plugin:

```
ln -v -s $JAVA_HOME/jre/plugin/i386/ns7/libjavaplugin_oji.so \
    /usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15/plugins
```

Some packages install Mozilla plugins into the default system-wide directory `/usr/lib/mozilla/plugins`. If desired, create symbolic links in the Firefox plugin directory `/usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15/plugins` to the files in the default plugin directory (you should link to the actual files and not other links). Alternatively, you can move or copy the files in the default plugin directory to the Firefox plugin directory. An example of creating a symbolic link is shown below. Create the links as the `root` user:

```
ln -v -s ../../mozilla/plugins/<plugin.so> \
    /usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15/plugins
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	firefox and firefox-config
Installed Libraries:	Numerous libraries, browser components, plugins, extensions, and helper modules installed in `/usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15`
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/firefox-2.0.0.15, /usr/lib/firefox-2.0.0.15, and /usr/share/idl/firefox-2.0.0.15

Short Descriptions

firefox	is a shell script that sets up the environment and calls the `firefox-bin` binary.
firefox-config	determines the compile and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use Firefox libraries and browser components.

Konqueror-3.5.9

konqueror is the default graphical web browser for the KDE desktop environment. It is packaged and installed with kdebase-3.5.9.

Chapter 34. Other X-based Internet Programs

The Internet isn't just about browsing. Here are more graphical applications that utilize other areas of the Internet.

Thunderbird-2.0.0.12

Introduction to Thunderbird

Thunderbird is a stand-alone mail/news client based on the Mozilla codebase.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/t/thunderbird-2.0.0.12-source.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: c23f576a8fd0ceee5135829c8ae5168b
- Download size: 37 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 629 MB
- Estimated build time: 18 SBU

To enable the Enigmail extension to the Thunderbird mail client, you'll need to download the tarball shown below. The Enigmail extension allows users to access the authentication and encryption features provided by the GnuPG package. The Enigmail extension will not operate correctly unless you have GnuPG-1.4.7 or GnuPG-2.0.8 installed.

- *http://www.mozilla-enigmail.org/download/source/enigmail-0.95.6.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: cfbe6ff77f80a349b396829757ad952a
- Download size: 1.1 MB

Thunderbird Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13, libIDL-0.8.8, and Zip-2.32

Note: libjpeg should have been installed before GTK+ and should exist on your system. If for some reason you haven't installed libjpeg, you should remove the `--with-system-jpeg` option from the `.mozconfig` file created below.

Recommended

NSS-3.11.7 (if you will be installing any other package that utilizes NSS/NSPR, such as Firefox, SeaMonkey, Evolution, or OpenOffice)

Optional

UnZip-5.52 and libgnomeui-2.18.1 (to build the gnomevfs extension)

Installation of Thunderbird

The configuration of Thunderbird is accomplished by creating a `.mozconfig` file containing the desired configuration options. A default `.mozconfig` is created below. To see the entire list of available configuration options (and an abbreviated description of each one), issue **./configure --help**. If you are going to use system-installed versions of the NSS and NSPR libraries, ensure you uncomment the two lines near the bottom of the file. You may also wish to review the entire file and uncomment any other desired options. If you would prefer to download the file

instead of creating it by typing or cut-and-pasting, you can find it at *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/thunderbird-2.0.0.12-mozconfig* (the file must be installed in the root of the source tree `mozilla` directory, and named `.mozconfig`). Create the file by issuing the following command:

```
cat > .mozconfig << "EOF"
# This file contains the options used in the Thunderbird build. You may
# need to specify additional options for your specific build needs.
# Use the information provided by running './configure --help' to
# help you determine if you need to add any additional options.
# Some additional options can be added by uncommenting the examples
# in this file or adding options by inserting a line containing
# 'ac_add_options --some-option-you-need'.


# Use the default settings specified in the source tree
. $topsrcdir/mail/config/mozconfig

# Create an object directory and specify to build the package in that
# directory. If desired, modify the location of the object directory
# to a directory inside the source tree by removing '../' from the
# line below.
mk_add_options MOZ_OBJDIR=@TOPSRCDIR@/../thunderbird-build

# Specify the installation prefix. If you would prefer Thunderbird
# installed in a different prefix, modify the line below to fit
# your needs. You'll also need to modify some of the instructions in
# the BLFS book to point to your desired prefix.
ac_add_options --prefix=/usr

# These options are used so that the Thunderbird binaries are linked to
# the system-installed copies of the specified libraries instead of
# the source tree code which may not be the most recent versions.
ac_add_options --with-system-zlib
ac_add_options --with-system-png
ac_add_options --with-system-jpeg
ac_add_options --enable-system-cairo

# This option causes the installed binaries to have the official
# Thunderbird name embedded in them. Due to license restrictions, you
# may not distribute binaries created using this option.
ac_add_options --enable-official-branding

# This option specifies to include support for rendering the HTML
# <canvas></canvas> tag in the Thunderbird mail client.
#ac_add_options --enable-canvas

# This option is used so that the debugging symbols are removed from
```

```
# the installed binaries during the installation process. Comment out
# this option if you may have a need to retain the debugging symbols
# in the installed binaries. Note that this can substantially
# increase the size of the installed binaries.
ac_add_options --enable-strip

# This option is added so that test libraries and programs are not
# built. These would only be required for debugging purposes.
ac_add_options --disable-tests

# This option is added so that the Mozilla Installer program is not
# built or installed. The program is not required for a BLFS
# installation of Thunderbird.
ac_add_options --disable-installer

# This option is used to disable the a11y support in the Thunderbird
# binaries. Comment out this option if you require a11y support.
ac_add_options --disable-accessibility

# This option is used to enable source tree included LDAP support in
# the Thunderbird binaries.
ac_add_options --enable-ldap

# This option is used to enable support for rendering SVG files in the
# Thunderbird mail client. Uncomment the line below to enable the option.
#ac_add_options --enable-svg

# Uncomment this option if you desire support for dual-monitor
# display of Thunderbird using the X-Window Xinerama libraries.
#ac_add_options --enable-xinerama

# Complex scripts such as Thai can only be rendered in Thunderbird with
# the help of Pango. This option significantly slows rendering, so only
# use it if necessary.
#ac_add_options --enable-pango

# These two options enable support for building Thunderbird with
# system-installed versions of the Network Security Services (NSS)
# and Netscape Portable Runtime (NSPR) libraries. Uncomment both
# lines to enable support for system-installed NSS/NSPR.
#ac_add_options --with-system-nss
#ac_add_options --with-system-nspr

# This option identifies the default binary directory of the Thunderbird
# installation and is used to locate Thunderbird's installed files. This
# option is not required for end-user use, and is only used for
# development purposes. Due to PDF line length limitations, the command
```

```
# below is modified. If you need to use the command below, change the
# ... to /usr/lib.
#ac_add_options --with-default-mozilla-five-home=.../thunderbird-2.0.0.12

EOF
```

Compile Thunderbird by issuing the following commands:

```
cat >> layout/build/Makefile.in << "EOF" &&
ifdef MOZ_ENABLE_CANVAS
EXTRA_DSO_LDOPTS += $(XLDFLAGS) -lX11 -lXrender
endif
EOF

sed -i "s/^    enum$/& xptinfo_enum_1/" \
    xpcom/reflect/xptinfo/public/xptinfo.h &&

make -f client.mk build
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

If you're building the Enigmail extension, issue the following commands:

```
tar -xf ../enigmail-0.95.6.tar.gz -C mailnews/extensions &&
( cd mailnews/extensions/enigmail && ./makemake -r ) &&

make -C ../thunderbird-build/mailnews/extensions/enigmail &&
make -C ../thunderbird-build/mailnews/extensions/enigmail \
        XPIFILE=enigmail-0.95.6.xpi xpi
```

Install Thunderbird by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
make -f client.mk install &&

install -v -m644 ../thunderbird-build/dist/public/ldap-private/* \
    /usr/include/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/ldap &&

install -v -m644 ../thunderbird-build/dist/bin/isp/{movemail,rss}.rdf \
    /usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/isp &&
rm -rvf /usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/defaults/isp
```

If you built Thunderbird utilizing system-installed NSS and NSPR libraries, the `thunderbird-ns*.pc` pkgconfig files are broken as they point to the wrong directories where the actual libraries and interface headers are located. Issue the following commands as the `root` user to replace the broken files with symbolic links to known good files:

```
ln -v -sf nss.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/thunderbird-nss.pc &&
ln -v -sf nspr.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/thunderbird-nspr.pc
```

If you did **NOT** build Thunderbird utilizing system-installed NSS and NSPR libraries, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the NSS interface headers:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/include/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/nss &&
cp -v -Lf ../thunderbird-build/dist/{private,public}/nss/*.h \
    /usr/include/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/nss
```

If you built the Enigmail extension, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install the `.xpi` file:

```
install -v -m644 -D ../thunderbird-build/dist/bin/enigmail-0.95.6.xpi \
    /usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/xpi_store/enigmail-0.95.6.xpi
```

If you want to install Enigmail globally so that all users who run Thunderbird will have access to the extension, issue the command shown below. Note that this procedure starts an instance of Thunderbird and you must have an X server running. Issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
/usr/bin/thunderbird -install-global-extension \
    /usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/xpi_store/enigmail-0.95.6.xpi
```

Global installation of other extensions can be done using the same basic method as the Enigmail extension. See the "Configuring Thunderbird" section below for information about configuring Enigmail for individual users if you did not not install it globally.

Note

You should run **/usr/bin/thunderbird** once as the `root` user (or any user with write privileges) to create some necessary additional files in the `/usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12` directory.

Command Explanations

'EXTRA_DSO_LDOPTS' += -lX11 -lXrender ...: Building the layout backend will break when the canvas element is enabled without adding these two required libraries.

sed -i "s/^ enum$/& xptinfo_enum_1/" ...: This command is used to fix an anonymous enum in an external/public interface header file.

make -f client.mk ...: Mozilla products are packaged to allow the use of a configuration file which can be used to pass the configuration settings to the **configure** command. **make** uses the `client.mk` file to get initial configuration and setup parameters, then depending on the target parameter (*`build`* or *`install`*), either runs the **configure** script and compiles the package or installs the package.

(cd mailnews/... && ./makemake -r): This command is used to recursively create `Makefile`s in the `enigmail` directory.

make -C ... xpi: This command builds the Enigmail `.xpi` file which is used to install Enigmail.

install .../{movemail,rss}.rdf: These commands are used to install two mail extensions inadvertantly left out of the installation script or installed to the wrong location.

Configuring Thunderbird

Configuration Information

No specific configuration is required as long as the **thunderbird** script is in the user's path. If Thunderbird is installed in a non-standard location, then make a symlink to the **thunderbird** script in the `/usr/bin` directory.

If you don't have privileges to install extensions globally, or you prefer to not install global extensions, you can configure Thunderbird on an individual user basis for access to extensions. For example, if you built the Enigmail extension and did not install it globally, it can be installed on an as-needed basis for each user of the system who may use Thunderbird. It is accomplished through the Thunderbird “Tools” menu. Choose the “Extensions” – “Install” option and fill in the “Look in:” field with `/usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12/xpi_store`. You'll then see the `enigmail-0.95.6-linux-????.xpi` file listed. Choose this file and click on “Open”, then click on “Install now”. The Enigmail extension will install and you will be prompted to restart Thunderbird.

If your Window or Desktop Manager does not allow you to configure a default browser, you can add a configuration parameter to Thunderbird so that a browser will start when when you click on an Internet/intranet/local URL. The procedure to check or modify any of the configuration parameters is quite simple and the instructions here can be used to view or modify any of the parameters.

First, open the configuration dialog by opening the “Edit” drop-down menu. Choose “Preferences” and then click on the “Advanced” icon on the top menu bar. Choose the “General” tab and click on the “Config Editor” button. This will display a list of the configuration preferences and information related to each one. You can use the “Filter:” bar to enter search criteria and narrow down the listed items. Changing a preference can be done using two methods. One, if the preference has a boolean value (True/False), simply double-click on the preference to toggle the value and two, for other preferences simply right-click on the desired line, choose “Modify” from the menu and change the value. Creating new preference items is accomplished in the same way, except choose “New” from the menu and provide the desired data into the fields when prompted.

The configuration preference item you need to check so that Thunderbird uses a specified browser is the *`network.protocol-handler.app.http`* which should be set to the path of the desired browser, e.g., `/usr/bin/firefox`.

Tip

There is a multitude of configuration parameters you can tweak to customize Thunderbird. A very extensive and up-to-date list of these parameters can be found at *http://preferential.mozdev.org/preferences.html*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	thunderbird and thunderbird-config
Installed Libraries:	Numerous libraries, email/newsgroups components, plugins, extensions, and helper modules installed in `/usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12`
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/thunderbird-2.0.0.12, /usr/lib/thunderbird-2.0.0.12, and /usr/share/idl/thunderbird-2.0.0.12

Short Descriptions

thunderbird is Mozilla's next-generation email and newsgroup client.

Pan-0.14.2

Introduction to Pan

The Pan package contains a graphical newsreader. This is useful for reading and writing news, threading articles and replying via email.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://pan.rebelbase.com/download/releases/0.14.2/SOURCE/pan-0.14.2.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: ed3188e7059bb6d6c209ee5d46ac1852
- Download size: 1.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 67.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.72 SBU

Pan Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13, GNet-2.0.7, intltool-0.35.5 and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

gtkspell-2.0.4

Installation of Pan

Install Pan by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Program: pan
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: /usr/share/gnome/apps/Internet

Short Descriptions

pan is a graphical newsreader.

Balsa-2.3.22

Introduction to Balsa

The Balsa package contains a GNOME-2 based mail client.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://balsa.gnome.org/balsa-2.3.22.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 0f9b8dbdd26a1916dcc92f0767e8b4e4
- Download size: 2.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 55 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Balsa Dependencies

Required

libgnomeui-2.18.1, ScrollKeeper-0.3.14, GMime-2.2.10, and Aspell-0.60.5 or *GtkSpell* (GtkSpell provides on-the-fly as you type spell checking)

Recommended

libESMTP-1.0.4 (required for outgoing SMTP service) and PCRE-7.6

Optional

GtkHTML-3.14.3, gtksourceview-1.8.5, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, Compface-1.5.2, Heimdal-1.1 or MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, *libnotify*, *SQLite*, and an MTA (that provides a **sendmail** command, note that it is only used if you didn't install the recommended libESMTP package)

Optional to Build S/MIME Support

GPGME (requires GnuPG-2.0.8)

Installation of Balsa

Install Balsa by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib \
            --with-rubrica \
            --with-gtkhtml=no &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(pkg-config --variable=prefix ORBit-2.0)`: Setting the prefix using this parameter instead of with `$GNOME_PREFIX` will ensure that the prefix is consistent with the installation environment and the package will be installed in the correct location.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--localstatedir=/var/lib`: This parameter is used so that all ScrollKeeper files are installed in, and the ScrollKeeper database is properly updated in `/var/lib/scrollkeeper` instead of some files being installed in `$GNOME_PREFIX/var/scrollkeeper`.

`--with-rubrica`: This parameter is used to provide Rubrica2 address book support.

`--with-gtkhtml=no`: This parameter is used if you don't have libgtkhtml installed. Remove this parameter if the package is installed. Note that you won't be able to read or write HTML formatted mail messages if you use this parameter.

`--with-esmtp=no`: Use this parameter if you don't have libESMTP installed.

`--with-ssl`: Use this option to enable SSL support if OpenSSL is installed.

`--with-ldap`: Use this option to enable LDAP address book support if OpenLDAP is installed.

`--with-sqlite`: Use this option to enable SQLite address book support if SQLite is installed.

`--with-gpgme`: Use this option to enable GPG support if “GnuPG Made Easy” (GPGME) is installed.

`--enable-smime`: Use this option to enable S/MIME support if GnuPG-2.x.x is installed.

Configuring Balsa

Configuration Information

All configuration of Balsa is done through the Balsa menu system, with mailbox configuration done with the Settings—>Preferences menu.

If you are unable to connect to your ISP, they probably don't support APOP. Disable it in Settings/Preferences/POP3/advanced.

If you enable filters for your incoming POP3 mail, you must have Procmail-3.22 installed, as the incoming mail will be handed off to **procmail** for processing.

Contents

Installed Programs:	balsa and balsa-ab
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$GNOME_PREFIX`/share/: {gnome/help, omf, sounds}/balsa

Short Descriptions

balsa is a GNOME-2 based mail client.

Pidgin-2.1.0

Introduction to Pidgin

Pidgin is an instant messaging client that can connect with a wide range of networks including AIM, ICQ, GroupWise, MSN, Jabber, IRC, Napster, Gadu-Gadu, SILC, Zephyr and Yahoo!.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/pidgin/pidgin-2.1.0.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 83f44bf9c076595967f7374c50250176
- Download size: 7.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 172 MB (additinoal 106 MB for API documentation)
- Estimated build time: 2.5 SBU

Pidgin Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12, libxml2-2.6.31, and XML::Parser-2.34

Optional for SSL Support

GnuTLS-1.6.3 or NSS-3.11.7

SSL support is required for MSN Messenger and Google Talk. GnuTLS is the preferred method. Note that one of Firefox-2.0.0.15, Thunderbird-2.0.0.12, SeaMonkey-1.1.9, or *Mozilla* can be used instead of NSS.

Optional GUI Tools

GTK+-2.10.13 (required to build the GUI interface), *Gtkspell* (for spell-check support and only used if Gtk+ is installed), XScreenSaver-5.03 (to check for idleness and only used if Gtk+ is installed), startup-notification-0.9 (only used if Gtk+ is installed), and X Window System (used for session management support)

Optional

intltool-0.35.5, GConf-2.18.0.1, D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74 (requires Python-2.5.2 also), *SILC Client*, *SILC Toolkit*, *zephyr*, GStreamer-0.10.13 (required for audio support), Evolution Data Server-1.10.3 (required for Evolution integration), *SQLite* (required for the Contact Availability Prediction plugin), Cyrus SASL-2.1.22 (required for Jabber support), MIT Kerberos V5-1.6 (required for Kerberos support in the Zephyr module), *Avahi* (required for the Bonjour plugin), *Meanwhile* (required for Sametime protocol support), *NetworkManager* (*download* and requires that D-Bus is installed), *check* (only used during the test suite), and Gadu-Gadu external libraries (cannot find a URL)

Optional for Programming Language Support

Mono (experimental), Tcl-8.4.18, and Tk-8.4.18

Installation of Pidgin

Compile Pidgin by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --with-gconf-schema-file-dir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf/schemas \
            --disable-gtkui &&
make
```

If you have Doxygen-1.5.2 installed (Graphviz-2.12 can be used also) and you wish to create the API documentation, issue: **make docs**

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that the end result of the suite indicates an error. This error is only due to some locale translation issues and not the actual tests. The actual result of the tests are displayed about half way through the tests and should indicate that they passed.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/pidgin-2.1.0 &&
install -v -m644    README* doc/*.txt doc/gtkrc-2.0 \
                    /usr/share/doc/pidgin-2.1.0
```

If you created the API documentation, install it using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/pidgin-2.1.0/api &&
install -v -m644    doc/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/pidgin-2.1.0/api
```

Command Explanations

`--with-gconf-schema-file-dir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf/schemas`: This parameter is used so that the GConf schema files are installed into the existing database. If GConf is not installed, the parameter does not affect the build or installation of the package.

`--disable-gtkui`: This parameter is used if GTK+ is not installed. The build will only produce the **finch** program, which is a text-based (Ncurses) only version. Remove this parameter if you have GTK+ installed to build the GUI **pidgin** program.

Configuring Pidgin

Config Files

`~/.purple/*` and `~/.gtkrc-02`

Configuration Information

Most configuration can be accomplished by using the various preference settings inside the programs. Additionally, you can create a `~/.gtkrc-02` file which can store settings that affect the Pidgin application. Note that an example `gtkrc-02` file was installed during the package installation and can be used as a starting point or reference.

Contents

Installed Programs:	finch, pidgin, purple-client-example, purple-remote, purple-send, purple-send-async, and purple-url-handler
Installed Library:	libgnt.so, libpurple.so, and libpurple-client.so along with numerous plugin and support modules located in various subdirectories of /usr/lib.
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/{finch,gnt,libpurple,pidgin}, /usr/lib/{finch,gnt,pidgin,purple-2}, /usr/share/doc/pidgin-2.1.0, /usr/share/pixmaps/pidgin, and /usr/share/sounds/pidgin

Short Descriptions

finch	is a text-based (Ncurses) instant messaging client.

pidgin is an instant messaging client based on the Gtk+ GUI toolkit.

purple-remote is a command-line interface for controlling an already running instance of **pidgin**

XChat-2.8.4

Introduction to XChat

XChat is an IRC chat program. It allows you to join multiple IRC channels (chat rooms) at the same time, talk publicly, have private one-on-one conversations, etc. File transfers are also possible.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.xchat.org/files/source/2.8/xchat-2.8.4.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/xchat-2.8.4.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 66d60febc62a01bafac9bb3a35fb37ae
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 33 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://xchat.org/files/source/2.8/patches/xc284-scrollbmkdir.diff*

XChat Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12

Recommended

GTK+-2.10.13

Optional

D-Bus GLib Bindings-0.74, OpenSSL-0.9.8g, Python-2.5.2, Tcl-8.4.18, GConf-2.18.0.1, and *libsexy* or *GtkSpell* (not recommended)

Note that using libsexy for spell checking requires *Enchant* at run-time. Aspell-0.60.5 is just one of many backend spell libraries Enchant can use. See the Enchant project page (URL above) for additional information about the available backends.

Installation of XChat

Install XChat by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../xc284-scrollbmkdir.diff &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 \
            --enable-shm &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/xchat-2.8.4 &&
install -v -m644    README faq.html \
                    /usr/share/doc/xchat-2.8.4
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter causes the configuration files to be installed in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3` instead of `$GNOME_PREFIX/etc`. Additionally (if applicable), the parameter ensures that the GConf-2 database is correctly updated.

`--enable-shm`: This parameter is used to enable XShm for fast tinting.

Contents

Installed Program:	xchat
Installed Libraries:	XChat binding modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/xchat and /usr/share/doc/xchat-2.8.4

Short Descriptions

xchat is a graphical Internet Relay Chat (IRC) client.

Part X. Multimedia

Chapter 35. Multimedia Libraries and Drivers

Many multimedia programs require libraries and/or drivers in order to function properly. The packages in this section fall into this category. Generally you only need to install these if you are installing a program which has the library listed as either a requirement, or as an option to enable it to support certain functionality.

ALSA-1.0.13

The Linux kernel now provides ALSA support by default. However, applications need to interface to that capability. The following five sections of the book deal with the five separate components of ALSA: the libraries, the utilities, the tools, the firmware and the OSS compatibility libraries.

ALSA Library-1.0.13

Introduction to ALSA Library

The ALSA Library package contains the ALSA library. This is used by programs (including ALSA Utilities) requiring access to the ALSA sound interface.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/opsys/linux/alsa/lib/alsa-lib-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.alsa-project.org/pub/lib/alsa-lib-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d55a9d7d2a79d738a1b7a511cffda4b6
- Download size: 694 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 34.9 MB (additional 22.2 MB to build and install docs)
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU (less than 0.1 SBU to build and install docs)

ALSA Library Dependencies

Optional

Doxygen-1.5.2 and *resmgr*

Kernel Configuration

In the Device Drivers # Sound # Advanced Linux Sound Architecture section of the kernel configuration, select the settings and drivers appropriate for your hardware. Ensure that the deprecated Device Drivers # Sound # Open Sound System is *not* selected. If necessary, recompile and install your new kernel.

Installation of ALSA Library

Install ALSA Library by running the following commands:

```
./configure --enable-static &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/asoundrc.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/alsa-lib-1.0.13/asoundrc.txt
```

If you have Doxygen installed and you wish to build the library API documentation, run the following commands from the top-level directory of the source tree:

```
make doc
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/alsa-1.0.13/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/doxygen/html/* /usr/share/doc/alsa-1.0.13/html
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-static`: This switch is used to enable building the static library as some programs link against it.

Configuring ALSA Library

Config Files

`~/.asoundrc`, `/etc/asound.conf`, `/usr/share/alsa/alsa.conf`, and `/usr/share/alsa/{cards,pcm}/*.conf`

Configuration Information

The default `alsa.conf` is adequate for most installations. For extra functionality and/or advanced control of your sound device, you may need to create additional configuration files. For information on the available configuration parameters, visit *http://www.alsa-project.org/alsa-doc/doc-php/asoundrc.php*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	aserver
Installed Library:	libasound.{so,a} and smixer-*.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/alsa, /usr/lib/alsa-lib, /usr/share/alsa and /usr/share/doc/alsa-lib-1.0.13

Short Descriptions

aserver	provides the ALSA server.
`libasound.{so,a}`	provides ALSA functions for application programs.
`smixer-*.{so,a}`	provides hardware dependent ALSA mixer functions.

ALSA Plugins-1.0.13

Introduction to ALSA Plugins

The ALSA Plugins package contains plugins for various audio libraries and sound servers.

Note

The ALSA Plugins package has not been tested by the BLFS editors.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/opsys/linux/alsa/plugins/alsa-plugins-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.alsa-project.org/pub/plugins/alsa-plugins-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7ef5e429b4a2756d0b5f0d7ce5bba0c8
- Download size: 225 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.4 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

ALSA Plugins Dependencies

Required

pkg-config-0.22 and ALSA Library-1.0.13

Optional

FFmpeg-svn_20070606, *JACK*, *PulseAudio*, *Secret Rabbit Code* (a.k.a. libsamplerate)

Installation of ALSA Plugins

Install ALSA Plugins by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/alsa-plugins-1.0.13 &&
install -v -m644 doc/{README*,*.txt} \
                    /usr/share/doc/alsa-plugins-1.0.13
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	Numerous libasound_module_*<module>*.so modules including ctl_oss, pcm_oss, pcm_upmix, pcm_vdownmix and optionally ctl_pulse, pcm_pulse, pcm_a52, pcm_jack and rate_samplerate*
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/alsa-plugins-1.0.13

Short Descriptions

`libasound_module_pcm_oss.so`	Allows native ALSA applications to run on OSS.
`libasound_module_pcm_upmix.so`	Allows upmixing sound to 4 or 6 channels.
`libasound_module_pcm_vdownmix.so`	Allows downmixing sound from 4-6 channels to 2 channel stereo output.
`libasound_module_pcm_jack.so`	Allows native ALSA applications to work with **jackd**.
`libasound_module_pcm_pulse.so`	Allows native ALSA applications to access a PulseAudio sound daemon.
`libasound_module_pcm_a52.so`	Converts S16 linear sound format to A52 compressed format and sends it to an SPDIF output.
`libasound_module_rate_samplerate.so`	Provides an external rate converter through `libsamplerate`.

ALSA Utilities-1.0.13

Introduction to ALSA Utilities

The ALSA Utilities package contains various utilities which are useful for controlling your sound card.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/opsys/linux/alsa/utils/alsa-utils-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.alsa-project.org/pub/utils/alsa-utils-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: dfe4bb5d3217f3ec662b172ce8397cf0
- Download size: 958 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

ALSA Utilities Dependencies

Required

ALSA Library-1.0.13

Installation of ALSA Utilities

Install ALSA Utilities by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring ALSA Utilities

Config Files

`/etc/asound.state`

Configuration Information

Use a bootscript to store the values at shutdown.

As the `root` user, install the init script `/etc/rc.d/init.d/alsa` included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-alsa
```

Note that all channels of your sound card are muted by default. You can use the **alsamixer** program from the ALSA Utilities to change this. Use **speaker-test** to check that your settings have been applied correctly.

The first time the `alsactl` program is run from the udev rule below, it will complain that there is no state in `/etc/asound.state`. You can prevent this by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
touch /etc/asound.state &&
alsactl store
```

The volume settings will be restored from the saved state by Udev when the device is detected (during boot or when plugged in for USB devices).

As the `root` user, install a new Udev rules file to create the audio device nodes and run the restore script:

```
cat > /etc/udev/rules.d/40-alsa.rules << "EOF"
# /etc/udev/rules.d/40-alsa.rules

# When a sound device is detected, restore the volume settings
KERNEL=="controlC[0-9]*", ACTION=="add", RUN+="/usr/sbin/alsactl restore %n"
EOF
chmod -v 644 /etc/udev/rules.d/40-alsa.rules
```

All sound devices are not accessible for any user except `root` and members of the `audio` group. Add any users that might use the sound devices to that group:

```
usermod -a -G audio <username>
```

Note

You may need to log out and back in again to refresh your group memberships. '**su *<username>***' should work as well.

Contents

Installed Programs:	aconnect, alsaconf, alsactl, alsamixer, amidi, amixer, aplay, aplaymidi, arecord, arecordmidi, aseqnet, aseqdump, iecset, and speaker-test
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

aconnect	is a utility for connecting and disconnecting two existing ports in the ALSA sequencer system.
alsaconf	is a configuration tool which tries to detect the sound cards on your system and write a suitable configuration file for ALSA. This program is incompatible with udev and hotplug.
alsactl	is used to control advanced settings for the ALSA sound card drivers.
alsamixer	is an ncurses-based mixer program for use with the ALSA sound card drivers.
amidi	is used to read from and write to ALSA RawMIDI ports.
amixer	allows command-line control of the mixers for the ALSA sound card drivers.
aplay	is a command-line soundfile player for the ALSA sound card drivers.
aplaymidi	is a command-line utility that plays the specified MIDI file(s) to one or more ALSA sequencer ports.

arecord is a command-line soundfile recorder for the ALSA sound card drivers.

arecordmidi is a command-line utility that records a standard MIDI file from one or more ALSA sequencer ports.

aseqdump is a command-line utility that prints the sequencer events it receives as text.

aseqnet is an ALSA sequencer client which sends and receives event packets over a network.

iecset is a small utility to set or dump the IEC958 (or so-called “S/PDIF”) status bits of the specified sound card via the ALSA control API.

speaker-test is a command-line speaker test tone generator for ALSA.

ALSA Tools-1.0.13

Introduction to ALSA Tools

The ALSA Tools package contains advanced tools for certain sound cards.

Note

The ALSA Tools package has not been tested by the BLFS editors.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/opsys/linux/alsa/tools/alsa-tools-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.alsa-project.org/pub/tools/alsa-tools-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 3f30a884848a21910195a3c77f1dbde2
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 14-17 MB depending on the tool being built
- Estimated build time: 0.1-0.5 SBU depending on the tool being built

ALSA Tools Dependencies

Required

ALSA Library-1.0.13

Optional

pkg-config-0.22 and GTK+-2.10.13 or GTK+-1.2.10 (to build **echomixer**, **envy24control** and **rmedigicontrol**), *FLTK* (to build **hdspconf** and **hdspmixer**), and Qt-3.3.8b (to build **qlo10k1**).

Installation of ALSA Tools

The ALSA Tools package is only needed by those with advanced requirements for their sound card. The tools are not all built together, instead you need to **cd** into the directory of each tool you wish to compile and run the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

The **ac3dec** tool comes with a test suite, but it is not functional since it does not contain the reference results for the **dither_test** program.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: ac3dec, extract_ac3, as10k1, dl10k1, echomixer, envy24control, hdspconf, hdsploader, hdspmixer, init_audigy, init_audigy_eq10, init_live, lo10k1, ld10k1, ld10k1d, mixartloader, pcxhrloader, qlo10k1, rmedigicontrol, cspctl, sbiload, sscape_ctl, us428control, usx2yloader, and vxloader
Installed Library: liblo10k1.so
Installed Directories: /usr/share/applications, /usr/share/pixmaps, /usr/include/lo10k1, /usr/share/ld10k1, and /usr/share/sounds

Short Descriptions

ac3dec is a free AC-3 stream decoder.

extract_ac3 will take an MPEG-2 stream and produce AC-3 audio to stdout if it exists.

as10k1 is an assembler for the emu10k1 DSP chip present in the Creative SB Live, PCI 512, and emu APS sound cards. It is used to make audio effects such as a flanger, chorus or reverb.

echomixer is the Linux equivalent of the Echoaudio console application from Echoaudio. It is a tool to control all the features of any Echoaudio soundcard. This includes clock sources, input and output gains, mixers, etc.

envy24control is a control tool for Envy24 (ice1712) based sound cards.

hdspconf is a GUI to control the Hammerfall HDSP Alsa Settings. Up to four hdsp cards are supported.

hdsploader is used to load the firmware required by the Hammerfall HDSP sound cards.

hdspmixer is the Linux equivalent of the Totalmix application from RME. It is a tool to control the advanced routing features of the RME Hammerfall DSP soundcard series.

ld10k1 is the server of a EMU10K{1,2} patch loader for ALSA.

lo10k1 is the client of a EMU10K{1,2} patch loader for ALSA.

dl10k1 loads config dumps generated by **lo10k1** and **ld10k1**.

ld10k1d is an init script for the **ld10k1** patch loader.

qlo10k1 is a Qt GUI for the **ld10k1** patch loader.

mixartloader is a helper program to load the firmware binaries onto the Digigram's miXart board sound drivers. The following modules require this program: snd-mixart. These drivers don't work properly at all until the certain firmwares are loaded, i.e. no PCM nor mixer devices will appear.

pcxhrloader is a helper program to load the firmware binaries onto Digigram's pcxhr compatible board sound drivers. The following modules require this program: snd-pcxhr. These drivers don't work properly at all until the certain firmwares are loaded, i.e. no PCM nor mixer devices will appear.

rmedigicontrol is a control tool for RME Digi32 and RME Digi96 sound cards. It provides a graphical frontend for all the sound card controls and switches.

cspctl is an SB16/AWE32 Creative Signal Processor (ASP/CSP) control program.

sbiload is an OPL2/3 FM instrument loader for the ALSA sequencer.

sscape_ctl is an ALSA SoundScape control utility.

us428control is a Tascam US-428 control program.

usx2yloader is a helper program to load the 2nd Phase firmware binaries onto the Tascam USX2Y USB sound cards. It has proven to work so far for the US122, US224 and US428. The snd-usb-usx2y module requires this program.

vxloader is a helper program to load the firmware binaries onto the Digigram's VX-board sound drivers. The following modules require this program: snd-vx222, snd-vxpocket, snd-vxp440. These drivers don't work properly at all until the certain firmwares are loaded, i.e. no PCM nor mixer devices will appear.

ALSA Firmware-1.0.13

Introduction to ALSA Firmware

The ALSA Firmware package contains firmware for certain sound cards.

Note

The ALSA Firmware package has not been tested by the BLFS editors.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/opsys/linux/alsa/firmware/alsa-firmware-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.alsa-project.org/pub/firmware/alsa-firmware-1.0.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 97de41a923e68c3d6c52c14f1a2843df
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 27.2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

ALSA Firmware Dependencies

Required

ALSA Tools-1.0.13

Optional

AS31 (for rebuilding the firmware from source)

Installation of ALSA Firmware

The ALSA Firmware package is only needed by those with advanced requirements for their sound card. See the README for configure options.

Install ALSA Firmware by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /lib/firmware and/or /usr/share/alsa/firmware

ALSA OSS-1.0.12

Introduction to ALSA OSS

The ALSA OSS package contains the ALSA OSS compatibility library. This is used by programs which wish to use the ALSA OSS sound interface.

Note

The ALSA OSS package has not been tested by the BLFS editors.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/opsys/linux/alsa/oss-lib/alsa-oss-1.0.12.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.alsa-project.org/pub/oss-lib/alsa-oss-1.0.12.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d4d18bbf63a866d6e065b90e16acd676
- Download size: 231 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

ALSA OSS Dependencies

Required

ALSA Library-1.0.13

Installation of ALSA OSS

Install ALSA OSS by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Configuring ALSA OSS

Configuration Information

As with most libraries, there is no configuration to do, save that the library directory, i.e., `/opt/lib` or `/usr/local/lib` should appear in `/etc/ld.so.conf` so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries. After checking that this is the case, **/sbin/ldconfig** should be run while logged in as `root`.

Contents

Installed Program:	aoss
Installed Libraries:	libalsatoss.{so,a}, libaoss.{so,a}, and libossredir.a
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

aoss is a simple wrapper script which facilitates the use of the ALSA OSS compatibility library. It just sets the appropriate LD_PRELOAD path and then runs the command.

aRts-1.5.9

The Analog Real-time Synthesizer (aRts) provides software that can simulate a complete “modular analog synthesizer” on your computer. It creates sounds and music using small modules like oscillators for creating waveforms, various filters, modules for playing data on your speakers, mixers, and faders. You can build a complete setup with the GUI of the system, using the modules: generators, effects and output — connected to each other.

aRts provides necessary libraries for KDE, however it can be installed as a standalone package. The installation instructions for aRts can be found in the aRts-1.5.9 portion of the KDE installation instructions.

Audio File-0.2.6

Introduction to Audio File

The Audio File package contains the audio file libraries and two sound file support programs. These are useful to support basic sound file formats.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.68k.org/~michael/audiofile/audiofile-0.2.6.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 9c1049876cd51c0f1b12c2886cce4d42
- Download size: 374 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 8.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.23 SBU

Installation of Audio File

Install Audio File by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	audiofile-config, sfinfo, and sfconvert
Installed Library:	libaudiofile.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

audiofile-config	is used during the compile process by programs linking to this library.
sfinfo	displays the sound file format, audio encoding, sampling rate and duration for audio formats supported by this library.
sfconvert	converts sound file formats where the original format and destination format are supported by this library.
`libaudiofile.{so,a}`	contains functions used by programs to support AIFF, AIFF-compressed, Sun/NeXT, WAV and BIC audio formats.

EsounD-0.2.37

Introduction to EsounD

The EsounD package contains the Enlightened Sound Daemon. This is useful for mixing together several digitized audio streams for playback by a single device.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/esound/0.2/esound-0.2.37.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/esound/0.2/esound-0.2.37.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 99cc68770176c8940cf346f60208420e
- Download size: 383 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

EsounD Dependencies

Required

Audio File-0.2.6

Optional

ALSA-1.0.13, aRts-1.5.9, TCP Wrapper-7.6, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of EsounD

Install EsounD by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's@doc/esound@&-0.2.37@' configure &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chown -v root:root /usr/share/doc/esound-0.2.37/html/*
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '...': This appends the version string to the documentation installation directory.

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This switch puts configuration files in `/etc` instead of `/usr/etc`.

Configuring EsounD

Config Files

`/etc/esd.conf`

Configuration Information

Instructions and information about the configuration file is located in the `TIPS` file in the EsounD source directory.

Contents

Installed Programs:	esd, esdcat, esdctl, esd-config, esddsp, esdfilt, esdloop, esdmon, esdplay, esdrec, and esdsample
Installed Libraries:	libesd.{so,a} and libesddsp.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/esound-0.2.37

Short Descriptions

esd	is the Enlightened Sound Daemon.
esd-config	is used by **configure** to determine the compiler and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use EsounD.
esdcat	plays a RAW audio stream through the daemon.
esdctl	controls certain aspects of the sound daemon.
esdfilt	is an EsoundD filter.
esdloop	is test scaffolding for sample cache, loop and free.
esdmon	outputs the mixed stream from the daemon.
esdplay	plays the named file on EsoundD.
esdrec	outputs from the sound device's current input.
esdsample	is test scaffolding for sample cache, playback, and free.
`libesd.{so,a}`	contains functions used by the EsounD programs as well as other programs to read, write and play various sound format files.

SDL-1.2.11

Introduction to SDL

The Simple DirectMedia Layer (SDL for short) is a cross-platform library designed to make it easy to write multimedia software, such as games and emulators.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.libsdl.org/release/SDL-1.2.11.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 418b42956b7cd103bfab1b9077ccc149
- Download size: 2.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 23 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.8 SBU

SDL Dependencies

Optional

ALSA-1.0.13, EsounD-0.2.37, aRts-1.5.9, NAS-1.9, NASM-0.98.39, X Window System, AAlib-1.4rc5, *DirectFB*, *SVGAlib*, Pth-2.0.7, and *PicoGUI*

Installation of SDL

This package (unfortunately) expects the X Window system to be installed in the `/usr/X11R6` directory. If you're using a recent version of Xorg and it is installed in any other location, ensure you have followed the instructions in the Creating an X11R6 Compatibility Symlink section.

Install SDL by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/SDL-1.2.11/html &&
install -v -m644 docs/html/*.html /usr/share/doc/SDL-1.2.11/html
```

Testing SDL

It is advisable to test the installation of SDL using the included test programs. It is not required to install any of the resulting binaries to validate the installation. Issue the following commands to build the test programs:

```
cd test &&
./configure &&
make
```

You'll need to manually run all the test programs.

Configuring SDL

Configuration Information

As with most libraries, there is no configuration to do, save that the library directory, i.e., `/opt/lib` or `/usr/local/lib` should appear in `/etc/ld.so.conf` so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries. After checking that this is the case, **/sbin/ldconfig** should be run while logged in as `root`.

Contents

Installed Program:	sdl-config
Installed Libraries:	libSDL*.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/SDL and /usr/share/doc/SDL-1.2.11

Short Descriptions

sdl-config	determines the compile and linker flags that should be used to compile and link programs that use `libSDL`.
`libSDL*.{so,a}`	libraries provide low level access to audio, keyboard, mouse, joystick, 3D hardware via OpenGL, and 2D frame buffer across multiple platforms.

Libao-0.8.8

Introduction to Libao

The libao package contains a cross-platform audio library. This is useful to output audio on a wide variety of platforms. It currently supports WAV files, OSS (Open Sound System), ESD (Enlighten Sound Daemon), ALSA (Advanced Linux Sound Architecture), NAS (Network Audio system), aRTS (analog Real-Time Synthesizer and PulseAudio (next generation GNOME sound architecture).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.xiph.org/releases/ao/libao-0.8.8.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libao-0.8.8.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: b92cba3cbcf1ee9bc221118a85d23dcd
- Download size: 405 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Libao Dependencies

Optional

X Window System, EsounD-0.2.37, ALSA-1.0.13, aRts-1.5.9, NAS-1.9, and *PulseAudio* (requires *atomic_ops*)

Installation of Libao

Install libao by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 README /usr/share/doc/libao-0.8.8
```

Configuring Libao

Config Files

`/etc/libao.conf` and `~/.libao`

Configuration Information

Currently, the only configuration option available is setting the default output device. Issue **man libao.conf** for details.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libao.{so,a} and plugins
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/ao, /usr/lib/ao and /usr/share/doc/libao-0.8.8

Short Descriptions

`libao.{so,a}` provide functions for programs wishing to output sound over supported platforms.

libogg-1.1.3

Introduction to libogg

The libogg package contains the Ogg file structure. This is useful for creating (encoding) or playing (decoding) a single physical bit stream.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.xiph.org/releases/ogg/libogg-1.1.3.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: eaf7dc6ebbff30975de7527a80831585
- Download size: 403 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.6 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of libogg

Install libogg by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libogg.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/ogg and /usr/share/doc/libogg-1.1.3

Short Descriptions

`libogg.{so,a}` libraries provide the functions required for programs to read or write Ogg formatted bit streams.

libvorbis-1.2.0

Introduction to libvorbis

The libvorbis package contains a general purpose audio and music encoding format. This is useful for creating (encoding) and playing (decoding) sound in an open (patent free) format.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.xiph.org/releases/vorbis/libvorbis-1.2.0.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 7c6e409d7aa1fa8a5481dea571d5bde0
- Download size: 1.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 18 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libvorbis-1.2.0-security_fixes-1.patch*

libvorbis Dependencies

Required

libogg-1.1.3

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, and libxslt-1.1.22 and *PassiveTeX* (to build the PDF documentation)

Installation of libvorbis

Install libvorbis by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../libvorbis-1.2.0-security_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 doc/Vorbis* /usr/share/doc/libvorbis-1.2.0
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-docs`: This switch enables building the documentation.

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	libvorbis.{so,a}, libvorbisenc.{so,a}, and libvorbisfile.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/vorbis and /usr/share/doc/libvorbis-1.2.0

Short Descriptions

`libvorbis*.{so,a}` libraries provide the functions to read and write sound files.

FAAC-1.26

Introduction to FAAC

FAAC is an encoder for a lossy sound compression scheme specified in MPEG-2 Part 7 and MPEG-4 Part 3 standards and known as Advanced Audio Coding (AAC). This encoder is useful for producing files that can be played back on iPod. Moreover, iPod does not understand other sound compression schemes in video files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/faac/faac-1.26.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 1d7c019bd2dbb4f3101b8937ebc59cf6
- Download size: 392 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 33 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

FAAC Dependencies

Optional

libmp4v2 from *mpeg4ip* (untested, as of 2007-09-28, development of the project is stopped; an internal version of the library is used if the external one is not found).

Installation of FAAC

Install FAAC by running the following commands:

```
./bootstrap &&
sed -i -e '/obj-type/d' -e '/Long Term/d' frontend/main.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite. However, basic functionality can be tested by encoding a sample WAV file (the sample file is installed by the ALSA Utilities-1.0.13 package:

```
./frontend/faac -o Front_Left.mp4 /usr/share/sounds/alsa/Front_Left.wav
```

Then, decode the result using the **faad** program from the FAAD2-2.6.1 package and play back the decoded file (requires the **aplay** program from the ALSA Utilities-1.0.13 package:

```
faad Front_Left.mp4
aplay Front_Left.wav
```

aplay should identify the file as “Signed 16 bit Little Endian, Rate 48000 Hz, Stereo”, and you should hear the words “front left”.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

./bootstrap: This command runs GNU Autotools to create the **configure** script and other required build files.

sed -i ...: This command removes documentation for the `--obj-type` parameter from the **faac --long-help** command output. This parameter is already disabled in FAAC-1.26 due to sound quality issues with object types other than “Low Complexity”.

`--enable-drm`: This option is supposed to enable support for encoding files for *Digital Radio Mondiale*, but actually breaks the base functionality of the package (e.g., the resulting **faac** program produces files that cannot be decoded by FAAD2-2.6.1, even if compiled with DRM support). Don't use it.

Other AAC encoders

The quality of FAAC is not up to par with the best AAC encoders currently available. Also, it only supports AAC and not High Efficiency AAC (also known as aacPlus), which provides better quality at low bitrates by means of using the “spectral band replication” technology. There are the following alternative programs for producing AAC and HE-AAC streams:

- *Nero AAC Codec*: available only in the binary form, the command-line AAC and HE-AAC encoders for Linux are in the same archive as the Windows application.
- *3GPP Enhanced aacPlus general audio codec*: available in the source form, can encode only HE-AAC up to 48 kbps out of the box, but the maximum bitrate can be changed by editing the tuning table in the `FloatFR_sbrenclib/src/sbr_main.c` file.

Note, however, that iPod supports only Low Complexity AAC profile, which is the default in FAAC, but may not be the default in Nero AAC Encoder and is completely unavailable in the 3GPP encoder.

Contents

Installed Program:	faac
Installed Libraries:	libfaac.{so,a} and libmp4v2.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

faac	is a command-line AAC encoder.
`libfaac.{so,a}`	contains functions for encoding AAC streams.
`libmp4v2.{so,a}`	contains functions for creating and manipulating MP4 files.

FAAD2-2.6.1

Introduction to FAAD2

FAAD2 is a decoder for a lossy sound compression scheme specified in MPEG-2 Part 7 and MPEG-4 Part 3 standards and known as Advanced Audio Coding (AAC).

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/faac/faad2-2.6.1.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 74e92df40c270f216a8305fc87603c8a
- Download size: 820 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 15 MB (without media player plugins)
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU (without media player plugins)

Additional Downloads

- Sample AAC file: *http://www.nch.com.au/acm/sample.aac* (7 KB)

FAAD2 Dependencies

Optional (to build corresponding AAC plugins)

XMMS-1.2.10 and *mpeg4ip* (both are untested, and both projects are dead).

Installation of FAAD2

Install FAAD2 by running the following commands:

```
./bootstrap &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite. However, basic functionality can be tested by decoding the sample AAC file:

```
./frontend/faad -o sample.wav ../sample.aac
```

This should display a copyright message and the following information about the sample file:

```
sample.aac file info:
ADTS, 4.608 sec, 13 kbps, 16000 Hz

  ----------------------
 | Config:  2 Ch        |
  ----------------------
 | Ch |    Position     |
  ----------------------
 | 00 | Left front      |
 | 01 | Right front     |
  ----------------------
```

Now play the result (requires the **aplay** program from the ALSA Utilities-1.0.13 package):

```
aplay sample.wav
```

aplay should identify the file as “Signed 16 bit Little Endian, Rate 16000 Hz, Stereo”, and you should hear some piano notes.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

./bootstrap: This command runs GNU Autotools to create the **configure** script and other required build files.

`--with-drm`: This option is supposed to enable support for decoding *Digital Radio Mondiale*, but actually breaks the base functionality of the package (e.g., the resulting **faad** program cannot decode the sample AAC file linked above). Don't use it.

Contents

Installed Program:	faad
Installed Library:	libfaad.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

faad	is a command-line utility for decoding AAC and MP4 files.
`libfaad.{so,a}`	contains functions for decoding AAC streams.

NAS-1.9

Introduction to NAS

The Network Audio System is a network transparent, client/server audio transport system used to read , write and play audio files in many formats including `.au`, `.snd`, `.voc`, `.wav`, `.aiff`, `.aif` and `.iff`. It can be described as the audio equivalent of an X server.

There may be a more recent release available from the NAS home page. You can check *http://nas.codebrilliance.com/* and probably use the existing BLFS instructions. Note that versions other than the one shown in the download URLs have not been tested in a BLFS environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/nas/nas-1.9.src.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/n/nas-1.9.src.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: aac031fae04f53bcd1e033b380b1b29d
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 18 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

NAS Dependencies

Required

X Window System

Installation of NAS

This package (unfortunately) expects the X Window system to be installed in the `/usr/X11R6` directory. If you're using a recent version of Xorg and it is installed in any other location, ensure you have followed the instructions in the Creating an X11R6 Compatibility Symlink section.

Install NAS by running the following commands:

```
xmkmf &&
make World
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install install.man &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/nas-1.9/{html,pdf} &&
install -v -m644 doc/html/* /usr/share/doc/nas-1.9/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/pdf/* /usr/share/doc/nas-1.9/pdf &&
install -v -m644 doc/{README,actions,*.{ps,txt}} \
    /usr/share/doc/nas-1.9
```

Command Explanations

xmkmf; **make World**: These commands use the standard for compiling X based applications.

Configuring NAS

Config Files

`/etc/nas/nasd.conf`

Configuration Information

Create the NAS configuration file using the following command:

```
install -v -m644 /etc/nas/nasd.conf.eg /etc/nas/nasd.conf
```

Edit the new configuration file to suit your network and system needs.

Boot Script

Note

The NAS server cannot run simultaneously with other sound servers, such as *MAS* or *JACK*.

Install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/nas` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package.

```
make install-nas
```

The init script uses a default parameter to allow access to all hosts on the network. Review the **nasd** man page for other available parameters if you need to modify the script.

Contents

Installed Programs:	auconvert, auctl, audemo, audial, auedit, auinfo, aupanel, auphone, auplay, aurecord, auscope, autool, auwave, checkmail, issndfile, nasd, playbucket, and soundtoh
Installed Library:	libaudio.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/etc/nas, /usr/X11R6/include/audio and /usr/share/doc/nas-1.9

Short Descriptions

au{utilities}	are a collection of tools to convert, play, edit, record, and manipulate sound files. See the respective man page for each utility for a full description of each one.
checkmail	plays a sound file when the user receives mail.
issndfile	checks if a file is in a recognized audio file format.
nasd	is the Network Audio System server daemon.
playbucket	plays, or creates, the bucket corresponding to the specified file.
soundtoh	converts a sound file to a C language header file.
`libaudio.{so,a}`	contains API functions to read and write audio files.

LibMPEG3-1.7

Introduction to LibMPEG3

LibMPEG3 supports advanced editing and manipulation of MPEG streams.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/heroines/libmpeg3-1.7-src.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 4a3e8896164d59d7d0dff69b50b75352
- Download size: 320 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libmpeg3-1.7-makefile_mods-1.patch*

LibMPEG3 Dependencies

Required

NASM-0.98.39

Installation of LibMPEG3

Install LibMPEG3 by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../libmpeg3-1.7-makefile_mods-1.patch &&
./configure &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

patch -Np1 -i ...: The patch modifies the `Makefile` so that everything is installed with the **make install** command instead of just the executables being installed and manual commands used to install the library, interface headers and documentation. The patch also fixes a syntax error in the `Makefile`.

./configure: This is not a typical Autotools script. It is only used to check for the availability of the NASM compiler.

Contents

Installed Programs:	mpeg3cat, mpeg3dump, mpeg3peek and mpeg3toc
Installed Library:	libmpeg3.a
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/libmpeg3-1.7

Short Descriptions

mpeg3cat concatenates elementary streams or demultiplexes a program stream (separates components of the stream).

mpeg3dump dumps information or extracts audio to a 24 bit PCM file.

mpeg3peek prints the byte offset of a given frame. It only works for video and requires a table of contents.

mpeg3toc creates a table of contents for a DVD or MPEG stream.

`libmpeg3.a` decodes several MPEG standards into uncompressed data suitable for editing and playback.

libmad-0.15.1b

Introduction to libmad

libmad is a high-quality MPEG audio decoder capable of 24-bit output.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/mad/libmad-0.15.1b.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.mars.org/pub/mpeg/libmad-0.15.1b.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 1be543bc30c56fb6bea1d7bf6a64e66c
- Download size: 494 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Installation of libmad

Install libmad by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Some packages check for the pkg-config file for libmad. This file is particularly needed so that Cdrdao can recognize the installed libmad.

As the `root` user:

```
cat > /usr/lib/pkgconfig/mad.pc << "EOF"
prefix=/usr
exec_prefix=${prefix}
libdir=${exec_prefix}/lib
includedir=${prefix}/include

Name: mad
Description: MPEG audio decoder
Requires:
Version: 0.15.1b
Libs: -L${libdir} -lmad
Cflags: -I${includedir}
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Library:	libmad.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

`libmad.{so,a}` is a MPEG audio decoder library.

libquicktime-1.0.0

Introduction to libquicktime

The libquicktime package contains the `libquicktime` library, various plugins and codecs, along with graphical and command line utilities used for encoding and decoding Quicktime files. This is useful for reading and writing files in the Quicktime format. The goal of the project is to enhance, while providing compatibility with, the Quicktime 4 Linux library.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/libquicktime/libquicktime-1.0.0.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libquicktime-1.0.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 2f609e3ef5e760f44022f6c4b66d6a01
- Download size: 998 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 17 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU (includes building all codec modules)

libquicktime Dependencies

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, libpng-1.2.29, libjpeg-6b, X Window System, GTK+-2.10.13, ALSA-1.0.13, libvorbis-1.2.0, LAME-3.97, libdv-1.0.0, FFmpeg-svn_20070606, *x264*, FAAC-1.26, and FAAD2-2.6.1

Installation of libquicktime

Install libquicktime by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have Doxygen-1.5.2 installed and wish to create the API documentation, issue: **doxygen**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libquicktime-1.0.0 &&
install -v -m644    README doc/{*.txt,*.html,mainpage.incl} \
                    /usr/share/doc/libquicktime-1.0.0
```

If you created the API documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/libquicktime-1.0.0/api &&
install -v -m644    doc/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/libquicktime-1.0.0/api
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	libquicktime_config, lqt-config, lqt_transcode, lqtplay, qt2text, qtdechunk, qtdump, qtinfo, qtrechunk, qtstreamize and qtyuv4toyuv
Installed Libraries:	libquicktime.so and several plugin codec libraries
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/lqt, /usr/lib/libquicktime and /usr/share/doc/libquicktime-1.0.0

Short Descriptions

libquicktime_config is a graphical front end to examine and configure the available libquicktime audio and video codecs.

lqt-config is a simple program used to query the libquicktime installation settings and plugin information.

lqt_transcode is a command-line program used to encode video and/or audio files from one format to another.

lqtplay is a simple Quicktime movie player for X11.

qtdechunk can take movies containing rgb frames and write them out as ppm images.

qtrechunk concatenates input frames into a Quicktime movie.

qtyuv4toyuv is used to write a YUV4 encoded movie as a planar YUV 4:2:0 file.

`libquicktime.so` is a library for reading and writing Quicktime files. It provides convenient access to Quicktime files with a variety of supported codecs. The library contains new functions integrated with all the original Quicktime 4 Linux library functions used to encode and decode Quicktime files.

libFAME-0.9.1

Introduction to libFAME

libFAME is a fast (real-time) MPEG-1 as well as MPEG-4 rectangular and arbitrary shaped video encoding library.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/fame/libfame-0.9.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libfame-0.9.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 880085761e17a3b4fc41f4f6f198fd3b
- Download size: 290 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 6.6 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/libfame-0.9.1-gcc34-1.patch*

Installation of libFAME

Install libFAME by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../libfame-0.9.1-gcc34-1.patch &&
sed -i 's/$CC --version/$CC -dumpversion/' configure &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's/$CC --version/$CC -dumpversion/' configure: This command causes the **configure** script to use a different command to find out the version of the compiler. Without this command, the -fstrict-aliasing flag is not added to the `CFLAGS` variable in the various `Makefile`s.

`--enable-sse`: This option is off by default and should be set on if your machine has SSE capability. One way to find out if you have SSE is to issue **cat /proc/cpuinfo** and see if `sse` is listed in the flags.

Contents

Installed Programs:	libfame-config
Installed Libraries:	libfame.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

libfame-config	provides configuration information for `libfame`.

`libfame.{so,a}` provides functions for the video encoding programs.

Speex-1.0.5

Introduction to Speex

Speex is an audio compression format designed especially for speech. It is well-adapted to Internet applications and provides useful features that are not present in most other CODECs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.us.xiph.org/releases/speex/speex-1.0.5.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 01d6a2de0a88a861304bf517615dea79
- Download size: 535 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 4.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.12 SBU

Speex Dependencies

Optional

libogg-1.1.3

Installation of Speex

Install Speex by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs: speexdec and speexenc
Installed Libraries: libspeex.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/share/doc/speex-1.0.5

Short Descriptions

speexdec decodes a Speex file and produces a WAV or raw file.

speexenc encodes a WAV or raw files using Speex.

`libspeex.{so,a}` provides functions for the audio encoding/decoding programs.

Id3lib-3.8.3

Introduction to Id3lib

id3lib is a library for reading, writing and manipulating ID3v1 and ID3v2 tags.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/id3lib/id3lib-3.8.3.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 19f27ddd2dda4b2d26a559a4f0f402a7
- Download size: 950 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/id3lib-3.8.3-test_suite-1.patch*

Installation of Id3lib

Install id3lib by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../id3lib-3.8.3-test_suite-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/id3lib-3.8.3 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.{gif,jpg,png,ico,css,txt,php,html} \
    /usr/share/doc/id3lib-3.8.3
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	id3convert, id3cp, id3info, and id3tag
Installed Library:	libid3.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/id3 and /usr/share/doc/id3lib-3.8.3

Short Descriptions

id3convert	converts between ID3v1/v2 tagging formats.
id3cp	extracts ID3v1/v2 tags from digital audio files.
id3info	prints ID3v1/v2 tag contents.
id3tag	is an utility for editing ID3v1/v2 tags.
`libid3.{so,a}`	provides functions for the ID3v1/v2 tag editing programs as well as other external programs and libraries.

FLAC-1.2.1

Introduction to FLAC

FLAC is an audio CODEC similar to MP3, but lossless, meaning that audio is compressed without losing any information.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/flac/flac-1.2.1.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 153c8b15a54da428d1f0fadc756c22c7
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 205 MB (includes running the test suite)
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU (additional 8 SBU to run the test suite)

FLAC Dependencies

Optional

libogg-1.1.3, XMMS-1.2.10, NASM-0.98.39, DocBook-utils-0.6.14, Doxygen-1.5.2 and *Valgrind*

Installation of FLAC

Install FLAC by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-thorough-tests &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. Note that if you passed the `--enable-exhaustive-tests` and `--enable-valgrind-testing` parameters to **configure** and then run the test suite, it will take a *very* long time (up to 300 SBUs) and use about 375 MB of disk space.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--disable-thorough-tests`: This parameter is used so that the test suite will complete in a reasonable amount of time. Remove it if you desire more extensive tests.

`--enable-sse`: This option is off by default and should be set on if your machine has SSE capability. One way to find out if you have SSE is to issue **cat /proc/cpuinfo** and see if `sse` is listed in the flags.

Contents

Installed Programs:	flac and metaflac
Installed Libraries:	libFLAC.{so,a}, libFLAC++.{so,a} and libxmms-flac.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/FLAC, /usr/include/FLAC++ and /usr/share/doc/flac-1.2.1

Short Descriptions

flac	is a command-line utility for encoding, decoding and converting FLAC files.
metaflac	is a program for listing, adding, removing, or editing metadata in one or more FLAC files.
`libFLAC{,++}.{so,a}`	these libraries provide native FLAC and Ogg FLAC C/C++ APIs for programs utilizing FLAC.
`libxmms-flac.{so,a}`	is a plugin for XMMS.

libdvdcss-1.2.9

Introduction to libdvdcss

libdvdcss is a simple library designed for accessing DVDs as a block device without having to bother about the decryption.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.videolan.org/pub/libdvdcss/1.2.9/libdvdcss-1.2.9.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libdvdcss-1.2.9.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 553383d898826c285afb2ee453b07868
- Download size: 283 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

libdvdcss Dependencies

Optional (to Create Documentation)

Doxygen-1.5.2 and teTeX-3.0

Installation of libdvdcss

Note

In certain circumstances the 'inputenc' package in the LaTeX installation may not work properly duing the build, causing it to hang up. If this happens, issue **`quit`** at the LaTeX prompt and then issue the following command at the shell prompt:

```
echo "INPUT_ENCODING         = ISO-8859-1" >>doc/doxygen.cfg
```

Now either resume the build, or start over. Disregard this note if you do not have a LaTeX package or Doxygen installed.

Install libdvdcss by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you have Doxygen and teTeX installed, HTML and Postscript documentation was created during the build. If you also want to install a PDF version of the reference manual, issue the following command:

```
make -C doc/latex pdf
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you have Doxygen and teTeX installed, install the documentation using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d         /usr/share/doc/libdvdcss-1.2.9/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/html/* /usr/share/doc/libdvdcss-1.2.9/html &&
install -v -m644 doc/latex/*.{pdf,ps,dvi} \
                            /usr/share/doc/libdvdcss-1.2.9
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libdvdcss.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/dvdcss and /usr/share/doc/libdvdcss-1.2.9

Short Descriptions

`libdvdcss.{so,a}` provides the functionality that is required for transparent DVD access with CSS decryption.

Libdvdread-0.9.7

Introduction to Libdvdread

libdvdread is a library which provides a simple foundation for reading DVDs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.dtek.chalmers.se/groups/dvd/dist/libdvdread-0.9.7.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libdvdread-0.9.7.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 078788c9241ae16763529e1235502337
- Download size: 389 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Libdvdread Dependencies

Optional

libdvdcss-1.2.9

Installation of Libdvdread

Install libdvdread by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--with-libdvdcss`: This switch is needed if you want libdvdread to link to the `libdvdcss` library so it can read CSS encrypted DVDs. If you do not pass this switch, libdvdread will dlopen the `libdvdcss` library at runtime, if it is available, in order to read CSS encrypted DVDs.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: libdvdread.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/dvdread

Short Descriptions

`libdvdread.{so,a}` provides functionality required to access DVDs.

Libdv-1.0.0

Introduction to Libdv

The Quasar DV Codec (libdv) is a software CODEC for DV video, the encoding format used by most digital camcorders.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/libdv/libdv-1.0.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f895162161cfa4bb4a94c070a7caa6c7
- Download size: 574 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Libdv Dependencies

Optional

popt-1.10.4, pkg-config-0.22, SDL-1.2.11, GTK+-1.2.10, and X Window System

Installation of Libdv

Install libdv by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d      /usr/share/doc/libdv-1.0.0 &&
install -v -m644 README* /usr/share/doc/libdv-1.0.0
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	dubdv, dvconnect, encodedv, and playdv
Installed Library:	libdv.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/libdv and /usr/share/doc/libdv-1.0.0

Short Descriptions

dubdv	inserts audio into a digital video stream.
dvconnect	is a small utility to send or capture raw data from and to the camcorder.
encodedv	encodes a series of images to a digital video stream.
playdv	displays digital video streams on the screen.
`libdv.{so,a}`	provides functions for programs interacting with the Quasar DV CODEC.

Liba52-0.7.4

Introduction to Liba52

liba52 is a free library for decoding ATSC A/52 (also known as AC-3) streams. The A/52 standard is used in a variety of applications, including digital television and DVD.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://liba52.sourceforge.net/files/a52dec-0.7.4.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: caa9f5bc44232dc8aeea773fea56be80
- Download size: 236 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 2.5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Installation of Liba52

Install liba52 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D doc/liba52.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/liba52-0.7.4/liba52.txt
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	a52dec and extract_a52
Installed Library:	liba52.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/a52dec and /usr/share/doc/liba52-0.7.4

Short Descriptions

a52dec	plays ATSC A/52 audio streams.
extract_a52	extracts ATSC A/52 audio from an MPEG stream.
`liba52.{so,a}`	provides functions for the programs dealing with ATSC A/52 streams.

XviD-1.1.3

Introduction to XviD

XviD is an MPEG-4 compliant video CODEC.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.xvid.org/downloads/xvidcore-1.1.3.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 29c60d4d991ac18f687a8fd13cfe64b7
- Download size: 625 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

XviD Dependencies

Optional

NASM-0.98.39

Installation of XviD

Install XviD by running the following commands:

```
cd build/generic &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libxvidcore.so.4.1 &&
ln -v -sf libxvidcore.so.4.1 /usr/lib/libxvidcore.so.4 &&
ln -v -sf libxvidcore.so.4   /usr/lib/libxvidcore.so   &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/xvidcore-1.1.3/examples &&
install -v -m644 ../../doc/* /usr/share/doc/xvidcore-1.1.3 &&
install -v -m644 ../../examples/* \
    /usr/share/doc/xvidcore-1.1.3/examples
```

Command Explanations

ln -v -sf libxvidcore.so.4 /usr/lib/libxvidcore.so: This command makes applications linked against `.so` names, link to `.so.<MAJOR>`. This ensures better binary compatibility, as XviD developers take care not changing the *<MAJOR>* number until there is an incompatible ABI change.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libxvidcore.{so,a}
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/xvidcore-1.1.3

Short Descriptions

`libxvidcore.{so,a}` provides functions to encode and decode most MPEG-4 video data.

Xine Libraries-1.1.12

Introduction to Xine Libraries

The xine Libraries package contains xine libraries. These are useful for interfacing with external plug-ins that allow the flow of information from the source to the screen and speakers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/xine/xine-lib-1.1.12.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/xine-lib-1.1.12.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: b7254614c78c8b0f1652b8dc06f80b3a
- Download size: 7.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 233 MB
- Estimated build time: 6.1 SBU

Xine Libraries Dependencies

Required

X Window System and EsounD-0.2.37 or OSS or ALSA-1.0.13 or aRts-1.5.9 or *PulseAudio* or *JACK*

Recommended

pkg-config-0.22 and FFmpeg-svn_20070606

Optional

AAlib-1.4rc5, libmng-1.0.9, SDL-1.2.11, libFAME-0.9.1, libvorbis-1.2.0, Speex-1.0.5, GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1, FLAC-1.2.1, Samba-3.0.30, ImageMagick-6.3.5-10, *DirectFB*, *Theora*, *libcaca*, *libmodplug*, *libcdio*, *VCDImager*, *libmpcdec*, *WavPack*, *libdxr3*, *sgmltools-lite*, and *Transfig*

The developers recommended that you use the internal source tree versions of liba52-0.7.4, libdts (now *libdca*), *libdvdnav*, and libmad-0.15.1b and not system-installed versions.

Installation of Xine Libraries

Install xine Libraries by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-static --with-external-ffmpeg \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/xine-lib-1.1.12 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-static`: This switch is used to enable building the static library as some programs link against it.

`--with-external-ffmpeg`: This switch enables use of an external FFmpeg library. The internaly built library produces poor resuts with some video files.

`--docdir=/usr/share/xine-lib-1.1.12`: This switch causes the documentation to be installed into a versioned instead of the default `/usr/share/doc/xine-lib`.

Contents

Installed Program:	xine-config
Installed Libraries:	libxine.{a,so} and numerous plugin modules and video extensions
Installed Fonts:	Output display engine fonts located in /usr/share/xine/libxine1/fonts
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/xine, /usr/lib/xine, /usr/share/xine, and /usr/share/doc/xine-lib-1.1.12

Short Descriptions

xine-config	provides information to programs trying to link with the xine libraries.
`libxine.so`	provides the API for processing audio/video files.

Libmikmod-3.1.11

Introduction to Libmikmod

libmikmod is a sound library capable of playing audio samples as well as tracker modules. Supported module formats include MOD, S3M, XM, IT, MED, MTM and 669.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mikmod.raphnet.net/files/libmikmod-3.1.11.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/libmikmod-3.1.11.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 705106da305e8de191549f1e7393185c
- Download size: 604 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.9 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Recommended Patch: *http://mikmod.raphnet.net/files/libmikmod-3.1.11-a.diff*

Libmikmod Dependencies

Optional

ALSA-1.0.13, EsounD-0.2.37, *libGUS*, *AFlib* and *SAM9407 driver*

Installation of Libmikmod

Install libmikmod by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../libmikmod-3.1.11-a.diff &&
sed -i -e "s/VERSION=10/VERSION=11/" \
       -e "s/sys_asoundlib/alsa_asoundlib/" \
       -e "s/snd_cards/snd_card_load/g" \
       -e "s|sys/asoundlib.h|alsa/asoundlib.h|g" \
       -e "s/^LIBOBJS/#LIBOBJS/" \
    configure.in &&
autoconf &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod 755 /usr/lib/libmikmod.so.2.0.4 &&
install -v -m644 -D docs/mikmod.html \
    /usr/share/doc/libmikmod-3.1.11/mikmod.html
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e ...: This increments the package micro version and also modifies the ALSA header search routine so that the package properly discovers the ALSA library. It also fixes a problem which makes autoconf fail.

autoconf: This generates a new **configure** script, required because of the changes to `configure.in`.

Contents

Installed Program:	libmikmod-config
Installed Library:	libmikmod.{so,a}
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/libmikmod-3.1.11

Short Descriptions

libmikmod-config	provides version information, compiler, and linker flags to programs that utilize libmikmod.
`libmikmod.{so,a}`	contains functions that are required to play various tracker module files.

GStreamer-0.10.13

Introduction to GStreamer

The GStreamer package contains a streaming media framework that enables applications to share a common set of plugins for things like video decoding and encoding, audio encoding and decoding, audio and video filters, audio visualisation, Web streaming and anything else that streams in real-time or otherwise. It is modelled after research software worked on at the Oregon Graduate Institute. After installing GStreamer, you'll likely need to install one or more of the GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6, GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins-0.10.6, *GStreamer Bad Plug-ins* and *GStreamer FFmpeg plug-in* packages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gstreamer.freedesktop.org/src/gstreamer/gstreamer-0.10.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gstreamer/0.10/gstreamer-0.10.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 69b594b43e52e1d0eaf512a89c7b3137
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 72 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.5 SBU (includes building manuals and 0.5 SBU to run the test suite)

GStreamer Dependencies

Required

GLib-2.12.12 and libxml2-2.6.31

Optional

Check (required to run the unit regression tests), and *Valgrind* (optionally used during the unit regression tests)

Optional (Required to Rebuild the API Documentation)

GTK-Doc-1.8 and PyXML-0.8.4

Optional (Required to Build Manuals)

libxslt-1.1.22, teTeX-3.0, AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4, DocBook-utils-0.6.14, *Transfig*, and *Netpbm*

Installation of GStreamer

Install GStreamer by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. There are many other `Makefile` targets you can specify for running the tests, issue **make -C tests/check help** to see the complete list.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gstreamer-0.10/design &&
install -v -m644 docs/design/*.txt \
                    /usr/share/doc/gstreamer-0.10/design &&

if [ -d /usr/share/doc/gstreamer-0.10/faq/html ]; then
    chown -v -R root:root \
        /usr/share/doc/gstreamer-0.10/*/html
fi
```

Testing the Installation

To test the functionality of the GStreamer installation, you can run a simple test as an unprivileged user (you may have to run **ldconfig** as the `root` user before attempting the test).

```
gst-launch -v fakesrc num_buffers=5 ! fakesink
```

If the command outputs a series of messages from fakesrc and fakesink, everything is okay.

Command Explanations

`--enable-gtk-doc`: Use this parameter if GTK-Doc is installed and you wish to rebuild the API documentation.

`--enable-docbook`: This parameter is used to build HTML, PDF and PostScript versions of the GStreamer User's Manual, FAQ and Writer's Guide. Note that you must have all the listed dependencies installed.

chown -v -R root:root ...: The documentation is installed with ownerships of the user who untarred and built the package. This command changes the ownerships of the installed documentation files to root:root and is only executed if the documentation files were built and installed.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gst-feedback{,-0.10}, gst-inspect{,-0.10}, gst-launch{,-0.10}, gst-typefind{,-0.10}, gst-xmllaunch{,-0.10} and gst-xmlinspect{,-0.10}
Installed Libraries:	libgstbase-0.10.{so,a}, libgstcheck-0.10.{so,a}, libgstcontroller-0.10.{so,a}, libgstdataprotocol-0.10.{so,a}, libgstnet-0.10.{so,a}, libgstreamer-0.10.{so,a}, and libgst*.{so,a} plugin modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/gstreamer-0.10, /usr/lib/gstreamer-0.10, /usr/share/doc/gstreamer-0.10, /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gstreamer{,-libs,-plugins}-0.10

Short Descriptions

gst-feedback-0.10	generates debug info for GStreamer bug reports.
gst-inspect-0.10	prints information about a GStreamer plugin or element.
gst-launch-0.10	is a tool that builds and runs basic GStreamer pipelines.
gst-typefind-0.10	uses the GStreamer type finding system to determine the relevant GStreamer plugin to parse or decode a file, and determine the corresponding MIME type.
gst-xmlinspect-0.10	prints information about a GStreamer plugin or element in XML document format.

gst-xmllaunch-0.10 is used to build and run a basic GStreamer pipeline, loading it from an XML description.

GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13

Introduction to GStreamer Base Plug-ins

The GStreamer Base Plug-ins is a well-groomed and well-maintained collection of GStreamer plug-ins and elements, spanning the range of possible types of elements one would want to write for GStreamer. It also contains helper libraries and base classes useful for writing elements. A wide range of video and audio decoders, encoders, and filters are included. Also see the GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6, GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins-0.10.6, *GStreamer Bad Plug-ins* and *GStreamer FFmpeg plug-in* packages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gstreamer.freedesktop.org/src/gst-plugins-base/gst-plugins-base-0.10.13.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gst-plugins-base/0.10/gst-plugins-base-0.10.13.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 735f7b911cd00540d2bea8596a3859cd
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: up to 72 MB (depends on what dependencies are installed)
- Estimated build time: up to 1.5 SBU (0.5 SBU to run the test suite)

GStreamer Base Plug-ins Dependencies

Required

GStreamer-0.10.13 and *liboil*

Optional

ALSA-1.0.13, libogg-1.1.3, libvorbis-1.2.0, *Theora*, CDParanoia-III-9.8, FreeType-2.3.7, Pango-1.16.4, GTK+-2.10.13 (required to build the examples), X Window System, GNOME Virtual File System-2.18.1, *libvisual*, *Check* (required to run the unit regression tests), and *Valgrind* (optionally used during the unit regression tests)

Optional (Required to Rebuild the API Documentation)

GTK-Doc-1.8 and PyXML-0.8.4

Installation of GStreamer Base Plug-ins

Install GStreamer Base Plug-ins by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. There are many other `Makefile` targets you can specify for running the tests, issue **make -C tests/check help** to see the complete list.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	gst-visualise-0.10
Installed Libraries:	libgst*.{so,a} and numerous GStreamer plugins
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/gstreamer-0.10/gst/{too numerous to list} and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gst-plugins-base-libs-0.10

Short Descriptions

gst-visualise-0.10 is used to run a basic GStreamer pipeline to display a graphical visualisation of an audio stream.

GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6

Introduction to GStreamer Good Plug-ins

The GStreamer Good Plug-ins is a set of plug-ins considered by the GStreamer developers to have good quality code, correct functionality, and the preferred license (LGPL for the plug-in code, LGPL or LGPL-compatible for the supporting library). A wide range of video and audio decoders, encoders, and filters are included. Also see the GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins-0.10.6, *GStreamer Bad Plug-ins* and *GStreamer FFmpeg plug-in* packages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gstreamer.freedesktop.org/src/gst-plugins-good/gst-plugins-good-0.10.6.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/sources/gst-plugins-good/0.10/gst-plugins-good-0.10.6.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 25f111360c2930705b91b4fcf93ae5c5
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: up to 85 MB (depends on which dependencies are installed)
- Estimated build time: up to 1.7 SBU

GStreamer Good Plug-ins Dependencies

Required

GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13

Optional (Required for the GStreamer Backend in Totem-2.18.2, and Can be Used by Many Other GNOME Applications)

GConf-2.18.0.1

Optional

AAlib-1.4rc5, cairo-1.4.14, *libcdio* (which can use CDParanoia-III-9.8, *libcddb*, and *VCDImager*), *libavc1394* (requires *libraw1394*), libdv-1.0.0, EsounD-0.2.37, FLAC-1.2.1, GTK+-2.10.13 (required to build the examples), HAL-0.5.9.1, libjpeg-6b, *LADSPA*, *libcaca*, libpng-1.2.29, *libshout*, Speex-1.0.5 (version >= *1.1.6* is preferred), *WavPack*, *TagLib*, X Window System, *Check* (required to run the unit regression tests), and *Valgrind* (optionally used during the unit regression tests)

Optional (Required to Rebuild the API Documentation)

GTK-Doc-1.8 and PyXML-0.8.4

Installation of GStreamer Good Plug-ins

Install GStreamer Good Plug-ins by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3 &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. The “generic/states” test is known to fail on some platforms. There are many other `Makefile` targets you can specify for running the tests, issue **make -C tests/check help** to see the complete list.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you did not rebuild the API documentation by passing `--enable-gtk-doc` to the **configure** script and you wish to install the pre-built documentation, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
make -C docs/plugins install-data
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/gnome/2.18.3`: This parameter is used so that the GConf configuration files are installed in the system-wide GNOME GConf database located in `/etc/gnome/2.18.3/gconf` instead of `/usr/etc`. You may omit this parameter if you don't have GConf installed.

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Numerous GStreamer plugins
Installed Directories: /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gst-plugins-good-plugins-0.10

GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins-0.10.6

Introduction to GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins

The GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins is a set of plug-ins considered by the GStreamer developers to have good quality and correct functionality, but distributing them might pose problems. The license on either the plug-ins or the supporting libraries might not be how the GStreamer developers would like. The code might be widely known to present patent problems. Also see the GStreamer Good Plug-ins-0.10.6, *GStreamer Bad Plug-ins* and *GStreamer FFmpeg plug-in* packages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gstreamer.freedesktop.org/src/gst-plugins-ugly/gst-plugins-ugly-0.10.6.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f1016148ecbfba968c0ef1773066988b
- Download size: 773 KB
- Estimated disk space required: up to 21 MB (depends on what dependencies are installed)
- Estimated build time: up to 0.4 SBU

GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins Dependencies

Required

GStreamer Base Plug-ins-0.10.13

Optional

LAME-3.97, liba52-0.7.4, *libamrnb*, *libdvdnav*, libdvdread-0.9.7, libmad-0.15.1b (and *libid3tag*), libmpeg2-0.4.1, and *libsidplay*

Optional (Required to Rebuild the API Documentation)

GTK-Doc-1.8 and PyXML-0.8.4

Installation of GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins

Install GStreamer Ugly Plug-ins by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If you did not rebuild the API documentation by passing `--enable-gtk-doc` to the **configure** script and you wish to install the pre-built documentation, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
make -C docs/plugins install-data
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: Several GStreamer plugins
Installed Directories: /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/gst-plugins-ugly-plugins-0.10

libmusicbrainz-2.1.5

Introduction to libmusicbrainz

The libmusicbrainz package contains a library which allows you to access the data held on the MusicBrainz server. This is useful for adding MusicBrainz lookup capabilities to other applications.

MusicBrainz is a community music metadatabase that attempts to create a comprehensive music information site. You can use the MusicBrainz data either by browsing the web site, or you can access the data from a client program — for example, a CD player program can use MusicBrainz to identify CDs and provide information about the CD, about the artist or other related information.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.musicbrainz.org/pub/musicbrainz/libmusicbrainz-2.1.5.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.musicbrainz.org/pub/musicbrainz/libmusicbrainz-2.1.5.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: d5e19bb77edd6ea798ce206bd05ccc5f
- Download size: 524 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 12 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

libmusicbrainz Dependencies

Required

expat-2.0.1

Optional to Build the Python Bindings

Python-2.5.2

Installation of libmusicbrainz

Install libmusicbrainz by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If Python is installed, build the bindings with the following commands:

```
(cd python && python setup.py build)
```

This package does not come with a stand-alone test suite (to test you must have Python installed and perform the test after the package is installed).

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D docs/mb_howto.txt \
    /usr/share/doc/libmusicbrainz-2.1.5/mb_howto.txt
```

To test the Python bindings, issue the following: **(cd python && python setup.py test)**.

If you built the Python bindings, issue the following commands as the `root` user to install them:

```
(cd python && python setup.py install)
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Library: libmusicbrainz.{so,a}
Installed Directories: /usr/include/musicbrainz and /usr/share/doc/libmusicbrainz-2.1.5

Short Descriptions

`libmusicbrainz.{so,a}` contains API functions to access the MusicBrainz database, both for looking up data and also for submitting new data.

libmpeg2-0.4.1

Introduction to libmpeg2

The libmpeg2 package contains a library for decoding MPEG-2 and MPEG-1 video streams. The library is able to decode all MPEG streams that conform to certain restrictions: “constrained parameters” for MPEG-1, and “main profile” for MPEG-2. This is useful for programs and applications needing to decode MPEG-2 and MPEG-1 video streams.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://libmpeg2.sourceforge.net/files/mpeg2dec-0.4.1.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles//mpeg2dec-0.4.1.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 7631b0a4bcfdd0d78c0bb0083080b0dc
- Download size: 494 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

libmpeg2 Dependencies

Optional

X Window System and SDL-1.2.11

Installation of libmpeg2

Install libmpeg2 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. To perform a more comprehensive regression test, see the file `test/README` in the source tree.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/mpeg2dec-0.4.1 &&
install -v -m644 README doc/libmpeg2.txt \
                    /usr/share/doc/mpeg2dec-0.4.1
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-shared`: This parameter forces building shared versions of the libraries as well as the static versions.

Contents

Installed Programs:	corrupt_mpeg2, extract_mpeg2 and mpeg2dec
Installed Libraries:	libmpeg2.{so,a} and libmpeg2convert.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/mpeg2dec and /usr/share/doc/mpeg2dec-0.4.1

Short Descriptions

extract_mpeg2	extracts MPEG video streams from a multiplexed stream.
mpeg2dec	decodes MPEG1 and MPEG2 video streams.
`libmpeg2.{so,a}`	contains API functions used to decode MPEG video streams.
`libmpeg2convert.{so,a}`	contains API functions used for color conversions of MPEG video streams.

Chapter 36. Audio Utilities

This chapter contains programs involved with audio file manipulation; that is to say playing, recording, ripping and the other common things which people want to do. It also includes a package used to render text to speech using your system's audio hardware. To use much of this software, you will need to have the kernel sound drivers installed.

Mpg123-1.4.2

Introduction to Mpg123

The mpg123 package contains a console-based MP3 player. It claims to be the fastest MP3 decoder for Unix.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/mpg123/mpg123-1.4.2.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: c571594e81e15c9d5cafe1bb3fdc3386
- Download size: 1.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Mpg123 Dependencies

Required

ALSA Library-1.0.13

Installation of Mpg123

Install mpg123 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Program: mpg123
Installed Libraries: libmpg123.so, output_alsa.so, output_arts.so, output_esd.so, and output_oss.so
Installed Directories: /usr/lib/mpg123

Short Descriptions

mpg123 is used for playing MP3 files via the console.

Vorbis Tools-1.2.0

Introduction to Vorbis Tools

The Vorbis Tools package contains command-line tools for Ogg audio files. This is useful for encoding, playing or editing files using the Ogg CODEC.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.xiph.org/releases/vorbis/vorbis-tools-1.2.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: df976d24e51ef3d87cd462edf747bf9a
- Download size: 1.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 7 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

Vorbis Tools Dependencies

Required

libvorbis-1.2.0

Optional (required to build the ogg123 program)

libao-0.8.8

Optional

cURL-7.16.3, FLAC-1.2.1, and Speex-1.0.5

Installation of Vorbis Tools

Install Vorbis Tools by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-vcut \
            --without-curl &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-vcut`: This parameter is used so that the **vcut** program is built as it is not by default.

`--without-curl`: This parameter disables HTTP streaming in **ogg123**. Remove this parameter if you have cURL installed.

Configuring Vorbis Tools

Config Files

`/etc/libao.conf`, `~/.libao`, and `~/.ogg123rc`

Configuration Information

Issue **man libao.conf** for information about setting the default output device. Also see `/usr/share/doc/vorbis-tools-1.1.1/ogg123rc-example`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	ogg123, oggdec, oggenc, ogginfo, vcut, and vorbiscomment
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/vorbis-tools-1.2.0

Short Descriptions

ogg123	is a command-line audio player for Ogg Vorbis streams.
oggdec	is a simple decoder which converts Ogg Vorbis files into PCM audio files (WAV or raw).
oggenc	is an encoder that turns raw, WAV or AIFF files into an Ogg Vorbis stream.
ogginfo	prints information stored in an audio file.
vcut	will split a file into two files at a designated cut point.
vorbiscomment	is an editor that changes information in the audio file metadata tags.

XMMS-1.2.10

Introduction to XMMS

XMMS is an audio player for the X Window System.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.xmms.org/files/1.2.x/xmms-1.2.10.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/xmms-1.2.10.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 03a85cfc5e1877a2e1f7be4fa1d3f63c
- Download size: 2.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 55 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.84 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/xmms-1.2.10-gcc4-1.patch*

XMMS Dependencies

Required

GTK+-1.2.10

Optional

ALSA-1.0.13, EsounD-0.2.37, libvorbis-1.2.0 and libmikmod-3.1.11

Installation of XMMS

Install XMMS by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../xmms-1.2.10-gcc4-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/xmms-1.2.10 &&
install -v -m644 FAQ README /usr/share/doc/xmms-1.2.10
```

Configuring XMMS

Config Files

`~/.xmms/config`

Configuration Information

When you start **xmms** for the first time, you can configure it with **CTRL+P**. Note that you can extend XMMS' functionality with plugins and skins. You can find these at *http://xmms.org*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	xmms, xmms-config, and wmxmms
Installed Libraries:	libxmms.{so,a} and numerous input, output, effects, and general plugins
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/xmms, /usr/lib/xmms, /usr/share/xmms and /usr/share/doc/xmms-1.2.10

Short Descriptions

xmms	(an acronym for X MultiMedia System) is a program comparable in function with WinAMP. Its main function is playing audio files like WAV and MP3. It can be extended with plugins to play a number of other audio or video formats. Its look can be customized with WinAMP style skins.
xmms-config	is used by other programs which need to link with **xmms** to retrieve the library and include paths.
wmxmms	is a dock applet for the Window Maker window manager. From the applet you can start and control **xmms**.
`libxmms.{so,a}`	contains graphics and playback functions used by **xmms**. These functions can also be utilized by other packages.

LAME-3.97

Introduction to LAME

The LAME package contains an MP3 encoder and optionally, an MP3 frame analyzer. This is useful for creating and analyzing compressed audio files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/lame/lame-3.97.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 90a4acbb730d150dfe80de145126eef7
- Download size: 1.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 18 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

LAME Dependencies

Optional

GTK+-1.2.10, NASM-0.98.39, *libsndfile* (support is currently broken), *Electric Fence* and *Dmalloc*

Installation of LAME

Install LAME by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-mp3rtp &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-mp3rtp`: Builds the encode-to-RTP program.

`--enable-mp3x`: Builds the **mp3x** frame analyzer program (requires GTK+).

Contents

Installed Programs:	lame, mp3rtp, and optionally, mp3x
Installed Library:	libmp3lame.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/lame and /usr/share/doc/lame

Short Descriptions

lame	creates MP3 audio files from raw PCM or `.wav` data.
mp3rtp	is used to encode MP3 with RTP streaming of the output.

mp3x is a GTK based graphical MP3 frame analyzer used for debugging, development and studying MP3 frames produced by any encoder.

`libmp3lame.{so,a}` libraries provide the functions necessary to convert raw PCM and WAV files to MP3 files.

CDParanoia-III-9.8

Introduction to CDParanoia

The CDParanoia package contains a CD audio extraction tool. This is useful for extracting `.wav` files from audio CDs. A CDDA capable CDROM drive is needed. Practically all drives supported by Linux can be used.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.xiph.org/paranoia/download/cdparanoia-III-alpha9.8.src.tgz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 7218e778b5970a86c958e597f952f193
- Download size: 114 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.3 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.12 SBU

Installation of CDParanoia

Install CDParanoia by running the following commands:

```
sed -i '/default:/a break;' interface/utils.h &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libcdda_*.so.0.9.8
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '/default:/a break;' interface/utils.h: This command enables the code to be compiled with a recent version of **gcc**.

Configuring CDParanoia

Configuration Information

As with most libraries, there is no configuration to do, save that the library directory, i.e., `/opt/lib` or `/usr/local/lib` should appear in `/etc/ld.so.conf` so that **ldd** can find the shared libraries. After checking that this is the case, **/sbin/ldconfig** should be run while logged in as `root`.

Contents

Installed Program:	cdparanoia
Installed Libraries:	libcdda_interface.{so,a} and libcdda_paranoia.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

cdparanoia is used for 'ripping' an audio-cd. Ripping is the process of digitally extracting music from an audio-cd.

`libcdda_interface.{so,a}` contains functions used by **cdparanoia**, as well as other packages, which can automatically identify if a CD device is CDDA compatible.

`libcdda_paranoia.{so,a}` contains functions used by **cdparanoia**, as well as other packages, which provide data verification, synchronization, error handling and scratch reconstruction capability.

FreeTTS-1.2.1

Introduction to FreeTTS

The FreeTTS package contains a speech synthesis system written entirely in the Java programming language. It is based upon *Flite*: a small run-time speech synthesis engine developed at Carnegie Mellon University. Flite is derived from the *Festival* Speech Synthesis System from the University of Edinburgh and the *FestVox* project from Carnegie Mellon University. The FreeTTS package is used to convert text to audible speech through the system audio hardware.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/freetts/freetts-1.2.1-src.zip*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f3e3ceae5b8cb5e175b50931f2e350e8
- Download size: 14.1 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 112 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Test suite: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/freetts/freetts-1.2.1-tst.zip*
- Download MD5 sum: 8e461701ee94b3942cc37783f6de4128
- Download size: 3.9 MB

FreeTTS Dependencies

Required

Apache Ant-1.7.0, *Sharutils* (for the **uudecode** program), and working audio hardware/software.

Installation of FreeTTS

The FreeTTS package is distributed in ZIP format and the **unzip** command will default to creating an unused source directory. Additionally, unzipping the test suite file will prompt for questions about overwriting existing files. Use the following commands to **unzip** the source files:

```
unzip -q freetts-1.2.1-src.zip -x META-INF/* &&
unzip -q freetts-1.2.1-tst.zip \
    -x {META-INF/*,freetts-1.2.1/{acknowledgments.txt,license.terms}}
```

Tip

The **sh jsapi.sh** command below installs the Java Speech API components into the FreeTTS source tree. You will be required to view, and then accept (by entering a **y** keypress), a license agreement before the installation will continue. If you are scripting (automating) the build, you'll need to account for this. There is information about automating build commands in the Automated Building Procedures section of Chapter 2. Towards the end of this section, specific information for automating this type of installation is discussed.

Install FreeTTS by running the following commands:

```
cd lib &&
sh jsapi.sh &&
cd .. &&
ant
```

To test the results, issue:

```
ant junit &&
cd tests &&
sh regression.sh &&
cd ..
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /opt/freetts-1.2.1/{lib,docs/{audio,images}} &&
install -v -m644 lib/*.jar /opt/freetts-1.2.1/lib &&
install -v -m644 *.txt RELEASE_NOTES license.terms \
                 docs/*.{pdf,html,txt,sx{w,d}} \
    /opt/freetts-1.2.1/docs &&
install -v -m644 docs/audio/* /opt/freetts-1.2.1/docs/audio &&
install -v -m644 docs/images/* /opt/freetts-1.2.1/docs/images &&
cp -v -R javadoc /opt/freetts-1.2.1 &&
ln -v -s freetts-1.2.1 /opt/freetts
```

Optionally, install any or all of the additional FreeTTS components using the following commands as the `root` user (see the Command Explanations section for details):

```
cp -v -R bin /opt/freetts-1.2.1 &&
install -v -m644 speech.properties $JAVA_HOME/jre/lib &&
cp -v -R tools /opt/freetts-1.2.1 &&
cp -v -R mbrola /opt/freetts-1.2.1 &&
cp -v -R demo /opt/freetts-1.2.1
```

Command Explanations

sh jsapi.sh: This command installs the Java Speech API components into the FreeTTS source tree.

ant: FreeTTS uses the Apache Ant build system instead of the GNU autotools. This commands builds everything, including the class libraries, tools and demos.

cp -v -R bin ...; **install -v -m644 speech.properties**: These two commands install the demonstration programs. Optionally copy the `speech.properties` file to `~/speech.properties` if you don't want to make it available system-wide.

cp -v -R tools ...: This installs the voice data import utilities. See the `README.html` files in the `tools/` subdirectories for information and instructions about using the tools.

cp -v -R mbrola ...: This installs the `mbrola.jar` file, required if you use the *MBROLA* voices.

cp -v -R demo ...: This installs the sources and documentation for the demonstration programs.

For additional information and documentation about the FreeTTS project, visit the main web page at *http://freetts.sourceforge.net*.

Testing the Installation

Test the installation using the following command:

```
java -jar /opt/freetts/lib/freetts.jar \
    -text "This is a test of the FreeTTS speech synthesis system"
```

Depending on the setup of your audio drivers and software, you may have to add the `-streaming` switch to the command as shown below:

```
java -jar /opt/freetts/lib/freetts.jar -streaming \
    -text "This is a test of the FreeTTS speech synthesis system"
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: /opt/freetts-1.2.1/lib/*.jar
Installed Directory: /opt/freetts-1.2.1

Short Descriptions

`*.jar` contains the class libraries which make up the FreeTTS speech synthesis system.

Audacious-1.3.2

Introduction to Audacious

Audacious is a Gtk+-2 based audio player.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://distfiles.atheme.org/audacious-1.3.2.tgz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/audacious-1.3.2.tgz*
- Download MD5 sum: b784a30604a2f9d84e9da310069f43f9
- Download size: 1.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 86 MB (includes all plugins and documentation)
- Estimated build time: 1.9 SBU

Additional Downloads

Required

- Plugins: *http://distfiles.atheme.org/audacious-plugins-1.3.5.tgz*
- Md5 sum: ff6b5901367337f8149e15c8fb1fdf95
- Size: 2.9 MB

Optional

- Ugly Plugins: *http://distfiles.atheme.org/audacious-plugins-ugly-1.3.0.tgz*
- Md5 sum: 3c6274c334c60e092135202a37c61dc2
- Size: 438 KB

Additional plugins can be downloaded from *http://audacious-media-player.org/index.php?title=Plugins*. Note that these third-party plugins are not supported by the Audacious development team.

Audacious Dependencies

Required

libglade-2.6.1 and mcs-0.7.0

Optional

PCRE-7.6 or *Oniguruma*, *Secret Rabbit Code* (a.k.a. libsamplerate), and GTK-Doc-1.8

Optional (for Plugins)

AdPlug, ALSA-1.0.13, aRts-1.5.9, cURL-7.16.3, EsounD-0.2.37, *JACK*, LAME-3.97, libmad-0.15.1b, *libmpcdec* (requires *libmms*, *libsndfile*, libvorbis-1.2.0, *LIRC*, *projectM*, *PulseAudio*, *rocklight* (only for IBM Thinkpads), SDL-1.2.11, *TagLib*), and *WavPack*

Optional (for Ugly Plugins)

libnotify

Installation of Audacious

Install Audacious by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

If you wish to create the SDK documentation, issue the following command: **make documentation-build**.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 -D README /usr/share/doc/audacious-1.3.2/README
```

If you created the SDK documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/{,lib}audacious &&
install -v -m644    doc/audacious/html/* \
                    /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/audacious &&
install -v -m644    doc/libaudacious/html/* \
                    /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/libaudacious
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-one-plugin-dir` and `--disable-user-plugin-dir`: These options are used to determine how the plugins are stored. Review the ouput from **./configure --help** for information.

`--enable-chardet`: This option is used to enable character set detection support.

`--enable-samplerate`: This option is used to enable libsamplerate support.

Installation of Audacious Plugins

Install the required plugins package by unpacking the tarball, changing into the newly created directory, and issuing the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If desired, repeat this procedure for the optional plugins package.

Contents

Installed Programs:	audacious, audacious-arts-helper and audtool
Installed Libraries:	libaudacious.so and numerous Container, Effect, General, Input, Output, Visualization, and amidi-plug plugin modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/audacious, /usr/lib/audacious, /usr/share/audacious, /usr/share/doc/audacious-1.3.2, and /usr/share/gtk-doc/html/audacious

Short Descriptions

audacious is a Gtk2 port of XMMS based on the Beep Media Player.

`libaudacious.so` contains functions that are used by **audacious** to render its graphical interface.

Amarok-1.4.8

Introduction to Amarok

Amarok is an audio player for KDE. Features include a context browser, *Magnatunes* and *Last.fm* integration, support for multimedia devices, and scripting through Ruby.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://mirrors.isc.org/pub/kde/stable/amarok/1.4.8/src/amarok-1.4.8.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/stable/amarok/1.4.8/src/amarok-1.4.8.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 7f65c4a8f3f0ff9042a5b5dd21b36cc8
- Download size: 13 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 129 MB
- Estimated build time: 3.6 SBU

Amarok Dependencies

Required

kdelibs-3.5.9, Ruby-1.8.6-p111, and *TagLib*

Recommended

kdebase-3.5.9 and xine Libraries-1.1.12

Optional

kdemultimedia-3.5.9 (for cd-ripping support), K3b-1.0.4 (for cd-burning support), SDL-1.2.11, *SQLite*, PostgreSQL-8.2.4, MySQL-5.0.41, *Helix* (untested media backend, alternative to xine), FAAD2-2.6.1 or *mpeg4ip*, *libvisual*, *TunePimp*, *libgpod*, *libifp*, *libnjp*, *libmtp*, and *libkarma* (requires *omfs*)

Installation of Amarok

Install Amarok by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(kde-config --prefix) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/kde \
            --disable-debug \
            --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(kde-config --prefix)`: This parameter uses **kde-config** to establish the prefix of the existing KDE installation and then sets the installation prefix for Amarok to the same value.

--disable-debug: This option causes the package to be compiled without debugging code.

--disable-dependency-tracking: This option speeds up one time builds.

--without-included-sqlite: This option forces the use of a system-installed copy of SQLite.

--enable-mysql: This option enables use of a MySQL database for music collections.

--enable-postresql: This option enables use of a PostgreSQL database for music collections.

Support for other optional dependencies may require passing options to the **configure** script. Refer to the output from **./configure --help** for additional information.

Contents

Installed Programs:	amarok, amarokapp, amarokcollectionscanner, amarok_daapserver.rb, and amarok_proxy.rb
Installed Libraries:	libamarok.so, and several modules for installed dependencies
Installed Directories:	$KDE_PREFIX/share/apps/amarok and $KDE_PREFIX/share/doc/HTML/*/amarok

Short Descriptions

amarok	is a wrapper for **amarokapp** to speed up command line argument passing
amarokapp	is the Amarok audio player
amarokcollectionscanner	is used to scan a directory structure and build a collection
amarok_daapserver.rb	is a DAAP server for Amarok
amarok_proxy.rb	is a proxy server for DAAP and *Last.fm*

Chapter 37. Video Utilities

This chapter always seems to be the favorite chapter. It's probably because there is a lot of satisfaction in playing your first video when you have spent so much time getting to that point. All those libraries, all the configurations and your reward is that you finally get to watch a movie. Not to worry though, there is always one more CODEC to install.

FFmpeg-svn_20070606

Introduction to FFmpeg

FFmpeg is a solution to record, convert and stream audio and video. It is a very fast video and audio converter and it can also acquire from a live audio/video source. Designed to be intuitive, the command-line interface (**ffmpeg**) tries to figure out all the parameters, when possible. FFmpeg can also convert from any sample rate to any other, and resize video on the fly with a high quality polyphase filter. FFmpeg can use a video4linux compatible video source and any Open Sound System audio source. The developers of this package do not create or distribute package tarballs any longer. BLFS created the tarball for this package by checking out from upstream SVN the FFmpeg code dated June 6, 2007.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/files/BLFS/6.3/sources/ffmpeg-svn_20070606.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: abae526f04693c08684f0a18c28e3313
- Download size: 2.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 131 MB (built with all dependencies)
- Estimated build time: 1.8 SBU

FFmpeg Dependencies

Optional

AMR narrowband (floating point), *AMR wideband*, FAAC-1.26, FAAD2-2.6.1, FreeType-2.3.7, *GSM*, Imlib2-1.4.0, LAME-3.97, liba52-0.7.4, *libdc1394*, *libnut* (SVN checkout), libvorbis-1.2.0, *MediaLibrary*, SDL-1.2.11, *Theora*, X Window System, *x264*, XviD-1.1.3, and teTeX-3.0 (to build HTML documentation)

Installation of FFmpeg

Review the `doc/optimization.txt` file in the source tree for information about optimizing the build. Additionally, you may want to build the postprocessing library as other packages such as MPlayer-1.0rc1 and Transcode-1.0.3 can utilize it, and xine Libraries-1.1.12 depends on it. See the “Command Explanations” section for additional information.

Install FFmpeg by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-shared \
            --enable-pthreads \
            --disable-ffplay &&
sed -i 's|/man|/share/man|' config.mak &&
make &&
texi2html --version >/dev/null 2>&1 || make doc/ff{mpeg,play,server}.1
```

If you have teTeX installed, the HTML documentation was built during the **make** process. If you wish to create additional formats of the documentation, you must have teTeX installed, then issue following commands:

```
cd doc &&
for DOCNAME in faq ffmpeg-doc hooks ffserver-doc ffplay-doc; do
    texi2dvi -b -p $DOCNAME.texi
    texi2dvi -b    $DOCNAME.texi
    dvips -o $DOCNAME.ps $DOCNAME.dvi
    if [ $DOCNAME = ffserver-doc ] || [ $DOCNAME = ffplay-doc ]; then \
        continue
    fi
    makeinfo --plaintext --force -o $DOCNAME.txt $DOCNAME.texi
done &&
cd .. &&
unset DOCNAME
```

If you have Doxygen-1.5.2 installed and wish to create the API documentation (takes about 100 MB of space), issue **doxygen**.

This package does not come with a test suite that works.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d        /usr/share/doc/ffmpeg-svn_20070606 &&
install -v -m644 doc/*.txt /usr/share/doc/ffmpeg-svn_20070606 &&
texi2html --version >/dev/null 2>&1 || make install-man
```

If you created additional formats of the documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 doc/*.{html,dvi,pdf,ps} \
    /usr/share/doc/ffmpeg-svn_20070606
```

If you created the API documentation, install it by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/ffmpeg-svn_20070606/api &&
cp -v doxy/*        /usr/share/doc/ffmpeg-svn_20070606/api
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-shared`: This switch is needed to build the shared libraries, otherwise only static libraries are built and installed.

`--enable-pthreads`: This switch enables the build to link against the Posix threads library.

`--disable-ffplay`: Only installs the server part. **ffplay** requires X for building. Remove this option if X is installed.

`--enable-<codec>`: Review the available options and codecs using the **./configure --help** command. You must explicitly enable each optional codec. Note that if you wish to build support for postprocessing, liba52, xvid, x264, libfaad2, x11grab or swscaler, you must pass `--enable-gpl` to the **configure** script.

`--enable-pp`: This switch enables postprocessing support.

--enable-gpl: This switch enables the use of GPL code for postprocessing support.

texi2html --version ...: These commands are used to check the presence of the teTeX package, and builds/installs the man pages if it is not found.

Configuring FFmpeg

Config Files

`/etc/ffserver.conf` and `~/.ffmpeg/ffserver-config`

You'll find a sample ffserver configuration file at *http://ffmpeg.sourceforge.net/sample.html* (also `doc/ffserver.conf` in the source tree).

Contents

Installed Programs:	ffmpeg, ffserver, and optionally, ffplay
Installed Libraries:	libavcodec.{so,a}, libavformat.{so,a}, libavutil.{so,a}, video hook modules and optionally, libpostproc.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/ffmpeg, /usr/include/postproc, /usr/lib/vhook, and /usr/share/doc/ffmpeg-svn_20070606

Short Descriptions

ffmpeg	is a command-line tool to convert video files, network streams and input from a TV card to several video formats.
ffplay	is a very simple and portable media player using the `ffmpeg` libraries and the SDL library.
ffserver	is a streaming server for everything that **ffmpeg** could use as input (files, streams, TV card input, webcam, etc.).
`libavcodec.so`	is a library containing the FFmpeg codecs (both encoding and decoding).
`libavformat.so`	is a library containing the file formats handling (mux and demux code for several formats) used by **ffplay** as well as allowing the generation of audio or video streams.

Avifile-0.7.45

Introduction to Avifile

The Avifile package contains an AVI video file player, tools and support libraries. This is useful for viewing and editing AVI files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/avifile/avifile-0.7-0.7.45.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 7da94802f120d1b69e04a13170dcd21d
- Download size: 3.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 57.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 2.5 SBU

Additional Downloads

Patches

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/avifile-0.7-0.7.45-gcc41-1.patch*

Codecs

- Required CODEC: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/avifile/binaries-011002.tgz*
- Download MD5 sum: 4db4edeeceefb9353b15b047207fa6d3
- Download size: 4.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 13 MB

Avifile Dependencies

Required

Qt-3.3.8b and SDL-1.2.11

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, libjpeg-6b, libvorbis-1.2.0, liba52-0.7.4, LAME-3.97, libmad-0.15.1b, XviD-1.1.3, FAAD2-2.6.1, *DivX4Linux*, and *Dmalloc*

Installation of Avifile

Install the required CODECs as the `root` user using the following commands:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/lib/avifile-0.7/win32 &&
tar -xvf ../binaries-011002.tgz -C /usr/lib/avifile-0.7
```

Install Avifile by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../avifile-0.7-0.7.45-gcc41-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
    --with-win32-path=/usr/lib/avifile-0.7/win32 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	avibench, avicap, avicat, avifile-config, avimake, aviplay, avirec, avirecompress, avitype and kv41setup
Installed Libraries:	libaviplay.so, libaviplayavcodec.so, libaviplayavformat.so, libaviplayavutil.so, libaviplaydha.so, libaviplayvidix, libqavm.so and numerous CODEC plugins and video extensions.
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/avifile-0.7, /usr/lib/avifile-0.7, and /usr/share/avifile-0.7

Short Descriptions

avibench	performs a measurement of the AVI file support library's performance for a file.
avicap	is a widget that displays acquired video from a Video For Windows (VFW) compatible device, like a webcam or a TV-tuner.
avicat	takes a set of AVI files and combines them into a single file.
avifile-config	is a script used to get information about the installed version of Avifile.
avimake	takes a set of JPG images and creates a movie.
aviplay	manages the input formats, the CODECs and the output formats to display AVI video files on your screen.
avirec	is a command-line video recording tool.
avirecompress	is a widget that takes an input file of one CODEC type and converts it into a video file of another CODEC.
avitype	will read and display AVI file header information.
kv41setup	is a small tool which tells video4linux about the current video mode.
`libaviplay*.so`	libraries contain the functions required by the various Avifile programs for encoding, decoding and to interface with the various plugins and video extensions.

MPlayer-1.0rc1

Introduction to MPlayer

The MPlayer package contains an audio/video player controlled via the command line or graphical interface which is able to play almost every popular audio and video file format and CODEC (COder/DECoder, also COmpressor/DECompressor). With supported video hardware and additional drivers, MPlayer can play video files without an X Window System installed.

For MPlayer general information and available features, including a full list of file formats, CODECs and output devices supported by MPlayer, visit the *MPlayer web site*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/MPlayer-1.0rc1.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp1.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/MPlayer-1.0rc1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 18c05d88e22c3b815a43ca8d7152ccdc
- Download size: 8.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 133-250 MB (additional 22 MB for essential CODECs)
- Estimated build time: 1.2-2.5 SBU (depends on how FFmpeg is linked in)

Additional Downloads

Patches

- Required Patch: *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/patches/asmrules_fix_20061231.diff*
- Required Patch: *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/patches/cddb_fix_20070605.diff*
- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/MPlayer-1.0rc1-ext_ffmpeg-1.patch*

CODECs

- Proprietary CODECs: *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/codecs/essential-20061022.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: abcf4a3abc16cf88c9df7e0a77e9b941
- Download size: 10.0 MB
- Alternate CODECs (provides additional functionality and is a larger file): *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/codecs/all-20061022.tar.bz2*
- Additional CODECs: *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/codecs/*

Skins

- Default GUI skin: *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/skins/Blue-1.7.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e4e2020d11b681aac898103b3ba723c4
- Download size: 222 KB
- Additional skins: *http://www1.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/skins/*

Fonts

- Prerendered fonts: *http://www1.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/fonts/font-arial-iso-8859-1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 1ecd31d17b51f16332b1fcc7da36b312
- Download size: 234 KB
- Additional fonts: *http://www1.mplayerhq.hu/MPlayer/releases/fonts/*

The CODECs, skins and fonts are not required to build and use MPlayer.

MPlayer Dependencies

Optional Input Drivers and Libraries

CDParanoia-III-9.8, *DVB*, *DVB drivers*, *libcdio*, libdv-1.0.0, libdvdread-0.9.7, *LIVE555 Streaming Media*, Samba-3.0.30, and *TiVo vstream client*

Optional Audio Output Drivers and Libraries

ALSA-1.0.13, aRts-1.5.9, EsounD-0.2.37, *JACK*, *LADSPA*, NAS-1.9, *OpenAL*, *PulseAudio*, SDL-1.2.11 (also used for video output), and XMMS-1.2.10

Optional Video Output Drivers and Libraries

AAlib-1.4rc5, *DirectFB*, *Enca*, Fontconfig-2.4.2, FreeType-2.3.7, FriBidi-0.10.8, *GGI*, giflib-4.1.4, GTK+-2.10.13 or GTK+-1.2.10, *libcaca*, libjpeg-6b, libpng-1.2.29, *maemo*, *VIDIX*, and X Window System

Optional CODECs

AMR narrowband (floating point) or *AMR naarrowband (fixed point)*, *AMR wideband*, FAAC-1.26, FAAD2-2.6.1 (must disable the internal version), FFmpeg-svn_20070606, LAME-3.97, *libdca*, libFAME-0.9.1, libmad-0.15.1b, *libmpcdec*, *libnut* (SVN checkout), libvorbis-1.2.0, *LIRC*, *lirccd*, LZO-2.02 (requires *Version 1*), *SVGAlib*, *Theora*, *tooLAME*, *TwoLAME*, *Tremor* (requires libvorbis-1.2.0 and you must disable the internal version), *x264*, and XviD-1.1.3

Optional Hardware Specific Options

There is hardware specific packages (or vendor supplied software) you can install to improve the performance of your video card when using MPlayer. Some of the packages and/or vendor supplied software and the MPlayer specific driver created if it is found is shown here.

- mga: Matrox G200/G400/G450/G550 hardware YUV overlay via the mga_vid device
- xmga: Matrox G200/G400/G450/G550 overlay (mga_vid) in X11 window
- syncfb: Matrox G400 YUV support on framebuffer
- 3dfx: Voodoo 3/Banshee hardware YUV support (/dev/3dfx)
- tdfxfb: Voodoo 3/Banshee hardware YUV support on tdfx framebuffer
- mpegpes: support for Siemens DVB hardware MPEG-1/2 decoder boards (or MPEG-PES file output)
- dxr2: support for DXR2 hardware MPEG-1/2 decoder boards *Dxr2*
- dxr3: support for DXR3/Hollywood+ hardware MPEG-1/2 decoder boards *libdxr3*
- zr: support for Zoran360[56]7 based hardware MJPEG cards

Installation of MPlayer

CODEC Installation (Optional)

If you downloaded any proprietary CODECs (which can provide support for additional audio and video formats such as Real, Indeo and QuickTime), extract them to `/usr/lib/mplayer/codecs` using the following commands as the `root` user (substitute and/or add different CODEC filenames, if necessary):

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/lib/mplayer/codecs &&
tar -xvf ../essential-20061022.tar.bz2 \
    -C /usr/lib/mplayer/codecs --strip-components=1 &&
chown -v -R root:root /usr/lib/mplayer/codecs
```

If you installed any CODECs, ensure you add `--with-codecsdir=/usr/lib/mplayer/codecs` to the **configure** script.

GUI Installation (Optional)

To enable building the GUI version of MPlayer (requires GTK+-2.10.13 or GTK+-1.2.10), add `--enable-gui` to the **configure** script. You'll also need to extract at least one skin. Extract the desired skin and create the default location (as the `root` user):

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/mplayer/Skin &&
tar -xvf ../Blue-1.7.tar.bz2 \
    -C /usr/share/mplayer/Skin &&
chown -v -R root:root /usr/share/mplayer/Skin/Blue &&
chmod -v 755 /usr/share/mplayer/Skin/Blue{,/icons} &&
ln -sfv Blue /usr/share/mplayer/Skin/default
```

Installing OSD and Subtitles Support (Optional)

To enable OSD (On Screen Display) and subtitles support, add `--enable-menu` to the **configure** script. You'll also need to set up at least one font (see font installation instructions a little later).

Main MPlayer Installation

Note

The package maintainers recommend building without any optimizations.

This package (unfortunately) expects the X Window system to be installed in the `/usr/X11R6` directory. If you're using a recent version of Xorg and it is installed in any other location, ensure you have followed the instructions in the Creating an X11R6 Compatibility Symlink section.

MPlayer can build a shared post-processing library from the internal FFmpeg package which other packages can link to. This requires MPlayer to link dynamically to this library instead of the default statically linked method. If you desire to build the shared library, add `--enable-shared-pp` to the **configure** script. Note that the FFmpeg package can also build this library (which MPlayer can link to instead of building it), ensure you don't overwrite an existing one.

You may wish to examine the output from **./configure --help** to find out what additional parameters to **configure** are needed to include the dependencies you have installed on your system. To link in existing FFmpeg libraries (and MPlayer won't have to build them), you must pass a total of nine additional options to the **configure** script. Four to disable building the static FFmpeg libraries, four to enable using the system-installed shared libraries and `--with-extraincdir=/usr/include/ffmpeg` so the build can locate the FFmpeg interface headers.

Install MPlayer by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np0 -i ../asmrules_fix_20061231.diff &&
patch -Np0 -i ../cddb_fix_20070605.diff &&
patch -Np1 -i ../MPlayer-1.0rc1-ext_ffmpeg-1.patch &&

./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --confdir=/etc/mplayer \
            --enable-largefiles \
            --enable-dynamic-plugins &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&

install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/mplayer-1.0rc1 &&
cp -v -R DOCS/*     /usr/share/doc/mplayer-1.0rc1
```

Passing certain parameters to **configure** may result in the creation of `libdha.so.1.0`. If so, you may wish to create a symlink to this library in case other packages link to `libdha.so`. Use the following command as the `root` user to create the symbolic link:

```
ln -v -s libdha.so.1.0 /usr/lib/libdha.so
```

You will need `codecs.conf` only if you want to change its properties, as the main binary contains an internal copy of it. Ensure any changes you make to `codecs.conf` achieve the desired results, as incorrect entries in this file have been known to cause errors and render the player unusable. If necessary, create the file using the following command.

```
install -m644 etc/codecs.conf /etc/mplayer
```

You may also want to copy all the default configuration files to `/etc/mplayer` for future reference or more customization ability.

```
install -m644 etc/*.conf /etc/mplayer
```

MPlayer requires that the RTC run at a frequency of 1024 Hz. Make this setting change at boot-time by adding a line to `/etc/sysctl.conf`:

```
echo "dev.rtc.max-user-freq=1024" >> /etc/sysctl.conf
```

OSD and Subtitles Font Installation (Required if '--enable-menu' Was Passed to 'configure')

The recommended method to set up a font for MPlayer is to link a TTF file to your `~/.mplayer` directory. A link should be created in each user's home directory who may use MPlayer. For example:

```
install -v -m750 -d ~/.mplayer &&
ln -v -sf /usr/share/fonts/X11-TTF/luxisri.ttf \
    ~/.mplayer/subfont.ttf
```

There are several other ways to set up a font package. To use a prerendered MPlayer font package, extract and link one of the font tarballs using the following commands:

```
tar -xvf ../font-arial-iso-8859-1.tar.bz2 \
    -C /usr/share/mplayer/font &&
chown -v -R root:root /usr/share/mplayer/font &&
cd /usr/share/mplayer/font &&
ln -v -sf font-arial-iso-8859-1/font-arial-<font size>-iso-8859-1/* .
```

Available font sizes are 14, 18, 24 or 28.

Additional information as well as additional methods to set up an MPlayer font package can be found at *http://www.mplayerhq.hu/DOCS/HTML/en/subosd.html#mpsub-install*.

Configuring MPlayer

Config Files

`/etc/mplayer/*` and `~/.mplayer/*`

Configuration Information

Typically, there's no configuration required for the system-wide files in `/etc/mplayer` (in fact, this directory is empty unless you copied the default files as mentioned above). Configuration can be accomplished by choosing the configuration button located on the MPlayer GUI. Any configuration changes made here will be copied to the user's `~/.mplayer` directory.

Contents

Installed Programs:	gmplayer, mplayer, and mencoder
Installed Libraries:	libdha.so and optionally, libpostproc.so
Installed Directories:	~/.mplayer, /etc/mplayer, /usr/include/postproc, /usr/lib/mplayer, /usr/share/mplayer, and /usr/share/doc/mplayer-1.0rc1

Short Descriptions

gmplayer is a symlink to **mplayer** which brings up the graphical user interface component of MPlayer.

mplayer manages the input formats, the CODECs and the output formats to play video files, DVDs, (S)VCDs or network streams containing audio and/or video information on your system. Examples:

```
mplayer -fs blfs.avi
mplayer -vo fbdev -fb /dev/fb0 dvd://1 \
    -aid 128 -sub en -framedrop
mplayer -fs vcd://1    # works both for VCDs and SVCDs
mplayer http://fredrik.hubbe.net/plugger/test.mpg
```

For further information, look at the very good documentation included with the package in the source tree subdirectory `DOCS` (also installed at `/usr/share/doc/mplayer-1.0rc1`).

mencoder is used to encode any MPlayer playable movie to DivX4, XviD or any CODEC in `libavcodec` with PCM/MP3/VBRMP3 audio.

Example:

```
rm frameno.avi
mencoder -dvd 1 -aid 128 -ovc frameno -oac mp3lame \
-lameopts vbr=3 -o frameno.avi

# mencoder should output bitrates for average encodings
# now, choose one you like best! In the following lines,
# replace <bitrate> and <name.avi> with statements of your
# personal liking.

mencoder -dvd 1 -aid 128 -oac copy -ovc lavc \
    -lavcopts vcodec=mpeg4:vpass=1:vhq:vbitrate=<bitrate> \
    -o <name.avi>
mencoder -dvd 1 -aid 128 -oac copy -ovc lavc \
    -lavcopts vcodec=mpeg4:vpass=2:vhq:vbitrate=<bitrate> \
    -o <name.avi>
mencoder -forceidx <name.avi>
```

`libdha.so` contains functions used by the MPlayer programs.

`libpostproc.so` is a post-processing filter library used by the MPlayer programs and other packages.

Xine User Interface-0.99.5

Introduction to Xine User Interface

The xine User Interface package contains a multimedia player. It plays back CDs, DVDs and VCDs. It also decodes multimedia files like AVI, MOV, WMV, MPEG and MP3 from local disk drives, and displays multimedia streamed over the Internet.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/xine/xine-ui-0.99.5.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/xine-ui-0.99.5.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: e643cd1fcad4d98a5ae4eb877ce5087b
- Download size: 2.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 19 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Xine User Interface Dependencies

Required

xine Libraries-1.1.12

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, cURL-7.16.3, AAlib-1.4rc5, *LIRC* and *libcaca*

Installation of Xine User Interface

Install xine User Interface by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make docsdir=/usr/share/doc/xine-ui-0.99.5 install
```

Command Explanations

`docsdir=/usr/share/doc/xine-ui-0.99.5`: This parameter causes the Xine UI documentation to be installed in the versioned directory `/usr/share/doc/xine-ui-0.99.5`, rather that the default `/usr/share/doc/xine-ui`.

Configuring Xine User Interface

Config Files

`~/.xine/config`

Configuration Information

The above file is created and maintainable through the **xine** setup dialog box. The documentation for the configuration settings is located at `/usr/share/doc/xine-ui-0.99.5/README.config_en`.

Contents

Installed Programs: aaxine, cacaxine, fbxine, xine, xine-bugreport, xine-check, and xine-remote
Installed Directories: /usr/share/xine/{desktop,skins,visuals} and /usr/share/doc/xine-ui-0.99.5

Short Descriptions

aaxine is an ASCII art video player which utilizes AAlib as the frontend for the xine Libraries.

cacaxine is a color ASCII art video player which utilizes CACA as the frontend for the xine Libraries.

fbxine is a frame buffer interface to the xine Libraries.

xine is a multimedia player designed to play MPEG streams (audio and video), MPEG elementary streams (MP3), MPEG transport streams, Ogg files, AVI files, ASF files, some Quicktime files, VCDs and DVDs (non-encrypted).

xine-bugreport produces a terse system description and guides you through the process of reporting a bug.

xine-check tests the **xine** video player installation for common problems. It tests the operating system settings, installation of plugins, CD/DVD drive settings and video support parameters.

xine-remote is a tool to connect to a **xine** remote control server.

Transcode-1.0.3

Introduction to Transcode

Transcode is a fast, versatile and command-line based audio/video everything to everything converter. For a rundown of the features and capabilities, along with usage examples, visit the Transcode Wiki at *http://www.transcoding.org/*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://transcode.kabewm.com/transcode-1.0.3.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/transcode-1.0.3.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 4f6eb832123ea28c54f0d4952733bcb6
- Download size: 1.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 61 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/transcode-1.0.3-libmpeg3_fixes-1.patch*

Transcode Dependencies

Required

FFmpeg-svn_20070606 and libmpeg2-0.4.1

Recommended

LAME-3.97

Optional (Listed in the Order That the configure Script Looks for Them)

pkg-config-0.22, X Window System, *DivX4Linux*, XviD-1.1.3, *LoRS/IBP*, FreeType-2.3.7, Avifile-0.7.45, libogg-1.1.3, libvorbis-1.2.0, *Theora*, libdvdread-0.9.7, *PVM3*, libdv-1.0.0, libquicktime-1.0.0, LZO-2.02 (requires *Version 1*), liba52-0.7.4, LibMPEG3-1.7, libxml2-2.6.31, *MJPEG Tools*, SDL-1.2.11, GTK+-1.2.10, libFAME-0.9.1, ImageMagick-6.3.5-10, and libjpeg-6b

Installation of Transcode

Install Transcode by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../transcode-1.0.3-libmpeg3_fixes-1.patch &&
sed -i 's|doc/transcode|&-$(PACKAGE_VERSION)|' \
       $(find . -name Makefile.in -exec grep -l 'docsdir =' {} \;) &&

autoconf &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-netstream`: This parameter enables network streaming support.

Support for most of the dependency packages requires using options passed to the **configure** script. View the `INSTALL` file and the output from **./configure --help** for complete information about enabling dependency packages.

Contents

Installed Programs:	avicodec, avidump, avifix, aviindex, avimerge, avisplit, avisync, tccat, tcdecode, tcdemux, tcextract, tcframe, tcmodinfo, tcmp3cut, tcprobe, tcrequant, tcscan, tcxmlcheck, tcxpm2rgb, and transcode
Installed Libraries:	a52_decore.so, af6_decore.so, export*.so, filter*.so, and import*.so output/filter/input modules
Installed Directories:	/usr/lib/transcode and /usr/share/doc/transcode-1.0.3

Short Descriptions

avicodec	indicates or changes the FOURCC CODEC flag in an AVI file.
avidump	dumps audio or video stream of a given AVI file to stdout (for AVI conversion or extraction of audio streams).
avifix	fixes the header of an AVI file.
aviindex	writes a text file describing the index of an AVI file.
avimerge	merges AVI files of the same format. Do not try to merge AVI files of different formats, it will most likely result in errors (and format means same bitrates, too!).
avisplit	splits AVI files into multiple files.
avisync	can shift audio in AVI files for better synchronizing of the audio and video data signal.
tccat	concatenates input files using the input plugins of Transcode.
tcdecode	is used to decode input files to raw video and PCM audio streams.
tcdemux	demultiplexes (separates) audio/video input that contains multiple streams, e.g., VOB files.
tcextract	grabs single streams from a file containing multiple streams.
tcframe	processes single video frames for different color encodings (RGB >-< YUV or similar).
tcmodinfo	loads a supplied Transcode filter module and prints its parameters.
tcmp3cut	is a tool which can cut MP3 streams at milliseconds positions.
tcprobe	prints information about the input file format.
tcrequant	is a tool which can requantize an MPEG-2 elementary stream.
tcscan	performs several measurements on the given input data.
tcxmlcheck	checks information in a SMIL input file.
transcode	is the encoder's user interface that handles the plugins and other programs, being the glue between the modules. There are several well documented

	usage examples on both the homepage and the documentation included in the package.
`a52_decore.so`	is used to interface with the `liba52` library for decoding AC-3 streams.
`af6_decore.so`	is a support module used to decode `libaviplay` library supported codecs and file formats
`export/filter/import_*.so`	— depending on the external libraries that are used, there are a great number of plugins to convert audio and video input to raw format, process raw video and audio and convert raw audio and video to other formats to be written into a file type of choice. Read the documentation for complete information.

Chapter 38. CD/DVD-Writing Utilities

This chapter contains information on CD/DVD-writing utilities in Linux.

Additional sources of information include:

- *CD-Writing HOWTO*
- *CD-Recordable FAQ*
- *The dvd+rw-tools Website*

Cdrtools-2.01

Introduction to Cdrtools

The Cdrtools package contains CD recording utilities. These are useful for reading, creating or writing (burning) Compact Discs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/utils/schilling/cdrtools/cdrtools-2.01.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.berlios.de/pub/cdrecord/cdrtools-2.01.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d44a81460e97ae02931c31188fe8d3fd
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 21 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.5 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch for extending the number of locales to create CDs with non-ASCII filenames: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/cdrtools-2.01-mkisofs_iconv-1.patch*
- Recommended Patch for using Cdrtools in locales using non-ISO-8859-1 character sets: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/cdrtools-2.01-ascii-2.patch*

Installation of Cdrtools

Note

Installation of Cdrtools will fail if raw kernel headers are found in `/usr/src/linux` either as actual files or a symlink. As of the Linux 2.6 kernel series, this directory should no longer exist because appropriate headers were installed in the linux-libc-headers package during the base LFS installation.

When creating an ISO 9660 image with **mkisofs**, the character set of the filenames used must be specified unless it is ISO-8859-1, the default. If the character set is not specified correctly, then non-ASCII filenames will be unreadable on other systems, such as Microsoft Windows. This patch allows any input character set supported by Glibc (such as UTF-8) to be specified to **mkisofs**, as opposed of the short list of built-in encodings. Also, the default input character set is set to that of the current locale, which is the correct behavior. To address this situation, apply the mkisofs_iconv patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../cdrtools-2.01-mkisofs_iconv-1.patch
```

The **cdrecord** program has hard-coded non-ASCII characters in its messages. Since these characters are part of the ISO-8859-1 character set, they will not be displayed correctly in locales that use a different character set, such as UTF-8. The following patch converts these characters to ASCII approximations:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../cdrtools-2.01-ascii-2.patch
```

Install Cdrtools by running the following commands:

```
make INS_BASE=/usr DEFINSUSR=root DEFINSGRP=root
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make INS_BASE=/usr DEFINSUSR=root DEFINSGRP=root install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/cdrtools-2.01 &&
install -v -m644 README* ABOUT doc/*.ps \
    /usr/share/doc/cdrtools-2.01
```

Command Explanations

`INS_BASE=/usr`: This parameter moves the install directory from `/opt/schily` to `/usr`.

`DEFINSUSR=root DEFINSGRP=root`: These parameters install all programs with root:root ownership instead of the default bin:bin.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cdda2wav, cdrecord, devdump, isodebug, isodump, isoinfo, isovfy, mkhybrid, mkisofs, readcd, rscsi, scgcheck, and skel
Installed Libraries:	libdeflt.a, libedc_ecc.a, libfile.a, libhfs.a, libparanoia.a, librscg.a, libscg.a, libschily.a, and libunls.a
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

cdda2wav	converts Compact Disc audio into WAV sound files.
cdrecord	records audio or data Compact Discs.
devdump	is a diagnostic program used to dump an ISO-9660 device or file in hex.
isodebug	is used to display the command-line parameters used to create an ISO-9660 image.
isodump	is a diagnostic program used to dump a device or file based on ISO-9660.
isoinfo	is used to analyze or list an ISO-9660 image.
isovfy	is used to verify an ISO-9660 image.
mkhybrid	is a symbolic link to **mkisofs** used to create ISO-9660/HFS hybrid filesystem images.
mkisofs	is used to create ISO-9660/JOLIET/HFS filesystem images, optionally with Rock Ridge attributes.
readcd	reads or writes Compact Discs.
rscsi	is a remote SCSI manager.
scgcheck	is used to check and verify the Application Binary Interface of `libscg`.
`libscg.a`	is a highly portable SCSI transport library.

Cdrdao-1.2.2

Introduction to Cdrdao

The Cdrdao package contains CD recording utilities. These are useful for burning a CD in disk-at-once mode.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/cdrdao/cdrdao-1.2.2.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: f0cbf36907406cb4f4c568f9e6669a34
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 64 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.3 SBU (includes building **gcdmaster**)

Cdrdao Dependencies

Recommended

libao-0.8.8, libvorbis-1.2.0, libmad-0.15.1b, and LAME-3.97 (required to build **toc2mp3**)

Optional

libacl and *libattr*

Optional (Required to Build the gcdmaster Program)

Note that the following packages must be built in the order listed. Use the current “stable” version of each package.

libgnomeui-2.18.1, *libsigc++*, *glibmm*, *gtkmm*, *libglademm*, *libgnomecanvasmm*, *gconfmm*, *gnome-vfsmm*, *libgnomemm*, and *libgnomeuimm*

There are two additional optional dependencies that can be used by the Cdrdao build: Cdrtools-2.01 and *PCCTS*. The pieces of these two packages required to build Cdrdao are also included in the source tree and are used by default.

Installation of Cdrdao

Install Cdrdao by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/cdrdao-1.2.2 &&
install -v -m644 README* /usr/share/doc/cdrdao-1.2.2
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	cdrdao, cue2toc, toc2cddb, toc2cue and optionally, gcdmaster and toc2mp3
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/cdrdao, /usr/share/doc/cdrdao-1.2.2 and /usr/share/gcdmaster

Short Descriptions

cdrdao records audio or data CD-Rs in disk-at-once (DAO) mode based on a textual description of the CD contents.

cue2toc converts CUE to TOC format for audio CDs.

gcdmaster is a graphical front end to **cdrdao** for composing audio CDs.

toc2cddb converts a Cdrdao TOC file into a cddb file and prints it to stdout.

toc2cue converts TOC to CUE format for audio CDs.

toc2mp3 converts an audio CD disk image (`.toc` file) to MP3 files.

UDFtools-1.0.0b3

Introduction to UDFtools

The UDFtools package contains utilities for creating and mounting CD-RW disks with UDF file systems for both reading and writing. UDF files systems are used on both CD-RW media and on DVD. For more details of the UDF file system standard see: *http://www.osta.org* and *http://www.ecma-international.org*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/linux-udf/udftools-1.0.0b3.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 2f491ddd63f31040797236fe18db9e60
- Download size: 287 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.5 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://w1.894.telia.com/~u89404340/patches/packet/udftools-1.0.0b3.patch.bz2*

Kernel Configuration

In the kernel configuration, modify your settings to match those listed here:

```
Block devices
    Packet writing on CD/DVD media:       Y or M
CD-ROM/DVD Filesystems
    UDF file system support               Y or M
```

Recompile and install the new kernel.

Installation of UDFtools

Install UDFtools by running the following commands:

```
bzcat ../udftools-1.0.0b3.patch.bz2 | patch -Np1 &&
sed -i -e 's/(char\*)spm +=/spm = (char\*)spm +/' wrudf/wrudf.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e 's/(char*)spm +=/spm = (char*)spm +/' wrudf/wrudf.c: This change is required to compile with recent compilers.

Contents

Installed Programs: cdrwtool, mkudffs, pktsetup, udffsck, and wrudf
Installed Library: libudffs.a
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

cdrwtool provides facilities to manage CD-RW drives, including formatting new disks, setting the read and write speeds, etc.
Example:

```
cdrwtool -d /dev/scd0 -q
```

prepares a new CD-RW for use and formats it with a UDF file system.

mkudffs is used to create new UDF file systems. It can be used on hard disks and CD-Rs as well as CD-RWs.

pktsetup is used to establish and break down associations between the kernel packet driver and a physical drive.
Example:

```
pktsetup /dev/pktcdvd0 /dev/scd0
mount /dev/pktcdvd0 /mnt/cdrom -t udf -o rw,noatime
```

associates the physical device `/dev/scd0` with the kernel packet driver `/dev/pktcdvd0`, then mounts a UDF formatted CD-RW for read/write access.

udffsck is used to check the integrity and correct errors on UDF filesystems.

wrudf is used to maintain a UDF filesystem.

`libudffs.a` contains functions used by the UDFtools programs.

dvd+rw-tools-7.0

Introduction to dvd+rw-tools

The dvd+rw-tools package contains several utilities to master the DVD media, both +RW/+R and -R[W]. The principle tool is **growisofs** which provides a way to both lay down **and** grow an ISO9660 file system on (as well as to burn an arbitrary pre-mastered image to) all supported DVD media. This is useful for creating a new DVD or adding to an existing image on a partially burned DVD.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://fy.chalmers.se/~appro/linux/DVD+RW/tools/dvd+rw-tools-7.0.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 2eb9c2a6b1e6bc7c4d72d3b5ece34ceb
- Download size: 131 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.4 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

dvd+rw-tools Dependencies

Required

Though not required during the build, you must have Cdrtools-2.01 installed or the **growisofs** command will not function properly, rendering the entire package useless.

Installation of dvd+rw-tools

Install dvd+rw-tools by running the following commands:

```
make all rpl8 btcflash
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make prefix=/usr install &&

install -v -m644 -D index.html \
    /usr/share/doc/dvd+rw-tools-7.0/index.html
```

Command Explanations

make all rpl8 btcflash: This command uses additional targets so that all the utilities are built.

Contents

Installed Programs:	btcflash, dvd+rw-booktype, dvd+rw-format, dvd+rw-mediainfo, dvd-ram-control, growisofs, and rpl8
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/doc/dvd+rw-tools-7.0

Short Descriptions

growisofs is a combined **mkisofs** frontend/DVD recording program.

K3b-1.0.4

Introduction to K3b

The K3b package contains a KDE-based graphical interface to the Cdrtools and dvd+rw-tools CD/DVD manipulation tools. It also combines the capabilities of many other multimedia packages into one central interface to provide a simple-to-operate application that can be used to handle many of your CD/DVD recording and formatting requirements. This is useful for creating audio, data, video and mixed-mode CDs as well as copying, ripping and burning CDs and DVDs.

Though K3b can be used to copy almost any DVD to similar medium, it does not provide a way to copy, or reproduce a double-layer DVD onto single-layer medium. Of course, there is not a program anywhere on any platform that can make an exact duplicate of a double-layer DVD onto a single-layer disk, there are programs on some platforms that can compress the data on a double-layer DVD to fit on a single-layer DVD producing a duplicate, but compressed, image. If you need to copy the contents of a double-layer DVD to single-layer medium, you may want to look at the *RMLCopyDVD* package.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/k3b/k3b-1.0.4.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 42538ddae0809707d3bcdbe0a6ed6a43
- Download size: 4.9 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 67.1 MB
- Estimated build time: 4.0 SBU

K3b Dependencies

Required

kdelibs-3.5.9

There are programs from three packages that K3b will look for at runtime: Cdrtools-2.01 (required to burn CD-ROM media), dvd+rw-tools-7.0 (required to burn or format DVD media), and Cdrdao-1.2.2 (required to burn CD-ROM media in DAO (Disk At Once) mode). If you don't need the capability provided by any of the three packages, you don't have to install it. However, a warning message will be generated every time you run the **k3b** program if any are not installed.

Recommended

kdebase-3.5.9, libjpeg-6b, kdemultimedia-3.5.9 (required for a working audio player)

Optional

ALSA-1.0.13, CDParanoia-III-9.8, FFmpeg-svn_20070606, FLAC-1.2.1, HAL-0.5.9.1 and D-Bus Qt3 Bindings-0.62, LAME-3.97, libmad-0.15.1b, libmusicbrainz-2.1.5, libvorbis-1.2.0, libxml2-2.6.31, *libsndfile*, *MoviX*, *Musepack (libmpcdec)*, *normalize*, *resmgr*, *Secret Rabbit Code (libsamplerate)*, *SoX*, *TagLib*, and *VCDImager*

For an explanation how each package is used by K3b, see the Requirements page at *http://k3b.plainblack.com/requirements*.

Runtime Requirements for DVD Ripping and Encoding

Transcode-1.0.3, XviD-1.1.3, libdvdread-0.9.7, and libdvdcss-1.2.9

Installation of K3b

Install K3b by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$(kde-config --prefix) \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/kde \
            --disable-debug \
            --disable-dependency-tracking &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--prefix=$(kde-config --prefix)`: This parameter uses **kde-config** to establish the prefix of the existing KDE installation and then sets the installation prefix for K3b to the same value.

`--disable-debug`: This option causes the package to be compiled without debugging code.

`--disable-dependency-tracking`: This option speeds up one time builds.

Configuring k3b

Configuration Information

You will need to ensure that any user of K3b has permission to read and write to the CD/DVD/audio hardware device files. The easiest way to do this is by creating groups (audio, video, cdrecord, dvdrecord, etc.,) and then add users to the appropriate groups. You'll also have to ensure that the Udev rules are set up appropriately if you are using a system where the device files are created during the system boot-up sequence.

There is a script installed (**k3bsetup**) that is a front-end to the k3bsetup2 KControlModule. This script can be accessed as a pull-down menu from the K3b GUI and requires `root` user privileges (`root` privileges are acquired through the use of the automatically-launched **kdesud** program). Though this utility can be used to set the appropriate permissions for the device files, be forewarned that in a Udev environment, where the device files are created during the system boot-up sequence, any changes made by this utility will not be preserved across system boots.

Contents

Installed Programs:	k3b and k3bsetup
Installed Libraries:	libk3b.so, libk3bdevice.so and numerous modules for the installed dependencies
Installed Directories:	The following subdirectories of `$KDE_PREFIX`/share/: applnk/Settings/System, apps/k3b, doc/HTML/en/k3b

Short Descriptions

k3b	is the graphical CD/DVD program.
k3bsetup	is a script used to launch the k3bsetup2 KControlModule for setting up the CD/DVD hardware and device files in your system.

Part XI. Printing, Scanning and Typesetting

Chapter 39. Printing

This chapter contains spooling printer management systems and ghostscript applications to render PostScript for display on terminals or paper.

CUPS-1.2.12

Introduction to CUPS

The Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) is a print spooler and associated utilities. It is based on the "Internet Printing Protocol" and provides printing services to most PostScript and raster printers.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.easysw.com/pub/cups/1.2.12/cups-1.2.12-source.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.easysw.com/pub/cups/1.2.12/cups-1.2.12-source.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d410658468384b5ba5d04a808f6157fe
- Download size: 3.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 62 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.6 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/cups-1.2.12-security_fixes-2.patch*

CUPS Dependencies

Recommended

libjpeg-6b, libpng-1.2.29, and LibTIFF-3.8.2

Optional

pkg-config-0.22, D-BUS-1.0.2, OpenLDAP-2.3.39, OpenSSL-0.9.8g or GnuTLS-1.6.3, Linux-PAM-0.99.10.0, PHP-5.2.3, Python-2.5.2, JDK-6 Update 5, *OpenSLP*, *libpaper*, *libacl* (requires *libattr*), *HTMLDOC*, and *Valgrind* (optionally used if running the test suites)

Installation of CUPS

Create an `lp` user, as CUPS will create some files owned by this user. (The `lp` user is the default used by CUPS, but may be changed to a different user by passing a parameter to the **configure** script.) Use the following command as the `root` user:

```
useradd -c "Print Service User" -d /dev/null -g lp -s /bin/false -u 9 lp
```

Install CUPS by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../cups-1.2.12-security_fixes-2.patch &&
./configure &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This will run a basic test suite without any load testing. If you wish to run the tests specifying non-default parameters, issue: **make test**. Note that the “torture load testing” test uses more resources than those displayed in the prompt.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

The man files are installed in compressed (`.gz`) format. If desired, use the following commands to uncompress them:

```
gunzip -v /usr/share/man/man{\
1/{cancel,cups{-config,test{dsc,ppd}},\
lp{,options,passwd,q,rm,r,stat}}.1,\
5/{{classes,client,cups-snmp,cupsd,printers,subscriptions,mailto}.conf,\
mime.{convs,types}}.5,\
7/{backend,filter}.7,\
8/{accept,cups{d,addsmb,enable,-{deviced,driverd,lpd,polld}},\
lp{admin,info,move,c}}.8}.gz &&

rm -v /usr/share/man/man8/{reject,cupsdisable}.8.gz &&

ln -v -s accept.8 /usr/share/man/man8/reject.8 &&
ln -v -s cupsenable.8 /usr/share/man/man8/cupsdisable.8
```

Command Explanations

The basic default behavior of the installation is appropriate for LFS systems. CUPS files are placed in `/usr/bin`, `/usr/sbin`, `/var` and `/etc/cups`.

Configuring CUPS

Configuration of CUPS is dependent on the type of printer and can be complex. Generally, PostScript printers are easier. For detailed instructions on configuration and use of CUPS, see *http://www.cups.org/documentation.php*. The Software Administrators Manual and Software Users Manual are particularly useful.

For non-PostScript printers to print with CUPS, you need to install ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 to convert PostScript to raster images and a driver (e.g., from Gutenprint-5.0.1) to convert the resulting raster images to a form that the printer understands. *Foomatic* drivers use Ghostscript to convert PostScript to a printable form directly, but this is considered to be a hack by CUPS developers.

Kernel Configuration

To use your printer you will likely need the appropriate drivers enabled in the kernel — for example, “Parallel printer support” if you have a parallel port printer, or “USB Printer support” for a USB printer.

Boot Script

During the installation, CUPS added startup files in `/etc/rc.d`. These scripts will work in most cases, but will fail if you provide printers to Samba clients. Additionally, they are not consistent with standard LFS style scripts. Replace the installed scripts with the scripts and symlinks included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package:

```
make install-cups
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	accept, cancel, cups-config, cupsaddsmb, cupsd, cupstestppd, disable, enable, lp, lpadmin, lpc, lpinfo, lpmove, lpoptions, lppasswd, lpq, lpr, lprm, lpstat, and reject
Installed Libraries:	libcups.{so,a}, libcupsimage.{so,a}, and various filters and backend drivers
Installed Directories:	/etc/cups, /usr/include/cups, /usr/lib/cups, /usr/share/cups, /usr/share/doc/cups-1.2.12, /var/cache/cups, /var/log/cups, and /var/spool/cups

Short Descriptions

accept instructs the printing system to accept print jobs to the specified destinations.

cancel cancels existing print jobs from the print queues.

cups-config is a CUPS program configuration utility.

cupsaddsmb exports printers to the Samba software for use with Windows clients.

cupsd is the scheduler for the Common Unix Printing System.

cupstestppd tests the conformance of PPD files.

disable stops the named printers or classes.

enable starts the named printers or classes.

lp submits files for printing or alters a pending job.

lpadmin configures printer and class queues provided by CUPS.

lpc provides limited control over printer and class queues provided by CUPS.

lpinfo lists the available devices or drivers known to the CUPS server.

lpmove moves the specified job to a new destination.

lpoptions displays or sets printer options and defaults.

lppasswd adds, changes or deletes passwords in the CUPS digest password file `passwd.md5`.

lpq shows the current print queue status on the named printer.

lpr submits files for printing.

lprm cancels print jobs that have been queued for printing.

lpstat displays status information about the current classes, jobs, and printers.

reject instructs the printing system to reject print jobs to the specified destinations.

LPRng-3.8.28

Introduction to LPRng

The LPRng package contains an enhanced, extended and portable implementation of the Berkeley Line PRinter (LPR) print spooler. This is useful for queuing print jobs.

There may be a more recent release available from the LPRng home page. You can check *http://sourceforge.net/projects/lprng* and probably use the existing BLFS instructions. Note that versions other than the one shown in the download URLs have not been tested in a BLFS environment.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/l/LPRng-3.8.28.tgz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/l/LPRng-3.8.28.tgz*
- Download MD5 sum: 1b3a0abd291b260eab6087ac0e61ed84
- Download size: 10.2 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 71.8 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.42 SBU

LPRng Dependencies

Optional

OpenSSL-0.9.8g, TCP Wrapper-7.6, MIT Kerberos V5-1.6, and *krb4*

Installation of LPRng

Install LPRng by running the following commands:

```
sed -i    's@CLEAR,0@CLEAR,CLEAR,NULL@' src/common/lpq.c &&
sed -i    's@ fd, l@ fd, (char*) l@'    src/common/krb5_auth.c &&
sed -i -e 's@\(fi\|done\) \\@\1; \\@' \
       -e 's/^SHELL/#&/'                Makefile.in &&

./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib/lprng \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --enable-shared &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/lprng-3.8.28 &&
cp -v -R DOCS/* PrintingCookbook \
    /usr/share/doc/lprng-3.8.28
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's@CLEAR ...': This fixes a GCC-4 warning, treated as an error.

sed -i 's@ fd, l ...': This fixes a compilation problem with using versions of GCC-4.

sed -i -e '...' -e '...': This fixes a couple of syntax bugs when using newer versions of **make**.

Configuring LPRng

Config Files

`/etc/printcap` and `/etc/lpd/*`

Configuration Information

There is no generic `printcap` for all printers. A sample printcap is loaded into the `/etc` directory which can be of some help. Information is also available at *http://www.lprng.org*, *http://www.linuxprinting.org* and the documentation installed in `/usr/share/doc/lprng-3.8.28`.

Boot Script

The init script installed by LPRng is not consistent with other BLFS scripts; therefore, install the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/lprng` init script included in the blfs-bootscripts-20080816 package (as the `root` user):

```
make install-lprng
```

Note

You may also want to remove the **lpd** script that was installed in `/etc/rc.d/init.d`.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cancel, checkpc, lp, lpc, lpd, lpq, lpr, lprm, lprng_certs, lprng_index_certs, and lpstat
Installed Library:	liblpr.{so,a}
Installed Directories:	/etc/lpd, /usr/lib/lprng, /usr/share/doc/3.8.28, /var/run/lpd, and /var/spool/lpd

Short Descriptions

cancel	is a symlink to **lprm** used to send cancel requests to an LPRng print service.
checkpc	checks out the printcap database.
lp	is a symlink to **lpr** used to send requests to an LPRng print service.
lpc	is a control program for the **lpd** daemon.
lpd	is the print queueing daemon.
lpq	is a status monitoring program.
lpr	is a print job spooler program.
lprm	is a print job removal program.
lprng_certs	is a program used to manage SSL certificates for the LPRng software.
lprng_index_certs	creates a set of index files in the LPRng signing certificate directory.

lpstat	is a print job status reporting program.
`liblpr.{so,a}`	contains the API functions used by the LPRng programs.

AFPL Ghostscript-8.53

Introduction to Ghostscript

Ghostscript is a versatile processor for PostScript data with the ability to render PostScript to different targets.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/ghostscript/ghostscript-8.53.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: e65e0c40213a616174572faa639e04d6
- Download size: 9.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 104 MB (includes installing libgs.so and both font tarballs)
- Estimated build time: 2.4 SBU (includes building and installing libgs.so)

Additional Downloads

Standard Fonts

- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.imagemagick.org/pub/ImageMagick/delegates/ghostscript-fonts-std-8.11.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 6865682b095f8c4500c54b285ff05ef6
- Download size: 3.7 MB

Other Fonts

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/ghostscript/gnu-gs-fonts-other-6.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 33457d3f37de7ef03d2eea05a9e6aa4f
- Download size: 796 KB

Ghostscript Dependencies

Optional

libjpeg-6b, libpng-1.2.29, GTK+-1.2.10, and X Window System

Conflicts

This version of Ghostscript does not work with CUPS due to missing generic "cups" raster image driver. The necessary support cannot be patched in due to incompatible licenses. Use ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 instead if you have CUPS.

Installation of Ghostscript

Install Ghostscript by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

To install the shared library `libgs.so`, run the following additional command as an unprivileged user:

```
make so
```

And again, as the `root` user:

```
make soinstall &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/include/ps &&
install -v -m644 src/*.h /usr/include/ps &&
ln -v -s ps /usr/include/ghostscript
```

Note

The shared library depends on GTK+-1.2.10. It is only used in external programs like GSview-4.8 and ImageMagick-6.3.5-10.

To finish the installation, unpack all fonts you've downloaded to `/usr/share/ghostscript` and ensure the ownerships of the files are root:root. Substitute *<font-tarball>* appropriately in the command below for the fonts you wish to install:

```
tar -xvf ../<font-tarball> -C /usr/share/ghostscript &&
chown -v -R root:root /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts
```

Command Explanations

install ...: Some packages (ImageMagick is one) need the Ghostscript interface headers in place to link to the shared library. These commands install the headers.

ln -v -s ps /usr/include/ghostscript: Some packages expect to find the interface headers in an alternate location.

Contents

Installed Programs:	bdftops, dumphint, ddvipdf, eps2eps, fixmswrd.pl, font2c, gs, gsbj, gsc, gsdj, gsdj500, gslj, gslp, gsnd, gsx, lprsetup.sh, pdf2dsc, pdf2ps, pdfopt, pf2afm, pfbtopfa, pj-gs.sh, printafm, ps2ascii, ps2epsi, ps2pdf, ps2pdf12, ps2pdf13, ps2pdf14, ps2pdfwr, ps2ps, pv.sh, unix-lpr.sh, and wftopfa
Installed Library:	libgs.so
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/ps and /usr/share/ghostscript

Short Descriptions

gs invokes Ghostscript, an interpreter of Adobe Systems' PostScript(tm) and Portable Document Format (PDF) languages.

AFPL Ghostscript provides many different scripts used to render PostScript/PDF files back and forth. Please refer to the HTML documentation or try **man gs** for information about the capabilities provided by the package.

ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4

Introduction to ESP Ghostscript

ESP Ghostscript is a versatile processor for PostScript data with the ability to render PostScript to different targets. ESP Ghostscript is a customized version of GNU Ghostscript that includes an enhanced configuration script, the CUPS raster driver to support CUPS raster printer drivers, and additional patches and drivers from various Linux distributors.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.funet.fi/pub/mirrors/ftp.easysw.com/pub/ghostscript/8.15.4/espgs-8.15.4-source.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.easysw.com/pub/ghostscript/8.15.4/espgs-8.15.4-source.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: e74e0463e0bfb1cea3db245d8e71828c
- Download size: 8.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 108 MB (includes installing libgs.so and both font tarballs)
- Estimated build time: 2.3 SBU (includes building and installing libgs.so)

Additional Downloads

Required Patch

- *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/espgs-8.15.4-bov_fix-1.patch*

Standard Fonts

- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.imagemagick.org/pub/ImageMagick/delegates/ghostscript-fonts-std-8.11.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 6865682b095f8c4500c54b285ff05ef6
- Download size: 3.7 MB

Other Fonts

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/pub/gnu/ghostscript/gnu-gs-fonts-other-6.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 33457d3f37de7ef03d2eea05a9e6aa4f
- Download size: 796 KB

ESP Ghostscript Dependencies

Optional

CUPS-1.2.12, libjpeg-6b, libpng-1.2.29, X Window System, and GTK+-2.10.13 or GTK+-1.2.10

Installation of ESP Ghostscript

Install ESP Ghostscript by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../espgs-8.15.4-bov_fix-1.patch &&
sed -i "s/bbox.dev$/x11.dev/" Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-threads \
            --without-omni &&
make
```

To build the shared `libgs.so` library you must have GTK+ installed and issue the following command:

```
make so
```

This package does not come with a test suite. However, you may test the operation of the newly built **gs** program by issuing the following command (issue from an X Windows terminal):

```
bin/gs -Ilib -dBATCH examples/tiger.eps
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -d /usr/share/doc/espgs-8.15.4
ln -v -s ../../ghostscript/8.15/doc /usr/share/doc/espgs-8.15.4 &&
for INSTFILE in `ls doc`
do
  if [ ! -f /usr/share/doc/espgs-8.15.4/$INSTFILE ]; then
    install -v -m644 doc/$INSTFILE /usr/share/doc/espgs-8.15.4/
  fi
done
```

If you built the shared library, install it and the associated programs by issuing the following commands as the `root` user:

```
make soinstall &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/include/ps &&
install -v -m644 src/*.h /usr/include/ps &&
ln -v -s ps /usr/include/ghostscript
```

To finish the installation, unpack all fonts you've downloaded to `/usr/share/ghostscript` and ensure the ownerships of the files are `root:root`. Substitute *<font-tarball>* appropriately in the command below for the fonts you wish to install:

```
tar -xvf ../<font-tarball> -C /usr/share/ghostscript &&
chown -v root:root /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/*
```

Command Explanations

sed -i "s/bbox.dev$/x11.dev/" Makefile.in: This command changes the default **gs** output device from the bbox driver to the x11 (screen) driver.

--enable-threads: This parameter enables threaded output.

--without-omni: This switch disables the omni driver support.

`--without-ijs`: This switch disables the IJS driver support.

install -v -m644 src/*.h /usr/include/ps: Some packages (ImageMagick is one) need the Ghostscript interface headers in place to link to the shared library. These commands install the headers.

ln -v -s ps /usr/include/ghostscript: Some packages expect to find the interface headers in an alternate location.

for INSTFILE in `ls doc` ...: This “for” loop installs some documentation files that were not installed during the installation process.

Contents

Installed Programs: bdftops, dvipdf, eps2eps, fixmswrd.pl, font2c, gs, gsbj, gsc, gsdj, gsdj500, gslj, gslp, gsnd, gsx, lprsetup.sh, pdf2dsc, pdf2ps, pdfopt, pf2afm, pfbtopfa, printafm, ps2ascii, ps2epsi, ps2pdf,ps2pdf12, ps2pdf13, ps2pdf14, ps2pdfwr, ps2ps, pv.sh, unix-lpr.sh, and wftopfa
Installed Library: libgs.so
Installed Directories: /usr/include/ps and /usr/share/ghostscript

Short Descriptions

gs invokes Ghostscript, an interpreter of Adobe Systems' PostScript(tm) and Portable Document Format (PDF) languages.

`pstoraster` is a filter used by CUPS to convert PostScript to a generic raster image format that is acceptable as an input to drivers for non-PostScript printers (e.g., from Gutenprint-5.0.1). It is built and installed only if CUPS-1.2.12 is found.

ESP Ghostscript provides many different scripts used to render PostScript/PDF files back and forth. Please refer to the HTML documentation or try **man gs** for information about the capabilities provided by the package.

Gutenprint-5.0.1

Introduction to Gutenprint

The Gutenprint (formerly Gimp-Print) package contains high quality drivers for many brands and models of printers for use with ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4, CUPS-1.2.12, *Foomatic*, LPRng-3.8.28, **lpr** and the GIMP-2.0. See a list of supported printers at *http://gutenprint.sourceforge.net/p_Supported_Printers.php3*.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/gimp-print/gutenprint-5.0.1.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 4ec66d57c1014b503d6bea16b1c31d81
- Download size: 4.8 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 49 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.9 SBU

Gutenprint Dependencies

Optional

CUPS-1.2.12, *Foomatic*, *IJS*, GIMP-2.2.17, GTK+-1.2.10, and GTK+-2.10.13

Optional (to Regenerate Documentation)

ImageMagick-6.3.5-10, teTeX-3.0, Doxygen-1.5.2, and DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Installation of Gutenprint

Install Gutenprint by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's|$(PACKAGE)/doc|doc/$(PACKAGE)-$(VERSION)|' \
       doc{,/developer}/Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue **make check**. This could take a very long time (100+ SBUs).

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/gutenprint-5.0.1/api/gutenprint{,ui2} &&
install -v -m644    doc/gutenprint/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gutenprint-5.0.1/api/gutenprint &&
install -v -m644    doc/gutenprintui2/html/* \
                    /usr/share/doc/gutenprint-5.0.1/api/gutenprintui2
```

Command Explanations

sed -i '...' doc{,/developer}/Makefile.in: This command is used so that the package documentation is installed in the conventional `/usr/share/doc` directory structure instead of `/usr/share/gutenprint/doc`.

`--with-translated-ppds=no`: When this parameter is given, only US English PPD files for CUPS will be built. Useful if the PPD files are not yet translated into your native language and you want to save some space by not installing unneeded translations.

Configuring Gutenprint

Configuration Information

For CUPS to see newly installed PPD files, it has to be restarted (as the `root` user):

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/cups restart
```

This command may take a long time (up to 10 minutes) to complete. Don't panic while CUPS is rescanning the list of PPD files. The long delay will happen only once.

Then point your web browser to *http://localhost:631/* to add a new printer to CUPS.

Contents

Installed Programs:	cups-calibrate, cups-genppd.5.0, cups-genppdconfig.5.0, cups-genppdupdate.5.0, escputil, ijsgutenprint.5.0, and testpattern
Installed Libraries:	libgutenprint.{so,a}, libgutenprintui2.{so,a}, libgutenprintui2.{so,a} and optionally, various CUPS filters and backend drivers
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/gutenprint, /usr/lib/gimp/1.2, /usr/lib/gutenprint, /usr/share/doc/gutenprint-5.0.1 and /usr/share/gutenprint

Short Descriptions

cups-calibrate	calibrates the color output of printers using the Gutenprint, CUPS or ESP Print Pro drivers.
escputil	is a command line utility to perform various maintenance tasks on Epson Stylus inkjet printers.
ijsgutenprint.5.0	is a Ghostscript driver for Gutenprint.

Chapter 40. Scanning

This chapter contains scanning applications which allow you to convert printed documents into formatted documents readable by other applications.

SANE-1.0.18

Introduction to SANE

SANE is short for Scanner Access Now Easy. Scanner access, however, is far from easy, since every vendor has their own protocols. The only known protocol that should bring some unity into this chaos is the TWAIN interface, but this is too imprecise to allow a stable scanning framework. Therefore, SANE comes with its own protocol, and the vendor drivers can't be used.

SANE is split into back ends and front ends. The back ends are drivers for the supported scanners and cameras. The front ends are user interfaces to access the backends.

Back Ends Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://alioth.debian.org/download.php/1347/sane-backends-1.0.18.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp2.sane-project.org/pub/sane/old-versions/sane-backends-1.0.18/sane-backends-1.0.18.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 7ca7e2908e24721471de92cf40c75e60
- Download size: 3.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 67 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.4 SBU

Front Ends Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://alioth.debian.org/download.php/1140/sane-frontends-1.0.14.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp2.sane-project.org/pub/sane/sane-frontends-1.0.14/sane-frontends-1.0.14.tar.gz*
- Downlaod MD5 sum: c63bf7b0bb5f530cf3c08715db721cd3
- Download size: 231 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3.0 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

SANE Dependencies

Optional (Back Ends)

libjpeg-6b, LibTIFF-3.8.2, libusb-0.1.12, *libieee1284*, *libgphoto2*, and teTeX-3.0

Optional (Front Ends)

X Window System, GTK+-2.10.13, and GIMP-2.2.17

Kernel Configuration

To access your scanner, you will probably need the related kernel drivers and/or additional support packages. A SCSI scanner will need SCSI drivers, a parallel port scanner needs parallel port support (you should use enhanced EPP modes) and perhaps *libieee1284* and a USB scanner will need the libusb-0.1.12 package. Ensure you have the necessary drivers properly configured to access the devices.

Installation of SANE

Installation of SANE Back Ends

Install SANE-backends by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Installation of SANE Front Ends

The SANE-frontends package includes the graphical frontends **xscanimage** and **xcam**, and a command-line frontend **scanadf**. You don't need this package if you intend to use one of the more advanced graphical frontends like XSane-0.994. For a list of frontend packages, see *http://www.sane-project.org/sane-frontends.html*.

To install SANE-frontends, use the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m644 doc/sane.png xscanimage-icon-48x48-2.png \
    /usr/share/sane
```

If GIMP was linked into the build and you wish GIMP to use **xscanimage** as a scanning plugin, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
ln -v -s ../../../../bin/xscanimage /usr/lib/gimp/2.0/plug-ins
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc`: This switch installs the configuration files in `/etc/sane.d` instead of `/usr/etc/sane.d`.

Configuring SANE

Config Files

`/etc/sane.d/*.conf`

Configuration Information

Backend Configuration

The backend configuration files are located in `/etc/sane.d`. Information for configuring the various backends can be found by using the man(5) page for the desired backend. Run **man sane-*<backend>***, substituting the desired backend.

General Information

For general information about configuring and using SANE, see **man sane**. Linux-2.6.x brings some special issues into the picture. See *http://www.sane-project.org/README.linux* for information about using SANE with the Linux-2.6.x kernel. For information about USB scanning devices, run **man sane-usb**. For information about SCSI devices, run **man sane-scsi**.

Configuration and setup of the 'saned' daemon

The **saned** daemon is not meant to be used for untrusted clients. You should provide TCP Wrapper-7.6 and/or Firewalling protection to ensure only trusted clients access the daemon. Due to the complex security requirements to ensure only trusted clients access the daemon, BLFS does not provide instructions to configure the **saned** daemon. If you desire to make the daemon available, ensure you provide adequate security, configure your `[x]inetd.conf` file and send a **`SIGHUP`** to the [x]inetd daemon. Some good information for setting up and securing the **saned** daemon can be found at *http://penguin-breeder.org/sane/saned/*.

Contents

Back Ends:

Installed Programs:	gamma4scanimage, sane-config, saned, sane-find-scanner, and scanimage
Installed Libraries:	libsane.so and numerous scanner backend modules
Installed Directories:	/etc/sane.d, /usr/include/sane, /usr/lib/sane, /usr/share/sane, and /usr/share/doc/sane-1.0.18

Front Ends:

Installed Programs:	scanadf, xcam, and xscanimage
Installed Library:	GIMP plugin embedded in **xscanimage**
Installed Directories:	None

Short Descriptions

gamma4scanimage	creates a gamma table in the format expected by **scanimage**.
sane-config	is a tool used to determine the compiler and linker flags that should be used to compile and link SANE.
saned	is the SANE daemon that allows remote clients to access image acquisition devices available on the local host.
sane-find-scanner	is a command-line tool to find SCSI and USB scanners and determine their device files. Its primary purpose is to make sure that scanners can be detected by SANE backends.
scanadf	is a command-line interface to control image acquisition devices which are equipped with an automatic document feeder (ADF).
scanimage	is a command line interface for scanning from image acquisition devices such as flatbed scanners or cameras. It is also used to list the available backend devices.
xcam	is a graphical camera front end for SANE.
xscanimage	is a graphical user interface for scanning.
`libsane.so`	is the application programming interface that is used to communicate between frontends and backends.

`libsane-*.so` modules are backend scanning library plugins used to interface with scanning devices. See *http://www.sane-project.org/sane-supported-devices.html* for a list of supported backends.

XSane-0.994

Introduction to XSane

XSane is another front end for SANE-1.0.18. It has additional features to improve the image quality and ease of use compared to **xscanimage**.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/hci/sane/xsane/xsane-0.994.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp2.sane-project.org/pub/sane/xsane/xsane-0.994.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 7d02656026797a46a84bda63006f5668
- Download size: 3.3 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 23 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.2 SBU

XSane Dependencies

Required

GTK+-2.10.13 or GTK+-1.2.10 and SANE-1.0.18 (back ends)

Optional

LibTIFF-3.8.2, libjpeg-6b, little cms-1.16, and GIMP-2.2.17

Installation of XSane

Install XSane by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make xsanedocdir=/usr/share/doc/xsane-0.994 install &&
ln -v -s ../../doc/xsane-0.994 \
         /usr/share/sane/xsane/doc
```

If GIMP is installed, issue the following command as the `root` user:

```
ln -v -s /usr/bin/xsane /usr/lib/gimp/2.0/plug-ins/
```

Command Explanations

ln -v -s ../../doc/xsane-0.994 /usr/share/sane/xsane/doc: This symlink is created to ensure that any program that looks for the XSane documentation in the default location will find it, as the documentation is installed in an alternate location specified in the **make install** command.

ln -v -s /usr/bin/xsane /usr/lib/gimp/2.0/plug-ins/: This creates a link in the system-wide GIMP `plug-ins` directory so that users can access XSane directly from GIMP. GIMP must be available before building XSane for this to work. Alternatively, create the link in `~/.gimp-2.0/plug-ins/` to provide individual user access. **man xsane** for additional information.

Contents

Installed Program: xsane
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/xsane-0.994 and /usr/share/sane/xsane

Short Descriptions

xsane is a graphical user-interface to control an image acquisition device such as a flatbed scanner.

Chapter 41. Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML)

This chapter contains DocBook SGML document type definitions (DTDs), DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets and DocBook tools to validate, transform, format and publish DocBook documents.

SGML Common-0.6.3

Introduction to SGML Common

The SGML Common package contains **install-catalog**. This is useful for creating and maintaining centralized SGML catalogs.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/hci/kde/devel/docbook/SOURCES/sgml-common-0.6.3.tgz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://sources.redhat.com/pub/docbook-tools/new-trials/SOURCES/sgml-common-0.6.3.tgz*
- Download MD5 sum: 103c9828f24820df86e55e7862e28974
- Download size: 75 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/sgml-common-0.6.3-manpage-1.patch*

Installation of SGML Common

Instead of the normal convention of including the autotools files in the package, the maintainers included symlinks to the files in `/usr/share/automake`. For previous versions of Automake this convention is correct, but recent versions of Automake install the internal files in version specific directories. This causes the **configure** script to abort. To fix this error, the autotools are regenerated. Since the included `Makefile.am` file uses a syntax not supported by current versions of Automake, a patch is required to fix the syntax.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../sgml-common-0.6.3-manpage-1.patch &&
autoreconf -f -i
```

Install SGML Common by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-ent.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/sgml-iso-entities-8879.1986/catalog &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook.cat \
    /etc/sgml/sgml-ent.cat
```

Update Hint

Remove the above catalog items prior to upgrading (as the `root` user) with:

```
install-catalog --remove /etc/sgml/sgml-ent.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/sgml-iso-entities-8879.1986/catalog &&
install-catalog --remove /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook.cat \
    /etc/sgml/sgml-ent.cat
```

Configuring SGML Common

Config Files

`/etc/sgml/sgml.conf`

Configuration Information

No change in this file is necessary.

Contents

Installed Programs:	install-catalog and sgmlwhich
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Files:	SGML and XML DocBook entity files
Installed Directories:	/etc/sgml, /usr/share/doc/sgml-common-0.6.3, and /usr/share/sgml

Short Descriptions

install-catalog	creates a centralized catalog that maintains references to catalogs scattered throughout the `/usr/share/sgml` directory tree.
sgmlwhich	will print to standard output the name of the main configuration file.
`SGML entities files`	contain the basic character entities defined with SDATA entries.
`XML entities files`	contain the basic character entities defined by a hexadecimal representation of the Unicode character number.

DocBook SGML DTD-3.1

Introduction to DocBook SGML DTD

The DocBook SGML DTD package contains document type definitions for verification of SGML data files against the DocBook rule set. These are useful for structuring books and software documentation to a standard allowing you to utilize transformations already written for that standard.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.docbook.org/sgml/3.1/docbk31.zip*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.kde.org/pub/kde/devel/docbook/SOURCES/docbk31.zip*
- Download MD5 sum: 432749c0c806dbae81c8bcb70da3b5d3
- Download size: 55 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 676 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.01 SBU

DocBook SGML DTD Dependencies

Required

SGML Common-0.6.3 and UnZip-5.52

Installation of DocBook SGML DTD

Note

The package source is distributed in `zip` format and requires **unzip**. You should create a directory and change to that directory before unzipping the file to ease the removal of the source files after the package has been installed.

Install DocBook SGML DTD by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e '/ISO 8879/d' \
    -e 's|DTDDECL "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook V3.1//EN"|SGMLDECL|g' \
    docbook.cat
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-3.1 &&
chown -R root:root . &&
install -v docbook.cat /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-3.1/catalog &&
cp -v -af *.dtd *.mod *.dcl /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-3.1 &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook-dtd-3.1.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-3.1/catalog &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook-dtd-3.1.cat \
    /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook.cat
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e '/ISO 8879/d' docbook.cat: This command removes the ENT definitions from the catalog file.

sed -i -e 's|DTDDECL "-//OASIS//DTD Docbook V3.1//EN"|SGMLDECL|g' docbook.cat: This command replaces the DTDDECL catalog entry, which is not supported by Linux SGML tools, with the SGMLDECL catalog entry.

Configuring DocBook SGML DTD

Config Files

`/etc/sgml/catalog`

Configuration Information

The above installation script updates the catalog.

Using only the most current 3.x version of DocBook SGML DTD requires the following (perform as the `root` user):

```
cat >> /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-3.1/catalog << "EOF"
  -- Begin Single Major Version catalog changes --

PUBLIC "-//Davenport//DTD DocBook V3.0//EN" "docbook.dtd"

  -- End Single Major Version catalog changes --
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Files:	SGML DTD and MOD files
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-3.1

Short Descriptions

`SGML DTD files`	contain a document type definition which defines the element types and the attribute lists that can be used in the corresponding SGML files.
`SGML MOD files`	contain components of the document type definition that are sourced into the `DTD` files.

DocBook SGML DTD-4.5

Introduction to DocBook SGML DTD

The DocBook SGML DTD package contains document type definitions for verification of SGML data files against the DocBook rule set. These are useful for structuring books and software documentation to a standard allowing you to utilize transformations already written for that standard.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.docbook.org/sgml/4.5/docbook-4.5.zip*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 07c581f4bbcba6d3aac85360a19f95f7
- Download size: 70 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 784 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.01 SBU

DocBook SGML DTD Dependencies

Required

SGML Common-0.6.3 and UnZip-5.52

Installation of DocBook SGML DTD

Note

The package source is distributed in `zip` format and requires **unzip**. You should create a directory and change to that directory before unzipping the file to ease the removal of the source files after the package has been installed.

Install DocBook SGML DTD by running the following commands:

```
sed -i -e '/ISO 8879/d' \
    -e '/gml/d' docbook.cat
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-4.5 &&
chown -R root:root . &&
install -v docbook.cat /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-4.5/catalog &&
cp -v -af *.dtd *.mod *.dcl /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-4.5 &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook-dtd-4.5.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-4.5/catalog &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook-dtd-4.5.cat \
    /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook.cat
```

Command Explanations

sed -i -e '/ISO 8879/d' -e '/gml/d' docbook.cat: This command removes the ENT definitions from the catalog file.

Configuring DocBook SGML DTD

Config Files

`/etc/sgml/catalog`

Configuration Information

The above installation script updates the catalog.

Using only the most current 4.x version of DocBook SGML DTD requires the following (perform as the `root` user):

```
cat >> /usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-4.5/catalog << "EOF"
  -- Begin Single Major Version catalog changes --

PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook V4.4//EN" "docbook.dtd"
PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook V4.3//EN" "docbook.dtd"
PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook V4.2//EN" "docbook.dtd"
PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook V4.1//EN" "docbook.dtd"
PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook V4.0//EN" "docbook.dtd"

  -- End Single Major Version catalog changes --
EOF
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Files:	SGML DTD and MOD files
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/sgml/docbook/sgml-dtd-4.5

Short Descriptions

`SGML DTD files`	contain a document type definition which defines the element types and the attribute lists that can be used in the corresponding SGML files.
`SGML MOD files`	contain components of the document type definition that are sourced into the `DTD` files.

OpenSP-1.5.2

Introduction to OpenSP

The OpenSP package contains a C++ library for using SGML/XML files. This is useful for validating, parsing and manipulating SGML and XML documents.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/openjade/OpenSP-1.5.2.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 670b223c5d12cee40c9137be86b6c39b
- Download size: 1.5 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 32 MB
- Estimated build time: 1.0 SBU

OpenSP Dependencies

Required

SGML Common-0.6.3

Optional

xmlto

Installation of OpenSP

Install OpenSP by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's:32,:253,:' lib/Syntax.cxx &&
sed -i 's:LITLEN          240 :LITLEN          8092:' \
    unicode/{gensyntax.pl,unicode.syn} &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-static --disable-doc-build \
    --enable-default-catalog=/etc/sgml/catalog --enable-http \
    --enable-default-search-path=/usr/share/sgml &&
make pkgdatadir=/usr/share/sgml/OpenSP-1.5.2
```

To test the results, issue **make check**. As many as eight of the 22 tests may fail. Do not be alarmed.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make pkgdatadir=/usr/share/sgml/OpenSP-1.5.2 install &&
ln -v -sf onsgmls /usr/bin/nsgmls &&
ln -v -sf osgmlnorm /usr/bin/sgmlnorm &&
ln -v -sf ospam /usr/bin/spam &&
ln -v -sf ospcat /usr/bin/spcat &&
ln -v -sf ospent /usr/bin/spent &&
ln -v -sf osx /usr/bin/sx &&
ln -v -sf osx /usr/bin/sgml2xml &&
ln -v -sf libosp.so /usr/lib/libsp.so
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's:32,:253,:...unicode.syn}: These seds prevent some annoying messages that may otherwise appear while running **openjade**.

--disable-static: This switch prevents the building of the static library.

--enable-http: This switch adds support for HTTP.

--enable-default-catalog=/etc/sgml/catalog: This switch sets the path to the centralized catalog.

--enable-default-search-path: This switch sets the default value of `SGML_SEARCH_PATH`.

`--enable-xml-messages`: This switch adds support for XML Formatted Messages.

`--disable-doc-build`: This switch prevents the **configure** script checking if you have xmlto installed. If you have xmlto, you can remove this option.

make pkgdatadir=/usr/share/sgml/OpenSP-1.5.2: This sets the pkgdatadir variable in the `Makefile` from `/usr/share/OpenSP` to `/usr/share/sgml/OpenSP-1.5.2`.

ln -v -sf ...: These commands create the SP equivalents of OpenSP executables and libraries.

Contents

Installed Programs:	onsgmls, osgmlnorm, ospam, ospcat, ospent, osx, and the SP equivalent symlinks: nsgmls, sgml2xml, sgmlnorm, spam, spcat, spent, and sx
Installed Library:	libosp.so and the SP equivalent symlink: libsp.so
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/OpenSP, /usr/share/doc/OpenSP, and /usr/share/sgml/OpenSP-1.5.2

Short Descriptions

onsgmls	is used to process SGML files.
osgmlnorm	prints on the standard output a normalized document instance for the SGML document contained in the concatenation of the entities with system identifiers .nf and .fi.
ospam	is a markup stream editor.
ospcat	prints effective system identifiers found in the catalogs.
ospent	provides access to OpenSP's entity manager.
osx	is an SGML normalizer or used to convert SGML files to XML files.
nsgmls	is a symlink to **onsgmls**.
sgml2xml	is a symlink to **osx**.
sgmlnorm	is a symlink to **osgmlnorm**.
spam	is a symlink to **ospam**.
spcat	is a symlink to **ospcat**.
spent	is a symlink to **ospent**.
sx	is a symlink to **osx**.
`libosp.so`	contains functions required by the OpenSP programs to parse, validate and manipulate SGML and XML files.

`libsp.so` is a symlink to `libosp.so`.

OpenJade-1.3.2

Introduction to OpenJade

The OpenJade package contains a DSSSL engine. This is useful for SGML and XML transformations into RTF, TeX, SGML and XML.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/openjade/openjade-1.3.2.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.freestandards.org/pub/lsb/app-battery/packages/openjade-1.3.2.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 7df692e3186109cc00db6825b777201e
- Download size: 880 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 19.2 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.7 SBU

OpenJade Dependencies

Required

OpenSP-1.5.2

Installation of OpenJade

Install OpenJade by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-http --disable-static \
    --enable-default-catalog=/etc/sgml/catalog \
    --enable-default-search-path=/usr/share/sgml \
    --datadir=/usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2 &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
make install-man &&
ln -v -sf openjade /usr/bin/jade &&
ln -v -sf libogrove.so /usr/lib/libgrove.so &&
ln -v -sf libospgrove.so /usr/lib/libspgrove.so &&
ln -v -sf libostyle.so /usr/lib/libstyle.so &&
install -v -m644 dsssl/catalog /usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2/ &&
install -v -m644 dsssl/*.{dtd,dsl,sgm} \
    /usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2 &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/openjade-1.3.2.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2/catalog &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook.cat \
    /etc/sgml/openjade-1.3.2.cat
```

Command Explanations

make install-man: This command installs the **openjade** man page.

`--disable-static`: This switch prevents the building of the static library.

`--enable-http`: This switch adds support for HTTP.

`--enable-default-catalog=/etc/sgml/catalog`: This switch sets the path to the centralized catalog.

`--enable-default-search-path`: This switch sets the default value of `SGML_SEARCH_PATH`.

`--datadir=/usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2`: This switch puts data files in `/usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2` instead of `/usr/share`.

ln -v -sf ...: These commands create the Jade equivalents of OpenJade executables and libraries.

Configuring OpenJade

Configuration Information

```
echo "SYSTEM \"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.5/docbookx.dtd\" \
    \"/usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/docbookx.dtd\"" >> \
    /usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2/catalog
```

This configuration is only necessary if you intend to use OpenJade to process the BLFS XML files through DSSSL Stylesheets.

Contents

Installed Programs:	openjade and the Jade equivalent symlink, jade
Installed Libraries:	libogrove.so, libospgrove.so, libostyle.so, and the Jade equivalent symlinks: libgrove.so, libspgrove.so, and libstyle.so
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/sgml/openjade-1.3.2

Short Descriptions

openjade	is a DSSSL engine used for transformations.
jade	is a symlink to **openjade**.

DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets-1.79

Introduction to DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets

The DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets package contains DSSSL stylesheets. These are used by OpenJade or other tools to transform SGML and XML DocBook files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/docbook/docbook-dsssl-1.79.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/docbook-dsssl-1.79.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: bc192d23266b9a664ca0aba4a7794c7c
- Download size: 277 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 14 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Documentation and test data: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/docbook/docbook-dsssl-doc-1.79.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: 9a7b809a21ab7d2749bb328334c380f2
- Download size: 142 KB

DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets Dependencies

Required

SGML Common-0.6.3

Required (to Test the DocBook SGML Toolchain)

DocBook SGML DTD-3.1, DocBook SGML DTD-4.5, OpenSP-1.5.2 and OpenJade-1.3.2

Installation of DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets

Ensure you unpack both the source and documentation tarballs before beginning the build.

Install DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 bin/collateindex.pl /usr/bin &&
install -v -m644 bin/collateindex.pl.1 /usr/share/man/man1 &&
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79 &&
cp -v -R * /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79 &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/dsssl-docbook-stylesheets.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79/catalog &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/dsssl-docbook-stylesheets.cat \
    /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79/common/catalog &&
install-catalog --add /etc/sgml/sgml-docbook.cat \
    /etc/sgml/dsssl-docbook-stylesheets.cat
```

Command Explanations

The above commands create an installation script for this package.

Testing the DocBook SGML Toolchain (Optional)

The following commands will perform the necessary tests to confirm that your installed DocBook SGML toolchain will produce desired results. You must have the DocBook SGML DTD-3.1, DocBook SGML DTD-4.5, OpenSP-1.5.2 and OpenJade-1.3.2 packages installed and perform the tests as the `root` user.

All tests will be performed from the `/usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79/doc/testdata` directory:

```
cd /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79/doc/testdata
```

The first test should produce no output to stdout (your screen) and create a file named `jtest.rtf` in the current directory:

```
openjade -t rtf -d jtest.dsl jtest.sgm
```

The next test should return only the following line to stdout: `onsgmls:I: "OpenSP" version "1.5.2"`

```
onsgmls -sv test.sgm
```

The next test should produce no output to stdout and create a file named `test.rtf` in the current directory:

```
openjade -t rtf \
    -d /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79/print/docbook.dsl \
    test.sgm
```

The last test should produce no output to stdout and create a file named `c1.htm` in the current directory:

```
openjade -t sgml \
    -d /usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79/html/docbook.dsl \
    test.sgm
```

Contents

Installed Program:	collateindex.pl
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Files:	DSSSL stylesheets
Installed Directory:	/usr/share/sgml/docbook/dsssl-stylesheets-1.79

Short Descriptions

collateindex.pl	is a Perl script that creates a DocBook index from raw index data.

DocBook-utils-0.6.14

Introduction to DocBook-utils

The DocBook-utils package is a collection of utility scripts used to convert and analyze SGML documents in general, and DocBook files in particular. The scripts are used to convert from DocBook or other SGML formats into “classical” file formats like HTML, man, info, RTF and many more. There's also a utility to compare two SGML files and only display the differences in markup. This is useful for comparing documents prepared for different languages.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://sources-redhat.mirrors.redwire.net/docbook-tools/new-trials/SOURCES/docbook-utils-0.6.14.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://sources.redhat.com/pub/docbook-tools/new-trials/SOURCES/docbook-utils-0.6.14.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 6b41b18c365c01f225bc417cf632d81c
- Download size: 124 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.44 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

DocBook-utils Dependencies

Required

OpenJade-1.3.2, DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets-1.79 and DocBook SGML DTD-3.1

Optional (Runtime Dependencies Only)

JadeTeX-3.13 (for conversion to DVI, PS and PDF), SGMLSpm-1.03ii (for conversion to man and texinfo), and Lynx-2.8.6rel.5 or Links-2.1pre33 or w3m (for conversion to ASCII text)

Installation of DocBook-utils

Install DocBook-utils by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's:/html::' doc/HTML/Makefile.in &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Many packages use an alternate name for the DocBook-utils scripts. If you wish to create these alternate names, use the following command:

```
for doctype in html ps dvi man pdf rtf tex texi txt
do
    ln -s docbook2$doctype /usr/bin/db2$doctype
done
```

Note

The **jw** script uses the **which** command to locate required utilities. You must install which-2.19 before attempting to use any of the DocBook-utils programs.

Command Explanations

sed -i 's:/html::' doc/HTML/Makefile.in: This command changes the installation directory of the HTML documents.

Contents

Installed Programs:	docbook2dvi, docbook2html, docbook2man, docbook2pdf, docbook2ps, docbook2rtf, docbook2tex, docbook2texi, docbook2txt, jw, and sgmldiff
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/doc/docbook-utils-0.6.14 and /usr/share/sgml/docbook/utils-0.6.14
Installed Symlinks:	db2dvi, db2html, db2man, db2pdf, db2ps, db2rtf, db2tex, db2texi, and db2txt

Short Descriptions

docbook2*	are simple one-line wrapper scripts to **jw**. They are provided as easy-to-remember names used to convert DocBook or other SGML files to the respective format.
db2*	are symlinks pointing at the respectively named **docbook2*** commands, created to satisfy some program's use of these names.
jw	is a script used to convert DocBook or other SGML files to various output formats. It hides most of OpenJade's complexity and adds comfortable features.
sgmldiff	is used to compare two SGML files and only return the differences in the markup. This is especially useful to compare files that should be identical except for language differences in the content.

Chapter 42. Extensible Markup Language (XML)

This chapter contains the DocBook XML document type definition (DTD) and DocBook Stylesheets which are used to validate, transform, format and publish DocBook documents.

DocBook XML DTD-4.5

Introduction to DocBook XML DTD

The DocBook XML DTD-4.5 package contains document type definitions for verification of XML data files against the DocBook rule set. These are useful for structuring books and software documentation to a standard allowing you to utilize transformations already written for that standard.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://www.docbook.org/xml/4.5/docbook-xml-4.5.zip*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/docbook-xml-4.5.zip*
- Download MD5 sum: 03083e288e87a7e829e437358da7ef9e
- Download size: 96 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 1.2 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

DocBook XML DTD Dependencies

Required

libxml2-2.6.31 and UnZip-5.52

Installation of DocBook XML DTD

Note

The package source is distributed in `zip` format and requires **unzip**. You should create a directory and change to that directory before unzipping the file to ease the removal of the source files after the package has been installed.

Install DocBook XML DTD by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5 &&
install -v -d -m755 /etc/xml &&
chown -R root:root . &&
cp -v -af docbook.cat *.dtd ent/ *.mod \
    /usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5
```

Create (or update) and populate the `/etc/xml/docbook` catalog file by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
if [ ! -e /etc/xml/docbook ]; then
    xmlcatalog --noout --create /etc/xml/docbook
fi &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.5//EN" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.5/docbookx.dtd" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML CALS Table Model V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/calstblx.dtd" \
```

```
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//DTD XML Exchange Table Model 19990315//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/soextblx.dtd" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//ELEMENTS DocBook XML Information Pool V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/dbpoolx.mod" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//ELEMENTS DocBook XML Document Hierarchy V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/dbhierx.mod" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//ELEMENTS DocBook XML HTML Tables V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/htmltblx.mod" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook XML Notations V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/dbnotnx.mod" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook XML Character Entities V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/dbcentx.mod" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook XML Additional General Entities V4.5//EN" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5/dbgenent.mod" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteSystem" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.5" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5" \
    /etc/xml/docbook &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteURI" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.5" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5" \
    /etc/xml/docbook
```

Create (or update) and populate the `/etc/xml/catalog` catalog file by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
if [ ! -e /etc/xml/catalog ]; then
    xmlcatalog --noout --create /etc/xml/catalog
fi &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "delegatePublic" \
    "-//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook XML" \
    "file:///etc/xml/docbook" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "delegatePublic" \
    "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML" \
    "file:///etc/xml/docbook" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "delegateSystem" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/" \
    "file:///etc/xml/docbook" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&
xmlcatalog --noout --add "delegateURI" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/" \
    "file:///etc/xml/docbook" \
    /etc/xml/catalog
```

Configuring DocBook XML DTD

Config Files

`/etc/xml/catalog`, `/etc/xml/docbook`

Configuration Information

The above installation creates the files and updates the catalogs. In order to install ScrollKeeper or to utilize DocBook XML DTD V4.5 when any version 4.x is requested in the System Identifier, you need to add additional statements to the catalog files. If you have any of the DocBook XML DTD's referenced below already installed on your system, remove those entries from the **for** command below (issue the commands as the `root` user):

```
for DTDVERSION in 4.1.2 4.2 4.3 4.4
do
  xmlcatalog --noout --add "public" \
    "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V$DTDVERSION//EN" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/$DTDVERSION/docbookx.dtd" \
    /etc/xml/docbook
  xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteSystem" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/$DTDVERSION" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5" \
    /etc/xml/docbook
  xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteURI" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/$DTDVERSION" \
    "file:///usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5" \
    /etc/xml/docbook
  xmlcatalog --noout --add "delegateSystem" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/$DTDVERSION/" \
    "file:///etc/xml/docbook" \
    /etc/xml/catalog
  xmlcatalog --noout --add "delegateURI" \
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/$DTDVERSION/" \
    "file:///etc/xml/docbook" \
    /etc/xml/catalog
done
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	None
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Files:	DTD, MOD and ENT files
Installed Directories:	/etc/xml and /usr/share/xml/docbook/xml-dtd-4.5

Short Descriptions

`DTD files`	contain a document type definition which defines the element types and the attribute lists that can be used in the corresponding `XML` files.
`MOD files`	files contain components of the document type definition that are sourced into the `DTD` files.
`ENT files`	files contain lists of named character entities allowed in HTML.

DocBook XSL Stylesheets-1.71.1

Introduction to DocBook XSL Stylesheets

The DocBook XSL Stylesheets package contains XSL stylesheets. These are useful for performing transformations on XML DocBook files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/docbook/docbook-xsl-1.71.1.tar.bz2*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 6a269abc854ae949b2cfd6377bc17fde
- Download size: 1.4 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 40 MB (includes installing optional documentation)
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Optional documentation: *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/docbook/docbook-xsl-doc-1.71.1.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: f7844a751a4612c56acddc0790fbc501
- Download size: 1.3 MB

DocBook XSL Stylesheets Dependencies

Required

libxml2-2.6.31

Installation of DocBook XSL Stylesheets

If you downloaded the optional documentation tarball, unpack it when you unpack the source tarball. The documentation tarball unpacks into a `doc` subdirectory of the source tree.

BLFS does not install the required packages to run the test suite and provide meaningful results.

Install DocBook XSL Stylesheets by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1 &&

cp -v -R VERSION common eclipse extensions fo highlighting html \
         htmlhelp images javahelp lib manpages params profiling \
         slides template tools website wordml xhtml             \
    /usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1 &&

install -v -m644 -D README \
                    /usr/share/doc/docbook-xsl-1.71.1/README.XSL &&
install -v -m755    RELEASE-NOTES* NEWS* \
                    /usr/share/doc/docbook-xsl-1.71.1
```

If you downloaded the optional documentation tarball, install the documentation by issuing the following command as the `root` user:

```
cp -v -R doc/* /usr/share/doc/docbook-xsl-1.71.1
```

Configuring DocBook XSL Stylesheets

Config Files

`/etc/xml/catalog`

Configuration Information

Create (or append) and populate the XML catalog file using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
if [ ! -d /etc/xml ]; then install -v -m755 -d /etc/xml; fi &&
if [ ! -f /etc/xml/catalog ]; then
    xmlcatalog --noout --create /etc/xml/catalog
fi &&

xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteSystem" \
           "http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/1.71.1" \
           "/usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&

xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteURI" \
           "http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/1.71.1" \
           "/usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&

xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteSystem" \
           "http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current" \
           "/usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&

xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteURI" \
           "http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current" \
           "/usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1" \
    /etc/xml/catalog
```

Occasionally, you may find the need to install other versions of the XSL stylesheets as some projects reference a specific version. One example is BLFS-6.0, which required the 1.67.2 version. In these instances you should install any other required version in its own versioned directory and create catalog entries as follows (substitute the desired version number for <*version*>):

```
xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteSystem" \
           "http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/<version>" \
           "/usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-<version>" \
    /etc/xml/catalog &&

xmlcatalog --noout --add "rewriteURI" \
           "http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/<version>" \
           "/usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-<version>" \
    /etc/xml/catalog
```

Contents

Installed Programs: None
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Files: XSL style sheets for HTML and FO
Installed Directories: /usr/share/xml/docbook/xsl-stylesheets-1.71.1 and /usr/share/doc/docbook-xsl-1.71.1

Chapter 43. PostScript

This chapter includes applications that create, manipulate or view PostScript files and create or view Portable Document Format PDF files.

a2ps-4.14

Introduction to a2ps

a2ps is a filter utilized mainly in the background and primarily by printing scripts to convert almost every input format into PostScript output. The application's name expands appropriately to “all to PostScript”.

Caution

a2ps cannot convert UTF-8 encoded text to PostScript. The issue is discussed in detail in the Needed Encoding Not a Valid Option section of the Locale Related Issues page. The solution is to use paps-0.6.8 instead of a2ps for converting UTF-8 encoded text to PostScript.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/a2ps/a2ps-4.14.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/a2ps/a2ps-4.14.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 781ac3d9b213fa3e1ed0d79f986dc8c7
- Download size: 2.6 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 22 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.3 SBU

Additional Downloads

- International fonts: *ftp://ftp.enst.fr/pub/unix/a2ps/i18n-fonts-0.1.tar.gz*

a2ps Dependencies

Recommended

PSUtils-p17, and CUPS-1.2.12 or LPRng-3.8.28 (otherwise, a2ps will use the **cat >/dev/lp0** command instead of **lpr** for sending its output to the printer)

Optional

X Window System, teTeX-3.0, AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4, *libpaper*, *Adobe Reader*, and *Ghostview*

Installation of a2ps

Install a2ps by running the following commands:

```
sed -i 's/+0 -1/-k 1,2/' afm/make_fonts_map.sh &&
sed -i "s|/usr/local/share|/usr/share|" configure &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
    --sysconfdir=/etc/a2ps \
    --enable-shared \
    --with-medium=letter &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. The `printers.tst` test will fail, as there is no default test printer. The `styles.tst` may also fail, as the tests report some inconsistencies between the generated postscript and the reference sets. This is caused by version number differences between the postscript test files and those generated by the tests — these do not affect the operation of the program and can be ignored.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the downloaded i18n-fonts by running the following commands as the `root` user:

```
tar -xf ../i18n-fonts-0.1.tar.gz &&
cp -v i18n-fonts-0.1/fonts/* /usr/share/a2ps/fonts &&
cp -v i18n-fonts-0.1/afm/* /usr/share/a2ps/afm &&
cd /usr/share/a2ps/afm &&
./make_fonts_map.sh &&
mv fonts.map.new fonts.map
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's/+0 -1/-k 1,2/' afm/make_fonts_map.sh: The `make_fonts_map.sh` script uses an option that is invalid with the version of **sort** installed as part of Coreutils-6.9. If you are using an older version of Coreutils, skip this step.

sed -i -e "s|/usr/local/share|/usr/share|" configure: This command modifies the **configure** script to search for Ghostscript fonts at the location where they were installed by the BLFS instructions.

`--sysconfdir=/etc/a2ps`: Configuration data is installed in `/etc/a2ps` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--enable-shared`: This switch enables building the dynamic `liba2ps` library.

`--with-medium=letter`: This switch changes the default paper format to US letter. It can either be given here or set in `/etc/a2ps/a2ps-site.cfg` after installation. The default is A4, but there are several other options, in particular: A4dj or letterdj are good settings for HP Deskjet and other printers that need wider paper-handling margins. See `/etc/a2ps/a2ps.cfg` after installation.

Configuring a2ps

Config Files

`/etc/a2ps/a2ps.cfg`, `/etc/a2ps/a2ps-site.cfg`

Configuration Information

Information about configuring a2ps can be found in the comments contained in the above files, and also by running **info a2ps**.

Contents

Installed Programs:	a2ps, card, composeglyphs, fixnt, fixps, ogonkify, pdiff, psmandup, psset, and texi2dvi4a2ps
Installed Libraries:	liba2ps.{so,a} and filter data
Installed Directories:	/etc/a2ps and /usr/share/a2ps

Short Descriptions

a2ps	is a filter, utilized primarily by printing scripts, that converts standard input or supported files to PostScript.
card	prints a reference card of a given program's options.
composeglyphs	creates a composite font program.
fixnt	is supposed to fix the problems in the PostScript files generated by the Microsoft PostScript driver under Windows NT (3.5 and 4.0).
fixps	tries to fix common PostScript problems that break postprocessing.
ogonkify	provides international support for Postscript by performing various munging of PostScript files related to printing in different languages.
pdiff	produces a pretty comparison between files.
psmandup	tries to produce a version of a given PostScript file to print in manual duplex.
psset	produces a version of a given PostScript file with a protected call to the PostScript operator 'setpagedevice'. Typical use is making a file print duplex, or on the manual tray, etc.
texi2dvi4a2ps	compiles Texinfo and LaTeX files to DVI or PDF

Enscript-1.6.4

Introduction to Enscript

Enscript converts ASCII text files to PostScript, HTML, RTF, ANSI and overstrikes.

Caution

Enscript cannot convert UTF-8 encoded text to PostScript. The issue is discussed in detail in the Needed Encoding Not a Valid Option section of the Locale Related Issues page. The solution is to use paps-0.6.8, instead of Enscript, for converting UTF-8 encoded text to PostScript.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://fresh.t-systems-sfr.com/unix/src/misc/enscript-1.6.4.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/enscript-1.6.4.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: b5174b59e4a050fb462af5dbf28ebba3
- Download size: 1.0 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 11.5 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/enscript-1.6.4-security_fixes-1.patch*

Installation of Enscript

Install Enscript by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../enscript-1.6.4-security_fixes-1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc/enscript \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --with-media=Letter &&
make
```

Though it is very sparse, if you have teTeX-3.0 installed, you can create alternate forms of the documentation by issuing any or all of the following commands:

```
make -C docs ps &&
make -C docs pdf &&

cd docs &&
texi2html enscript.texi &&
makeinfo --plaintext -o enscript.txt enscript.texi &&
cd ..
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d /usr/share/doc/enscript-1.6.4 &&
install -v -m644 README* *.txt docs/FAQ.html \
    /usr/share/doc/enscript-1.6.4
```

If you built any of the alternate forms of documentation, install it using the following command as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m644 docs/*.{dvi,html,pdf,ps,txt} \
    /usr/share/doc/enscript-1.6.4
```

Command Explanations

`--sysconfdir=/etc/enscript`: This switch puts configuration data in `/etc/enscript` instead of `/usr/etc`.

`--localstatedir=/var`: This switch sets the directory for runtime data to `/var` instead of `/usr/var`.

`--with-media=Letter`: This switch sets the medium format to letter.

Contents

Installed Programs:	diffpp, enscript, mkafmmap, over, sliceprint, and states
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/enscript, /usr/share/doc/enscript-1.6.4 and /usr/share/enscript

Short Descriptions

diffpp	converts **diff** output files to a format suitable to be printed with **enscript**.
enscript	is a filter, used primarily by printing scripts, that converts ASCII text files to PostScript, HTML, RTF, ANSI and overstrikes.
mkafmmap	creates a font map from a given file.
over	is a script which calls **enscript** and passes the correct parameters to create overstriked fonts.
sliceprint	slices documents with long lines.
states	is an **awk**-like text processing tool with some state machine extensions. It is designed for program source code highlighting and for similar tasks where state information helps input processing.

PSUtils-p17

Introduction to PSUtils

PSUtils is a set of utilities to manipulate PostScript files.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/publishing/tex/tex-utils/psutils/psutils-p17.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: b161522f3bd1507655326afa7db4a0ad
- Download size: 68 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 740 KB
- Estimated build time: 0.01 SBU

Installation of PSUtils

Install PSUtils by running the following commands:

```
sed 's@/usr/local@/usr@g' Makefile.unix > Makefile &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed 's@/usr/local@/usr@g' Makefile.unix > Makefile: This command creates a `Makefile` that installs the program to the `/usr` prefix instead of the `/usr/local` prefix.

Contents

Installed Programs:	epsffit, extractres, fixdlsrps, fixfmps, fixmacps, fixpsditps, fixpspps, fixscribeps, fixtpps, fixwfwps, fixwpps, fixwwps, getafm, includeres, psbook, psmerge, psnup, psresize, psselect, pstops, and showchar
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/psutils

Sometimes **psnup** and other utilities from this package produce PostScript files that don't conform to Adobe's DSC standard. CUPS may print them incorrectly. On the other hand, CUPS has builtin replacements for most commands from this package. For example, to print a document 2-up, you can issue this command:

```
lp -o number-up=2 <filename>
```

Short Descriptions

epsffit	fits an EPSF file to a given bounding box.
psbook	rearranges pages into signatures.

psnup puts multiple pages per physical sheet of paper.

psresize alters the document paper size.

psselect selects pages and page ranges.

pstops performs general page rearrangements and selection.

scripts the remaining commands are scripts that perform specific functions described in their respective man pages.

GSview-4.8

Introduction to GSview

GSview is a viewer for PostScript and PDF using X.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/publishing/ghostscript/ghostgum/gsview-4.8.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: 21c81819af0eeb42ac5ee6499f4a7116
- Download size: 931 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 11.4 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required Patch: *http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/blfs/6.3/gsview-4.8-pstotext-1.patch*

GSview Dependencies

Required

GTK+-1.2.10, and AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4

Note that you must build the shared `libgs.so` library during the Ghostscript installation else the **gsview** program will fail at run-time.

Installation of GSview

GSview uses **netscape** to browse through the online help. BLFS does not install Netscape, but has other browsers from which to choose. You can create a symlink from your preferred browser to **/usr/bin/netscape**, or simply edit `srcunx/gvxreg.c` using the following **sed** script with your browser's executable file name substituted for *<browser>*:

```
sed -i 's:netscape:<browser>:' srcunx/gvxreg.c
```

The GSview package has not been updated in quite a while and does not accomodate the recent versions of the ESP Ghostscript package. If you installed ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 as your Ghostscript application, you must modify the maximum version of Ghostscript allowed. Make the modification using the following command:

```
sed -i 's:999:99999:' src/gvcver.h
```

Install GSview by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gsview-4.8-pstotext-1.patch &&
sed 's:/local::' srcunx/unx.mak > Makefile &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

sed 's:/local::' srcunx/unx.mak > Makefile: This command changes the default installation directory to `/usr` during the creation of the `Makefile`.

Configuring GSview

Config Files

`/etc/gsview/*`

Contents

Installed Programs:	gsview and gsview-help
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/etc/gsview and /usr/share/doc/gsview-4.8

Short Descriptions

gsview	is a viewer for PostScript (PS) and PDF files.
gsview-help	is a script for displaying help files in your chosen browser.

Xpdf-3.02

Introduction to Xpdf

Xpdf is a viewer for Adobe's free Portable Document Format (PDF) which is both fast and small and comes with some useful command-line utilities.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://gd.tuwien.ac.at/publishing/xpdf/xpdf-3.02.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.foolabs.com/pub/xpdf/xpdf-3.02.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 599dc4cc65a07ee868cf92a667a913d2
- Download size: 674 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 46 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.4 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Required patch: *ftp://ftp.foolabs.com/pub/xpdf/xpdf-3.02pl2.patch*

Xpdf Dependencies

Required

LessTif-0.95.0

Optional

AFPL Ghostscript-8.53 or ESP Ghostscript-8.15.4 (just the fonts), *t1lib*, and *libpaper*

Installation of Xpdf

Install Xpdf by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../xpdf-3.02pl2.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --with-freetype2-includes=/usr/include/freetype2 \
            --enable-opi \
            --enable-multithreaded \
            --enable-wordlist &&
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install
```

Command Explanations

`--enable-a4-paper`: This switch must be added to set DIN A4 as the standard paper format.

Configuring Xpdf

Config Files

`/etc/xpdfrc` and `~/.xpdfrc`

Configuration Information

In the `/etc` directory you will find a sample `xpdfrc` that can be either copied to `~/.xpdfrc` or taken as an example to write your own configuration file. Below you'll find a condensed version of the file you may wish to build from.

```
# Example .xpdfrc
displayFontT1 Times-Roman           /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n021003l.pfb
displayFontT1 Times-Italic          /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n021023l.pfb
displayFontT1 Times-Bold            /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n021004l.pfb
displayFontT1 Times-BoldItalic      /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n021024l.pfb
displayFontT1 Helvetica             /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n019003l.pfb
displayFontT1 Helvetica-Oblique     /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n019023l.pfb
displayFontT1 Helvetica-Bold        /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n019004l.pfb
displayFontT1 Helvetica-BoldOblique /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n019024l.pfb
displayFontT1 Courier               /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n022003l.pfb
displayFontT1 Courier-Oblique       /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n022023l.pfb
displayFontT1 Courier-Bold          /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n022004l.pfb
displayFontT1 Courier-BoldOblique   /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/n022024l.pfb
displayFontT1 Symbol                /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/s050000l.pfb
displayFontT1 ZapfDingbats          /usr/share/ghostscript/fonts/d050000l.pfb

fontDir                 /usr/share/fonts/X11-TTF

psFile                  "|lpr"
psPaperSize             letter
#psPaperSize             A4
textEOL                 unix

enableT1lib             yes
enableFreeType          yes
antialias               yes

urlCommand              "links -g %s"
```

Contents

Installed Programs: pdffonts, pdfimages, pdfinfo, pdftoppm, pdftops, pdftotext, and xpdf
Installed Libraries: None
Installed Directories: None

Short Descriptions

pdffonts lists the fonts used in a PDF file along with various information for each font.

pdfimages saves images from a PDF file as PPM, PBM, or JPEG files.

pdfinfo prints the contents of the 'Info' dictionary (plus some other useful information) from a PDF file.

pdftoppm converts PDF files to PBM, PGM and PPM formats.

pdftops converts PDF files to Postscript format.

pdftotext parses ASCII text from PDF files.

xpdf displays files in PDF format.

FOP-0.93

Introduction to FOP

The FOP (Formatting Objects Processor) package contains a print formatter driven by XSL formatting objects (XSL-FO). It is a Java application that reads a formatting object tree and renders the resulting pages to a specified output. Output formats currently supported include PDF, PCL, PostScript, SVG, XML (area tree representation), print, AWT, MIF and ASCII text. The primary output target is PDF.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://archive.apache.org/dist/xmlgraphics/fop/source/fop-0.93-src.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/f/fop-0.93-src.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 184c578a6269a8287ed150e0fc12868d
- Download size: 11.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 216 MB
- Estimated build time: 0.9 SBU

Additional Downloads

Required packages

- Objects for Formatting Objects (OFFO) hyphenation patterns:
  http://downloads.sourceforge.net/offo/offo-hyphenation.zip
  0b8c1657ef70285ad7fd514061b08c3e
  359 KB
- Java Advanced Imaging (JAI) API components:
  http://javashoplm.sun.com/ECom/docs/Welcome.jsp?StoreId=22&PartDetailId=jai-1_1_2_01-oth-JPR&SiteId=JSC&TransactionId=noreg
  f2be3619a8d002eff3874355e96327eb
  2.6 MB
  Choose the “Linux JDK Install” file after accepting the license agreement.

FOP Dependencies

Required

Apache Ant-1.7.0

Optional

JIMI SDK, *XMLUnit*, and *Forrest* (only used to rebuild the documentation)

Installation of FOP

Ensure `$JAVA_HOME` is set correctly before beginning the build. To build the JIMI SDK and/or XMLUnit extension classes, ensure the corresponding `.jar` files are identified in the `CLASSPATH` environment variable.

Installing OFFO Hyphenation Patterns

Before beginning the build, unpack the FOP source tarball and the hyphenation zipfile from the same directory, then change directories into the root of the FOP source tree. The XML Hyphenation patterns will be copied into the FOP source tree by running the following commands:

```
cp ../offo-hyphenation/hyph/* hyph &&
rm -rf ../offo-hyphenation
```

Installing JAI

Tip

The **$FOP_BUILD_DIR/JAI.bin** command below installs the JAI components in the JDK tree. You will be required to view, and then accept (by entering a **y** keypress), a license agreement before the installation will continue. If you are scripting (automating) the build, you'll need to account for this. There is information about automating build commands in the Automated Building Procedures section of Chapter 2. Towards the end of this section, specific information for automating this type of installation is discussed.

Install the JAI components by running the following commands as the `root` user while in the root of the FOP source tree:

```
install -m755 ../jai-1_1_2_01-lib-linux-i586-jdk.bin JAI.bin &&
sed -i 's/tail +122/tail -n +122/' JAI.bin &&

FOP_BUILD_DIR=$(pwd) &&
cd $JAVA_HOME &&

$FOP_BUILD_DIR/JAI.bin &&

cd $FOP_BUILD_DIR &&
rm JAI.bin
```

Installing FOP Components

Install FOP by running the following commands:

```
ant &&
ant javadocs
```

The unit regression tests were performed in the build step above.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /opt/fop-0.93 &&
cp -v -R * /opt/fop-0.93 &&
ln -v -sf fop-0.93 /opt/fop
```

Command Explanations

sed -i 's/tail +122/tail -n +122/' ...: The JAI binary file has a **tail** command imbedded in the file which uses obsolete syntax and causes the file to unpack incorrectly. This command fixes the obsolete syntax.

$FOP_BUILD_DIR/JAI.bin: This command installs the JAI components into the JDK file structure. `$FOP_BUILD_DIR` is used as a reference point to the source executable and as a method to return back to the FOP source tree.

ant: This reads the `build.xml` file and performs the default `all` target which builds the package and runs the unit regression tests.

ant javadocs: This builds the Java API documentation. Omit this step if desired.

ln -v -sf fop-0.93 /opt/fop: This is optional and creates a convenience symlink so that `$FOP_HOME` doesn't have to be changed each time there's a package version change.

Configuring FOP

Config Files

`~/.foprc`

Configuration Information

Using FOP to process some large FO's (including the FO derived from the BLFS XML sources), can lead to memory errors. Unless you add a parameter to the **java** command used in the **fop** script you may receive messages similar to the one shown below:

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: Java heap space
```

To avoid errors like this, you need to pass an extra parameter to the **java** command used in the **fop** script. This can be accomplished by creating a `~/.foprc` (which is sourced by the **fop** script) and adding the parameter to the `FOP_OPTS` environment variable.

The **fop** script looks for a `FOP_HOME` environment variable to locate the FOP class libraries. You can create this variable using the `~/.foprc` file as well. Create a `~/.foprc` file using the following commands:

```
cat > ~/.foprc << "EOF"
FOP_OPTS="-Xmx<RAM_Installed>m"
FOP_HOME="/opt/fop"

EOF
```

Replace *<RAM_Installed>* with a number representing the amount of RAM installed in your computer (in megabytes). An example would be **`FOP_OPTS="-Xmx768m"`**. For more information about memory issues running FOP, see *http://xml.apache.org/fop/running.html#memory*.

To include the **fop** script in your path, update your personal or system-wide profile with the following:

```
PATH=$PATH:/opt/fop
```

Contents

Installed Programs:	fop
Installed Libraries:	fop.jar and numerous support library classes located in `/opt/fop/{build,lib}`; JAI components include libmlib_jai.so, jai_codec.jar, jai_core.jar, and mlibwrapper_jai.jar
Installed Directory:	/opt/fop-0.93

Short Descriptions

fop is a wrapper script to the **java** command which sets up the FOP environment and passes the required parameters.

`fop.jar` contains all the FOP Java classes.

paps-0.6.8

Introduction to paps

paps is a text to PostScript converter that works through Pango. Its input is a UTF-8 encoded text file and it outputs vectorized PostScript. It may be used for printing any complex script supported by Pango.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/paps/paps-0.6.8.tar.gz*
-
- Download MD5 sum: e9508132bf27609bf2fded2bfd9cb3f1
- Download size: 460 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

paps Dependencies

Required

Pango-1.16.4

Optional

Doxygen-1.5.2

Installation of paps

Install paps by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make
```

To test the results, issue: **src/test_libpaps** > **test.ps**. View the output file in any available PostScript viewer and visually compare it to `doxygen-doc/html/example-output.png` in the source tree. The results of the output will be more robust with DejaVu, Arphic, and Kochi fonts installed as explained in the Xft Font Protocol Section of the X Window System configuration.

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
install -v -m755 -d                 /usr/share/doc/paps-0.6.8 &&
install -v -m644 doxygen-doc/html/* /usr/share/doc/paps-0.6.8
```

Contents

Installed Program: paps
Installed Library: libpaps.a
Installed Directory: /usr/share/doc/paps-0.6.8

Short Descriptions

paps is a text to PostScript converter that supports UTF-8 character encoding.

Other PostScript Programs

kghostview is a Qt based PostScript/PDF viewer from kdegraphics-3.5.9.

Chapter 44. Typesetting

This chapter includes applications that create output equivalent to typesetting.

teTeX-3.0

Introduction to teTeX

teTeX is an implementation of Donald Knuth's TeX typesetting program. This package is able to create documents in a variety of formats. The optional `texmfsrc` (TeX METAFONT) tarball contains source code for programs to create and manipulate TeX fonts.

Package Information

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://tug.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/unix/teTeX/3.0/distrib/tetex-src-3.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 944a4641e79e61043fdaf8f38ecbb4b3
- Download size: 12.7 MB
- Estimated disk space required: 423 MB (549 MB with optional tarball, additional 231 MB for CM-Super fonts)
- Estimated build time: 2.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

Required Macros and Fonts

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://tug.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/unix/teTeX/3.0/distrib/tetex-texmf-3.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: ed9d30d9162d16ac8d5065cde6e0f6fa
- Download size: 87.1 MB

Optional 'texmf' Sources:

-
- Download (FTP): *ftp://tug.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/unix/teTeX/3.0/distrib/tetex-texmfsrc-3.0.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 66c32a11964a49982ba2a32d3bbfe7f5
- Download size: 57.7 MB

Optional 'cm-super' Sources:

- Download (HTTP): *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/t/tetex-cm-super.tar.bz2*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/BLFS/6.3/t/tetex-cm-super.tar.bz2*
- Download MD5 sum: d7c89fcb35f625b02853a0881a4ec760
- Download size: 63.8 MB

teTeX Dependencies

Required

Ed-0.8

Optional

libpng-1.2.29, X Window System, Tk-Perl-804.027, *t1lib*, and *GD*

Installation of teTeX

Before building teTeX, the macros and fonts package (`texmf` tarball) must be installed. Install the macros and fonts using the following commands as the `root` user:

```
install -v -d -m755 /usr/share/texmf &&
gzip -dc ../tetex-texmf-3.0.tar.gz \
    | (umask 0; cd /usr/share/texmf; tar -xvf -)
```

If the optional `texmfsrc` source code TAR ball was downloaded, unpack it now as the `root` user:

```
gzip -dc ../tetex-texmfsrc-3.0.tar.gz \
    | (umask 0; cd /usr/share/texmf; tar -xvf -)
```

Install teTeX by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --exec-prefix=/usr \
            --bindir=/usr/bin \
            --without-texinfo \
            --with-x=no \
            --with-system-ncurses \
            --with-system-zlib &&
make all
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. The tests should complete without errors (there may be some errors which are ignored).

Now, as the `root` user:

```
make install &&
texconfig-sys dvips paper letter &&
texconfig-sys font rw
```

Note

The paper size may be changed to a4, as is used in most countries.

To install the optional cm-super fonts, perform the following instructions as the `root` user:

```
tar -xf ../tetex-cm-super.tar.bz2 &&
FONTDIR=$(kpsewhich --expand-var '$TEXMFMAIN') &&
mkdir -v -p $FONTDIR/fonts/afm/public/cm-super   \
            $FONTDIR/fonts/type1/public/cm-super \
            $FONTDIR/fonts/enc/dvips/cm-super    \
            $FONTDIR/fonts/map/dvips/cm-super   &&

cp -v cm-super/pfb/*.pfb $FONTDIR/fonts/type1/public/cm-super/ &&

gunzip cm-super/afm/* &&
cp -v cm-super/afm/*.afm $FONTDIR/fonts/afm/public/cm-super/ &&

cp -v cm-super/dvips/*.enc $FONTDIR/fonts/enc/dvips/cm-super/ &&
cp -v cm-super/dvips/*.map $FONTDIR/fonts/map/dvips/cm-super/ &&

cat >> $FONTDIR/web2c/updmap.cfg << "EOF" &&
MixedMap cm-super-t1.map
MixedMap cm-super-t2a.map
MixedMap cm-super-t2b.map
MixedMap cm-super-t2c.map
MixedMap cm-super-ts1.map
MixedMap cm-super-x2.map
EOF

install -v -m644 -D cm-super/type1ec.sty \
       $FONTDIR/tex/latex/cm-super/type1ec.sty &&

mktexlsr &&
updmap-sys &&

unset FONTDIR
```

Command Explanations

`--with-x=no`: This switch will avoid any X dependencies. teTeX can be compiled with X support, notably for **xdvi**. If this is desired, remove this parameter.

`--exec-prefix=/usr --bindir=/usr/bin`: These switches ensure that teTeX binaries are installed in `/usr/bin`.

`--without-texinfo`: A default LFS installation already has the Texinfo package installed. This switch will avoid overwriting it with the included Texinfo package.

`--with-system-ncurses`: This switch specifies using the already installed `libncurses` library.

`--with-system-zlib`: A default LFS installation already has the Zlib library installed. This switch will avoid replacing it with the included Zlib library.

`--disable-a4`: Use this option to set the default paper size to letter and the default unit to inch.

texconfig-sys dvips paper letter: This command sets the default paper size for teTeX.

texconfig-sys font rw: This command specifies creating and using a directory for globally writeable fonts.

mktexlsr: This command recreates the teTeX `ls-R` databases after installing the CM-Super fonts.

updmap-sys: This command updates the system-wide font configuration to include the CM-Super fonts.

Tip

Run **./configure --help** for information about using other switches which will enable the build to use other installed packages you may have on your system.

Contents

Installed Programs:	100 separate binaries and scripts along with 30 symlinks to these programs.
Installed Library:	libkpathsea.a
Installed Directories:	/usr/include/kpathsea, /var/tmp/texfonts and the following subdirectories of /usr/share/: texi2html, texinfo/html, texmf, texmf-config and texmf-var

Short Descriptions

teTeX programs	included in the teTeX package are too numerous to individually list. Please refer to the individual program man pages and *file:///usr/share/texmf/doc/index.html* for details, as well as a tour of the expansive teTeX documentation.
`libkpathsea.a`	contains functions used by teTeX for searching and cataloging path names.

JadeTeX-3.13

Introduction to JadeTeX

The JadeTeX package is a companion package to the OpenJade DSSSL processor. JadeTeX transforms high level LaTeX macros into DVI/PostScript and Portable Document Format (PDF) forms.

Package Information

- Download (HTTP): *http://downloads.sourceforge.net/jadetex/jadetex-3.13.tar.gz*
- Download (FTP): *ftp://ftp.linux.ee/pub/gentoo/distfiles/distfiles/jadetex-3.13.tar.gz*
- Download MD5 sum: 634dfc172fbf66a6976e2c2c60e2d198
- Download size: 103 KB
- Estimated disk space required: 9.3 MB
- Estimated build time: less than 0.1 SBU

Additional Downloads

- Recommended demo files: *http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/BLFS/6.3/j/jadetex-3.13-demo.tar.bz2*

JadeTeX Dependencies

Required

teTeX-3.0 and OpenJade-1.3.2

Installation of JadeTeX

If you downloaded the demo files tarball, unpack it along with the source tarball. It will unpack as a `demo` directory in the root of the source tree.

First, as the `root` user, make some required modifications to the `texmf.cnf` file already installed on the system by the teTeX package, then build a new `latex.fmt` file using the following commands:

```
sed -i.orig -e "s/original texmf.cnf/modified texmf.cnf/" \
            -e "s/memory hog.../&\npool_size.context = 750000/" \
    $(kpsewhich texmf.cnf) &&
cat >> $(kpsewhich texmf.cnf) << "EOF"

% The following 3 sections added for JadeTeX

% latex settings
main_memory.latex = 1100000
param_size.latex = 1500
stack_size.latex = 1500
hash_extra.latex = 15000
string_vacancies.latex = 45000
pool_free.latex = 47500
```

```
nest_size.latex = 500
save_size.latex = 5000
pool_size.latex = 500000
max_strings.latex = 55000
font_mem_size.latex= 400000

% jadetex settings
main_memory.jadetex = 1500000
param_size.jadetex = 1500
stack_size.jadetex = 1500
hash_extra.jadetex = 50000
string_vacancies.jadetex = 45000
pool_free.jadetex = 47500
nest_size.jadetex = 500
save_size.jadetex = 5000
pool_size.jadetex = 500000
max_strings.jadetex = 55000

% pdfjadetex settings
main_memory.pdfjadetex = 2500000
param_size.pdfjadetex = 1500
stack_size.pdfjadetex = 1500
hash_extra.pdfjadetex = 50000
string_vacancies.pdfjadetex = 45000
pool_free.pdfjadetex = 47500
nest_size.pdfjadetex = 500
save_size.pdfjadetex = 5000
pool_size.pdfjadetex = 500000
max_strings.pdfjadetex = 55000

EOF
LATEX_FMT_DIR="$(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFSYSVAR')/web2c" &&
mv -v $(kpsewhich latex.fmt) $(kpsewhich latex.fmt).orig &&
mv -v $LATEX_FMT_DIR/latex.log $LATEX_FMT_DIR/latex.log.orig &&
fmtutil-sys --byfmt latex
```

Install JadeTex using the following commands:

```
make
```

Now, as the `root` user:

```
install -v -m755 -d \
    $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFLOCAL')/tex/jadetex/config &&
install -v -m644 dsssl.def jadetex.ltx *.sty \
    $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFLOCAL')/tex/jadetex &&
install -v -m644 {,pdf}jadetex.ini \
    $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFLOCAL')/tex/jadetex/config &&
FMTUTIL_CNF="$(kpsewhich fmtutil.cnf)" &&
mv $FMTUTIL_CNF $FMTUTIL_CNF.orig &&
cat $FMTUTIL_CNF.orig - >> $FMTUTIL_CNF << "EOF"

# JadeTeX formats:
jadetex         etex            -               "&latex"     jadetex.ini
pdfjadetex      pdfetex         -               "&pdflatex"  pdfjadetex.ini

EOF
mv -v $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFMAIN')/ls-R \
      $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFMAIN')/ls-R.orig &&
mv -v $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFSYSVAR')/ls-R \
      $(kpsewhich -expand-var '$TEXMFSYSVAR')/ls-R.orig &&
mktexlsr &&
fmtutil-sys --byfmt jadetex &&
fmtutil-sys --byfmt pdfjadetex &&
mktexlsr &&
ln -v -sf etex /usr/bin/jadetex &&
ln -v -sf pdfetex /usr/bin/pdfjadetex &&
install -v -m644 -D index.html \
    /usr/share/doc/jadetex-3.13/index.html &&
install -v -m644 *.1 /usr/share/man/man1
```

If you downloaded the demo files tarball, issue the following commands as an unprivileged user to test the functionality of the new JadeTex installation:

```
cd demo &&
openjade -t tex -d demo.dsl demo.sgm &&
jadetex demo.tex &&
pdfjadetex demo.tex &&
ls -lrt &&
cd ..
```

The commands should complete without errors or warnings and create `demo.dvi` and `demo.pdf` files.

Command Explanations

sed -i -e ... -e ... $(kpsewhich texmf.cnf): This command uses **kpsewhich** to locate the installed `texmf.cnf`. The first change is used to modify the header of the file so that if teTeX is upgraded, the file won't get overwritten. The next change adds a parameter to increase ConTeXt's memory size to accommodate JadeTeX.

fmtutil-sys ...: These commands are used to build the `latex.fmt`, `jadetex.fmt` and `pdfjadetex.fmt` files. Additionally, the command automagically places the files in the correct directory.

mktexlsr; ln -v -sf tex ...; ln -v -sf pdftex ...: The JadeTeX programs are actually just symlinks to the teTeX programs. **mktexlsr** updates teTeX's `ls-R` databases used by the `libkpathsea` library so that teTeX knows to use the JadeTeX `.fmt` files when **jadetex** or **pdfjadetex** is called.

Configuring JadeTeX

Config Files

`jadetex.dtx` in the JadeTeX source tree.

Configuration Information

If you need to modify the default JadeTeX macro settings, see the *JadeTeX FAQ*.

Contents

Installed Programs:	jadetex and pdfjadetex
Installed Libraries:	None
Installed Directories:	/usr/share/texmf-local and /usr/share/doc/jadetex-3.13

Short Descriptions

jadetex	transforms LaTeX macros created by OpenJade into DVI/PostScript forms.
pdfjadetex	transforms LaTeX macros created by OpenJade into Portable Document Format (PDF) forms.

Appendix A. Creative Commons License

Creative Commons Legal Code

Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0

Important

CREATIVE COMMONS CORPORATION IS NOT A LAW FIRM AND DOES NOT PROVIDE LEGAL SERVICES. DISTRIBUTION OF THIS LICENSE DOES NOT CREATE AN ATTORNEY-CLIENT RELATIONSHIP. CREATIVE COMMONS PROVIDES THIS INFORMATION ON AN "AS-IS" BASIS. CREATIVE COMMONS MAKES NO WARRANTIES REGARDING THE INFORMATION PROVIDED, AND DISCLAIMS LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ITS USE.

License

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CREATIVE COMMONS PUBLIC LICENSE ("CCPL" OR "LICENSE"). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HERE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE LICENSOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HERE IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

1. Definitions
   a. "Collective Work" means a work, such as a periodical issue, anthology or encyclopedia, in which the Work in its entirety in unmodified form, along with a number of other contributions, constituting separate and independent works in themselves, are assembled into a collective whole. A work that constitutes a Collective Work will not be considered a Derivative Work (as defined below) for the purposes of this License.
   b. "Derivative Work" means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works, such as a translation, musical arrangement, dramatization, fictionalization, motion picture version, sound recording, art reproduction, abridgment, condensation, or any other form in which the Work may be recast, transformed, or adapted, except that a work that constitutes a Collective Work will not be considered a Derivative Work for the purpose of this License. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a musical composition or sound recording, the synchronization of the Work in timed-relation with a moving image ("synching") will be considered a Derivative Work for the purpose of this License.
   c. "Licensor" means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.
   d. "Original Author" means the individual or entity who created the Work.
   e. "Work" means the copyrightable work of authorship offered under the terms of this License.
   f. "You" means an individual or entity exercising rights under this License who has not previously violated the terms of this License with respect to the Work, or who has received express permission from the Licensor to exercise rights under this License despite a previous violation.
   g. "License Elements" means the following high-level license attributes as selected by Licensor and indicated in the title of this License: Attribution, Noncommercial, ShareAlike.
2. Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this license is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.

3. License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, Licensor hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below:

   a. to reproduce the Work, to incorporate the Work into one or more Collective Works, and to reproduce the Work as incorporated in the Collective Works;

   b. to create and reproduce Derivative Works;

   c. to distribute copies or phonorecords of, display publicly, perform publicly, and perform publicly by means of a digital audio transmission the Work including as incorporated in Collective Works;

   d. to distribute copies or phonorecords of, display publicly, perform publicly, and perform publicly by means of a digital audio transmission Derivative Works;

   The above rights may be exercised in all media and formats whether now known or hereafter devised. The above rights include the right to make such modifications as are technically necessary to exercise the rights in other media and formats. All rights not expressly granted by Licensor are hereby reserved, including but not limited to the rights set forth in Sections 4(e) and 4(f).

4. Restrictions.The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions:

   a. You may distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy or phonorecord of the Work You distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License Agreement. The above applies to the Work as incorporated in a Collective Work, but this does not require the Collective Work apart from the Work itself to be made subject to the terms of this License. If You create a Collective Work, upon notice from any Licensor You must, to the extent practicable, remove from the Collective Work any reference to such Licensor or the Original Author, as requested. If You create a Derivative Work, upon notice from any Licensor You must, to the extent practicable, remove from the Derivative Work any reference to such Licensor or the Original Author, as requested.

   b. You may distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform a Derivative Work only under the terms of this License, a later version of this License with the same License Elements as this License, or a Creative Commons iCommons license that contains the same License Elements as this License (e.g. Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 Japan). You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License or other license specified in the previous sentence with every copy or phonorecord of each Derivative Work You distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Derivative Works that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder, and You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Derivative Work with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License Agreement. The above applies to the Derivative Work as incorporated in a Collective Work, but this does not require the Collective Work apart from the Derivative Work itself to be made subject to the terms of this License.

c. You may not exercise any of the rights granted to You in Section 3 above in any manner that is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation. The exchange of the Work for other copyrighted works by means of digital file-sharing or otherwise shall not be considered to be intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation, provided there is no payment of any monetary compensation in connection with the exchange of copyrighted works.

d. If you distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work or any Derivative Works or Collective Works, You must keep intact all copyright notices for the Work and give the Original Author credit reasonable to the medium or means You are utilizing by conveying the name (or pseudonym if applicable) of the Original Author if supplied; the title of the Work if supplied; to the extent reasonably practicable, the Uniform Resource Identifier, if any, that Licensor specifies to be associated with the Work, unless such URI does not refer to the copyright notice or licensing information for the Work; and in the case of a Derivative Work, a credit identifying the use of the Work in the Derivative Work (e.g., "French translation of the Work by Original Author," or "Screenplay based on original Work by Original Author"). Such credit may be implemented in any reasonable manner; provided, however, that in the case of a Derivative Work or Collective Work, at a minimum such credit will appear where any other comparable authorship credit appears and in a manner at least as prominent as such other comparable authorship credit.

e. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a musical composition:

   i. Performance Royalties Under Blanket Licenses. Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance rights society (e.g. ASCAP, BMI, SESAC), royalties for the public performance or public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work if that performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

   ii. Mechanical Rights and Statutory Royalties. Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a music rights agency or designated agent (e.g. Harry Fox Agency), royalties for any phonorecord You create from the Work ("cover version") and distribute, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 115 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your distribution of such cover version is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation. 6. Webcasting Rights and Statutory Royalties. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a sound recording, Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance-rights society (e.g. SoundExchange), royalties for the public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 114 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your public digital performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

f. Webcasting Rights and Statutory Royalties. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a sound recording, Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance-rights society (e.g. SoundExchange), royalties for the public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 114 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your public digital performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

5. Representations, Warranties and Disclaimer

UNLESS OTHERWISE MUTUALLY AGREED TO BY THE PARTIES IN WRITING, LICENSOR OFFERS THE WORK AS-IS AND MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE WORK, EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OF TITLE, MERCHANTIBILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NONINFRINGEMENT, OR THE ABSENCE OF LATENT OR

OTHER DEFECTS, ACCURACY, OR THE PRESENCE OF ABSENCE OF ERRORS, WHETHER OR NOT DISCOVERABLE. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO SUCH EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Limitation on Liability. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL LICENSOR BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK, EVEN IF LICENSOR HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

7. Termination

   a. This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of the terms of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works or Collective Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, and 8 will survive any termination of this License.

   b. Subject to the above terms and conditions, the license granted here is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, Licensor reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.

8. Miscellaneous

   a. Each time You distribute or publicly digitally perform the Work or a Collective Work, the Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the Work on the same terms and conditions as the license granted to You under this License.

   b. Each time You distribute or publicly digitally perform a Derivative Work, Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the original Work on the same terms and conditions as the license granted to You under this License.

   c. If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this agreement, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.

   d. No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.

   e. This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed here. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified here. Licensor shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Licensor and You.

Important

Creative Commons is not a party to this License, and makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with the Work. Creative Commons will not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising in connection to this license. Notwithstanding the foregoing two (2) sentences, if Creative Commons has expressly identified itself as the Licensor hereunder, it shall have all rights and obligations of Licensor.

Except for the limited purpose of indicating to the public that the Work is licensed under the CCPL, neither party will use the trademark "Creative Commons" or any related trademark or logo of Creative Commons without the prior written consent of Creative Commons. Any permitted use will be in compliance with Creative Commons' then-current trademark usage guidelines, as may be published on its website or otherwise made available upon request from time to time.

Creative Commons may be contacted at *http://creativecommons.org/*.

Appendix B. Academic Free License v. 2.1

This Academic Free License (the "License") applies to any original work of authorship (the "Original Work") whose owner (the "Licensor") has placed the following notice immediately following the copyright notice for the Original Work:

Licensed under the Academic Free License version 2.1

1. Grant of Copyright License. Licensor hereby grants You a world-wide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual, sublicenseable license to do the following:
   - to reproduce the Original Work in copies;
   - to prepare derivative works ("Derivative Works") based upon the Original Work;
   - to distribute copies of the Original Work and Derivative Works to the public;
   - to perform the Original Work publicly; and
   - to display the Original Work publicly.
2. Grant of Patent License. Licensor hereby grants You a world-wide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual, sublicenseable license, under patent claims owned or controlled by the Licensor that are embodied in the Original Work as furnished by the Licensor, to make, use, sell and offer for sale the Original Work and Derivative Works.
3. Grant of Source Code License. The term "Source Code" means the preferred form of the Original Work for making modifications to it and all available documentation describing how to modify the Original Work. Licensor hereby agrees to provide a machine-readable copy of the Source Code of the Original Work along with each copy of the Original Work that Licensor distributes. Licensor reserves the right to satisfy this obligation by placing a machine-readable copy of the Source Code in an information repository reasonably calculated to permit inexpensive and convenient access by You for as long as Licensor continues to distribute the Original Work, and by publishing the address of that information repository in a notice immediately following the copyright notice that applies to the Original Work.
4. Exclusions From License Grant. Neither the names of Licensor, nor the names of any contributors to the Original Work, nor any of their trademarks or service marks, may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this Original Work without express prior written permission of the Licensor. Nothing in this License shall be deemed to grant any rights to trademarks, copyrights, patents, trade secrets or any other intellectual property of Licensor except as expressly stated herein. No patent license is granted to make, use, sell or offer to sell embodiments of any patent claims other than the licensed claims defined in Section 2. No right is granted to the trademarks of Licensor even if such marks are included in the Original Work. Nothing in this License shall be interpreted to prohibit Licensor from licensing under different terms from this License any Original Work that Licensor otherwise would have a right to license.
5. This section intentionally omitted.
6. Attribution Rights. You must retain, in the Source Code of any Derivative Works that You create, all copyright, patent or trademark notices from the Source Code of the Original Work, as well as any notices of licensing and any descriptive text identified therein as an "Attribution Notice." You must cause the Source Code for any Derivative Works that You create to carry a prominent Attribution Notice reasonably calculated to inform recipients that You have modified the Original Work.
7. Warranty of Provenance and Disclaimer of Warranty. Licensor warrants that the copyright in and to the Original Work and the patent rights granted herein by Licensor are owned by the Licensor or are sublicensed to You under the terms of this License with the permission of the contributor(s) of those copyrights and patent rights. Except as expressly stated in the immediately proceeding sentence, the Original Work is provided under this License on

an "AS IS" BASIS and WITHOUT WARRANTY, either express or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY OF THE ORIGINAL WORK IS WITH YOU. This DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY constitutes an essential part of this License. No license to Original Work is granted hereunder except under this disclaimer.

8. Limitation of Liability. Under no circumstances and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, shall the Licensor be liable to any person for any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or the use of the Original Work including, without limitation, damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses. This limitation of liability shall not apply to liability for death or personal injury resulting from Licensor's negligence to the extent applicable law prohibits such limitation. Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this exclusion and limitation may not apply to You.

9. Acceptance and Termination. If You distribute copies of the Original Work or a Derivative Work, You must make a reasonable effort under the circumstances to obtain the express assent of recipients to the terms of this License. Nothing else but this License (or another written agreement between Licensor and You) grants You permission to create Derivative Works based upon the Original Work or to exercise any of the rights granted in Section 1 herein, and any attempt to do so except under the terms of this License (or another written agreement between Licensor and You) is expressly prohibited by U.S. copyright law, the equivalent laws of other countries, and by international treaty. Therefore, by exercising any of the rights granted to You in Section 1 herein, You indicate Your acceptance of this License and all of its terms and conditions.

10. Termination for Patent Action. This License shall terminate automatically and You may no longer exercise any of the rights granted to You by this License as of the date You commence an action, including a cross-claim or counterclaim, against Licensor or any licensee alleging that the Original Work infringes a patent. This termination provision shall not apply for an action alleging patent infringement by combinations of the Original Work with other software or hardware.

11. Jurisdiction, Venue and Governing Law. Any action or suit relating to this License may be brought only in the courts of a jurisdiction wherein the Licensor resides or in which Licensor conducts its primary business, and under the laws of that jurisdiction excluding its conflict-of-law provisions. The application of the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is expressly excluded. Any use of the Original Work outside the scope of this License or after its termination shall be subject to the requirements and penalties of the U.S. Copyright Act, 17 U.S.C. Â§ 101 et seq., the equivalent laws of other countries, and international treaty. This section shall survive the termination of this License.

12. Attorneys Fees. In any action to enforce the terms of this License or seeking damages relating thereto, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover its costs and expenses, including, without limitation, reasonable attorneys' fees and costs incurred in connection with such action, including any appeal of such action. This section shall survive the termination of this License.

13. Definition of "You" in This License. "You" throughout this License, whether in upper or lower case, means an individual or a legal entity exercising rights under, and complying with all of the terms of, this License. For legal entities, "You" includes any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with you. For purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

14. Right to Use. You may use the Original Work in all ways not otherwise restricted or conditioned by this License or by law, and Licensor promises not to interfere with or be responsible for such uses by You.

Glossary

Acronyms

669	UNIS/Composer 669 Module
ABI	Application Binary Interface
ADSL	Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line
AFS	Andrew File System
AIFF	Audio Interchange File Format
ALSA	Advanced Linux Sound Architecture
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
API	Application Programming Interface
APR	Apache Portable Runtime
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
ASN	Abstract Syntax Notation
ASF	Advanced Streaming Format
ATA	AT-Attached
ATSC	Advanced Television Systems Committee
ATK	Accessibility ToolKit
AVI	Audio Video Interleave
AWT	Abstract Window Toolkit
BER	Basic Encoding Rules
BICS	Berkeley/IRCAM/CARL
BIND	Berkeley Internet Name Domain
BIOS	Basic Input/Output System
BLFS	Beyond Linux From Scratch
BMP	Bit MaP
CD	Compact Disk
CDDA	Compact Disc Digital Audio
CIFS	Common Internet File System See Also SMB .
CMS	Cryptographic Message Syntax

CODEC	COmpression/DECompression module
CORBA	Common Object Request Broker Architecture
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CRD	Color Rendering Dictionary
CSA	Color Space Array
CSS (on DVD)	Contents Scrambling System
CSS	Cascading Style Sheets
CUPS	Common Unix Printing System
CVS	Concurrent Versions System
DAO	Disc At Once
DARPA	Directory Address Resolution Protocol Allocation
DEC	Digital Equipment Corporation
DER	Distinguished Encoding Rules
DES	Data Encryption Standard
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DICT	Dictionary Server Protocol (RFC 2229)
DIN	German Industrial Norm
DNS	Domain Name Service
DOS	Disk Operating System
DRI	Direct Rendering Infrastructure
DSC	Document Structuring Conventions
DSO	Dynamic Shared Objects
DSSSL	Document Style Semantics and Specification Language
DV	Digital Video
DVD	Digital Versatile Disk (also Digital Video Disk)
DVI	DeVice Independent
ELF	Executable and Linking Format
EPP	Enhanced Parallel Port
EPS	Encapsulated PostScript
ESD	Enlighten Sound Daemon
ESMTP	Extended Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
FAM	File Alteration Monitor

FAME	Fast Assembly Mpeg Encoder
FAQ	Frequently Asked Questions
FAX	Facsimile
FB	Frame Buffer
FHS	File Hierarchy Standard
FLAC	Free Lossless Audio CODEC
FO	Formatted Objects
FOURCC	FOUR Character Code
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
GCC	GNU Compiler Collection
GDBM	GNU DataBase Manager
GDK	GTK+ Drawing Kit
GDM	GNOME Display Manager
GID	Group IDentity
GIF	Graphics Interchange Format
GLUT	OpenGL Utility Toolkit
GMP	GNU Multiple Precision Arithmetic
GNAT	GNU NYU Ada 9x Translator
GNOME	GNU Network Object Model Environment
GNU	GNU's Not Unix
GPL	General Public License
GPM	General Purpose Mouse
GSS	Generic Security Service
GSSAPI	Generic Security Service Application Programming Interface
GTK	GIMP ToolKit
GUI	Graphical User Interface
HFS	Hierarchical File System
HTML	HyperText Markup Language
HTTP	HyperText Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	HyperText Transfer Protocol Secured
HUP	Hang UP
IANA	Internet Assigned Numbers Authority

ICC	International Color Consortium
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IDE	Integrated Drive Electronics Integrated Development Environment
IDL	Interface Definition Language
IJS	Ink Jet Systems
ILS	Internet Location Server
IMAP	Internet Message Access Protocol
IMON	Inode MONitor
IP	Internet Protocol See Also TCP .
IPX	Internetwork Packet eXchange
IRC	Internet Relay Chat
IrDA	Infrared Data Association
ISDN	Integrated Services Digital Network
ISO	International Standards Organisation
ISP	Internet Service Provider
IT	ImpulseTracker Module
JAI	Java Advanced Imaging
JAR	Java ARchive
JDK	Java Development Kit
JFIF	JPEG File Interchange Format
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group
KDC	Key Distribution Center
KDE	KDesktop Environment
LAME	Lame Ain't an MP3 Encoder
LAN	Local Area Network
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LDIF	Lightweight Data Interchange Format
LFS	Linux From Scratch
LGPL	Library General Public License
LPR	Line PRinter

LZO	Lempel-Ziv-Oberhumer
LZW	Lempel-Ziv-Welch
MAC	Media Access Control
MCOP	Multimedia COmmunication Protocol
MCU	Multipoint Control Unit
MD	Message-Digest
MDA	Mail Delivery Agent
MED	MED/OctaMED Module
MIDI	Musical Instrument Digital Interface
MIF	Maker Interchange Format
MII	Media Independent Interface
MIME	Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions
MIT	Massachusetts Institute of Technology
MNG	Multiple-image Network Graphics
MOD	ProTracker Module
MP3	MPEG-1 audio layer 3
MPEG	Moving Picture Experts Group
MSL	Magick Scripting Language
MTA	Mail Transport Agent
MTM	MultiTracker Module
MUA	Mail User Agent
NASM	Netwide ASseMbler
NNTP	Network News Transfer Protocol
NFS	Network File System
NIS	Network Information Service
NPTL	Native Posix Thread Library
NSPR	Netscape Portable Runtime
NSS	Network Security Services
NTP	Network Time Protocol
OAF	Object Activation Framework
ODBC	Open DataBase Connectivity
OMF	Open Metadata Framework

ORB	Object Request Broker See Also CORBA .
ORDBMS	Object Relational Database Management System
OS	Operating System
OSF	Open Software Foundation
OSS	Open Sound System
PAM	Pluggable authentication Modules
PBM	Portable BitMap
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect
PCL	Printer Control Language
PCM	Pulse Code Modulation
PDC	Primary Domain Controller
PDF	Portable Document Format
PEAR	PHP Extension and Application Repository
PGM	Portable Grey Map
PGP	Pretty Good Privacy
PHP	PHP Hypertext Preprocessor
PIM	Personal Information Manager
PLIP	Parallel Line Internet Protocol
PNG	Portable Network Graphics
PO	Portable Object
POD	Plain Old Documentation
POP	Post Office Protocol
PPD	PostScript Printer Description
PPM	Portable Pixel Map
PPP	Point to Point Protocol
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet
PS	PostScript
RAM	Random Access Memory
RARP	Reverse Address Resolution Protocol
RCS	Revision Control System
RFC	Request For Comments

RGB	Red Green Blue
RGBA	Red Green Blue Alpha
ROM	Read-Only Memory
RP	Roaring Penguin
RPC	Remote Procedure Call
RTC	Real Time Clock
RTP	Real Time Protocol
RW	Read Write
S3M	ScreamTracker Version 3 Module
S/MIME	Secure/MIME
SANE	Scanner Access Now Easy
SASL	Simple Authentication and Security Layer
SBU	Static Binutils Units
SCCS	Source Code Control System
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
SDK	Software Development Kit
SGML	Standard Generalized Markup Language
SMB	Server Message Block
SMIL	Synchronized Multimedia Integration Language
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SOAP	Simple Object Access Protocol
SQL	Structured Query Language
SSH	Secure SHell
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
SUID	Set User IDentity
SVG	Scalable Vector Graphics
SVGA	Super Video Graphics Array
TCL	Tool Command Language
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TGT	Ticket-Granting Ticket
TIFF	Tag(ged) Image File Format
TLS	Transport Layer Security

TTF	TrueType Font
TTS	Text To Speech
UCS	Universal Character Set
UDF	Universal Disk Format
UID	User IDentity
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UI	User Interface
UML	Unified Modelling Language
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
USB	Universal Serial Bus
USR	Upstream Ready
UTF	UCS Transformation Format
UUCP	Unix-to-Unix Copy Protocol
VCD	Video Compact Disk
VESA	Video Electronics Standards Association
VGA	Video Graphics Array
VNC	Virtual Network Computer
VOB	Video OBject
VOIP	Voice Over IP
W3C	World Wide Web Consortium
WAV	Waveform Audio
WWW	World Wide Web
XDMCP	XDisplay Manager Control Protocol
XM	FastTracker Module
XML	eXtensible Markup Language
XSL	eXtensible Style Language
XSLT	eXtensible Style Language Transformation
XSM	X/Open System Management
XMMS	XMultiMedia System
YP	Yellow Pages
YUV	Luminance-Bandwidth-Chrominance

Index

Packages

Programs

Libraries

Kernel Configuration

Configuration Files

Bootscripts

Others